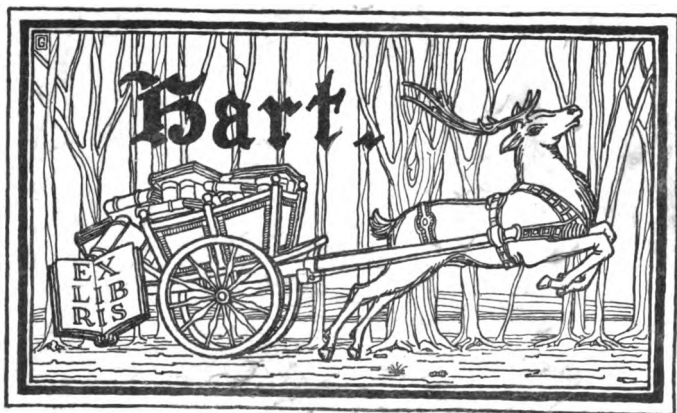


WHITE

THE
BEGINNER'S
GREEK BOOK

GINN & COMPANY

Edue T 1118.72.870



Albert Bushnell Bart

**HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY**



**THE GIFT OF
ALBERT BUSHNELL HART**



3 2044 102 850 112

Professor Albert Rushnell Stark,
with the affectionate regards
of the Editor.

1872.

THE
BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK.

BY
JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, PH. D. (HARV.),
PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY.

Οὐκοῦν οἶσθ' ὅτι ἀρχὴ παντὸς ἔργου μέγιστον, ἄλλως τε καὶ νέω καὶ ἀπαλῶ
ὀτφοῦν;—PLAT. *Rep.* II. 377 a.

Boston, U.S.A.:
PUBLISHED BY GINN & COMPANY.
1892.

Edw T 1118.92.870

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

RECEIVED

Sep 18, 1924

COPYRIGHT, 1892,
BY JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

TYPOGRAPHY BY J. S. CUSHING & Co., BOSTON, U.S.A.

PRESSWORK BY GINN & Co., BOSTON, U.S.A.

TO
PROFESSOR WILLIAM W. GOODWIN,

τοῖς φίλοις
φίλω, τίεσθαι δ' ἀξιωτάτῳ βροτῶν
τῶν νῦν,

THIS BOOK
IS GRATEFULLY DEDICATED.

PREFACE.

THE Beginner's Greek Book which is here submitted to the public is complete in itself, and is intended to furnish work for the first year's study. In writing it I have assumed that the main object of elementary instruction in Greek is to teach the beginner to read; further, that the pupils who use this book will be fifteen years of age, on the average, when they take it in hand, that they will already have studied Latin for at least one year, and that they are to be fitted at the end of two years to read simple Attic prose at sight.

This book differs in important particulars, but not essentially in its plan, from my First Lessons in Greek, first published in 1876. The two books make about equal demands upon the pupil during the first six months of his study. The increased size of this book is due mainly to the fact that it is complete in itself and contains the text of the first eight chapters of Xenophon's *Anabasis*, with summaries of contents and notes, arranged as reading lessons. I am well aware that there is a demand in some quarters for small introductory books in teaching the elements of Greek and Latin. But the remarkable favour with which my First Lessons in Greek has been received encourages me to think that most teachers agree with me in believing that in the study of Greek at least, which is so highly inflected, it is well to lay broad and secure foundations.

In order to be able to read even simple Attic prose at sight one must know the usual forms of the Greek language, its

ordinary constructions, and its general vocabulary. These three things are absolutely necessary and are of equal importance.

In presenting forms I have employed strictly the deductive method, if so large a phrase may be applied to such elementary matters. The pupil is given a set of facts, commonly a paradigm or the like, with the necessary explanations, and is then required to observe the illustration of the general law or fact in particular instances of its use. In each of the lessons on inflexion a double set of exercises, consisting of Greek sentences to be translated into English and English sentences to be rendered into Greek, follows the facts of Grammar which form the subject of the lesson. I have small faith in the method which requires a pupil to construct the Greek paradigms from bits of text by a process called induction. Such a method of acquiring the forms of the language is unnecessarily difficult and confusing, and cannot establish its claim to afford superior mental training.

I have aimed to give only the usual forms of the language, those that will be of practical service to the pupil when he begins to read. The study of grammar should be only the means to this end. My aim in general has been to give the minimum amount of grammar. When this minimum amount has been learnt thoroughly, what else the pupil will need to know, as he reads, he will acquire naturally and easily at the time when he needs it. During the second year's study a good grammar should be constantly in hand and constantly in use. Opinions differ as to what this minimum amount is. It is a mistake to reduce it unduly, in the hope of getting on rapidly. There is no such thing as learning Greek in six easy lessons. Its forms are numerous, apparently complex, and hard to acquire; its syntax is highly developed. The first year's study of Greek is the hardest. If it is made too simple and easy, we merely defer to an evil day the acquisition of knowledge which should be got early, and bring confusion on

our pupils by setting them to read before they are properly prepared.

The verb is introduced at the first and its forms are developed alternately with those of the other parts of speech. Fifty-three of the first one hundred lessons are on the verb, twenty-nine on the other parts of speech. If this is a proper division, it is obvious that the heavy task of mastering the verb should be undertaken as early as possible. We thus also secure variety, and are able to employ from the beginning exercises for drill that consist of complete sentences. The verb is developed first by moods, later by tense systems, a method which has received the hearty approval of teachers. If the development were at first by tense-systems, the subjunctive and optative moods would be introduced at a time when it would be impossible adequately to explain their uses. But when the beginner first learns the forms of these moods, he should have the most important of their uses explained to him. If he is taught to translate the subjunctive with *may* and the optative with *might*, as if they were independent moods, he gets no adequate feeling of their force, and his confusion of mind is often permanent. He should first be taught the forms and uses of the indicative, the mood of predication, in all of its tenses and voices. He can then safely undertake the subjunctive and optative, which are mainly moods of dependence. The presentation of verbal forms a second time by tense-systems furnishes the needed review of a difficult part of speech, with the great advantage of the variety secured by a new order of development. In general reviews should not be the mere repetition of earlier lessons.

Only vowel verbs and verbs with themes in $-\delta$ are introduced in the exercises of the first fifty-nine lessons, with the exception of three common mute verbs, $\alpha\gamma\omega$, $\epsilon\chi\omega$, $\pi\acute{\epsilon}\mu\pi\omega$, and some forms of $\epsilon\iota\mu\acute{\iota}$; and vowel verbs which contract are not introduced until the thirty-first lesson.

I have not hesitated to analyze the forms of the verb, since I believe that this is the quickest and surest way in which to learn them. It is a severe strain upon the memory of the eye and ear to attempt to retain these numerous forms as separate and individual elements. But if the pupil is given a clear conception of the significance of theme, tense stem, and personal endings, the strain is greatly relieved. He is then able to construct his paradigms by the combination of a relatively small number of facts, and is not dependent solely on his memory in recalling forms, but reclaims them by a logical process of form-building. This very process fixes them more securely in his mind. I have for the same reasons analyzed the forms of nouns of the consonant declension. The recognition here of stem and case endings as distinct elements in combination makes the acquisition of the forms easy.

Since the exercises of the lessons consist of sentences and not of phrases, in developing the forms I have had to deal also with laws of construction. Principles of syntax are presented inductively as needed. Examples are given and the general law is developed from particular instances of its use.¹ But the subject of syntax is not made prominent in the first one hundred lessons. Principles which hold good also in Latin or English or in both are taken for granted, being at most referred to in a foot-note. Moreover, single occurrences of constructions not in themselves difficult are explained by a mere statement of the fact in a foot-note. Difficult constructions have been avoided in selecting the sentences for these exercises, and with the same object in view the sentences have often been simplified.

The subject of syntax is formally presented in nineteen lessons at the end of the book, which are arranged alternately with lessons for reading. Each of the lessons on syntax contains three parts: first, a Greek exercise consisting of num-

¹ See §§ 89, 173, 222, 270, 272, *etc.*

bered sentences which illustrate a given set of principles; secondly, statements, in the form of rules, of the laws of construction thus illustrated, each rule having prefixed to it, with comment, the numbers of the sentences which establish it as a law; thirdly, an English exercise consisting of sentences to be rendered into Greek, in which the pupil will apply constructively the principles just reached by induction. Lessons of just this constitution have never before been used, to my knowledge, in any elementary Greek book.

Fourteen of the first one hundred lessons are solely devoted to the study of words and to the art of reading. These fourteen lessons mark a significant departure from the methods of most elementary Greek books, especially in the attention here given to the systematic acquisition of a vocabulary.

The meagreness of the vocabulary of most pupils who enter college from the schools is an evil not to be ignored. There is no good reason why this evil should exist at all. The vocabulary of ancient Greek is copious; but one does not need to know a multitude of words in order to be able to read with facility. The important words to fix in the memory are the root or stem words; with these the words that are related to them in form and meaning, the two tests by which we establish the relationship of words in etymologizing, naturally group themselves. The very great majority of Greek words are either derivatives or compounds. But the beginner's approach to the use of the group system must be gradual.

The words used in this book, with a few exceptions, occur in Xenophon's *Anabasis*, and my aim has been to select for use those which occur there the oftenest. In the eleven lessons that follow the four introductory lessons one hundred and sixty-five words are used. One hundred and thirteen are nouns, twenty-six are verbs. These nouns occur in the *Anabasis* over thirty-five hundred times; on the average each noun occurs over thirty times. The verbs occur more than twenty-two hundred times; if *εἰμί* is thrown out of the count, each of

the other twenty-five verbs occurs in the *Anabasis* on the average some forty times.

There are forty special vocabularies in this book. Each of these contains all of the words in the exercises of the lesson of which it is a part that have not occurred in previous lessons or do not occur in the lesson itself in the part that precedes the exercises. No use of the general vocabulary need be made before the fifty-eighth lesson. The words in the forty special vocabularies are collected in five lists for review. The principle of associating Greek words that are related in form and meaning is first applied in the sixteenth lesson. It is gradually made more and more prominent in the following special vocabularies and lists. No stress is laid on the relationship of Greek words to English words in these early lessons. It is silently indicated by the use of different types. Nothing is said about the connexion of Greek words with Latin words until the fifty-seventh lesson. The important thing to do first is to confirm the pupil in the habit of tracing the relationship of Greek words among themselves, so that when a new word is met his first inquiry will be whether it is not related to some other word that has previously occurred.

Forty groups of words follow the special vocabularies. The first of these is a part of the fifty-seventh lesson. Preceding this are two lessons on the formation of words. The words in each group should first be analyzed, and should then be committed to memory. This will now be an interesting, easy, and profitable task.

The number of words used in this book will seem to be large, but the principle has been adopted deliberately. On an average there are twenty words to the lesson in the forty-four lessons covered by the five word-lists. I should not feel justified in making the number so great, if I believed that in acquiring these twenty words the pupil would be obliged to fix in his mind twenty distinct and separate signs of ideas.

Even at this early stage of his study dependence can be placed on the widely applying principle of relationship to make his acquisition of a vocabulary increasingly easier.

The exercises consist of sentences, either in their original form or simplified, that have been taken, with a few exceptions, from Xenophon's *Anabasis*, chiefly from the first four books. Those who have done these exercises will find it an easy task to read the *Anabasis*. But a more important consideration in thus basing the exercises on the work of Xenophon is that thereby we secure a more consistent vocabulary, uniformity of style, a single theme whose story can be told the pupil at the beginning, and real drill on the forms of the language as actually used by a classical writer. Each sentence illustrates the principles of the lesson in which it occurs. The exercises are copious and are intended to furnish the maximum of practice. Each consists of two parts. The second part contains English sentences to be rendered into Greek. Such constructive drill is of great value in the acquisition of a language, since it fixes forms, constructions, and words securely in the mind. These English sentences are chiefly translations or adaptations from the *Anabasis*. For the satisfaction of teachers who may care to know the original order and choice of words, Greek renderings have been published in pamphlet form and may be had on application to the publishers. In the prefatory note to this pamphlet I have discussed the difficulties which a beginner meets in rendering English into Greek, and have offered some suggestions which teachers may find to be of service.

Ten passages of continuous narrative are introduced among the first one hundred lessons. These give in simplified form the story that is told in the first eight chapters of the *Anabasis*. The story is repeated in its original form in twenty reading lessons at the end of the book.¹

¹ Teachers are referred to the suggestions given on page 302.

In teaching beginners, too little attention, in my opinion, is given to the art of reading. Left to himself, the beginner naturally falls into the pernicious habit, in attempting to translate the exercises into English, of reconstructing the Greek sentence after an English model. He searches first for the subject and then for the predicate, and ignoring the Greek order makes a Chinese puzzle of a simple matter. I have, therefore, early introduced directions for reading.¹ These should be followed in all the reading that is done. They are practically directions for reading at sight; and all reading should be at sight in the sense that no help from any foreign source should be used until every resource that the reader has within himself has been exhausted. The sharpest possible distinction should be drawn between reading and translating. Translation should be made the final test of the accuracy with which the pupil has read, not the means of arriving at the thought contained in the sentence. Each sentence should be read aloud in the original. From supposed lack of time we are disposed to neglect this training of voice and ear in the classroom. But it is an exercise of great importance. To read the sentence aloud, with proper expression, is the only natural way in which to approach its meaning. This process defines sharply the forms of the words, fixes their meanings in the mind, and presents the thought as a whole in the natural order of its development.

I have given the pronunciation of single vowels, consonants, and diphthongs, that was used in presenting the *Oedipus Tyrannus* of Sophocles in the original Greek at Harvard University in 1881. This differs but little from the general usage in this country, although it attempts to mark the natural quantity of the vowels with more care than is perhaps common. In two important particulars it varies from the current practice. It abandons the sound of *α* adopted by the Germans, but which,

¹ In Lesson XVII. See also § 148.

with all the vicissitudes through which this combination of vowels has passed, it never had among Greeks, and gives to both *αι* and *ευ* the force of a true diphthong.

Whatever may be said in favour of the current pronunciation of Greek on the ground of its simplicity, it cannot be urged that it is the ancient Greek pronunciation. Not to mention other points of difference, we do not and cannot pronounce any one of the rough mutes nor ξ or ψ as did the ancient Greeks; we do not attempt to give the pitch indicated by the written accents, nor should we succeed if we made the attempt. Xenophon would certainly not have been able to understand his own *Anabasis*, if he had heard it read after the modern fashion. We might nevertheless believe the current pronunciation to be the best for use, if it were uniform and if it were acquired with ease and used with facility, but neither supposition is true. The only alternative to the present practice is the modern Greek pronunciation. If scholars should agree to adopt this, we should at once have an absolute standard and a living pronunciation. The precision and facility with which educated modern Greeks pronounce their ancient language are impressive; no less impressive is the quiet scorn with which they listen to a foreigner who attempts to read it after the fashion prevailing in northern Europe.

I have not introduced colloquia into any of the lessons, although I am of the opinion that they are a profitable exercise. They can easily be added by the teacher. Any sentence will furnish material for questions and answers, and with practice pupils may be taught to manage simple conversation without difficulty. Oral practice may be had in other ways, and it will furnish excellent training for voice and ear. It may be made the means for drill on forms, short Greek and English sentences being pronounced by the teacher and rendered by the pupil into English and Greek. The oral method may be used with good results also in training pupils to follow the Greek order in reading. The sentence should be pro-

nounced aloud, one word at a time, and the class required to show step by step how the thought is evolved. It is good practice also to review the exercises of previous lessons orally. Variety may be secured by substituting from time to time work at the blackboard for oral drill. This use of the blackboard trains the pupil's eye, and soon initiates him into the mysteries of accentuation.

The first year's work is full of difficulties for the beginner. His teacher should smooth the way for him and enliven his task as much as possible. During the first six months the teacher should go over the grammatical parts of each lesson with his class before they undertake it and forestall difficulties. The main object of instruction during this time is to teach the pupil to read. But the teacher may do more than this without in any way interfering with his main purpose. He may give his pupils some knowledge of old Greek civilization. He is dealing with persons whose imaginations are lively and whose sympathies are quick. Let him tell them each day some interesting fact about the people whose language they are learning. The topic will naturally be suggested by some part of the lesson, and will relate to the manners and customs of the ancient Greeks, to their history, to their military system, to their political institutions, to their religious life, or to some other of a dozen themes that might be named. Young persons are quick to respond to such an attempt to lighten and enliven the work of the class-room.

I am greatly indebted to Mr. Francis K. Ball for assistance in collecting materials and in reading the proofs. Mr. Ball's correction of typographical errors has been sharp and accurate and his criticism of details suggestive and valuable. But errors of one sort or another have doubtless escaped both him and me, and I shall be obliged to any teacher who will point them out. I shall be especially grateful to any teacher who after using the book with a class will tell me in what respects he finds it not well suited to his needs.

My special thanks are due to my colleague, Professor William W. Goodwin, who has generously allowed me in writing this book to make unrestricted use of his Greek grammar, a work whose great merits are well known to teachers. I have freely availed myself of his kind permission, especially in the lessons on syntax, and submit my book to the public with greater confidence on that account.

JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE.

HARVARD UNIVERSITY,
August 1, 1892.

THE BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK.



INTRODUCTORY.

The Greek People and Language.

1. The people of ancient Greece called themselves *Hellenes*. We call them *Greeks*, from the Roman name *Graeci*. The Hellenes, or Greeks, inhabited not only the mainland of ancient Greece, but also the islands and coasts of the Mediterranean Sea, to which they were dispersed by colonization.

2. They were divided into Aeolians, Dorians and Ionians. The Aeolians inhabited Aeolis,¹ Boeotia and Thessaly; the Dorians, Peloponnesus, northwestern Greece, Crete, some cities in Caria, the neighbouring islands, Sicily and southern Italy; the Ionians, Ionia, Attica and most of the Islands in the Aegean Sea.

3. To the Greek language belonged three groups of dialects, the Aeolic, the Doric, and the Ionic.

4. The Attic dialect was the Ionic dialect as spoken in Attica, and was the language of Athens during the period of her literary eminence, the fifth and fourth centuries before Christ. It was the most cultivated form of the language, and is therefore made the basis of Greek grammar.

¹ Let the teacher use a wall-map, and point out the situation of the places named.

LESSON I.

The Alphabet.

5. The Greek *alphabet* has twenty-four letters :—

FORM.	NAME.	VALUE.	GREEK NAME.
A a	<i>alpha</i>	papa, father ²	ἄλφα
B β	<i>beta</i>	bed	βῆτα
Γ γ	<i>gamma</i>	go ³	γάμμα
Δ δ	<i>delta</i>	do	δέλτα
E ε	<i>epsilon</i>	met	ἐ ψιλόν
Z ζ	<i>zeta</i>	adze	ζῆτα
H η	<i>eta</i>	prey	ἥτα
Θ θ	<i>theta</i>	thin	θῆτα
I ι	<i>iota</i>	pin, pique ²	ἰῶτα
K κ	<i>kappa</i>	kill	κάππα
Λ λ	<i>lambda</i>	land	λάμβδα
M μ	<i>mu</i>	men	μῦ
N ν	<i>nu</i>	now	νῦ
Ξ ξ	<i>xi</i>	wax	ξί
O ο	<i>omicron</i>	obey	ὀ μικρόν
Π π	<i>pi</i>	pet	πί
P ρ	<i>rho</i>	run	ῥῶ
Σ σ σ ¹	<i>sigma</i>	sit	σίγμα
T τ	<i>tau</i>	tell	ταῦ
Υ υ	<i>upsilon</i>	— ⁴	ὕ ψιλόν
Φ φ	<i>phi</i>	graphic	φί
X χ	<i>chi</i>	— ⁵	χί
Ψ ψ	<i>psi</i>	hips	ψί
Ω ω	<i>omega</i>	tone	ὦ μέγα

¹ s, at the end of a word ; elsewhere σ.

² The short and long sounds respectively.

³ Before κ, γ, χ, or ξ, γ is pro-

nounced as *ng* in *sing*, and is called *gamma nasal*.

⁴ Like French *u* or German *ü*, short or long.

⁵ German *ch* (as in *buch*).

Learn the first three columns in 5.¹ Master the forms of each letter so as to be able to recognize them at sight. Associate the name of each letter closely with its forms.

Give the name of each letter in the following exercise :—

6.

EXERCISE.

Κῦ-ρος δὲ ψῖ-λὴν ἔ-χων τὴν κε-φα-λὴν εἰς τὴν
Cyrus unhelmeted with head into
μά-χην κα-θί-στα-το. ἰ-δὼν δὲ αὐ-τὸν ἀ-πὸ τοῦ Ἑλ-
battle went seeing him from the Hel-
λη-νι-κοῦ Ξε-νο-φῶν Ἀ-θη-ναῖ-ος ὑ-πε-λά-σας ὥς
lenic-(quarter) Xenophon (the)-Athenian riding-up so-as
συν-αν-τῆ-σαι ἤ-ρε-το εἴ τι πα-ρα-γ-γέλ-λοι. ὁ δ'
to-meet-(him) asked whether he-had-any-orders he
ἐ-πι-στή-σας εἶ-πε καὶ λέ-γειν ἐ-κέ-λευ-σε πᾶ-σιν
checking-(his-horse) said and to-say-(it) bade-(Xenophon) to-all
ὅ-τι καὶ τὰ ἰ-ε-ρὰ κα-λὰ καὶ τὰ σφά-γι-α κα-λά.
that both the internal-omens (were)-good and the external-omens (were)-good
ταῦ-τα δὲ λέ-γων θο-ρύ-βου ἤ-κου-σε δι-ὰ τῶν τά-ξε-ων
this saying a-murmur he-heard through the ranks
ἰ-όν-τος, καὶ ἤ-ρε-το τίς ὁ θό-ρυ-βος εἶ-η. ὁ δὲ
passing and asked what the murmur meant
Κλέ-αρ-χος εἶ-πεν ὅ-τι τὸ σύν-θη-μα πα-ρέρ-χε-ται
Clearchus replied that the watchword was-passing-along
δεύ-τε-ρον ἤ-δη. καὶ ὃς ἐ-θαύ-μα-σε τίς πα-ρα-γ-γέλ-λει
for-the-second-time and he wondered who gave-the-order
καὶ ἤ-ρε-το ὅ-τι εἶ-η τὸ σύν-θη-μα. ὁ δ' ἀ-πε-κρί-να-το
and asked what was the watchword he answered
ΖΕΤΣ ΣΩ-ΤΗΡ ΚΑΙ ΝΪ-KH. ὁ δὲ Κῦ-ρος ἀ-κού-σας,
Zeus Saviour and Victory Cyrus on-hearing-(this)
Ἀλ-λὰ δέ-χο-μαι, ἔ-φη, καὶ τοῦ-το ἔ-στω. ταῦ-τα δ'
Well I-accept-it replied and this let-it-be this
εἰ-πὼν εἰς τὴν ἐ-αυ-τοῦ χώ-ρᾱν ἀ-πή-λαυ-νε.
having-said to his-own place he-rode-away

¹ The proper pronunciation of the name of each letter must be given to the pupil by his teacher. It is best to pronounce the trans-

literated English name precisely like the Greek name. The name is then the key to the sound of the letter.

LESSON II.

Vowels, Consonants, Diphthongs.

7. Vowels and Consonants. — Of the letters of the alphabet α , ϵ , η , ι , $\omicron$, ω , υ are *vowels*. The remaining letters are *consonants*.

8. As in Latin, vowels may be *short* or *long*.

9. In case of the e and o sounds there are separate characters for the short and long vowels, ϵ and $\omicron$ for the short sounds, η and ω for the long sounds. In case of the a , i and u sounds there is in each instance a single character, α , ι , υ , for both sounds. But in this book, α , ι , υ , when long, are marked $\bar{\alpha}$, $\bar{\iota}$, $\bar{\upsilon}$, except when they have the circumflex accent ($\hat{\alpha}$), which can stand only on long syllables.

10. There are then the short vowels α , ϵ , ι , $\omicron$, υ , and the long vowels $\bar{\alpha}$, η , $\bar{\iota}$, ω , $\bar{\upsilon}$.

Learn the phonetic value of each letter in the alphabet as shown in the fourth column in 5.¹

11. α , $\bar{\alpha}$, ϵ , η , $\omicron$, ω , from their pronunciation are called *open* vowels; ι , $\bar{\iota}$, υ , $\bar{\upsilon}$, *close* vowels.

12. Diphthongs. — The *diphthongs* are $\alpha\iota$, $\epsilon\iota$, $\alpha\upsilon$; $\alpha\eta$, $\eta\upsilon$; $\alpha\upsilon$, $\epsilon\upsilon$, $\omicron\upsilon$; $\eta\upsilon$, $\upsilon\iota$. α , η , υ are called *improper* diphthongs. Their second vowel is called *iota subscript*. Their first vowel is long.

13. The diphthongs are *double sounds*, formed by uniting an open and a close vowel, except in $\upsilon\iota$, where both vowels are close. Both vowels were originally heard, but closely united. The sound of $\omicron\upsilon$, however, early became a simple one, and in α , η , υ the ι ceased to be pronounced. υ , where it occurs in diphthongs, has its earlier short sound, as in ‘put,’ equivalent to the sound of u short in Latin.

¹ The values here given are in some cases only approximate, as, for example, ϵ and η are respec-

tively more exactly represented in ‘desperate’ and the French word ‘fête,’ ι (short) in ‘report.’

14. Pronounce *αι, ει, οι* as in *aisle, eight, oil*; *α, η, ω* as *ā, ē, ō*; *αυ* as *ou* in *our*; *ευ, ηυ* (for which there are no exact equivalents in English) as *eh-oo, eh-oo* rapidly pronounced; *ου* as in *group*; *υι* as *we*.

Give the phonetic value of each single vowel, consonant and diphthong in the exercise in 6.

LESSON III.

Breathings, Syllables, Elision.

15. **Breathings.** — A vowel or diphthong at the beginning of a word has either the *rough breathing* (ʹ) or the *smooth breathing* (̃).

16. The *rough* breathing shows that the sound of *h* precedes that of the vowel or diphthong; the *smooth* breathing simply shows that the sound of *h* is lacking.

17. The breathing stands *over* the simple vowel when a small letter, but *before* it when a capital. Diphthongs, except *α, η, ω*, take the breathing over the *second* vowel.

18. **Syllables.** — Every Greek word has as many *syllables* as it has single vowels or diphthongs.

19. The last syllable is called the *ultima*; the one before it, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

20. In dividing a word into syllables in pronouncing it, single consonants in the middle of the word and such combinations of consonants as can begin a word (to be learnt from the lexicon) are connected with the following vowel or diphthong, except that *compounds* formed without elision are treated as if their elements were separate words. Other combinations of consonants are divided.

21. **Elision.** — *Elision* is the *cutting off* of a short final vowel when the next word begins with a vowel. An apostrophe (') marks the elision. Thus δ' for δε.

22. The elided word is pronounced as if a part of the following word. Elision is often neglected in the written Greek.

Pronounce each syllable in the exercise in 6.

LESSON IV.

Accent, Punctuation.

23. Accent. — There are three kinds of *accent*, the *acute* (´), the *circumflex* (ˆ), and the *grave* (`).¹

24. The accent, like the breathing (17), stands *over* the vowel of the accented syllable when a small letter, but *before* it when an initial capital. In case of a diphthong, except *α, η, ω*, the accent stands over the second vowel.

25. The acute and grave accents *follow* the breathing when both belong to the same vowel, but the circumflex accent is placed *over* the breathing.

26. The accent can stand only on one of the last three syllables of a word.

27. The antepenult cannot be accented if the ultima is long.² If accented, the antepenult takes the acute.

28. Syllables containing a long vowel or diphthong are long. But final *-αι* and *-α* are considered short in determining the accent, except in the optative mood and in the adverb *ἄλλοι*, *at home*.

29. If the ultima is short, a long penult, if accented, takes the circumflex; a short penult, the acute.

30. If the ultima is long, the penult, if accented, takes the acute.

31. A short ultima, if accented, takes the acute; a long ultima, the acute or circumflex.

¹ Greek accent consisted in a change of *pitch*, and so it had three written forms. But to us, in pronouncing Greek, accent amounts simply to *stress*.

² The terms *long* and *short* are here used to denote the *natural* quantity of vowel sounds, without regard to position.

32. The place of the accent on words must be learnt in part by observation. But in most words it recedes as far as possible from the end (26, 27). This is, therefore, called *recessive* accent.

33. A word which has the acute on the ultima is called *oxytone*; on the penult, *paroxytone*; on the antepenult, *proparoxytone*.

34. An oxytone changes its acute accent to the *grave* accent when followed by another word without intervening mark of punctuation. Except the oxytone forms of the interrogative τίς, τί, *who, what?*

35. A word which has the circumflex on the ultima is called *perispomenon*; on the penult, *properispomenon*.

36. A word which has no accent on the ultima is called *barytone*.

37. *Proclitics* are monosyllables which attach themselves so closely to the *following* word as not to have a separate accent.

38. *Enclitics* are words which attach themselves so closely to the *preceding* word as to lose their own accent.

39. In elision oxytone words generally lose their accent.

40. Punctuation.—The *comma* (,) and the *period* (.) are the same in Greek as in English. The *colon*, a point above the line (·), is equivalent to the English colon and semicolon. The *mark of interrogation* (;) is the same as the English semicolon.

Observe in order the application of the principles stated in 26–31 and 34 to the *accented* words in the exercise in 6.¹

Pronounce each word in this exercise and name each accented word according to 33 and 35.²

Pronounce the exercise entire.

¹ τάξεων is an exception to 27.

² The proclitics in this exercise are εἰς, ὡς, εἰ, δ. The proclitic εἰ re-

ceives an accent from the following enclitic τι. In such cases the principle in 34 does not apply.

LESSON V.

First or A-Decension.

41. Number. — Greek distinguishes three *numbers*: the *singular*, which denotes one object, the *dual*, which denotes two objects only, the *plural*, which denotes two or more.

42. Case. — Greek distinguishes five *cases*: *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *vocative*. These have in general the same meaning as the corresponding cases in Latin; as *nom. a man* (as subject), *gen. of a man*, *dat. to or for a man*, *acc. a man* (as object), *voc. O man*. The chief functions of the Latin ablative are divided between the Greek genitive and dative.

43. In *form* (a) the nominative and vocative singular are often alike; in the plural they are always alike. (b) In the dual, the nominative, accusative, and vocative are always alike, and the genitive and dative are always alike. (c) The nominative, accusative, and vocative of neuter words are always alike in all numbers, and in the plural always end in *-a*.

44. Accent. — The *accent* of a noun (both substantive and adjective) remains in all the forms on the same syllable as in the nominative singular, or as near that syllable as the general laws of accent permit.

45. The *ultima*, if accented, generally takes the acute (see 31). But in the genitive and dative of all numbers a long *ultima*, if accented, takes the circumflex.

46. Declension. — There are three *declensions* of substantives and adjectives in Greek, corresponding in general to the first three declensions in Latin, and called *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

47. Stems and Case-endings. — The *stem* of a noun is the common base to which in most of the forms certain endings, called *case-endings*, are added to form the different cases.

48. The stem of nouns in the First Declension ends in $\bar{a}$. This declension is, therefore, sometimes called the *A-Declension*.

49. In feminines which keep the vowel of the stem *long*, $\bar{a}$ is retained if ϵ , ι or ρ precedes; otherwise it is changed to η in the singular. .

50. The nominative singular of these ends in $\bar{a}$ or η .¹

51.

PARADIGMS.

	χώρᾱ, land (stem χωρᾱ-)	στρατιά, army (stem στρατιᾱ-)	κώμη, village (stem κομᾱ-)	τιμή, honour (stem τιμᾱ-)
Sing. N. V.	χώρᾱ	στρατιά	κώμη	τιμή
Gen.	χώρᾱς	στρατιᾱς	κώμης	τιμῆς
Dat.	χώρᾳ	στρατιᾷ	κώμῃ	τιμῇ
Acc.	χώρᾱν	στρατιάν	κώμην	τιμὴν
Dual N. A. V.	χώρᾱ	στρατιά	κώμᾱ	τιμᾱ
G. D.	χώραιν	στρατιαῖν	κώμαιν	τιμαῖν
Plur. N. V.	χώραι	στρατιαί	κώμαι	τιμαί
Gen.	χωρῶν	στρατιῶν	κωμῶν	τιμῶν
Dat.	χώραις	στρατιαῖς	κώμαις	τιμαῖς
Acc.	χώρᾱς	στρατιάς	κώμας	τιμάς

52. **Special Rule of Accent.**—The genitive plural of substantives of the A-Declension is always perispomenon (see 44).

Observe in the paradigms the cases that are alike (43).

Observe in the paradigms the application of the laws of accent in 28, 29, 30, 44, 45, 52.

53. **Definite Article.**—The Greek has the definite article *the*. The forms in the feminine are: Sing. Nom. ἡ, Gen. τῆς, Dat. τῇ, Acc. τήν; Plur. Nom. αἱ, Gen. τῶν, Dat. ταῖς, Acc. τάς.

a. The forms ἡ, αἱ, are proclitic (37). The vocative is wanting.

¹ In the First and Second Declensions the final letter of the stem and the case-endings closely unite, giving in each instance a single syllable. The division of these final

syllables into their two parts is not here made, because difficult and because not practically necessary. But the change in form of the final syllables should be carefully noted.

LESSON VI.

Feminines of the A-Declension.

54.

VOCABULARY.

SUBSTANTIVES.

ἀγορά, *market-place.*ἡμέρᾱ, *day.*θύρᾱ, *door.*κρήνη, *spring.*μάχη, *battle.*οἰκίᾱ, *house.*σκηνή, *tent.*σφενδόνη, *sling.*

PREPOSITION.

ἐν,¹ with dat., *in.*ADJECTIVES.²κακή, *bad.*καλή, *beautiful.*μακρά, *long.*μικρά, *little, small.*φοβερά, *terrible, formidable.*

VERBS.

ἦν, (*he, she, it*) *was.*ἦσαν, (*they*) *were.*ἔχει, (*he, she, it*) *has.*ἔχουσι, (*they*) *have.*

55.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. οἰκίᾱ μικρᾱ.³ 2. οἰκίαι μικραί. 3. οἰκίᾱ μικρά.
4. ἡ³ μικρὰ οἰκίᾱ. 5. τῶν μικρῶν οἰκιῶν. 6. ἡμέρᾱς
μακρᾱς. 7. ἡμέρᾱν μακράν. 8. ἡμέρᾱς μακράς. 9. ταῖς
καλαῖς κώμας. 10. σκηναῖν καλαῖν.

II. 1. ἡ φοβερὰ στρατιά. 2. ἡ φοβερὰ μάχη.⁴ 3. σκηνῆς
καλῆς. 4. οἰκίᾱν καλήν. 5. τῆς καλῆς χώρᾱς. 6. τῶν
κακῶν σφενδονῶν. 7. τὰς μικρὰς ἀγοράς. 8. σκηνὰ καλά.
9. ἡ ἀγορὰ καλή ἦν.⁵ 10. ἔχει σκηνήν καλήν.⁶

Decline together : οἰκίᾱ μικρά, ἀγορὰ καλή, ἡ φοβερὰ μάχη, ἡ κακὴ
σκηνή.

¹ A proclitic (37).

² The masculine and neuter of adjectives will be taken up in connexion with substantives of the Second Declension.

³ Observe that the adjective (as in Latin) and the article take the case and number of the substantive which they modify.

⁴ Observe that the substantive

may end in -η in the sing., while the adjective ends in -ᾱ (50), and conversely.

⁵ Observe that (as in Latin and English) the subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case, and that the verb agrees with it in number.

⁶ Observe that (as in Latin) the direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.

56.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἡ οἰκίᾱ μῖκρᾱ ἦν. 2. αἱ μῖκραι οἰκίαι καλαὶ ἦσαν. 3. κακὴ ἦν ἡ σφενδόνη. 4. ἔχουσι σκηναὶ καλᾶς. 5. αἱ τῆς στρατιᾶς σκηναὶ καλαὶ ἦσαν. 6. αἱ οἰκίαι θύρᾱς ἔχουσι. 7. μῖκραι ἦσαν αἱ τῶν οἰκιῶν θύραι. 8. ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ κρῆναι καλαὶ ἦσαν. 9. ἡ στρατιὰ ἐν τῇμῃ ἦν. 10. ἐν ταῖς καλαῖς κώμαις αἱ κρῆναι κακαὶ ἦσαν. 11. ἐν τῇ μῖκρᾱ ἄγορᾳ οἰκίᾱ καλὴ ἦν. 12. ἐν ταῖς σκηναῖς αἱ σφενδόναί τῆς στρατιᾶς ἦσαν. 13. ἡ στρατιὰ σφενδόνᾱς ἔχει ἐν ταῖς σκηναῖς. 14. ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ σκηναὶ ἦσαν καὶ (and) οἰκίαι. 15. ἡ οἰκίᾱ μῖκρᾱ ἦν καὶ ἡ σκηνὴ κακὴ.

REM. An adjective, qualifying a substantive, is either *attributive* or *predicate*. An attributive adjective is directly joined with the substantive without the intervention of a verb; a predicate adjective is connected with the substantive by the copula or an equivalent verb.

As to the order of words, observe in the exercises above (1) that an attributive adjective regularly follows its substantive when this is without the article; (2) that, when the substantive has the article, the attributive adjective comes between the article and the substantive, but that the predicate adjective never has this position; (3) that the attributive genitive (a genitive fulfilling the purpose of an attributive adjective), qualifying a substantive, may or may not stand between the article and the substantive.

II. 1. The house was long. 2. The days were long. 3. (He)¹ has a beautiful house. 4. (They) have small slings. 5. The tents of the army were small. 6. The battle was terrible. 7. (There)² was a small spring in the village. 8. Armies were in honour. 9. The land was bad. 10. The springs were bad in the land. 11. (He) has a sling in the tent. 12. (There) was a small tent in the market-place. 13. (They) have tents and (καί) houses. 14. The tents were small and the houses (were)³ bad. 15. (There) were houses and tents in the market-place.⁴

¹ Omit. Cf. 56, I. 4. ² Omit. Cf. 56, I. 8. ³ Cf. 56, I. 15. ⁴ Cf. 56, I. 14.

LESSON VII.

Present Indicative Active.

57. Person. — Greek distinguishes three *persons*: the *first*, the *second*, and the *third*.

58. Voice. — The Greek verb has three *voices*: the *active*, the *middle*, and the *passive*.

59. Mood. — Each voice has six *moods*: *indicative*, *subjunctive*, *optative*, *imperative*, *infinitive*, and *participle*.

60. Tense. — The indicative mood has seven *tenses*: *present*, *imperfect*, *future*, *aoist*, *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future-perfect*.

61. The present, future, perfect, and future-perfect indicative, which denote present or future time, are called *primary* tenses; the imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect indicative, which denote past time, are called *secondary* tenses.

62. Accent. — Verbs have recessive accent (32).

63. Verb-Theme. — The *theme* of a verb is its fundamental part, corresponding to the stem in nouns (47). The theme of λύω, *loose*, is λῡ- or λυ-.¹

64. The *Present Indicative* represents an action as *going on* at the time of speaking or writing; as λύω, *I loose*, or *I am loosing*.

65.

PARADIGM.

		SINGULAR.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
Pres.	1	λύω, <i>I loose</i>		λύομεν, <i>we loose</i>
Ind.	2	λύεις, <i>you loose</i>	λύετον, <i>you (two) loose</i>	λύετε, <i>you loose</i>
Act.	3	λύει, <i>he looses</i>	λύετον, <i>they (two) loose</i>	λύουσι, <i>they loose</i>

¹ The consideration of *tense-stems* and *personal-endings* is deferred to Lessons XIX. and XX. It will be sufficient, until these Les-

sons are reached, for the teacher simply to call the pupil's attention carefully to the change of form in the syllables added to the theme.

a. The first person dual has no form distinct from that of the first person plural.

66.

VOCABULARY.

VERBS.

ἄγω, *lead, bring, carry.*
 ἀθροίζω, *collect.*
 ἀρπάζω, *seize, capture, plunder.*
 ἔχω, *have.*
 θαυμάζω, *admire, wonder at.*
 θύω, *sacrifice.*
 λύω, *loose, destroy.*

SUBSTANTIVES.

ἀρετή, *goodness, courage.*
 ζώνη, *girdle.*
 θεά, *goddess.*
 λόγχη, *spear.*
 πύλη, *gate.*
 στολή, *robe.*
 φυλακή, *guard, garrison.*
 ἐξ,¹ *prep. with gen., out of, from.*
 οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ,² *adv., not.*

ADJECTIVES.

Ἑλληνική, *Greek.*
 Περσική, *Persian.*

67.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. λύετε. 2. θύομεν. 3. ἔχομεν. 4. ἄγουσι. 5. ἀθροίζετον. 6. θύεις. 7. ἀρπάζει. 8. θαυμάζει. 9. λύετον. 10. ἄγω. 11. ἀθροίζει. 12. ἀρπάζετε. 13. θαυμάζεις. 14. ἔχετε. 15. λύομεν. 16. θαυμάζετε. 17. λύει.

II. 1. You (*sing.*) collect. 2. He looses. 3. I sacrifice. 4. They seize. 5. He has. 6. They admire. 7. You (*plur.*) sacrifice. 8. We collect. 9. They loose. 10. You (*plur.*) lead. 11. We capture. 12. You (*dual*) have. 13. We lead.

68.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἀθροίζομεν στρατιάν. 2. οὐ θαυμάζεις τὴν χώρᾱν; 3. λόγχην ἔχει. 4. λῦει τὴν ζώνην. 5. ἐν τῇ κώμῃ θύομεν. 6. ἔχετε λόγχᾱς μακράς. 7. ἄγω στρατιὰν φοβεράν. 8. τὰς καλὰς σκηνὰς λύουσι. 9. ἀρπάζεις τὴν σφενδόνην. 10. τῇ θεᾷ¹ θύει. 11. τὴν ἀρετὴν τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς φυλακῆς θαυμά-

¹ ἐξ before vowels, ἐκ before consonants. The word is proclitic (37). The following οὐ is also proclitic.

² οὐ before a consonant, οὐκ before the smooth breathing, οὐχ before the rough breathing.

ζετε. 12. ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν ἄγει τὴν στρατιάν. 13. αἱ κῶμαι πύλᾱς οὐκ ἔχουσι. 14. τὴν Περσικὴν στολὴν λύω.

REM. In a simple sentence, the normal order in Greek is *subject, verb, object*; but exceptions occur constantly.

II. 1. He sacrifices in the market-place. 2. We admire the Persian spears. 3. You have a beautiful girdle. 4. He captures the Persian robes. 5. They sacrifice to the goddess in the small village. 6. He collects a Greek guard. 7. We do not seize the girdles and robes. 8. He destroys the houses in the village. 9. Does he not admire the courage of the army?

LESSON VIII.

Feminine Substantives of the A-Declension in -a (short).

69. Some feminines of the A-declension shorten $\bar{a}$ of the stem to a in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular. See 49.

70.

PARADIGMS.

	πεῖρα, <i>experience</i> (πειρά-)	γέφυρα, <i>bridge</i> (γεφύρα-)	δόξα, <i>reputation</i> (δοξά-)	θάλαττα, <i>sea</i> (θαλαττά-)
Sing. N. V.	πεῖρα	γέφυρα	δόξα	θάλαττα
Gen.	πειράς	γεφύρας	δόξης	θαλάττης
Dat.	πειρά	γεφύρα	δόξῃ	θαλάττῃ
Acc.	πείραν	γέφυραν	δόξαν	θάλατταν
Dual N. A. V.	πειρά	γεφύρα	δόξā	θαλαττά
G. D.	πείραιν	γεφύραιν	δόξαιν	θαλατταῖν
Plur. N. V.	πείραι	γέφυραι	δόξαι	θάλατται
Gen.	πειρῶν	γεφύρων	δοξῶν	θαλαττῶν
Dat.	πείραις	γεφύραις	δόξαις	θαλατταῖς
Acc.	πείρας	γεφύρας	δόξās	θαλαττάς

a. These nouns have $\bar{a}$ in the genitive and dative singular, if ϵ , ι , or ρ precedes; otherwise, η .

Review the rules for accent in 27-30 and 52.

71.

VOCABULARY.

SUBSTANTIVES.

ἄγκυρα, anchor.
 ἀλήθεια, truth, sincerity.
 ᾠμαξα, wagon.
 βασίλεια, queen.
 εὖνοια, good-will, fidelity.
 μάχαιρα, knife, sabre.
 Μοῦσα, Muse.
 τράπεζα, table.

ADJECTIVES.

ἀγαθή, good, brave.
 ιερά, sacred.
 στενή, narrow.
 χαλεπή, hard, dangerous, severe.
 εἰς,¹ prep. with acc., into, to.
 ἐπὶ, prep.: with gen., on, upon;
 with dat., on, by, at; with acc.,
 upon, to, against.

72.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν ἄγουσι τὰς ἀμάξας. 2. ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν οὐκ ἄγει τὴν βασιλείαν. 3. τὴν τῆς βασιλείας ἀλήθειαν θαυμάζομεν. 4. ἐπὶ τῇ γεφύρᾳ φυλακὴν ἔχει. 5. τὴν ἱερὰν χώραν ἀρπάξεις ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν. 6. τῇ βασιλείᾳ στρατιὰν Ἑλληνικὴν ἀθροίζει. 7. πείραν δ' ἔχεις, ὦ βασιλεία, τῆς εὐνοίας τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς στρατίας. 8. ἡ θάλαττα στενὴ ἦν καὶ χαλεπή. 9. ἀγκύρας καὶ τραπεζὰς ἐπὶ τῶν ἀμαξῶν ἄγετε. 10. αἱ Μοῦσαι θεαὶ καλαὶ καὶ ἀγαθαὶ ἦσαν. 11. ἀμάξας ἀγαθὰς ἔχομεν καὶ μαχαίρας. 12. ἡ βασιλεία ἔχει οἰκίαν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ. 13. κρήνη ἱερὰ ἦν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ. 14. δόξαν ἀγαθὴν ἔχει. 15. ἐπὶ τὴν θάλατταν οὐκ ἄγω τὴν φυλακὴν τῆς βασιλείας.

II. 1. We destroy the bridge. 2. There was a bridge by the sacred spring. 3. I sacrifice to the Muses. 4. I have experience of the queen's good-will. 5. They do not capture the Persian wagons. 6. He does not lead the garrison from the villages to the sea. 7. The bridges were long and narrow. 8. He is bringing the robes and girdles on the queen's wagon.

¹ Proclitic.

² The conjunction δέ, but, and. See 21, 22. δέ is *postpositive*, i.e. it is always put after one or more words of the sentence.

³ The interjection ὦ (O) is usually prefixed to the voc., but sometimes it is lacking (as is generally the case in English).

LESSON IX.

Imperfect Indicative Active.

73. The *Imperfect Indicative* represents an action as *going on* in past time, as ἔλῳον, *I was loosing or I loosed.*

74.PARADIGM.¹

		SINGULAR.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
Imperfect	1	ἔλῳον		ἐλύομεν
Indicative	2	ἔλῳες	ἐλύετον	ἐλύετε
Active	3	ἔλῳε	ἐλύετην	ἔλῳον

75. Augment. — The secondary tenses (61) prefix in the indicative an augment (*increase*) to the theme of the verb as the sign of past time.

76. The augment has two forms: *syllabic*, in case of verbs beginning with a consonant, when ε is prefixed; *temporal*, in case of verbs beginning with a vowel, when, if the vowel is short, it is changed to the corresponding long vowel (but α becomes η-), if it is long, it remains unchanged (but ā becomes η-). Diphthongs lengthen their *first* vowel.

Augment and conjugate in the imperfect indicative active the verbs given in 66.² See 62, and review 26–28 and 30.

Review the meanings of all the words given in the paradigms and vocabularies in Lessons V.–VIII.

77.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἔλῳον. 2. ἦγον. 3. ἠρπάζετον. 4. ἦγες. 5. ἐθαύμαζε. 6. ἐθύετε. 7. ἠθροίζετην. 8. ἐθαυμάζετον. 9. ἠθροί-

¹ See p. 12¹.

² The imperfect of ἔχω is εἶχον, an exception to the general rule. A few verbs beginning with a vowel

take the syllabic augment. This is here contracted with ε- into ει-, as εἶχον for ε-εχον.

ζομεν. 10. εἶχον. 11. εἵχετε. 12. ἔθυε. 13. ἐλῦέτην.
14. ἥρπαζον. 15. ἐλύετε.

II. 1. He collected. 2. I captured. 3. They sacrificed.
4. They led. 5. We admired. 6. You (*sing.*) loosed. 7. You
(*dual*) had. 8. You (*plur.*) collected. 9. They (*dual*) seized.
10. You (*plur.*) led. 11. You (*sing.*) sacrificed. 12. I ad-
mired. 13. You (*dual*) loosed. 14. We had. 15. We de-
stroyed.

78.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἀμάξᾱς ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ εἶχε. 2. ἥρπαζες τὴν Περ-
σικὴν κώμην. 3. ἐκ τῆς οἰκίᾱς οὐκ ἦγε τὴν φυλακὴν.
4. τὴν τῆς στρατιᾶς ἀρετὴν ἐθαυμάζομεν. 5. τῇ βασιλείᾳ
στρατιὰν μικρὰν ἠθροίζε. 6. λόγχᾱς, ᾧ βασιλείᾳ, καὶ μα-
χαίρᾱς ἐπὶ τῆς ἀμάξης ἦγον. 7. οὐκ ἐθαύμαζον τὴν στολὴν
τῆς βασιλείᾱς. 8. φυλακὴν φοβερὰν ἦγον εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν.
9. ἡ οἰκίᾱ θύρᾱς καλὰς εἶχε. 10. ἦγε τὴν φυλακὴν εἰς τὴν
κώμην. 11. οὐκ ἠθροίζετον στρατιὰν ἐπὶ (*against*) τὴν
βασιλείαν. 12. ἔλῤες τὴν ζώνην τῆς βασιλείᾱς. 13. ἐπὶ
τὴν θάλατταν ἦγον τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν φυλακὴν. 14. πείραν
εἵχετε τῆς τῶν Μουσῶν εὐνοίᾱς; 15. ἡ βασιλείᾳ στολᾶς
Περσικὰς εἶχε καὶ ζώνᾱς Ἑλληνικὰς ἐν τῇ σκηνῇ. 16. οὐχ
ἥρπάζομεν τὰς μικρὰς κώμας.

II. 1. You had beautiful robes. 2. The queen collected a
small army. 3. Did he not admire the good queen's garrison?
4. They sacrificed to the good goddess. 5. You led the army
from the houses to the sea. 6. They captured the Persian
wagons. 7. I destroyed the houses in the queen's villages.
8. He did not capture the tents of the garrison. 9. They
wondered at the good-will of the Muses. 10. We plundered
the wagons and tents in the queen's country. 11. They did
not lead the army from the Persian village. 12. We were not
leading the queen's army to the sea.

LESSON X.

Second or O-Declension.

Review 43-46.

79.

PARADIGMS.

	ὁ λόγος ¹ word (λογο-)	ἡ νῆσος island (νησο-)	ὁ ἄνθρωπος man (ανθρωπο-)	ἡ ὁδός road (ὁδο-)	τὸ δῶρον gift (δωρο-)
Sing. N.	λόγος	νῆσος	ἄνθρωπος	ὁδός	δῶρον
G.	λόγου	νῆσου	ἀνθρώπου	ὁδοῦ	δώρου
D.	λόγῳ	νῆσῳ	ἀνθρώπῳ	ὁδῷ	δώρῳ
A.	λόγον	νῆσιν	ἄνθρωπον	ὁδόν	δῶρον
V.	λόγῃ	νῆσῃ	ἄνθρωπῃ	ὁδῇ	δώρῳ
Dual N. A. V.	λόγῳ	νῆσῳ	ἀνθρώπῳ	ὁδῷ	δώρῳ
G. D.	λόγοιν	νῆσιν	ἀνθρώποιν	ὁδοῖν	δώροιν
Plur. N. V.	λόγοι	νῆσοι	ἄνθρωποι	ὁδοί	δῶρα
G.	λόγων	νῆσων	ἀνθρώπων	ὁδῶν	δώρων
D.	λόγοις	νῆσοις	ἀνθρώποις	ὁδοῖς	δώροις
A.	λόγους	νῆσους	ἀνθρώπους	ὁδοὺς	δῶρα

80. The stem of nouns (47) in the second declension ends in -ο-. This declension is, therefore, sometimes called the *O-Declension*.

81. The first and second declensions together constitute the *Vowel-Declension*, so named because all stems in the first and second declensions end in a vowel (-ā- or -ο-).

82. The nominative singular in the O-declension ends in -ος (masculine, rarely feminine) or -ον (neuter).²

83. **Gender.**—Greek distinguishes three *genders*: the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

¹ The gender of a substantive is often indicated by prefixing or annexing the corresponding form of

the article, ὁ when masculine, ἡ when feminine, τὸ when neuter.

² See p. 9¹.

84. The gender of substantives in Greek is sometimes determined by the natural gender of the object, as in English. Thus, words which designate males are generally masculine; those which designate females are generally feminine.

85. But in Greek many names of things are not, as in English, neuter, but masculine or feminine. The same general rules hold as in Latin. Names of *rivers, winds, and months* are masculine; names of *countries, towns, islands, and trees*, and of most *abstract qualities* are feminine.

86. The gender of substantives must often be learnt by observation. It may frequently be known from the form of the word.

87. Adjectives. — The masculine and neuter of adjectives of the Vowel-Declension (81) follow the O-declension, the feminine usually follows the A-declension. The nominative singular, therefore, ends in *-ος, -η* or *-ᾱ, -ον* (Latin *-us, -a, -um*), as *καλός, καλή, καλόν*; *μικρός, μικρά, μικρόν*.

Form the nominative singular and plural, masculine, feminine, and neuter, of the adjectives given in Lessons VI.–VIII.

88. Definite Article. — The full declension of the definite article is as follows: —

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
S. N.	ὁ	ἡ	τό	D. N. A.	τώ	τώ	τώ	P. N.	οἱ	αἱ	τά
G.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	G. D.	τοῖν	τοῖν	τοῖν	G.	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
D.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ					D.	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
A.	τόν	τήν	τό					A.	τούς	τάς	τά

a. The forms *ὁ, ἡ, οἱ, αἱ* are proclitics (37). The vocative is lacking.

Decline together: *ὁ καλὸς λόγος, ὁ μικρὸς ἄνθρωπος, ἡ μακρὰ νῆσος, ἡ στενὴ ὁδός, τὸ κακὸν δῶρον*.

b. Observe that adjectives agree with their substantives in *gender*, as well as in *case and number* (p. 10⁸). The adjective, therefore, may be of the A-declension while the substantive is of the O-declension, as in the third and fourth examples above.

LESSON XI.

Neuter Plural Subject. — O-Declension (continued).

89. Examine the following:—

οὐκ ἦν πλοῖα, *there WERE no boats.*τὰ δῶρα καλὰ ἦν, *the gifts WERE beautiful.*

Observe that, although the subject is in the plural, the verb is in the singular (cf. p. 10⁶). Hence:

90. **Rule of Syntax.** — A *neuter plural subject* regularly has its verb in the singular.

91.

VOCABULARY.

SUBSTANTIVES.

ἄγγελος, ὁ,¹ *messenger.*βασιλεῖον, *palace.*²θεός, ὁ, ἡ,³ *god.*θῆριον, *wild beast.*ἵππος, ὁ, ἡ, *horse, mare.*Κύρος, ὁ, *Cyrus.*οἶνος, ὁ, *wine.*ὄπλον, *implement, plur. arms.*πεδῖον, *plain.*πλοῖον, *boat.*πόλεμος, ὁ, *war.*ποταμός, ὁ, *river.*σίτος, ὁ, *corn, food.*στρατηγός, ὁ, *general.*σύμμαχος, ὁ, *ally.*χωρίον, *place, spot.*

ADJECTIVES.

διαβατός, -ή, -όν,⁴ *passable.*ἐρμυμός, -ή, -όν, *fortified.*ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν, *strong.*μεστός, -ή, -όν, *full.*φανερός, -ά, -όν, *manifest, visible.*

92.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. στενή δ' ἦν ἡ ὁδός. 2. οὐ θαυμάζεις, ὦ Κῦρε, τὰ δῶρα; 3. τὸ χωρίον οἰκίᾳς οὐκ εἶχε. 4. εἰς πεδῖον ἤθροιζε τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 5. ἦν βασιλεία ἐρμυνὰ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 6. αἱ

¹ See p. 18¹.² Commonly used in the plur. Compare Latin *aedēs*.³ Substantives which may beeither masc. or fem. are said to be of the *common* gender.⁴ That is, *διαβατός, διαβατή, διαβατόν.*

νῆσοι μεσταὶ ἦσαν σίτου¹ καὶ οἶνου. 7. ἐν ἰσχυροῖς χωρίοις τὸν σίτον εἶχον. 8. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐν πολέμῳ κακὸς ἦν. 9. ὁ ποταμὸς οὐκ ἦν διαβατὸς πλοίοις. 10. ἐνταῦθα (*there*) Κύρῳ² βασιλεία ἦν. 11. ὅπλα δέ, ὧ Κῦρε, οὐκ ἔχομεν. 12. φανεροὶ ἦσαν καὶ³ ἵπποι καὶ ἄνθρωποι. 13. σύμμαχοι ἦσαν οἱ θεοὶ τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς ἀγγέλοις. 14. τοὺς Κῦρου λόγους ἐθαύμαζον οἱ ἄνθρωποι. 15. ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἦν θηρία.

II. 1. The generals had horses.⁴ 2. Did they not admire the generals' arms? 3. You were sacrificing to the gods. 4. The place was narrow. 5. The queen had brave allies. 6. He led the horse into the river. 7. Cyrus was a brave general. 8. The place was full of wine. 9. The horses carried both³ the generals and the arms. 10. The villages were full of men and horses.

LESSON XII.

Prepositions.

93. Some prepositions are used with the genitive only, as ἐξ (before consonants ἐκ, Latin *ex*, *e*), *out of*, *from* (properly *from* a position *in* something); ἀπό (Latin *ab*), *from*, *off from*, *away from* (properly *from* a position *on* something).

94. Other prepositions are used with the dative only, as ἐν (Latin *in* with the ablative), *in*.

95. One is used with the accusative only; namely, εἰς (Latin *in* with the accusative), *into*, *to* (properly *to* a position *in* something, opposed to ἐξ, *out of*).

¹ Adjectives denoting *fulness* take the gen. (as in Latin).

² With the verb *to be*, and similar verbs, the *possessor* is expressed by the dat. (as in Latin). This is called the *Dative of the Possessor*. In what other way, by the use of

ἔχω, might the sentence be expressed?

³ καὶ . . . καὶ, correlative conjunctions, *both . . . and*.

⁴ Translate this sentence in two ways.

96. Some prepositions are used with the genitive and accusative.

97. Some other prepositions are used with the genitive, dative, and accusative, as *παρά*, with genitive *from beside*, *from*, with dative *by the side of*, *beside*, with accusative *to a position beside*, *unto*, *to*; *ἐπί*, with genitive *on*, *upon*, with dative *on*, *close to*, *by*, *at*, with accusative *upon*, *to*, *against*.

98. Examine the following:—

ἐκ τῆς κώμης τὴν στρατιὰν ἤγε, *he led his army OUT OF the village.*

ἐθήρενε Κῦρος ἀπὸ ἵππου, *Cyrus used to hunt on horseback (literally FROM a horse).*

ἐν τῇ κώμῃ θύομεν, *we are offering sacrifice IN the village.*

εἰς τὴν κώμην φυλακὴν ἤγον, *I led a guard INTO the village.*

ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἄγγελος ἦν παρὰ Κύρου, *the man was a messenger FROM Cyrus.*

παρὰ τῷ Κύρῳ ἦσαν οἱ στρατηγοί, *the generals were WITH Cyrus.*

ἄγουσι τὸν ἄνθρωπον παρὰ Κύρον, *they bring the man TO Cyrus.*

τὰ ὅπλα ἐπὶ ἀμαξῶν ἤγον, *they conveyed their arms ON wagons.*

ἐπὶ τῇ γεφύρᾳ φυλακὴν ἔχει, *he has a guard AT the bridge.*

ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν οὐκ ἤγε τὸν ἵππον, *he did not lead his horse TO the river.*

a. Observe that, in general, the genitive is used with prepositions to express *passing from* an object, the dative *being in* it, and the accusative *coming to* it. But there are many exceptions, as, for example, the genitive with *ἐπί* cannot, in the nature of the meaning of the preposition, express separation (*passing from*). It differs from the dative only in expressing closer relation.

b. The prepositions express many other relations besides those of place (illustrated above), such as *time*, *cause*, etc. These other relations must be learnt by observation.

c. One use of prepositions has been illustrated above: as *separate words*, connected with particular cases, they show the relations of words in a sentence. Prepositions have another important use: in *composition* with verbs, they define the action of the verb. See 127.

99.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. τοῖς θεοῖς ἵππον ἔθῡον ἐν τῇ νήσῳ. 2. οἱ στρατηγοὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἤγον εἰς τὴν σκηνήν. 3. οἱ παρὰ Κύρῳ¹ σύμμαχοι ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν. 4. τοὺς ἵππους ἄγομεν ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου. 5. ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἦν ὁδὸς στενὴ. 6. ὁδὸς φανερὰ ἄγει εἰς τὰς τοῦ² Κύρου κώμας. 7. ἀθροίζει τοὺς³ συμμάχους ἐπὶ τὸν Κύρον. 8. εἰς τὸ πεδίον ὁ στρατηγὸς ἤθροIZE τοὺς συμμάχους. 9. ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ ἦν ὁ στρατηγός. 10. δῶρον αἱ κώμαι ἦσαν παρὰ Κύρου. 11. ἦσαν ἄγγελοι παρὰ τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ στρατηγοῦ. 12. ἡ ὁδὸς εἰς τὸ πεδίον στενὴ καὶ χαλεπὴ ἦν. 13. ὁ στρατηγὸς τὰ θηρία θηρεύει ἀπὸ ἵππου. 14. ἐν τῇμῃ ἦσαν παρὰ Κύρῳ οἱ στρατηγοί.

II. 1. The road, O Cyrus, leads into a beautiful plain. 2. Cyrus had a fortified palace in the plain.⁴ 3. The generals led the man to the queen. 4. He led the messenger from the market place to⁵ the tents. 5. The generals of Cyrus collected horses in⁶ the plain. 6. The general leads his allies from the Persian villages. 7. Men were visible in the plain. 8. The generals were sacrificing, in the tents, to the gods. 9. He was general of the allies with Cyrus.¹

LESSON XIII.

Future and First Aorist Indicative Active.

100. The *Future Indicative* denotes that an action is to take place in time to come, as λύσω, *I shall loose* or *I shall be loosing*, sometimes *I will loose*.

101. The *Aorist Indicative* expresses the simple occurrence of an action in past time, as ἔλυσα, *I loosed*.

¹ Prepositional phrases and adverbs may be used attributively, like the adj. and the gen. Cf. 56, Rem.

² Proper names may take the article.

³ *his*. The article is often used in place of the possessive pronoun.

⁴ Translate in two ways.

⁵ *ἐπὶ*.

⁶ Cf. 99, I. 8.

102.

PARADIGMS.

		SINGULAR.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
Future	1	λύσω		λύσομεν
Indicative	2	λύσεις	λύσετον	λύσετε
Active	3	λύσει	λύσετον	λύσουσι
First Aorist ¹	1	ἔλυσα		ἐλύσαμεν
Indicative	2	ἔλυσας	ἐλύσατον	ἐλύσατε
Active	3	ἔλυσε	ἐλύσατήν	ἔλυσαν

103. In the future and first aorist σ is added to the theme (63).² The aorist, as a secondary tense, has augment (75, 76).

Form and conjugate the future and first aorist of $\thetaύω$.

104. The theme of many verbs ending in $-ζω$ ends in δ , as $\alphaθροίζω$, theme $\alphaθροιδ-$. In forming the future and first aorist of these verbs, δ is dropped before σ , as $\alphaθροίσω$, $\etaθροισα$.

Form the future and first aorist of $\alphaρπάζω$ and $\thetaανμάζω$.

a. The future of $\alphaἶγω$ is $\alphaἶξω$, and of $\xiχω$, $\xiξω$. These forms will be explained later. Neither of these verbs has a first aorist.

105.

VOCABULARY.

VERBS.

$\alphaναγκάζω$, *force, compel*.
 $\thetaηρεύω$, *hunt*.
 $\kappaελεύω$, *bid, command*.
 $\kappaολάζω$, *punish*.
 $\kappaωλύω$, *hinder, prevent*.
 $\piέμπω$,³ *send*.
 $\sigmaτρατεύω$, *make an expedition*.
 $\sigmaώζω$,⁴ *save, rescue, preserve*.
 $\tauοξεύω$, *shoot*.

SUBSTANTIVES.

$\alphaργύριον$, *silver money, money*.
 $\alpha\rhoιστον$, *breakfast*.
 $\betaάρβαρος, \acute{o}$, *barbarian, foreigner*.
 $\gammaνώμη$, *understanding, judgment*.
 $\muισθός, \acute{o}$, *pay*.
 $\piολέμιος, \acute{o}$, *enemy (in war)*.
 $\tauάλαντον$, *talent (sum of money)*.
 $\upsilonποζύγιον$, *beast of burden*.
 $\phiίλος, \acute{o}$, *friend*.

Form the future and first aorist of the verbs given above.

¹ Some verbs have a *second* aor. This will be treated later.

² See p. 12¹.

³ Fut. $\piέμψω$, aor. $\xiπεμψα$. These

forms will be explained later.

⁴ Except in the pres. and imperf., the iota-subscript (12) is dropped. Fut. $\sigmaώσω$, aor. $\xiσωσα$.

106.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσε τὸν στρατηγὸν τοὺς ἀνθρώπους λύειν.¹ 2. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευσαν ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων. 3. ὁ στρατηγὸς τὰ θηρία θηρεύσει ἀπὸ ἵππου. 4. τῇ στρατιᾷ² τότε (*then*) ἔπεμψε Κῦρος μισθὸν³ τάλαντον ἀργυρίου. 5. τῷ στρατηγῷ δῶρα πέμψουσι, στολὴν Περσικὴν καὶ ἵππον ἀγαθόν. 6. οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθαύμασαν ὅτι (*because*) Κῦρος μισθὸν οὐκ ἔπεμψε. 7. τὴν βασιλείαν ἔσωσαν καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 8. καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφυραν τὸν στρατηγὸν πέμπειν ἐκέλευσε Κῦρος φυλακὴν. 9. εἰς τὸ πεδίου ἀθροίσετε τοὺς Ἑλληνικοὺς συμμάχους. 10. ἐν πλοίοις τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὸν σίτον σώσουσι τοῖς φίλοις.⁴ 11. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἠνάγκασε τοὺς βαρβάρους στρατεύειν ἐπὶ Κῦρον. 12. γνώμη⁵ δὲ τοὺς κακοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐκόλασε. 13. τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οἱ σύμμαχοι ἄριστον οὐ πέμψουσι. 14. οὐκ ἐκώλυσαν οἱ πολέμιοι τὴν Κῦρου στρατιὰν θύειν.⁶ 15. τοὺς βαρβάρους κωλύσομεν ἐν τῇμῃ εἶναι⁷ παρὰ Κύρῳ.

II. The barbarians sent the man. 2. Cyrus will compel the barbarians to send gifts to the generals. 3. The enemy will capture the beasts of burden. 4. He bade the barbarians send breakfast to his friends. 5. The generals sent to the man a talent of silver as⁸ pay. 6. He will command the general to make an expedition against⁹ the barbarians. 7. Cyrus sent good wine to his friends. 8. The river carried away¹⁰ the men's arms. 9. The general will not punish his allies.

¹ Present infinitive active, *to loose*.

² Observe that (as in Latin) the indirect object is put in the dat.

³ *as pay*. Observe that (as in Latin) an appositive is in the same case as the noun which it describes.

⁴ *for their friends*. The person to whose advantage or disadvantage anything tends is put in the dat.

This is called the *Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage*.

⁵ The dat. is used to denote the manner (as the ablative in Latin).

⁶ Infin. dependent upon ἐκώλυσαν, *hindered from sacrificing* (literally *to sacrifice*).

⁷ Pres. infin. of the verb *to be*.

⁸ Omit. Cf. 106, I. 4.

⁹ Cf. 106, I. 11. ¹⁰ Use ἀπράζω.

LESSON XIV.

Masculine Substantives of the A-Declension.

Review 43-45 and 52.

107.

PARADIGMS.

	ὁ νεῦνlās young man (νεῦνiā-)	ὁ Σεύθης Seuthes (Σευθā-)	ὁ πολίτης citizen (πολίτā-)	ὁ πελταστής targeteer (πελταστā-)	ὁ Πέρσης Persian (Περσā-)
Sing. N.	νεῦνlās	Σεύθης	πολίτης	πελταστής	Πέρσης
G.	νεῦνλου	Σεύθου	πολίτου	πελταστοῦ	Πέρσου
D.	νεῦνlα	Σεύθῃ	πολίτῃ	πελταστῇ	Πέρσῃ
A.	νεῦνlān	Σεύθην	πολίτην	πελταστήν	Πέρσην
V.	νεῦνlā	Σεύθῃ	πολίτα	πελταστά	Πέρσα
Dual N. A. V.	νεῦνlā		πολίτā	πελταστā	Πέρσā
G. D.	νεῦνlαιν		πολίταιν	πελτασταῖν	Πέρσαιν
Plur. N. V.	νεῦνlαι		πολίται	πελτασταί	Πέρσαι
G.	νεῦνlōn		πολιτῶν	πελταστῶν	Περσῶν
D.	νεῦνlαις		πολίταις	πελτασταῖς	Πέρσαις
A.	νεῦνlās		πολίτās	πελταστās	Πέρσās

108. The stem (47) ends in -ā-. Cf. 48.

109. The nominative singular ends in -ās, or, by change of ā to η, as in some feminines of this declension (49), in -ης. The change occurs unless ε, ι, or ρ immediately precedes ā of the stem.

a. Observe, as to the final syllables in these forms, that masculines in -ās or -ης differ from feminines in -ā or -η (51) only in the nom. and gen. sing.; except that those in -της and names signifying nationality with nom. sing. in -ης have the voc. sing. in -α.

Decline together νεῦνlās ἀγαθός, ὁ κακός ὀπλίτης, στρατιῶται τριᾱκόσιοι, and compare 88 b.

110.

VOCABULARY.

Ἄβροκόμας, *Abrocomas*.
 ἀκοντιστής, *javelin-thrower*.
 ἄρμοστής, *governor, harmost*.
 Εὐφράτης, *the Euphrates*.
 κωμάρχης, *village-chief*.
 Ξέρξης, *Xerxes*.
 ὀπλίτης, *heavy-armed foot-soldier, hoplite*.
 σατράπης, *Persian viceroy, satrap*.
 στρατιώτης, *soldier*.
 σφενδονήτης, *slinger*.
 τοξότης, *bowman*.

σύν, prep. with dat., *with, in company with* (Latin *cum*, with abl.).

βασιλεύω, *be king*.
 βοήθεια, *aid, help*.
 Βυζάντιον, *Byzantium*.
 δεξιός, -ά, -όν, *right*.
 ξένος, ὁ, *guest-friend*.
 πηγή, *source*.
 πλασίον, *square* (of troops).
 πλευρά, *side, flank*.
 τέκνον, *child*.
 τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *300*.

πρός, prep., *properly confronting*:
 with gen., *over against*; with
 dat., *at*; with acc., *to, against, towards*.¹

111.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ὁ σατράπης βοήθειαν ἔπεμψε τοῖς πολίταις. 2. παρὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔπεμψα τῷ Κύρῳ ἄγγελον. 3. ὁ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ² ἄρμοστής πλοῖα μακρὰ ἔχει. 4. τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ³ ἔχει. 5. οἱ στρατιῶται ἐν⁴ φυλακῇ ἔξουσιν τὸν κωμάρχην καὶ τὰ τέκνα. 6. βοήθειαν δ' ἐπέμπομεν τοῖς Πέρσαις. 7. ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς τριακοσίους μὲν⁵ ὀπλίτας, τριακοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχει. 8. ἡ κώμη καλὴ ἦν, καὶ βασίλειον⁶ εἶχε τῷ σατράπῃ. 9. καὶ τοὺς σὺν τῷ στρατηγῷ σφενδονήτας ἤγον πρὸς Σεύθην. 10. ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς οὐτε⁷ τοξότην εἶχεν⁸ οὐτε ἀκοντιστήν. 11. καὶ τῷ Ἀβροκόμα ὁ

¹ The definitions of the prepositions given in the special vocabularies are generally confined to designations of place. Other meanings will be explained in the foot-notes as they occur.

² Cf. 99, I. 3.

³ on (his) right (hand).

⁴ under.

⁵ When two parts of a sentence

are contrasted, they are very commonly correlated by μὲν . . . δέ, *indeed . . . but, or on the one hand . . . on the other*, but in many cases μὲν can hardly be rendered in English. The intensive particle μέν (Latin *quidem*) is postpositive. Cf. p. 15².

⁶ Here in sing. Cf. p. 20².

⁷ οὐτε . . . οὐτε, *neither . . . nor*.

⁸ See p. 42¹.

νεανίας ξένος ἦν. 12. πέραν¹ (*across*) δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ ἦν χωρίον ἰσχυρόν. 13. τοῦ Εὐφράτου αἱ πηγαὶ οὐ πρόσω¹ (*far from*) τοῦ χωρίου ἦσαν. 14. ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς τοῦ πλαισίου ἄγουσιν² ὀπλίτας πρὸς τὰς πύλας. 15. τότε Ξέρξης ἐβασίλευε.

II. 1. He will send aid to Xerxes. 2. The young man was in honour. 3. The general was not leading the hoplites. 4. Both³ the slingers and the bowmen were brave. 5. Abrocomas was close to the river⁴ Euphrates. 6. He sends a horse to the village-chief. 7. He will send beautiful gifts to the harmosts. 8. The harmost in Byzantium commanded the soldiers to sacrifice the beasts of burden. 9. He leads the Persians into the soldiers' tent. 10. He sends the peltasts and the bowmen.

LESSON XV.

First Perfect and First Pluperfect Indicative Active.

112. Classification of Consonants. — Consonants (7) are divided into *semivowels*, *mutes*, and *double-consonants*.

113. The semivowels are λ, μ, ν, ρ, σ, and γ-nasal (p. 2³). λ, μ, ν, ρ are called *liquids*; σ, a *sibilant*; μ, ν, and γ-nasal, *nasals*.

114. The mutes are of three *classes* and of three *orders*: —

CLASSES.				ORDERS.			
<i>Labial</i> or π-mutes	π	β	φ	<i>Smooth</i> mutes	π	τ	κ
<i>Lingual</i> or τ-mutes	τ	δ	θ	<i>Middle</i> mutes	β	δ	γ
<i>Palatal</i> or κ-mutes	κ	γ	χ	<i>Rough</i> mutes	φ	θ	χ

a. Mutes of the same class are called *cognate*, since produced by the same organ (lips, tongue, or palate); those of the same order are called *co-ordinate*.

115. The double consonants are ξ (for κς), ψ (for πς), and ζ.

¹ The gen. is used with adverbs of place.

² See p. 42¹.

³ Cf. p. 21².

⁴ For the order, cf. 111, I. 4, 12.

116. The *Perfect Indicative* represents an action as already finished at the *present* time, as λέλυκα, *I have loosed*.

117. The *Pluperfect Indicative* represents an action as already finished at a given *past* time, as ἐλέλυκειν, *I had loosed*.

118.

PARADIGMS.

		SINGULAR.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
First Perfect Indicative Active	1	λέλυκα		λελύκαμεν
	2	λέλυκας	λελύκατον	λελύκατε
	3	λέλυκε	λελύκατον	λελύκασι
First Pluperfect Indicative Active	1	ἐλέλυκειν		ἐλέλυκειμεν
	2	ἐλέλυκεις	ἐλέλυκειτον	ἐλέλυκειτε
	3	ἐλέλυκει	ἐλελυκείτην	ἐλέλυκεσαν

119. Reduplication. — The perfect and pluperfect have *reduplication* as the sign of completed action.

120. Reduplication consists in the repetition of the initial sound. Verbs beginning with a consonant repeat that consonant with ε, as λύω, λέ-λυκα ; κελύω, κε-κέλυκα. A rough initial mute is changed to the cognate smooth, as θύω, τέ-θυκα.

121. But in verbs beginning with two consonants (except a mute followed by a liquid), with a double consonant, or with ρ, the reduplication omits the consonant and consists only of ε, as στρατεύω, ἐστράτευκα.

122. Verbs beginning with a vowel lengthen that vowel, so that the reduplication in these verbs has the same form as the temporal augment (76), as ἀρπάζω, ἥρπακα.

123. The pluperfect as a secondary tense has augment (75). This is prefixed to the reduplicated theme; but it is omitted when the reduplication consists of ε (121) or the temporal augment (122), as ἐλέλυκειν, but ἐστρατεύκειν, ἥρπακεν.

124. In the first perfect and first pluperfect κ is added to the reduplicated theme.

Form the first perfect and first pluperfect of $\theta\eta\rho\epsilon\acute{\upsilon}\omega$, $\theta\acute{\iota}\omega$, $\kappa\epsilon\lambda\epsilon\acute{\upsilon}\omega$, $\kappa\omega\lambda\acute{\upsilon}\omega$, $\sigma\tau\rho\alpha\tau\epsilon\acute{\upsilon}\omega$.

125. In forming the first perfect and first pluperfect of verbs in $-\zeta\omega$ with themes ending in δ (104), δ is dropped before κ .

Form the first perfect and first pluperfect of $\acute{\alpha}\theta\rho\omicron\iota\acute{\zeta}\omega$, $\acute{\alpha}\nu\alpha\gamma\kappa\acute{\alpha}\zeta\omega$, $\acute{\alpha}\rho\pi\acute{\alpha}\zeta\omega$, $\theta\alpha\nu\mu\acute{\alpha}\zeta\omega$.¹

a. The perfect of $\acute{\alpha}\gamma\omega$ is $\eta\chi\alpha$, of $\acute{\epsilon}\chi\omega$, $\acute{\epsilon}\sigma\chi\eta\kappa\alpha$, and of $\pi\acute{\epsilon}\mu\pi\omega$, $\pi\acute{\epsilon}\mu\omicron\mu\phi\alpha$.²

126.

VOCABULARY.

$\acute{\alpha}\tau\iota\mu\acute{\alpha}\zeta\omega$, dishonour, disgrace.

$\beta\omicron\upsilon\lambda\epsilon\acute{\upsilon}\omega$, plan, plot.

$\delta\iota\text{-}\acute{\alpha}\rho\pi\acute{\alpha}\zeta\omega$, plunder, sack.

$\delta\iota\alpha\text{-}\sigma\acute{\omega}\zeta\omega$, preserve, keep safe.

$\delta\omicron\upsilon\lambda\epsilon\acute{\upsilon}\omega$, be a slave.

$\acute{\epsilon}\pi\iota\text{-}\beta\omicron\upsilon\lambda\epsilon\acute{\upsilon}\omega$, plot against.

$\pi\alpha\acute{\iota}\omega$, strike.

$\pi\lambda\eta\sigma\iota\acute{\alpha}\zeta\omega$, approach.

$\delta\acute{\iota}\alpha$, prep., through, originally between, asunder, Latin $d\bar{i}$, dis: with gen., through; with acc., on account of.

$\acute{\alpha}\delta\epsilon\lambda\phi\acute{\omicron}\varsigma$, $\acute{\omicron}$, brother.

$\acute{\Lambda}\theta\eta\eta\eta\sigma\iota$, adv., at Athens.

$\acute{\Lambda}\rho\tau\alpha\acute{\xi}\acute{\epsilon}\rho\acute{\xi}\eta\varsigma$, Artaxerxes.

$\delta\acute{\alpha}\rho\kappa\iota\acute{\omicron}\varsigma$, $\acute{\omicron}$, daric (a gold coin).

$\delta\iota\kappa\alpha\acute{\iota}\omega\varsigma$, adv., justly.

$\delta\iota\kappa\eta$, justice, retribution, deserts.

$\epsilon\upsilon\tau\alpha\acute{\xi}\iota\alpha$, good order, discipline.

$\text{Κλ}\acute{\epsilon}\alpha\rho\chi\omicron\varsigma$, $\acute{\omicron}$, Clearchus.

$\delta\acute{\omicron}\rho\kappa\omicron\varsigma$, $\acute{\omicron}$, oath.

$\pi\rho\acute{\omicron}\sigma\theta\epsilon\upsilon$, adv., before, previously.

$\sigma\pi\omicron\nu\delta\acute{\eta}$, libation, plur. truce.

$\tau\rho\iota\sigma\chi\acute{\iota}\lambda\iota\omicron\iota$, $-\alpha\iota$, $-α$, 3000.

$\phi\acute{\omicron}\beta\omicron\varsigma$, $\acute{\omicron}$, fear.

127. Compound Verbs. — Compound verbs are formed by prefixing a preposition to a simple verb. See 98 c. If the preposition ends in a vowel and the simple verb begins with one, the preposition suffers elision (21),³ as $\delta\iota\text{-}\acute{\alpha}\rho\pi\acute{\alpha}\zeta\omega$. The force of the preposition is generally apparent in the compound, as $\delta\iota\text{-}\acute{\alpha}\rho\pi\acute{\alpha}\zeta\omega$ (Latin $d\bar{i}\text{-}r\bar{i}\pi\bar{i}\acute{o}$), *tear apart, plunder utterly* ('through and through'), *sack*; $\delta\iota\alpha\text{-}\sigma\acute{\omega}\zeta\omega$, *save through danger, preserve, keep safe*; $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\iota\text{-}\beta\omicron\upsilon\lambda\epsilon\acute{\upsilon}\omega$, *plot against*.

¹ See 120 end.

² These forms will be explained later.

³ Elision occurs, then, also in forming compound words, but in this case without the apostrophe.

128. Compound verbs take the augment and reduplication *after* the preposition. The first of two vowels thus brought together is elided (21), as δι-έσωζον, δι-έσωσα, but δια-σέσωκα.

Form the imperfect, future, first aorist, first perfect, and first pluperfect of the verbs in 126.

129.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἐπὶ Βυζάντιον ἐστρατεύκαμεν σὺν τῷ στρατηγῷ.
2. ἡ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν εὐταξία ἐσεσώκει τὴν στρατιάν. 3. τοὺς τρισχιλίους δᾶρεικούς διεσεσώκεις. 4. οὐκ ἐκεκωλύκει Ἀρταξέρξης τοὺς στρατιώτας πλησιάζειν. 5. Κλέαρχος τῷ σατράπῃ¹ κακὸν² ἐβουλεύκει. 6. Ἀθήνησι δ' ἐδεδουλεύκει ὁ πελταστής. 7. οἱ στρατιῶται τὸν ἄνθρωπον πεπαίκασι. 8. Ἀρταξέρξης δὲ Κῦρον τὸν ἀδελφὸν ἡτῆμάκει. 9. καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας οἱ βάρβαροι διηρπάκεσαν. 10. Κλέαρχος δὲ πρόσθεν ἐπεβουλεύκει τῷ σατράπῃ.³ 11. ἦθροικας, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους τοὺς ἀκοντιστὰς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας. 12. καὶ δικαίως τῷ ἄρμοστῇ ἐπιβεβουλεύκατε· ἔχει γὰρ (*for*)⁴ τὰ ὄπλα. 13. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται τὰς ἀμάξας ἐλελύκεσαν διὰ τὸν τῶν πολεμίων φόβον.⁵ 14. Κλέαρχος, ὦ στρατιῶται, ἐπεὶ (*since*) τὰς σπονδὰς καὶ τοὺς ὅρκους λέλυκε, τὴν δίκην ἔχει.

II. 1. For we had broken the truce. 2. The soldiers have sacked the villages. 3. The satrap has plotted against Cyrus.⁶ 4. I have compelled the village-chief to lead. 5. His brother had ordered Cyrus to send gifts. 6. They have planned to break the truce. 7. And we have ordered the general to bring hoplites. 8. But I have struck the man justly. 9. The hoplites had approached. 10. The generals have broken their oaths; for they have not sacrificed to the gods.

¹ Cf. p. 25⁴.

² *evil*, neut. of the adj. as subst.

³ Many verbs compounded with *ἐν*, *σύν*, *ἐπί*, take a dat. depending

on the preposition.

⁴ Postpositive. See p. 15².

⁵ That is, *their fear of*, etc.

⁶ Cf. 129, I. 10.

LESSON XVI.

Affinity of Words.

Give the meanings of the following words. All of these words have occurred in the previous lessons.

130.

WORD LIST.¹

'Αβροκόμας	βοήθεια	ἐρυμνός	κρήνη	δρκος
ἀγαθός	βουλεύω	εὐνοια	Κῦρος	ὅτι
ἄγγελος	Βυζάντιον	εὐταξία	κωλύω	οὐ
ἄγκυρα	γάρ	Εὐφράτης	κωμάρχης	οὔτε . . . οὔτε
ἀγορά	γέφυρα	ἔχω	κώμη	παίω
ἄγω	γνώμη	ζώνη	λόγος	παρά
ἀδελφός	δᾶρεικός	ἡμέρᾱ	λόγχη	πεδῖον
'Αθήνησι	δέ	ἦν, ἦσαν	λύω	πείρα
ἄθροίζω	δεξιός	θάλαττα	μακρός	πελταστής
ἀκοντιστής	διά	θαυμάζω	μάχαιρα	πέμπω
ἀλήθεια	διαβατός	θεά	μάχη	πέρᾱν
ἄμαξα	διαρπάζω	θεός	μέν . . . δέ	Πέρσης
ἀναγκάζω	διασφίζω	θηρεύω	μεστός	Περσικός
ἄνθρωπος	δικαίως	θηρίον	μικρός	πηγή
ἀπό	δίκη	θύρᾱ	μισθός	πλαίσιον
ἀργύριον	δόξα	θύω	Μοῦσα	πλευρά
ἀρετή	δουλεύω	ἱερός	νεανίας	πλησιάζω
ἄριστον	δῶρον	ἵππος	νήσος	πλοῖον
ἀρμοστής	εἰς	ἰσχυρός	ξένος	πολέμιος
ἀρπάζω	'Ελληνικός	καί	Ξέρξης	πόλεμος
'Αρταξέρξης	ἐν	καὶ . . . καί	ὁ, τῆ, τό	πολίτης
ἀτίμαζω	ἐνταῦθα	κακός	ὁδός	ποταμός
βάρβαρος	ἐξ	καλός	οικία	πρός
βασίλεια	ἐπεί	κελεύω	οἶνος	πρόσθεν
βασίλειον	ἐπί	Κλέαρχος	ὀπλίτης	πρόσω
βασιλεύω	ἐπιβουλεύω	κολάζω	ὄπλον	πύλη

¹ These words occur, with an exception or two, in the *Anabasis* of Xenophon, on which the exercises in this book are based. It is important to commit these words thor-

oughly to memory. The nouns (substantive and adjective) in this list occur more than 3500 times in the *Anabasis*, the verbs more than 2200 times.

σατράπης	στρατεύω	σφενδονήτης	τότε	φοβερός
Σεύθης	στρατηγός	σφίζω	τράπεζα	φόβος
σίτος	στρατιά	τάλαντον	τριᾱκόσιοι	φυλακή
σκηνή	στρατιώτης	τέκνον	τρισχίλιοι	χαλεπός
σπονδή	σύμμαχος	τίμη	ὑποζύγιον	χάρᾱ
στενός	σύν	τοξεύω	φανερός	χωρίον
στολή	σφενδόνη	τοξότης	φίλος	ὦ

131. An inspection of this list shows that these words are not all separate units, but that some of them are related both in *form* and in *meaning*.

For example, ἀ-τιμάζω, τίμη; δικάω, δίκη; θεά, θεός; θηρεύω, θηρίον; κωμ-άρχης (*village-ruler*, ἄρχω, *rule*), κώμη; ὀπλίτης, ὅπλον; Πέρσης, Περσικός; πολέμιος, πόλεμος; πρόσ, πρόσθεν; σφενδόνη, σφενδονήτης; τοξεύω, τοξότης; φοβερός, φόβος; χάρᾱ, χωρίον; βασιλεία, βασιλείον, βασιλεύω; μάχαιρα, μάχη, σύμ-μαχος; στρατεύω, στρατ-ηγός (*army-leader*), στρατιά, στρατιώτης.

132. Greek words, then, fall naturally into *groups*. The words in any group are related to one another both in *form* and in *meaning*.

133. There is commonly an original element for the entire group called the *root*, the primitive part that remains after all *formative* elements have been removed. Roots are properly of *one* syllable, and may suffer variation of form. Thus, the root of ἀ-τιμάζω, τίμη, is *τι*, *pay*; of στρατεύω, etc., *στρα*, *spread*, which appears in other words in the forms *στερ*, *στορ*.

134. But the root is not always ascertainable. The origin of many Greek words is obscure, and the ultimate ascertainable element may be the *stem*, the body of the word to which the inflexional endings are added. (*Cf.* 47 and 63.) Thus, the stem of βασιλεία, etc., is βασιλευ-, but it is uncertain what the root or roots may be which underlie it.

135. That word in the group which best shows the root or ultimate stem may be called the *root-word* or *stem-word*.

136. Two or more roots or stems may appear in one word, which is then said to be *compound*. Thus, κωμ-άρχης, στρατ-ηγός.

The facts stated above are of great *practical* importance, and naturally suggest the following direction :—

137. *In acquiring a Greek vocabulary, do not commit words to memory as separate units, but group those that show affinity in form and meaning about the root-word or stem-word.*

LESSON XVII.

The Art of Reading.

138. In reading an inflected language, such as Greek, the knowledge of three things is absolutely necessary, first, of *words*; secondly, of *forms*; thirdly, of *constructions*.

139. The acquisition of this knowledge is gradual. The meaning of each new word as it occurs should be thoroughly committed to memory, so far as possible, according to the principles stated in the last lesson. In learning the paradigms, the forms of the different cases, tenses, and numbers should be so sharply impressed on the mind the first time the paradigms occur, that these forms will be instantly recognized thereafter at sight. And as the pupil reads, the laws of construction should be carefully noted, especially those which differ from the corresponding constructions in Latin and English.

140.

DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

1. *Read each sentence aloud in the original. Pronounce each word distinctly.*

In reading,

a. *Observe sharply the forms of the words, so as to become at once aware of their grammatical relations.*

b. *Make the utmost effort of memory to recall the meanings of words already given.*

c. *Follow the Greek order strictly in arriving at the thought. Observe carefully the order of the words and the marks of punctuation.*

2. *If the thought expressed in the sentence is not perfectly clear, repeat the whole process.*

3. *Translate the sentence into simple, idiomatic English.*

The pupil who has properly mastered the facts presented in the previous lessons should now be able to read the following connected passages. Follow carefully the directions in 140.

141.

Κλέαρχος.

1. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος (*a Lacedaemonian*) μὲν ἦν, φίλος δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ. τούτῳ (*to him*) ἔδωκε (*gave*) Κῦρος μῦρίους (*10,000*) δāρεικούς. ὁ δὲ (*and he*) ἤθροισεν ἀπὸ τούτων (*these*) ὀπλίτας χιλίους (*cf. τρισ-χίλιοι, τρεῖς, three*) καὶ πελταστὰς ὀκτακοσίους (*cf. ὀκτώ, eight, and τρια-κόσιοι*) καὶ τοξότας διακοσίους (*cf. δύο, two*).

2. ἐντεῦθεν (*from this place*) ἐξελαύνει (*marches*) Κῦρος εἰς Τυριαῖον. ἐνταῦθα ἐξετάζει (*he reviews*) ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τὴν στρατιάν· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν (*i.e. wing*) Μένων, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον (*infer the meaning from the context*) Κλέαρχος, τὸ δὲ μέσον (*centre*) οἱ ἄλλοι (*other*) στρατηγοί. τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος ἦν (*i.e. they were alarmed at what they saw*), καὶ ἡ Κιλικισσα (*Cilician queen*) ἔφυγεν (*fled*) ἐπὶ τῆς ἄρμαμάξης (*carriage*) καὶ οἱ (= *those*) ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες (*Greeks*) ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς ἦλθον (*went*).

3. ἐπεὶ (*when*) δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς τοῦ σατράπου θύραις, οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ ἦλθον εἴσω (*within*), Πρόξενος, Μένων, Κλέαρχος, οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ (*captains*) ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ἔμενον (*remained*). (*The generals are seized. Ariaeus comes to the Greek camp.*) ὁ δὲ Ἀριαῖος εἶπε (*said*)· Κλέαρχος μὲν, ὦ Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ (*since*) τὰς σπονδάς ἔλυσεν, ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθνηκε (*is dead*), Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων ἐν τῇ εἰσιν (*are*). ἐπὶ τούτοις (*on this*) Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος εἶπε· Κλέαρχος μὲν τοίνυν (*then*), εἰ (*if*) παρὰ (*contrary to*) τοὺς ὅρκους ἔλῃε τὰς σπονδάς, τὴν δίκην ἔχει· Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων ἐπεὶ εἰσιν ὑμέτεροι (*your*) μὲν εὐεργέται (*benefactors*), ἡμέτεροι (*our*) δὲ στρατηγοί, πέμψατε (*arist imperative*) αὐτοὺς (*them*) δεῦρο (*hither*).

142. In the following passage, such aid as the student should need is given in notes following the passage. These notes should not be used until each sentence has been read according to 140, 1 and 2. Each sentence makes greater demands on the pupil's knowledge than he can meet unaided. But if, *depending entirely upon himself*, he honestly makes the effort to see what the sentence tells him, he will, first, fix securely in mind facts already acquired, and secondly, define clearly to himself the new facts (whether meanings of words, forms, or constructions) that he must now learn. Such a process cultivates the powers of observation, strengthens the memory, and is the short road to the acquisition of the power to read rapidly and with pleasure.

143.**Κῦρος.**

I. Κῦρος υἱὸς μὲν Δᾶρείου ἦν, ἀδελφὸς δὲ Ἀρταξέρξου. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑπ-ώπτευε Δᾶρείος τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, ἐκέλευσεν Ἀρταξέρξην καὶ Κῦρον παρ-εῖναι. ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἀρταξέρξης ἤδη παρ-ἦν. Κῦρος δὲ ὀπλίτᾱς ἔχων τριᾶκοσίους ἀνα-
 5 βαίνει ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην Δᾶρείος ἐποί-
 ησεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δᾶρείος καὶ ἐβασίλευσεν Ἀρταξέρξης, ὁ τῆς Κᾱρίᾱς σατράπης Τισσαφέρνης δια-
 βάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὥς ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ.
 ὁ δὲ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ σφάζει αὐτὸν καὶ
 10 ἀπο-πέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν.

NOTES.

1. υἱός, *son*. — 2. ὑπ-ώπτευε: imperf. of the compound verb ὑπ-οπτεύω, *suspect, apprehend*, the prep. ὑπό being equal to *sub* in the Latin word that corresponds in meaning, *su-spicor*. — τελευτὴν: τελευτή, *end*. With this cf. the verb τελευτάω, aor. ἐτελεύτησα (6), *come to an end, i.e. die*. — βίος: *bios*. Cf. the word *bio-graphy*. — 3. παρ-εῖναι: elicit the meaning from the two elements (cf. 106, I. 15). — οὖν, *now*, not temporal, but continuative. — 4. ἤδη, *already*. — ἔχων: pres. part. act. — ἀναβαίνει, *goes up* (historical present, as in Latin), *i.e. from his ἀρχή, or province, to Babylon*. — 5. ἧς: gen. sing. fem. of the relative pronoun *ἥς, which*. — αὐτόν, *him*, acc. sing. masc. So αὐτῷ (8), dat. sing. masc. — ἐποίησεν: ποιέω, aor. ἐποίησα, *make*. — 6. ἐβασίλευσεν: the so-called *inceptive aor.*, *became king*. — 7. διαβάλλει: διαβάλλω, *accuse falsely*, followed by *ὡς, that*. — 9. ὁ δέ, *but he, i.e. Artaxerxes*. — συλλαμβάνει: συλλαμβάνω, *arrest*. — μήτηρ, *mother, cf. māter*. — 10. πάλιν: adv., *again*.

LESSON XVIII.

Adjectives of the Vowel-Declension.

Review 87.

144.

PARADIGMS.

<i>ἀγαθός, good</i>				<i>δῆλος, plain, clear</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N.	ἀγαθός	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν	δῆλος	δῆλη	δῆλον
G.	ἀγαθοῦ	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθοῦ	δῆλου	δῆλης	δῆλου
D.	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ	δῆλῳ	δῆλῃ	δῆλῳ
A.	ἀγαθόν	ἀγαθήν	ἀγαθόν	δῆλον	δῆλην	δῆλον
V.	ἀγαθέ	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν	δῆλε	δῆλη	δῆλον
D. N. A. V.	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ	δῆλῳ	δῆλῃ	δῆλῳ
G. D.	ἀγαθοῖν	ἀγαθαῖν	ἀγαθοῖν	δῆλοιν	δῆλαιν	δῆλοιν
P. N. V.	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά	δῆλοι	δῆλαι	δῆλα
G.	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	δῆλων	δῆλων	δῆλων
D.	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθαῖς	ἀγαθοῖς	δῆλοις	δῆλαις	δῆλοις
A.	ἀγαθοῦς	ἀγαθάς	ἀγαθά	δῆλους	δῆλᾶς	δῆλα

<i>μικρός, small, little</i>				<i>φίλιος, friendly¹</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N.	μικρός	μικρά	μικρόν	φίλιος	φιλιά	φίλιον
G.	μικροῦ	μικρᾶς	μικροῦ	φίλου	φιλιάς	φίλου
D.	μικρῷ	μικρῇ	μικρῷ	φιλῳ	φιλῃ	φιλῳ
A.	μικρόν	μικράν	μικρόν	φίλιον	φιλίαν	φίλιον
V.	μικρέ	μικρά	μικρόν	φίλιε	φιλιά	φίλιον
D. N. A. V.	μικρῷ	μικρῇ	μικρῷ	φιλῳ	φιλῃ	φιλῳ
G. D.	μικροῖν	μικραῖν	μικροῖν	φίλοιν	φιλῃαιν	φίλοιν
P. N. V.	μικροί	μικραι	μικρά	φίλιοι	φιλῃαι	φίλια
G.	μικρῶν	μικρῶν	μικρῶν	φιλῶν	φιλῶν	φιλῶν
D.	μικροῖς	μικραῖς	μικροῖς	φίλοις	φιλῃαῖς	φίλοις
A.	μικροῦς	μικράς	μικρά	φίλους	φιλῃᾶς	φίλια

¹ Cf. the related word in 105.

145. If *ε*, *ι*, *ρ*, or *ρo* precedes the final vowel of the stem, the nominative singular feminine ends in *-ᾱ*, otherwise in *-η*. Cf. 49.

146. The nominative and genitive plural feminine follow the accent of the masculine, as *δῆλων*, *φίλναι*, *φιλίων*, not *δηλῶν*, *φιλίαι* (from nominative singular *φιλία*), *φιλίων*, as in substantives of the A-declension.

Decline *ἄγριος*,¹ *wild*; *ἐλεύθερος*, *free*; *ικανός*, *able*; *πιστός*, *faithful*.

147. Some adjectives of the vowel-declension have only two sets of endings, the masculine form being used for the feminine, as *ἄλκιμος*, *ἄλκιμον*,¹ *valiant, warlike*; *ἄμαξιτός*, *-όν* (cf. *ἄμαξα*), *passable for wagons*; *ἄπορος*, *-ον*, *impassable, impracticable, without means*; *ἄφθονος*, *-ον*, *abundant, fertile*.

Decline these adjectives.

Review 138-140.

148. Follow the directions given in 140 in reading single detached sentences also. No inflected *form* occurs in the exercises in this book which has not been given previously in the paradigms or elsewhere. Difficult *constructions* are explained by deduction from examples before their use in the exercises, if peculiarly idiomatic; otherwise, by immediate reference to notes at the foot of the page. New *words* occur, of course, in all of the exercises, and their meanings must be acquired. But it is important, first of all, to recognize clearly in each sentence what words *are* new, as distinguished from words that have already occurred. The meanings of these new words are ultimately to be sought for in the special vocabularies, which from this point follow the exercises. But neither notes nor vocabularies should be consulted until the sentence has been read aloud once or twice *through to the end*, according to the directions in 140. The notes will then frequently simply confirm the pupil in conclusions to which he has come by his own reasoning, and the vocabularies will often simply define to him more clearly meanings at which he has arrived independently either from the context or by word-analysis.

¹ All new words thus introduced should be at once thoroughly committed to memory.

149.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ὄνοι ἄγριοι χίλιοι ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἦσαν. 2. ὁ Εὐφράτης ποταμὸς ἄπορος ἦν. 3. ἡ Χερρόνησος ἦν χώρα καλὴ καὶ ἄφθονος. 4. δικαίως ἐθαυμάζομεν τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ βεβαίους.¹ 5. καὶ δῆλον ἦν ὅτι (*that*) ἐγγὺς ὁ Ἀρταξέρξης ἦν. 6. τὰ δῶρα διασφύζειν² ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν. 7. οἱ ποταμοὶ πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν³ ἄποροι ἦσαν. 8. δίκαιον ἦν καὶ⁴ πρὸς⁵ θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων τὴν χώραν διαρπάζειν.⁶ 9. ἴσως δὲ καὶ (*also*) δίκαιον ἦν ἐπιβουλεύειν τῷ σατράπῃ. 10. τὰ γὰρ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκ ἦν⁷ ἔχειν. 11. τῷ Ἀρταξέρξει πολέμιος ἦν, Κύρῳ δὲ πιστός. 12. οὐκ ἄξιον ἦν τῷ ὀπλίτῃ παίειν τοὺς οἰκέτας. 13. ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἀμαξιτὸς ὀρθιᾷ ἰσχυρῶς. 14. οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἐλεύθεροι καὶ ἄλκιμοι ἦσαν· ὅπλα δ' εἶχον γέρρα μακρὰ καὶ λόγχας. 15. ἦσαν οἱ τοῦ Κύρου στρατιῶται ἄξιοι ἐλευθερίας. 16. διὰ φιλιᾶς χώρας ἄξει ὁ κωμάρχης τοὺς στρατιώτας. 17. πῶς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔξομεν ;

REM. The special vocabulary should now be thoroughly committed to memory. No Greek words will be needed in translating the English-Greek exercises in this book that have not already occurred in previous Greek-English exercises.

The sentences which compose these English-Greek exercises are patterned more or less closely after Greek sentences that have occurred in previous exercises. In re-composing these English sentences into Greek, observe the following :—

DIRECTIONS FOR TRANSLATING INTO GREEK.

1. *Compose the entire sentence aloud in Greek before committing any part of it to writing.*

2. *If in doubt about the construction or the order of the Greek words, search for a model.*

¹ The masc. of the adj. used substantively. Cf. 129, I. 5.

² Inf. depending on the adj. ἱκανοί, which denotes *ability*.

³ Cf. 111, I. 13.

⁴ Cf. 92, I. 12.

⁵ *in the sight of*. Cf. 110.

⁶ Subject of the verb ἦν.

⁷ *it was possible*.

3. If an English word or phrase occurs which has not been given in the vocabularies as a definition, recall its English equivalents.

4. Commit the sentence thus composed in Greek to writing. Observe sharply the form, accent, and spelling of each word.

II. 1. The hoplites were faithful to Cyrus. 2. The road was impassable. 3. The general was worthy of honour. 4. We justly punish the bad. 5. Cyrus had plundered the fertile land of the barbarians. 6. They will lead the hoplites into a friendly country. 7. The javelin-men were both valiant and faithful. 8. He was not able to hinder the enemy. 9. Cyrus hunted wild asses on horseback. 10. There was abundant food in the villages. 11. The villages were full of provisions.¹ 12. It was right to keep the arms and the horses safe. 13. But perhaps it was right to plunder the villages of the enemy.

150.

VOCABULARY.

ἄξιος, -α, -ον (ἄγω),² equal in weight, worth, worthy, befitting.

βέβαιος, -α, -ον, firm, constant.

γέρρον, wicker-shield.

δίκαιος, -α, -ον (δίκε), just, right, reasonable.

ἐγγύς, adv., near.

εἰσβολή, entrance, pass.

ἐλευθερίᾱ (ἐλεύθερος), freedom.

ἐπιτήδειος, -α, -ον, suitable, fit.³

ισχυρῶς (ισχυρός), adv., strongly, vehemently, exceedingly.

ἴσως, adv., perhaps.

οἰκέτης (οἶκος, a house, home; cf. οἰκία, a house, dwelling), house-servant, domestic.

ὄνος, ὄ, ῥ, ass.

ὄρθιος, -α, -ον, steep.

πολέμιος, -α, -ον (πόλεμος), at war with, hostile.⁴

πῶς, adv., how?

Χαλδαῖοι, οἱ, the Chaldeans.⁵

Χερρόνησος, ἡ, the Chersonese.

χίλιοι, -αι, -α,⁶ 1000.

¹ Cf. 92, I. 6.

² Related words that have occurred in previous lessons will hereafter be placed, in parentheses, after the words in the vocabularies to which they are related. If two or more such words have occurred, the simpler form will be given.—*ἄξιος* is related to *ἄγω* in its sense of *weigh*.

³ In the neut. plur., *τὰ ἐπιτήδεια*, provisions ('things suited to sustain life').

⁴ *πολέμιος*, given in 105, is the masc. of this adj. used as a subst.

⁵ Borrowed English words will hereafter be printed in **black-face** letter. See p. 155¹.

⁶ Cf. *τρις-χίλιοι*, 126 (*τρίς*, thrice).

LESSON XIX.

Analysis of the Primary Tenses of the Indicative Active.

151. Verb-Theme. — The *theme* of a verb is its fundamental part (63).

152. Tense-Suffixes and Tense-Stems. — From the theme are formed, by means of *tense-suffixes*, the different *tense-stems* of the verb.

153. Variable Vowel. — The final vowel of a tense-stem is said to be *variable* when it is *-o-* in some of the forms and *-ε-* in others, indicated by *ο/ε*.

154. Personal-Endings. — From the tense-stems the different forms of the verb are made by adding to them certain endings, which in the finite moods mark the persons and numbers, and are called *personal-endings*.

155. There are two series of these personal endings, one found in the active voice, the other in the middle. Each of these series includes two sets, one for primary tenses, the other for secondary tenses.

156. The personal-endings of the *primary* tenses in the indicative active are : —

		SINGULAR.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
	1	-μι		-μεν
	2	-ς or -σι	-τον	-τε
	3	-σι or τι	-τον	-νσι

Review the paradigm of the Present Indicative Active in 65.

157. The *present* stem of λύω is λῦο/ε-, formed by adding the variable vowel ο/ε as tense-suffix to the theme λῦ-. The form is λῦο- before μ or ν in the endings, elsewhere λῦε-.

158. The present indicative active of λύω before change was perhaps, in the singular, λῡο-μ, λῡε-σι, λῡε-τι, and in the third plural, λῡον-σι.

a. In λῡο-μ, -μ is dropped and ο is changed to ω. In λῡε-σι, ι passes over to the preceding vowel, and unites with it by contraction. In λῡε-τι, ι passes over in the same way and τ is dropped. In λῡο-νσι, ν is dropped before σ and ο lengthened to ου.

Review the paradigm of the Future Indicative Active in 102.

159. The *future* stem of λύω is λῡσ°/ε, formed by adding the tense-suffix -σ°/ε to the theme. It is inflected like the present.

Review the paradigm of the First Perfect Indicative Active in 118.

160. The *first perfect* stem of λύω is λε-λυκα-, formed by reduplicating the theme and adding the tense-suffix -κα-.

a. In the first person singular -μ is dropped; in the second the ending is -ς; in the third -σι is dropped and α changed to ε. In the plural -ασι is for α-νσι, ν being dropped before σ and α lengthened to ᾱ.

161.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. τὰς ἐπιστολὰς πέμπομεν. 2. ἀληθεύουσιν¹ οἱ ἄγγελοι. 3. τεθύκαμεν τοῖς θεοῖς. 4. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἤδη λελύκασι τὰς γεφύρας. 5. λύσομεν τὰς ἀμάξας ᾧς (which)² ἔχομεν. 6. ὁ οὖν Κλέαρχος πέμπει τὸν ἄγγελον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον. 7. κελεύσω τοὺς Πέρσας λύειν τὰς γεφύρας. 8. ὁ σατράπης νῦν βασιλεύει. 9. θηρία ἀπὸ ἵππου τεθήρευκα. 10. οἱ στρατηγοὶ τὴν στρατιὰν ἄγουσι. 11. τῶν δὲ Πελοποννησίων ἔχομεν ὀπλίτας ἑκατόν. 12. οἱ σατράπαι τοὺς στρατιώτας θαυμάσουσι. 13. ὀπλίτας ἔχεις χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς πεντακοσίους. 14. Κῦρος, ὁ τοῦ Δαρείου,³ βασιλεύσει ἀντὶ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ. 15. ὀπλίτας δισχιλίους

¹ Some words annex ν when the next word in the sentence begins with a vowel: (1) all words in -σι; (2) all verbs of the third person sing. in -ε; (3) ἐστί, is. This is

called ν-movable. It is sometimes written at the end of a sentence.

² Acc. plur. fem. of the relative pronoun ὅς, ἥ, ὅ.

³ Sc. υἱός, son.

καὶ πελταστὰς μῦριους πέμπετε. 16. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι τὰς σπονδὰς καὶ τοὺς ὄρκους λελύκασι. 17. τὰ δὲ χωρία σατραπεύουσιν οἱ τοῦ Κύρου φίλοι. 18. τοὺς βαρβάρους ἤρπάκαμεν διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν στρατιωτῶν. 19. καίτοι ἔχω παιδιά τῶν στρατηγῶν ἐν Μιλήτῳ.

Analyze each finite verbal form in the above exercise.

II. 1. We are destroying the bridges. 2. We shall collect allies. 3. He has plotted harm to Clearchus. 4. They will save the men and the horses. 5. He punishes his servants. 6. The queen will dishonour her brother. 7. The satrap will be king. 8. I have commanded the hoplites to sacrifice. 9. The hoplites will sacrifice. 10. You (*sing.*) have hunted wild asses on horseback. 11. You are planning harm to the allies. 12. You are plotting against Cyrus and his allies. 13. The soldiers of the enemy will approach. 14. The soldiers will sack the country of Cyrus's brother. 15. You have commanded the soldiers to plunder the wagons.

162.

VOCABULARY.

ἀληθεύω (ἀλήθεια), *speak the truth, tell the truth.*

ἀντί, prep. with gen., *over against, against, instead of, in preference to, in return for.*

Δαρείος, ὁ (cf. δαρεϊκός), **Darius.**

δισ-χίλιοι, -αι, -α (χίλιοι),¹ 2000.

ἐκατόν, indeclinable, 100.

ἐπιστολή, *letter, epistle.*

ἤδη, adv., *already, forthwith, at length.*

καίτοι, conj., *and yet.*

λόφος, ὁ, *hill, height.*

Μίλητος, ἡ, **Miletus.**

μύριοι, -αι, -α, 10,000.

νῦν, adv., *now.*²

ὄλεθρος, ὁ, *destruction, loss.*

οὖν,³ conj., *therefore, accordingly, consequently.*

παιδίον, *child.*

Πελοποννησίος, -ᾱ, -ον, **Peloponnesian.**

πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α,⁴ 500.

σατραπεύω (σατράπης), *rule as satrap, rule.*

¹ δῖς, *twice.*

² See p. 155¹.

³ This inferential conj. is *post-positive*, i.e. it is always put after one or more words of the sentence. See p. 15².

⁴ πέντε, *FIVE.* Cf. τριῖ-κόσιοι in 110 (τρεις, *THREE*). The suffix for cardinals to denote hundreds (after ἐκατόν) is -κοσιοι, as διῖ-κόσιοι, 200, etc.

LESSON XX.

Analysis of the Secondary Tenses of the Indicative Active.

163. The personal-endings of the *secondary* tenses in the indicative active (155) are :—

		SINGULAR.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
	1	-ν		-μεν
	2	-ς	-τον	-τε
	3	none	-την	-ν or -σαν

Review the Imperfect Indicative Active in 74.

164. The imperfect is formed on the *present* stem (157), but it has augment (75, 76).

Review the First Aorist Indicative Active in 102.

165. The *first aorist* stem of λύω is λύσα-, formed by adding the tense-suffix -σα- to the theme. In the first person singular -ν is dropped, and in the third -α- is changed to -ε. As a secondary tense the aorist has augment in the indicative.

Review the First Pluperfect Indicative Active in 118.

166. The first pluperfect is formed on the *first perfect* stem (160), with -κει- substituted for -κα-. In the third person plural -ε- is used instead of -ει-.

167.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. οἱ πολῖται ἔπεμψαν ναύτας δέκα. 2. οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἔπεμπον στρατιωτάς πέντε εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. 3. καὶ θεοῖς καὶ θεαῖς ἐτεθύκειν. 4. τὴν γέφυραν, ᾧ στρατιῶται, ἐλύσατε. 5. οἰκέτᾳς καὶ ἵππους εἶχομεν. 6. Κῦρος γὰρ ἔπεμπε βίκους οἴνου. 7. οἱ σατράπαι ἐκεκελεύεσαν τοὺς νεανίας θύειν. 8. εἰς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους τοὺς στρατιωτάς ἤγες. 9. ἐπεὶ ἔλυσαν τὰς σπονδάς, τὰς κώμας διαρπάσομεν.

10. ἀλλὰ τί (*why*)¹ οὐκ ἦγες τοὺς στεφάνους καὶ τὰς φιά-
 λᾱς; 11. ὁ γὰρ σατράπης ἐκεκελεύει τοὺς ὀπλίτας δασμοὺς
 πέμπειν. 12. συνεπέμπομεν τῇ βασιλείᾳ² τοὺς στρατιώτας
 οὗς (*whom*)³ ὁ στρατηγὸς εἶχε. 13. τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ⁴ ἔπεμπε
 τὸν ἄνθρωπον Ἀριαῖος ὁ στρατηγός. 14. στρατιώτας ἐν
 τῷ τόπῳ εἶχετε ἱκανοὺς τὰς κώμας διαρπάζειν. 15. τὸν κω-
 μάρχην τότε ἦγεν⁵ ὁ στρατηγὸς πρὸς τοὺς οἰκέτας. 16. εἰ
 παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους ἔλῤες τὰς σπονδάς, τὴν δίκην ἔχεις.

Analyze each finite verbal form in the above exercise.

II. 1. You were striking the peltasts. 2. Both generals
 and captains had sacrificed. 3. The queen commanded the
 captains to sacrifice. 4. The hoplites with Cyrus were plun-
 dering the wagons. 5. The soldiers had previously plotted
 against the queen. 6. I had collected hoplites and bowmen.
 7. You (*sing.*) hunted on horseback. 8. You had broken the
 truce. 9. The satrap dishonoured the soldiers. 10. He had
 commanded the hoplites to plunder the country. 11. And the
 general made an expedition against the satrap's country.
 12. He had sacrificed to the goddess. 13. Cyrus plotted harm
 to his brother. 14. I had destroyed the boats.

168.

VOCABULARY.

Ἀθηναῖος, -ᾱ, -ον,⁶ Athenian.

ἀλλά, conj., *but, yet*.

Ἀριαῖος, ὁ, Ariæus.

βίκος, ὁ, jar (for wine).

δασμός, ὁ, tax, impost, tribute.

δέκα, indeclinable, TEN.

εἰ, conj., *if*, proclitic.

λοχ-ᾱγός, ὁ (ᾱγω),⁷ captain.

ναύτης, sailor.

πέντε (*cf.* πεντακόσιοι), indec., FIVE.

στέφανος, ὁ, crown, wreath.

στρατό-πεδον (στρατιά),⁸ camp.

συν-πέμπω (σύν, πέμπω),⁹ send with.

τόπος, ὁ, place, region.

ὑστεραίος, -ᾱ, -ον, following.

φιάλη, cup (broad and shallow).

¹ Acc. sing. neut. of the pron. τίς, *who? what?* used adverbially.

² See p. 31³.

³ Acc. plur. masc. of the relative pronoun ὅς, ἡ, ὅ.

⁴ Sc. ἡμέρα. The dat. is used to denote the time when.

⁵ See p. 42¹.

⁶ Cf. Ἀθήνησι (126).

⁷ Cf. λόχος, company.

⁸ Literally, the ground occupied by an army (πέδον, ground).

⁹ ν before a labial becomes μ.

LESSON XXI.

Attic Second Declension. — Declension of οὗτος.

169. The O-declension includes a few stems ending in -ω. This ω appears in all the cases except the neuter nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of adjectives, but takes iota-subscript where the common ending has ι.

170.

PARADIGMS.

	ὁ νεώς, temple (νεω-)	ἱλεως, propitious (ἱλεω-)	
		M. F.	N.
Sing. N. V.	νεώς	ἱλεως	ἱλεων
G.	νεώ	ἱλεω	ἱλεω
D.	νεφί	ἱλεφ	ἱλεφ
A.	νεών	ἱλεων	ἱλεων
Dual N. A. V.	νεώ	ἱλεω	ἱλεω
G. D.	νεφίν	ἱλεφν	ἱλεφν
Plur. N. V.	νεφί	ἱλεφ	ἱλεα
G.	νεών	ἱλεων	ἱλεων
D.	νεφός	ἱλεφς	ἱλεφς
A.	νεώς	ἱλεως	ἱλεα

a. Observe that the accent of these nouns is peculiar in two respects: first, the genitive and dative, when accented on the ultima, are oxytone (*cf.* 45); secondly, the long ω in the ultima does not exclude the accent from the antepenult (*cf.* 27).

171. Some substantives have -ω or -ων in the accusative singular, as ὁ λαγώς, *hare*, accusative singular λαγώ or λαγών. ἡ ἕως, *dawn*, has only ἕω.

172. The declension of the demonstrative pronoun οὗτος, *this*, is as follows: —

SINGULAR.			DUAL.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
οὗτος	αὕτη	τούτο	τούτω	τούτω	τούτω	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου	τούτοιιν	τούτοιιν	τούτοιιν	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ				τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
τούτον	ταύτην	τούτο				τούτους	ταύτᾱς	ταῦτα

173. Examine the following: —

οὗτος ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀγαθὸς ἦν.

τὰ πλοῖα ταῦτα πέμφομεν σίτου μεστά.

It would be impossible to say ὁ οὗτος στρατηγός, τὰ ταῦτα πλοῖα.

174. **Rule of Syntax.** — Substantives with οὗτος require the article in prose, and the pronoun takes the *predicate* position (cf. 56, Rem.).

175.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. οἱ νεφὴ ἦσαν οἰκίαι τῶν θεῶν. 2. ἐν Ἐφέσῳ παρὰ τῷ τῆς θεᾶς νεφὴ δένδρα ἦν. 3. ἐν τούτῳ τῷ νεφὴ βωμοὶ ἦσαν. 4. ἔλεφ οἱ θεοὶ ἦσαν τῇ βασιλείᾳ. 5. τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἐντὸς (within)¹ ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν τὸν μισθὸν ἔκπλεων πέμψει. 6. ἔκπλεων ἦν τὸ μέσον² τοῦ πλαισίου. 7. Ταμὼς Αἰγύπτιος μὲν ἦν, φίλος δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ. 8. ἐπειδὴ (when) δ' ἔως ἦν, ἔλυσαν τὴν γέφυραν οἱ ὀπλίται. 9. εἰς τὴν ἔω³ πέμψει ὁ Κῦρος τὸν ἄγγελον τοῦτον. 10. ὁ Ταμὼ υἱὸς τοῦ ναυάρχου⁴ Αἰγύπτιος ἦν. 11. ὁ νεανίας τὸν λαγὼν τοῦτον νεφέλῃ⁵ ἐθήρευσεν.⁶ 12. ὁ λεὼς τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἀνδρείος καὶ πολεμικὸς ἦν. 13. ἡ δὲ πρὸς ἔω ὁδὸς εἰς τοὺς βαρβά-

¹ This adv. governs the gen. both in its temporal sense (as here) and in its local sense. Cf. 111, I. 12 and 13, and note.

² Neut. of the adj. used substantively.

³ at daybreak, εἰς being used of

the time when the dawn shall have been reached.

⁴ An appositive to Ταμώ. See p. 25³.

⁵ The dat. is used to denote the instrument or means, as the ablative in Latin.

⁶ See p. 42¹.

ρους ἦγεν. 14. ἐν τοῖς τῶν θεῶν νεῶς στῆλαι ἦσαν. 15. οὗτοι οἱ στρατιῶται ἔσωσαν τοὺς ἐν τῷ νεῷ θησαυρούς. 16. οὗτος ὁ κωμάρχης λαγὼς ἐθήρενε, καὶ οὐκ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἦν. 17. ἐντεῦθεν (*thence*) δὲ τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἦγεν εἰς πεδῖον καλὸν καὶ δένδρων¹ σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμπέλων.

II. 1. We shall sacrifice in these temples. 2. These gods were propitious. 3. He sacrificed in this temple. 4. The temple at Ephesus² was beautiful. 5. We have five hares and a jar of wine. 6. Tamos has the boats of Cyrus. 7. This village-chief's son will hunt hares. 8. The treasure in these temples was small. 9. This country abounded in³ tall trees. 10. Cyrus sent to these soldiers their pay in full. 11. The roads to the east lead into the satrap's territory. 12. This people had temples in their market-place. 13. There were three thousand peltasts alongside⁴ the temples of the gods. 14. When it was dawn, the generals and the captains were sacrificing.

176.

VOCABULARY.

Αἰγύπτιος, -ᾱ, -ον, Egyptian.

ἄμπελος, ἡ, vine.

ἀνδρείος, -ᾱ, -ον, manly, brave, valiant.

βωμός, ὁ, altar.

δένδρον, TREE.

ἕκ-πλεως, -ων (ἐξ),⁵ FULL, complete, entire.

Ἔφεσος, ἡ, Ephesus.

θησαυρός, ὁ, treasure.

λεώς, ὁ, people.

μέσος, -η, -ον, MIDDLE.

ναύ-αρχος, ὁ,⁶ admiral.

νεφέλη, cloud, net.

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον, small, little, plur. few.

πολεμικός, -ή, -όν (πόλεμος), of or for war, warlike.

στήλη, pillar, post.

σύμ-πλεως, -ων (σύν),⁵ FULL, abounding in.

Ταμός, ὁ, Tamos.

υἱός, ὁ, son.

¹ Cf. 92, I. 6.

² Cf. 99, I. 3.

³ Use σύμπλεως with the proper form of εἰμί.

⁴ See 97.

⁵ Cf. πλέως, FULL. So that ἕκ-πλεως means filled out, very full,

as σύμ-πλεως below means literally filled altogether. For σύμ-πλεως, see p. 45⁹.

⁶ The underlying elements are ναύς, ship (cf. ναύτης), and ἄρχω, rule.

LESSON XXII.

Contract Substantives of the Vowel-Declension.

177. Substantives of the A-declension whose stems end in -αᾱ- or -εᾱ- suffer contraction.

178.

PARADIGMS.

	ἡ μινᾱ, <i>mina</i> (μινᾱᾱ-)	ἡ γῆ, <i>earth</i> (γῆᾱ-)	δ Ἑρμῆς, <i>Hermes</i> (Ἑρμῆᾱ-)
S. N.	(μινᾱᾱ) μινᾱ	(γῆᾱ) γῆ	(Ἑρμῆᾱς) Ἑρμῆς
G.	(μινᾱᾱς) μινᾱς	(γῆᾱς) γῆς	(Ἑρμῆου) Ἑρμοῦ
D.	(μινᾱᾳ) μινᾳ	(γῆᾳ) γῆ	(Ἑρμῆ) Ἑρμῇ
A.	(μινᾱᾱν) μινᾱν	(γῆᾱν) γῆν	(Ἑρμῆαν) Ἑρμῆν
V.	(μινᾱᾱ) μινᾱ	(γῆᾱ) γῆ	(Ἑρμῆᾱ) Ἑρμῇ
D. N. A. V.	(μινᾱᾱ) μινᾱ		(Ἑρμῆᾱ) Ἑρμᾱ
G. D.	(μινᾱᾱιν) μινᾱῖν		(Ἑρμῆᾱιν) Ἑρμᾱῖν
P. N. V.	(μινᾱῖ) μινᾱῖ		(Ἑρμῆῖ) Ἑρμᾱῖ
G.	(μινᾱῶν) μινῶν		(Ἑρμῆῶν) Ἑρμῶν
D.	(μινᾱῖς) μινᾱῖς		(Ἑρμῆῖς) Ἑρμᾱῖς
A.	(μινᾱᾱς) μινᾱς		(Ἑρμῆᾱς) Ἑρμῆς

179. Substantives of the O-declension whose stems end in -εο- or -οο- suffer contraction.

180.

PARADIGMS.

	δ νοῦς, <i>mind</i> (νοο-)	τὸ κανοῦν, <i>basket</i> (κανεο-)
S. N.	(νόος) νοῦς	(κάνεον) κανοῦν
G.	(νόου) νοῦ	(κάνεου) κανοῦ
D.	(νόφ) νοῖ	(κάνεφ) κανῖ
A.	(νόον) νοῦν	(κάνεον) κανοῦν
V.	(νόε) νοῦ	(κάνεον) κανοῦν

D. N. A. V.	(νόω) νό	(κάνέω) κανό
G. D.	(νόοιν) νοῖν	(κάνέοιν) κανοῖν
P. N. V.	(νόοι) νοῖ	(κάνεα) κανᾶ
G.	(νόων) νῶν	(κάνέων) κανῶν
D.	(νόοις) νοῖς	(κάνέοις) κανοῖς
A.	(νόους) νοῦς	(κάνεα) κανᾶ

a. Observe in the contracts inflected in 178 and 180, first, that the short vowel preceding the final vowel of the stem is absorbed by the following *α*, long vowel, or diphthong, except in the singular of the A-declension, where *εᾶ* and *εα* become *η* and *η*; and secondly, that in the O-declension *οο*, *οε*, *οο*, are all contracted into *ου*.

b. Observe that all the contracted forms are perispomenon, except the nom., acc., and voc. dual of the O-declension, which are oxytone.

c. But compounds in *-οος* keep the accent on the same syllable as in the contracted nom. singular, as (*ἀπό-πλοος*) *ἀπό-πλους*, ὁ (*πλόος*), *voyage home*, genitive (*ἀποπλόου*) *ἀπόπλου*, etc.

181.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Κῦρος ὀπλίτῃ ἐκάστῳ πέμψει πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς.
 2. οἱ γὰρ Πέρσαι ἔθῃον ἡλίφ καὶ γῇ καὶ σελήνῃ. 3. ἐν τῷ νεῷ ἔθῃε τῷ θεῷ Ἑρμῇ. 4. τί (*what*)¹ ἐν νῷ ἔχετε; 5. ὁ δὲ τοξότης τὸ κανοῦν ἐθαύμαζεν. 6. καλοὶ ἦσαν οἱ πλοῖ εἰς τὴν Ἀσιᾶν. 7. ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ οἱ πολέμοι προσέχουσι τὸν νοῦν.² 8. οἱ θεοὶ ἔλεω ἦσαν καὶ τοῖς ναύταις καλὸν πλοῦν παρείχον. 9. ὁ πλοῦς ἦν ἄδηλος τοῖς ναύταις. 10. ὅμοιοι ἦσαν οὗτοι θαυμάζειν³ τί ἐν νῷ ἔχουσιν οἱ στρατιῶται. 11. ἄποροι ἦσαν ἐν τῷ ἀπόπλῳ ἔχειν⁴ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 12. ὁ περίπλους Σικελιάς τῆς νήσου μακρὸς ἦν. 13. τότε ἐν τῇ γῇ πρῶτοι ἦσαν οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ. 14. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν ἡ γῇ πεδίου δένδρων σύμπλεων.

¹ Acc. sing. neut. of the interrogative pronoun *τίς, τί, who? what?*

² *apply their mind* in the sense of 'direct their attention,' 'give attention.'

³ Dependent on *ὅμοιοι*, *were like to wonder*, that is 'seemed to be wondering.'

⁴ Dependent on *ἄποροι*. See 147.

15. τότε κατεῖχον οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι πολέμῳ τοὺς τούτων προγόνους καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. 16. καὶ τότε δῆλον ἦν τί (why) οἱ βάρβαροι τὰς ἀλωπεκᾶς ἐπὶ ταῖς κεφαλαῖς ἔχουσιν. 17. καὶ πλοίῳ μὲν ἦν εἰς ταύτην τὴν χώρᾱν ἐκ Βυζαντίου κώπαις¹ ἡμέρᾱς μάλα μακρᾶς πλοῦς, ἐν δὲ τῷ μέσῳ² μόνοι ἦσαν βάρβαροι.

II. 1. The voyage was to Asia. 2. We wonder what the enemy intend. 3. The sailors sacrificed to Hermes on the island. 4. There were trees and vines in this land. 5. The servant had five minas of silver. 6. He sent the gifts in a beautiful basket. 7. The barbarian wears a fox-skin cap on his head. 8. We made an expedition by land against the Peloponnesians. 9. Cyrus sent gifts to this man, a horse and a mina of silver. 10. On their voyage home, the soldiers plundered the islands. 11. Cyrus, the brother of Artaxerxes, sends to the bowmen ten days' pay, five minas of silver.

182.

VOCABULARY.

ἀ-δῆλος, -ον³ (δῆλος),⁴ not clear, uncertain, doubtful.

ἀλωπεκῆ, fox-skin, fox-skin cap.

Ἄσ-ια, Asia.

ἕκαστος, -η, -ον, each, every.

ἥλιος, ὁ, sun.

ἡμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, our.

κατά, prep.: with gen., down, underneath; with acc.,⁵ down, down along, by, opposite.

κατ-έχω⁶ (κατά, ἔχω), hold down, check, control.

κεφαλῆ, HEAD.

κώπη, oar.

Λακεδαιμόνιος, -ᾱ, -ον, Lacedaemonian.

μάλα, adv., very, very much, greatly, exceedingly.

μόνος, -η, -ον, alone, only, sole.

ὁμοιος, -ᾱ, -ον, like, similar.

παρ-έχω⁶ (παρά, ἔχω), hold near, afford.

περί-πλοος, περί-πλους, ὁ (πλόος),⁷ a sailing round, voyage round.

πλόος, πλοῦς, ὁ (cf. πλοῖον, and πλέω, sail), voyage.

πρόγονος, ὁ, ancestor.

προσ-έχω (πρός, ἔχω), hold to, apply.

πρῶτος, -η, -ον, first.

σελήνη, moon.

Σικελία, Sicily.

τότε, adv., then.

¹ Dat. of instrument. See p. 47⁵.

² Cf. 175, I. 6. ³ See 147.

⁴ The first part of the word is the inseparable prefix α- (called α-

privative), signifying negation (Lat. in-, English un-).

⁵ See 96.

⁶ See 127.

⁷ Cf. περί, prep., around. See 180c.

LESSON XXIII.

Present and Imperfect Indicative of the Irregular Verb εἰμί, be.

183.

PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT.			IMPERFECT.		
	Sing.	Dual.	Plur.	Sing.	Dual.	Plur.
1	εἰμί		εἰσμέν	ἦν or ἦ		ἦμεν
2	εἶ	εἰστόν	εἰστέ	ἦσθα	ἦστον or ἦτον	ἦτε or ἦστε
3	εἰστί	εἰστόν	εἰσὶ	ἦν	ἦστην or ἦτην	ἦσαν

184. The theme of εἰμί (Latin *sum* for *es-um*) is εσ- (compare Latin *es-se*). The present indicative uses the primary endings (156), the imperfect, the secondary (163). These endings are added directly to the theme.

a. εἰμί is for εσ-μῦ, σ being dropped before μ and ε lengthened to εἰ; εἶ for εσῖ (εσ-σι); εἰσὶ for ε-νσι. In the imperfect the final σ of the augmented theme is dropped in many of the forms. ἦσθα has the ending -σθα (found also in other verbs) for -ς, and ἦν (third singular) has the ending -ν.

Review 38.

185. All the forms of the present indicative of εἰμί are enclitic except εἶ.

186. The word before an enclitic (a) retains its own accent and never changes an acute to the grave (34); (b) if proparoxytone or properispomenon (33, 35), it adds an acute on the ultima; (c) if a proclitic or an enclitic, it takes an acute.

187. Enclitics retain their accent (a) when the vowel to be affected by the enclitic is elided (21); (b) when there is emphasis on the enclitic; (c) when a dissyllabic enclitic follows a paroxytone; (d) when the enclitic begins a sentence. The last case is relatively of infrequent occurrence.

188. The third singular, *ἐστί* (ordinarily an enclitic), has the regular recessive accent *ἔστι*, (a) when it signifies existence or possibility; (b) at the beginning of a sentence; (c) after *οὐ*, *μή*, *εἰ*, *ὥς*, and *καί*.

189.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *μακρὰ δὲ τὰ Περσικὰ τόξα ἐστί.* 2. *αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ τοῦ Μαιάνδρου ποταμοῦ εἰσιν¹ ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων.* 3. *ἦν γὰρ ἡ πάροδος στενὴ.* 4. *ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον.* 5. *αἱ δὲ κῶμαι εἰσι τῆς βασιλείας.* 6. *ἤμεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ.* 7. *ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι.* 8. *ἐν κινδύνοις ἐσμέν.* 9. *εἰ ἐπὶ² τῷ ἀδελφῷ.* 10. *ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασιλεία ἦν καὶ παράδεισος.* 11. *Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὗτοί εἰσιν.* 12. *Κύρῳ μᾶλλον φίλοι ἐστὲ ἢ τῷ ἀδελφῷ.* 13. *ἦν τῷ Κύρῳ πόλεμος πρὸς Μῦσους.* 14. *οὐ δυνατόν ἐστι πλησιάζειν.* 15. *τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς ὑποψία ἐστὶν¹ ὅτι ἄγει Κύρος πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους.* 16. *Κύρῳ ἐστέ, ὦ στρατιῶται, καὶ φίλοι καὶ σύμμαχοι.* 17. *ξένοι ἐσμέν, ὦ Κύρε, τῷ σατράπῃ.* 18. *ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ³ καὶ τῆς τάφρου.* 19. *ἔστι δὲ Κύρῳ χωρίον ἰσχυρὸν ἐπὶ ταῖς τοῦ ποταμοῦ πηγαῖς.* 20. *ἔστι δὲ καὶ (also) βασιλεία ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ.*

II. 1. He is a soldier. 2. Clearchus, the general, was a Lacedaemonian. 3. The country is hostile to Xerxes. 4. The trees are tall and beautiful. 5. You (*dual*) are brave soldiers. 6. The satrap is in the power of the Lacedaemonians. 7. These friends of Cyrus were soldiers. 8. For there was wine in the villages. 9. The soldiers have arms and horses. 10. In this place there was a beautiful park. 11. There is a wagon-road beyond the river.⁴ 12. This is just in the sight of both gods and men. 13. For you are now in a hostile land. 14. It is plain that they will approach. 15. The sailors are apprehensive that the voyage is to Asia.

¹ See p. 42¹.² in the power of.³ See p. 28¹.⁴ Cf. 111, I. 12.

190.

VOCABULARY.

δυνατός, -ή, -όν, *able, possible*.
 ἐμπόριον, *place of trade, emporium*.
 ἤ, conj., *than* (Lat. *quam*).
 Κελαιναί, αἱ, *Celaenae*.
 κίνδυνος, ὁ, *danger, risk*.
 Μαίανδρος, ὁ, *Maeander*.
 μᾶλλον (μᾶλα), adv., *more, rather*.
 Μαρσύας, *Marsyas*.

μεταξύ, adv., *between*.
 Μῦσος, ὁ, a *Mysian*.
 ὅτι, conj., *that, because*.
 παράδεισος, ὁ, *park*.
 πᾶρ-οδος, ἡ (παρά, δδός), *way by, pass*.
 τάφρος, ἡ, *ditch, trench*.
 τόξον (cf. τοξέω), *bow*.
 ὑποψία, *suspicion, apprehension*.

LESSON XXIV.

Contract Adjectives of the Vowel-Declension.

Most adjectives in -eos and -oos suffer contraction.

191.

PARADIGMS.

χρῦσοῦς, GOLDEN						
S. N.	(χρῦσεος)	χρῦσοῦς	(χρῦσέᾱ)	χρῦσῆ	(χρῦσεον)	χρῦσοῦν
G.	(χρῦσέου)	χρῦσοῦ	(χρῦσέας)	χρῦσῆς	(χρῦσέου)	χρῦσεῦ
D.	(χρῦσέῳ)	χρῦσῶ	(χρῦσέα)	χρῦσῆ	(χρῦσέῳ)	χρῦσῶ
A.	(χρῦσεον)	χρῦσοῦν	(χρῦσέαν)	χρῦσῆν	(χρῦσεον)	χρῦσοῦν
D. N. A.	(χρῦσέω)	χρῦσῶ	(χρῦσέᾱ)	χρῦσᾶ	(χρῦσέω)	χρῦσῶ
G. D.	(χρῦσέοιν)	χρῦσοῖν	(χρῦσέαιν)	χρῦσαῖν	(χρῦσέοιν)	χρῦσοῖν
P. N.	(χρῦσσοι)	χρῦσσοῖ	(χρῖσσαι)	χρῦσσαι	(χρῦσσεα)	χρῦσᾶ
G.	(χρῦσσών)	χρῦσσῶν	(χρῦσσέων)	χρῦσσῶν	(χρῦσσέων)	χρῦσσῶν
D.	(χρῦσσέοις)	χρῦσσοῖς	(χρῦσσέαις)	χρῦσσαις	(χρῦσσέοις)	χρῦσσοῖς
A.	(χρῦσσέους)	χρῦσσοῦς	(χρῦσσέας)	χρῦσσᾶς	(χρῦσσεα)	χρῦσᾶ
ἀπλοῦς, simple, sincere						
S. N.	(ἀπλόος)	ἀπλοῦς	(ἀπλόη)	ἀπλή	(ἀπλόον)	ἀπλοῦν
G.	(ἀπλόου)	ἀπλοῦ	(ἀπλόης)	ἀπλής	(ἀπλόου)	ἀπλοῦ
D.	(ἀπλόῳ)	ἀπλῶ	(ἀπλόη)	ἀπλή	(ἀπλόῳ)	ἀπλῶ
A.	(ἀπλόον)	ἀπλοῦν	(ἀπλόην)	ἀπλήν	(ἀπλόον)	ἀπλοῦν

D. N. A.	(ἀπλῶ)	ἀπλῶ	(ἀπλόᾱ)	ἀπλᾱ	(ἀπλόω)	ἀπλῶ
G. D.	(ἀπλόοιν)	ἀπλοῖν	(ἀπλόαιν)	ἀπλαῖν	(ἀπλόοιν)	ἀπλοῖν
P. N.	(ἀπλόοι)	ἀπλοῖ	(ἀπλόαι)	ἀπλαῖ	(ἀπλόα)	ἀπλᾱ
G.	(ἀπλόων)	ἀπλῶν	(ἀπλόων)	ἀπλῶν	(ἀπλόων)	ἀπλῶν
D.	(ἀπλόοις)	ἀπλοῖς	(ἀπλόαις)	ἀπλαῖς	(ἀπλόοις)	ἀπλοῖς
A.	(ἀπλόους)	ἀπλοῦς	(ἀπλόᾱς)	ἀπλᾱς	(ἀπλόα)	ἀπλᾱ

No distinct vocative forms occur.

So *χάλκεος*, of bronze; *διπλός*, double; *τετραπλός*, fourfold.

a. Observe that in contraction and accent these adjectives follow the corresponding substantives (178, 180).

b. But in the feminine singular of adjectives in *-ρεος*, *εᾱ* and *εα* become *ᾱ* and *α* after *ρ*, the *ε* being regularly absorbed, as (*ἀργύρεος*¹) *ἀργυροῦς*, of silver, (*ἀργυρέᾱ*) *ἀργυρᾱ*, etc. So *σιδήρεος*, of iron.

c. Compounds in *-οος*, however, keep the accent on the same syllable as in the contracted nominative singular (see 180 c), as (*εὖ-νοος*²) *εὖ-νους*, well-disposed, (*εὖνοον*) *εὖνουν*, genitive (*εὐνόου*) *εὖνου*, etc. So *κακό-νοος*,³ evil-minded, ill-disposed.

d. Compounds of *νοῦς* are of two terminations (147), and do not contract the nominative and accusative plural neuter, as *εὖνοα* (not *εὖνᾱ*).

192.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *εὖνους δὲ Κύρῳ ἡ βασιλεία ἐστίν.* 2. *εἶχον δὲ καὶ λόγχας σιδηράς.* 3. *ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὅπλα χαλκᾷ ἔχουσιν.* 4. *ἀπλοῦς ἦν ὁ λόγος.* 5. *αἱ δὲ πέλται χαλκαῖ ἦσαν.* 6. *τῶν ὀπλιτῶν στέφανος ἐκάστω χρυσοῦς ἦν.* 7. *φίλοις εὖνοις Κύρος πιστὸς ἦν.* 8. *τὸ βασιλεῖον σημείον αἰτὸς χρυσοῦς ἦν.* 9. *τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦσαν στρεπτοὶ χρυσοί.* 10. *εὖνοί εἰσι τῷ ἀρμοστῇ οἱ στρατιῶται.* 11. *οἱ καλοὶ κατὰγαθοὶ⁴ Κύρῳ εὖνοι ἦσαν.* 12. *εὖνοι ἦσαν τοῖς στρατηγοῖς*

¹ Related to *ἀργύριον*.

² *εὖ*, well, and *νόος*.

³ *κακός* and *νόος*.

⁴ A case of *crasis*. *Crasis* (*mingling*) is the contraction into a single syllable of a vowel or diphthong

at the end of a word with one at the beginning of the following word. The *corōnis* or 'hook' (') is placed over the contract syllable, unless the first element has the rough breathing. Thus, *κατὰγαθοί* for *κατ' ἀγαθοί*.

καὶ προθύμως συνεβούλευον. 13. οὗτοι προδότης καὶ κακόν-
νοι τοῖς στρατιώταις ἦσαν. 14. Κύρος ἱκανὸς ἦν θεραπεύειν
τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὖνους καὶ βεβαίους. 15. Κύρος δὲ ἔπεμψε
τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ στρεπτόν χρυσοῦν καὶ ψέλια καὶ ἀκινάκη
χρυσοῦν. 16. οὐχ οὕτως, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀλόγιστοί ἐσμεν,
ἀλλὰ τοῖς τοῦ Κύρου φίλοις εὖνοι. 17. δῶρα δ' ἔπεμψαν,
ἵππον καὶ φιάλην ἀργυρᾶν καὶ σκευὴν Περσικὴν καὶ δᾶρει-
κοὺς δέκα. 18. καὶ δᾶρεια ἕκαστος ἔξει, ὦ στρατιῶται,
λοχαγὸς δὲ τὸ διπλοῦν, στρατηγὸς δὲ τὸ τετραπλοῦν.

II. 1. For Cyrus had a short sword of gold. 2. But Cyrus
sent the man a silver drinking-cup. 3. The words of good men
are sincere. 4. The barbarians' swords are of iron. 5. The
prizes are drinking-cups of gold. 6. You are ill-disposed to
the noble and good. 7. The brave general is worthy of a
golden crown. 8. These soldiers had bronze spears. 9. The
soldiers are well-disposed to their general. 10. These barba-
rians were faithful and well-disposed to Cyrus. 11. The ser-
vants have the provisions in baskets of gold and silver. 12. The altar
in the temple at Ephesus is of gold. 13. The
general is ill-disposed to the satrap. 14. He was faithful to
Darius, and is now well-disposed to Cyrus.

193.

VOCABULARY.

ἄετός, ὁ, eagle.

ἄθλον, prize.

ἀκινάκης, a short sword (Persian).

ἄλλος, ἄλλη, ἄλλο,¹ other, another.

ἀλόγιστος, -ον (λόγος),² unreason-
ing, inconsiderate.

βασίλειος, -ον (βασιλεύω), royal.

θεραπεύω, take care of, court.

οὕτως³ (οὗτος), adv., thus, so.

πέλις, a small wicker shield.

προδότης, betrayer, traitor.

προθύμως, adv., eagerly, zealously.

σημεῖον, signal, standard.

σκευή, equipment, dress.

στρεπτός, ὁ, necklace.

συμβουλεύω (σύν, βουλεύω),⁴ plan
with, advise.

ψέλιον, bracelet.

¹ Neut. nom. and acc. sing. ἄλλο
for ἄλλον.

² See p. 51⁴.

³ Before consonants οὕτω. Cf.
ἐξ, ἐκ (p. 13¹).

⁴ See p. 45⁹.

LESSON XXV.

Affinity of Words. — Reading Lesson.

Give the meanings of the following words: —

194.

WORD LIST.

ἄγριος	Δᾱρείος *	ἱκανός	νεφέλη	πρώτος
ἄθλος *	δασμός	ἔλεως	νεός	πῶς
ἄετός	δέκα	ισχυρῶς *	νόος *	σατραπεύω *
Ἀθηναῖος *	δένδρον	ἴσως	νῦν	σελήνη
ἄθλον	δήλος *	καίτοι	οἰκέτης *	σημεῖον
Αἰγύπτιος	δίκαιος *	κακόνους *	οἶκος *	σιδήρεος
ἀκινάκης	διπλός	κάνεον	ὄλεθρος	Σικελιά
ἀληθεύω *	δισχίλιοι *	κατά	ὀλίγος	σκεπή
ἄλκιμος	δυνατός	κατέχω *	ὅμοιος	στέφανος
ἄλλά	ἐγγύς	Κελαιναί	ὄνος	στήλη
ἄλλος	εἰ	κεφαλή	ὄρθιος	στρατόπεδον *
ἀλόγιστος *	εἰμί	κινδύνος	οὖν	στρεπτός
ἄλωπεκη	εἰσβολή	κώπη	οὗτος *	συμβουλεύω *
ἀμαξιτός *	ἔκαστος	λαγός	οὕτως *	συμπέμπω *
ἄμιελος	ἐκατόν	Λακεδαιμόνιος	παιδίον	σύμπλεως *
ἀνδρείος	ἐκπλεως *	λεώς	παράδεισος	Ταμός
ἀντί	ἐλευθερίᾱ *	λόφος	παρέχω *	τάφος
ἄξιος *	ἐλεύθερος *	λοχαγός *	πάροδος *	τετραπλός
ἀπλός	ἐμπόριον	Μαίανδρος	Πελοποννήσιος	τόξον *
ἀπόπλοος *	ἐπιστολή	μάλα *	πέλτη	τόπος
ἄπορος	ἐπιτήδειος	μᾶλλον *	πεντακόσιοι *	υἱός
ἀργύρεος *	Ἑρμῆς	Μαρσύας	πέντε *	ὑποψία
Ἀρῖαιος	εὖνοος *	μέσος	περίπλοος *	ὑστεραίος
Ἀσιᾶ	Ἐφεσος	μεταξύ	πιστός	φιάλη
ἄφθονος	ἔως	Μίλητος	πλός *	φίλιος *
βασίλειος *	ἦ	μνᾶ	πολεμικός *	Χαλδαῖοι
βίβαιος	ἦδη	μόνος	πολέμιος *	χάλκεος
βίκος	ἥλιος	μύριοι	πρόγονος	Χερρόνησος
βωμός	ἡμέτερος	Μῦσός	προδότης	χίλιοι *
γέρον	θεραπεύω	ναύαρχος *	προθύμως	χρύσεος
γῆ	θησαυρός	ναύτης *	προσέχω *	ψέλιον

Review 130–137.

Associate each starred word in 194 with some other word or words of those given in 130 and 194 related to it in *form* and *meaning*.¹

Review 138–140 and 142.

Read and translate again 143.

Read and translate the following passage :—

195.

Κῦρος.

II. οὕτως οὖν τὸν Κῦρον ἡτίμασεν Ἀρταξέρξης. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦκε πάλιν Κῦρος ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν, ἐβούλενε βασιλεῦσαι ἀντὶ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπ-ἦρχε τῷ Κύρῳ· ἐφίλει γὰρ αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν Ἀρταξέρξη. 5 ὑπ-ἦρχον δὲ Κύρῳ καὶ οἱ παρὰ αὐτῷ βάρβαροι, εὐνοί τε ὄντες καὶ πολεμεῖν ἱκανοί. Ἑλληνικὴν δὲ στρατιὰν ἤθροιζεν ὧδε. φυλακὰς εἶχεν ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι. τούτων δὲ τοὺς φρουράρχους ἐκάστους ἐκέλευσε λαμβάνειν Πελοποννησίου, ὡς Μίλητον ἐν νῶ ἔχων πολιορκεῖν. Μιλήτου γὰρ 10 τότε Τισσαφέρνης ὁ τῆς Κᾶριάς σατράπης ἦρχε πολέμιος Κύρῳ ὢν. ὁ δ' ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. οὕτως οὖν στρατιὰν Ἑλληνικὴν ἤθροιζεν.

NOTES.

2. ἦκε, *was come, had returned*, imperf. of ἦκω, *be come*. — βασιλεῦσαι, *to become king*, aor. inf., corresponding to the aor. indic. ἐβασίλευσα. — 3. δὴ, *now*. — ὑπ-ἦρχε: ὑπ-ἄρχω, *support*, with the dat. For the accent, see p. 83⁷. — 4. ἐφίλει: by contraction for ἐφίλειε, third pers. sing. of the imperf. of φιλέω, *love*. — 6. ὄντες, *being*, nom. plur. masc. of ὢν, pres. participle of εἶμι. — πολεμεῖν, *to war*, by contraction for πολεμέειν, pres. inf. of πολεμέω. — 7. ὧδε: adv., *thus, i.e. as follows*. — πόλεσι, *cities*, dat. plur. of πόλις, *city*. — 8. φρουράρχους: φρούραρχος, *δ, commander*. — λαμβάνειν, *to take, enlist*. — 9. ὡς, *as, as if*. — πολιορκεῖν: contracted pres. inf. of πολιορκέω, *besiege*. — Μιλήτου: the gen. is used with verbs of *ruling*. — 10. ἦρχε: imperf. of ἄρχω, *rule*. — 11. ὁ δέ, *but he, i.e. Cyrus*.

¹ The relationship of words should not be traced too elaborately in the first stages of a pupil's acquisition of a language; but etymologizing on

simple lines may be begun early, is very profitable, and may be made a stimulating class-room exercise.

LESSON XXVI.

Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Middle.

In the middle voice the subject is represented as acting upon himself or in some manner which concerns himself.

Three uses of the middle may be distinguished :—

196. The *direct middle*, in which the subject is represented as acting *directly on himself*.

Thus *χρίω*, anoint, middle *χρίομαι*, anoint oneself; *παύω*, make to cease, middle *make oneself to cease*, cease, stop (intransitive); *ἀπ-έχω*, keep away from (transitive), middle *keep oneself from*, desist from, refrain from; *πορεύω*, make go, middle *go*, proceed, march, advance.

197. The *indirect middle*, in which the subject is represented as acting *for himself* or on something *belonging to himself*.

Thus *ἀγοράζω*,¹ buy, middle *buy for oneself*; *σκενάζω*,² equip, prepare, make ready, middle *prepare for oneself*; *παρα-σκενάζω*,³ prepare, procure, middle *prepare or procure for oneself*, make ready; *συ-σκενάζω*,⁴ collect baggage, middle *collect one's own baggage*, pack up; *μετα-πέμπω*, send for, middle *send for one's own* or *to come to oneself*, summon; *λύω*, LOOSE, middle *LOOSE one's own*, ransom; *ἄγω*, lead, middle *lead one's own*.

a. The indirect middle sometimes has a causative force.

Thus *δανείζω*, lend, middle *have lent to oneself*, borrow; *θύω*, sacrifice, middle *cause to sacrifice*, take the auspices, offer sacrifice.

198. The *subjective middle*, in which the subject is represented as acting with his own means and powers.

Thus *παρ-έχω*, furnish, middle *furnish from one's own property*; *στρατεύω*, make war, middle *make war with one's own resources*, take the field; so *συ-στρατεύομαι*,⁴ take the field with, join an expedition; *βουλεύω*, plan, middle *form one's own plan*, consider, deliberate, purpose; so *συμ-βουλεύομαι*, consult with.

¹ Related to *ἀγορά*.

² Related to *σκευή*.

³ The compound form *παρα-σκενάζω* is commoner than the simple

form *σκενάζω*, and is to be used in preference to it.

⁴ ν before σ is dropped.

199. The personal endings in the indicative middle (154, 155) are:—

	PRIMARY.			SECONDARY.		
	Sing.	Dual.	Plur.	Sing.	Dual.	Plur.
1.	-μαι		-μεθα	-μην		-μεθα
2.	-σαι	-σθον	-σθι	-σο	-σθον	-σθι
3.	-ται	-σθον	-νται	-το	-σθην	-ντο

200.

PARADIGMS.

		PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
Indicative Middle.	S. 1.	λύο-μαι	ἐ-λύό-μην	λύσο-μαι
	2.	λύει	ἐ-λύου	λύσει
	3.	λύε-ται	ἐ-λύε-το	λύσει-ται
	D. 2.	λύε-σθον	ἐ-λύε-σθον	λύσει-σθον
	3.	λύε-σθον	ἐ-λύε-σθην	λύσει-σθον
	P. 1.	λύό-μεθα	ἐ-λύό-μεθα	λύσό-μεθα
	2.	λύε-σθι	ἐ-λύε-σθι	λύσει-σθι
	3.	λύο-νται	ἐ-λύο-ντο	λύσο-νται

a. For the present stem λῡσ°/ε, found in the present and imperfect (augmented in the latter), see 157 and 164, and for the future stem λῡσ°/ε, see 159.

b. In the second person singular λύει is for λῡε-σαι, ἐλύου for ἐλῡε-σο, and λύσει for λῡσε-σαι. The σ is dropped, and the last two syllables are then contracted, -ε-αι into -ει, -ε-ο into -ου.

201.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἄξεται τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. 2. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο πορεύεσθαι.¹ 3. στερρῶς τῶν ἀγαθῶν² ἀπειχόμεθα διὰ τοὺς τῶν θεῶν ὄρκους. 4. ἀργυρίῳ³ τὰ παῖδιά λύσονται οἱ πολῖται. 5. εἶτα δ' ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν. 6. τὸ ἀργύριον δανείζονται οἱ πολῖται. 7. Κύρος

¹ Pres. inf. middle, depending upon ἐβουλεύοντο.

² The gen. is used with verbs of

separation. Cf. the corresponding use of the ablative in Latin.

³ Cf. 175, I. 11.

δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς¹ καὶ λοχαγοῖς συμβουλεύεται. 8. εἰς Κιλικίαν τὴν στρατιὰν ἄξεται. 9. ταχέως διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπορευόμεθα εἰς κώμας. 10. σὺν τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλεύεται τί² δίκαιόν ἐστι. 11. καὶ ἱερεῖα θύσεται τῷ θεῷ. 12. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐχρτόντο. 13. μισθὸν ἔκπλεων παρείχετο εἰς³ τὴν στρατιάν. 14. Κῦρος δὲ μεταπέμπεται τὸν Κλέαρχον. 15. συστρατεύονται Σεύθη.¹ 16. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὴν θυσίαν παρεσκευάζοντο. 17. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ἡμελημένως μᾶλλον. 18. καὶ ὀκνηρῶς συνεσκευάζοντο. 19. πέραν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ἦν κώμη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἡγοράζοντο τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 20. χιλὸς σπάνιος πάνυ ἐστί, Κῦρος δὲ παρασκευάζεται διὰ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν.

II. 1. And he was proceeding on the wagon. 2. They will not deliberate carelessly. 3. He took the field against his brother. 4. Cyrus will summon the village-chief. 5. They will bring their horses to the camp. 6. They proceed through this country to the river. 7. The bowmen send for their bows. 8. The generals are offering sacrifice. 9. You did not proceed to Cyrus. 10. And on the following day he offered sacrifice. 11. When it was dawn, the soldiers anointed themselves. 12. We shall ransom our servants. 13. But on the following day they summon the generals and the captains. 14. The targeteers will purchase provisions for themselves.

202.

VOCABULARY.

εἶτα, adv., *then, thereupon.*

ἐπιμέλεια, *care, thoughtfulness.*

ἡμελημένως, adv., *carelessly.*

θυσιᾶ (θύω), *sacrifice, offering.*

ἱερίον (ἱερός), *victim (for sacrifice).*

Κιλικία, *Cilicia.*

μετὰ, prep.⁴: with gen., *with*; with acc., *after.*

ὀκνηρῶς, adv., *reluctantly.*

πάνυ, adv., *wholly, very, altogether, very much.*

σπάνιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *scarce.*

στερρῶς, adv., *firmly, resolutely, obstinately.*

ταχέως, adv., *quickly, soon.*

χιλός, ὄ, *fodder.*

¹ See p. 31⁸.

² Cf. 181, I. 4.

³ *to, for.*

⁴ The literal sense is *amid, among.* μετὰ implies *participation, as σὺν accompaniment.*

LESSON XXVII.

Aorist, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Middle.

203. The *Future Perfect Indicative* denotes that an action will be *already finished* at some future time, as *λελύσομαι, I shall have ransomed.* It is a perfect transferred to the future.

204.

PARADIGMS.

		FIRST AOR.	PERF.	PLUP.	FUT. PERF.
Indicative Middle.	S. 1.	ἐλύσά-μην	λέλυ-μαι	ἐ-λελύ-μην	λελύσο-μαι
	2.	ἐλύσω	λέλυ-σαι	ἐ-λέλυ-σο	λελύσει
	3.	ἐλύσα-το	λέλυ-ται	ἐ-λέλυ-το	λελύσει-ται
	D. 2.	ἐλύσα-σθον	λέλυ-σθον	ἐ-λέλυ-σθον	λελύσει-σθον
	3.	ἐλύσά-σθην	λέλυ-σθον	ἐ-λελύ-σθην	λελύσει-σθον
	P. 1.	ἐλύσά-μεθα	λελύ-μεθα	ἐ-λελύ-μεθα	λελύσώ-μεθα
	2.	ἐλύσα-σθε	λέλυ-σθε	ἐ-λέλυ-σθε	λελύσει-σθε
	3.	ἐλύσα-ντο	λέλυ-νται	ἐ-λέλυ-ντο	λελύσονται

a. The first aorist middle has the same tense-stem as the first aorist active, *λύσα-* (165). In the second person singular *ἐλύσω* is for *ε-λύσα-σο*. *σ* is dropped, and the last two syllables are contracted, *-α-ο* into *-ω*.

b. The perfect and pluperfect middle use the *perfect middle* stem, formed simply by reduplicating the theme. Thus *λέλυ-*. To this the pluperfect, as a secondary tense, prefixes the augment.

c. The future perfect uses the perfect middle stem with *-σ°/ε-* added. Thus *λελύσ°/ε-*.

d. The perfect and future perfect middle use the middle *primary* personal endings, the aorist and pluperfect, the *secondary* (199).

205. Note also the following: —

	PERF.	PLUP.	PERF.	PLUP.	PERF.	PLUP.
S. 1.	ἑσκεύασ-μαι	ἑσκευάσ-μην	ἤγμαι	ἤγμην	πέπεμμαι	ἐπέπέμμην
2.	ἑσκεύα-σαι	ἑσκεύα-σο	ἤξαι	ἤξο	πέπεμψαι	ἐπέπεμψο
3.	ἑσκεύασ-ται	ἑσκεύασ-το	ἤκται	ἤκτο	πέπεμπται	ἐπέπεμπτο

D. 2.	ἐσκεύα-σθον	ἐσκεύα-σθον	ἤχθον	ἤχθον	πέπεμφθον	ἐπέπεμφθον
3.	ἐσκεύα-σθον	ἐσκευά-σθην	ἤχθον	ἤχθην	πέπεμφθον	ἐπεπέμφθην
P. 1.	ἐσκευάσ-μεθα	ἐσκευάσ-μεθα	ἤγμεθ	ἤγμεθα	πέπεμμεθα	ἐπεπέμμεθα
2.	ἐσκεύα-σθε	ἐσκεύα-σθε	ἤχθε	ἤχθε	πέπεμφθε	ἐπέπεμφθε
3.	ἐσκευασ-μένοι εἰσὶ	ἐσκευασ-μένοι ἦσαν	ἤγμένοι εἰσὶ	ἤγμένοι ἦσαν	πέπεμμένοι εἰσὶ	πεπεμμένοι ἦσαν

206. The perfect and pluperfect middle of such verbs in -ζω as have already been introduced are inflected like ἐσκεύασ-μαι and ἐσκευάσ-μην above. δ of the theme (104) is dropped before endings which begin with σ; elsewhere it is changed to σ.

207. The third person plural is a compound form, consisting of the perfect middle participle and εἰσὶ in the perfect (literally *they are having prepared themselves*, that is *they have prepared themselves*), and of the perfect middle participle and ἦσαν in the pluperfect (*they were having prepared themselves*, that is *they had prepared themselves*).

Inflect the perfect and pluperfect middle of ἀγοράζω and δανείζω.

a. The perfect and pluperfect middle of ἄγω and πέμπω are inflected as above. The forms will be explained later.

b. The perfect and pluperfect middle of ἔχω are ἔσχη-μαι and ἔσχήμεν. These are inflected like λέλυ-μαι and ἐλελύμεν.

208.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. οἱ δὲ Μιλήτου πολῖται ἡδέως ἐπαύσαντο. 2. καὶ τὸν στρατηγὸν καὶ τὸν σατράπην ἀπεπέμφσατο. 3. ἐστράτευστο δὲ Κῦρος εἰς τὴν τῶν πολεμίων χώραν. 4. οὗτος τοῦ πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους πολέμου¹ πεπαύσεται. 5. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐπεπόρευντο σταθμούς² πέντε. 6. καὶ οἱ ὀπλίται ἐνταῦθα ἀνεπαύσαντο. 7. ὀλίγοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν σίτου³ ἐγεύσαντο. 8. παρσκευασμένοι ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. 9. οἱ ὀπλίται ἀδεῶς πεπόρευνται ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. 10. καὶ τῷ Σπαρτιάτῃ

¹ Cf. 201, I. 3.

² The extent of time or space is expressed by the acc. (as in Latin).

³ In Greek the gen. is used with verbs which signify an action of the senses or of the mind.

ἐλυσάσθην τὸν ἵππον. 11. συνεστράτευμαι ἐν τῇ Φρυγίᾳ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ. 12. ὁ Ἀθηναῖος οὕτως ἐθύσατο. 13. Ἀρταξέρξης εἰς μάχην παρεσκεύαστο. 14. οἱ τοξόται μάχης πεπαύσονται. 15. ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος τὸν Ἀθηναῖον μετεπέμψατο οἰκοθεν. 16. οἱ πολέμιοι οὐκ ἐπαύσαντο διὰ ὅλης τῆς ἡμέρας. 17. ὁ σατράπης βεβούλευται ὅπως τὰς τῶν πολιτῶν ὑποψίᾳς παύσει. 18. ἐνταῦθα ἄμαξαι μεσταὶ ἀλεύρων ἦσαν καὶ οἴνου, ἃς¹ παρεσκευάσατο Κῦρος. 19. καὶ ὁ ἀρμοστής μετεπέμψατο τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς τῶν στρατιωτῶν εἰς Βυζάντιον.

II. 1. Cyrus summoned Proxenus. 2. They have proceeded to the sources of the river. 3. The army had advanced ten stages. 4. He has consulted with Cyrus. 5. But he summoned Cyrus from his satrapy.² 6. The soldiers will rest in the plain. 7. We have taken the field against the queen's soldiers. 8. He offered sacrifice to the gods. 9. They will have ransomed their children. 10. We have kept our own arms safe. 11. You have ceased from battle. 12. Why³ did you take the field against the satrap? 13. He summoned the peltasts and the bowmen. 14. Cyrus has considered how he shall be king in place of his brother.

209.

VOCABULARY.

ἀδείως, adv., *fearlessly*.

ἄκρον, *height, summit*.

ἄλευρον, *flour* (commonly plur.).

ἀνα-παύω,⁴ *make to cease, make to halt*; mid. *desist, halt, rest*.

ἀπο-πέμπω, *send off or away*; mid. *send away from oneself, dismiss*.

γεύω, *give a taste*; mid. *give oneself a taste, taste*.

ἐνταῦθα (ἐν), adv., *there, thereupon*.

ἡδέως, adv., *gladly*.

οἰκοθεν (οἶκος, οἰκία), adv., *from home*.

ὅλος, -η, -ον, *whole, entire*.

ὅπως (πῶς), conjunctive adv., *in what way, how*.

Πρόξενος, ὁ, *Proxenus*.

Σπαρτιάτης, *a Spartan*.

σταθμός, ὁ, *stopping-place, day's march*.

Φρυγία, *Phrygia*.

¹ Cf. 161, I. 5.

² See 143.

³ Cf. 167, I. 10.

⁴ The prep. ἀνά, *up*, in composition here merely strengthens the meaning of the simple verb.

LESSON XXVIII.

Third or Consonant-Declension.

210. The third or consonant-declension includes all nouns whose stems end in a consonant or close vowel (*ι, υ*).

211. The stem of a noun (47) in the consonant-declension cannot always be determined from the nominative singular, but may generally be found by dropping the case-ending (47) of the genitive singular.

212. The case-endings of the consonant-declension are:—

	SINGULAR.		DUAL.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. F. N.		M. and F.	N.
N.	-s or none	none	N.A.V.	-ε	N.V.	-εs
G.	-ος		G.D.	-οιυ	G.	-ων
D.	-ι				D.	-οι
A.	-α or -υ	none			A.	-ας or -υς
V.	like N. or none	none				-α

213. Formation of Cases. (*Section 213 for reference only.*)

1. The *Nominative Singular* of masculines and feminines adds -s to the stem.

a. But stems in -υ, -ρ, -σ, or -οιτ, reject the ending -s and lengthen a preceding ε to η and ο to ω. Final τ is dropped (232).

2. The *Accusative Singular* of masculines and feminines adds -α to consonant stems, -υ to vowel stems.

b. But barytone (36) stems in -τ, -δ, -θ, after a close vowel, commonly omit the mute and take the case-ending -υ.

3. The *Vocative Singular* of masculines and feminines is regularly the mere stem.

But in the following cases it is like the nominative: (c) oxytone stems ending in a liquid; (d) all participles; (e) stems ending in a mute; (f) but in stems in -ιδ and barytone (36) stems in -ιτ the vocative singular is the mere stem. Final δ or τ is dropped (232).

4. The *Accusative Plural* of masculines and feminines adds *-as* to consonant stems, *-vs* to vowel stems.

5. The *Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular* of neuters are the simple stem. Final *-τ* is dropped (232).

Stems ending in a Labial or Palatal Mute (114).

214.

PARADIGMS.

	δ Χάλυψ (Χαλυβ-) Chalybian	δ κλώψ (κλωπ-) thief	δ φύλαξ ¹ (φυλακ-) guard	δ ἡ αἴξ (αιγ-) goat	ἡ διώρυξ (διωρυχ-) canal
S. N. V.	Χάλυψ	κλώψ	φύλαξ	αἴξ	διώρυξ
G.	Χάλυβ-ος	κλωπ-ός	φύλακ-ος	αιγ-ός	διωρύχ-ος
D.	Χάλυβ-ι	κλωπ-ί	φύλακ-ι	αιγ-ί	διωρύχ-ι
A.	Χάλυβ-α	κλώπ-α	φύλακ-α	αιγ-α	διωρύχ-α
D. N. A. V.	Χάλυβ-ε	κλώπ-ε	φύλακ-ε	αιγ-ε	διωρύχ-ε
G. D.	Χαλύβ-οιν	κλωπ-οῖν	φυλάκ-οιν	αιγ-οῖν	διωρύχ-οιν
P. N. V.	Χάλυβ-ες	κλώπ-ες	φύλακ-ες	αιγ-ες	διωρύχ-ες
G.	Χαλύβ-ων	κλωπ-ῶν	φυλάκ-ων	αιγ-ῶν	διωρύχ-ων
D.	Χάλυψι	κλωψί	φύλαξι	αιξί	διώρυξι
A.	Χάλυβ-ας	κλώπ-ας	φύλακ-ας	αιγ-ας	διωρύχ-ας

a. Observe the case-endings (212) and apply the principles stated in 213, 1, 2, e, 4.

Review 112-115.

Apply the following laws of euphony to the paradigms :—

215. Mutes before Σ.—(a) A labial mute before *σ* forms with it *ψ* (for *πσ*). (b) A palatal mute before *σ* forms with it *ξ* (for *κσ*).

Review 44, 45.

216. Special Rule of Accent.—Monosyllabic stems of the consonant-declension accent the ultima in the genitive and dative of all numbers.

¹ Cf. φυλακή, which means a body of φύλακες.

217. Gender.—Stems ending in a labial or palatal mute are never neuter, but are either masculine or feminine.

Review 83–86.

218. Like the substantives in 214 are declined: Δόλοψ, Δόλοψ-ος, ὁ, a **Dolopian**; σκόλοψ, σκόλοψ-ος, ὁ, *stake, pole*, plur. *palisade*; Θράξ, Θρακ-ός, ὁ, a **Thracian**; θώραξ, θώρακ-ος, ὁ, *breastplate*; κήρυξ, κήρυκ-ος,¹ ὁ, *herald*; Κίλιξ,² Κίλικ-ος, ὁ, a **Cilician**; μαστίξ, μαστίγ-ος, ἡ, *whip*, πτέρυξ, πτέρυγ-ος, ἡ, *wing, flap*; φάλαγξ, φάλαγγ-ος, ἡ, *line of battle, phalanx*.

219.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες. 2. θώρακα ἔχει³ τὸν ἱππικόν. 3. τότε δὲ κήρυκας ἔπεμψε περὶ σπονδῶν. 4. ἔνθα αἱ διώρυχες εἰσι, γέφυραι δ' ἔπεισιν. 5. οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευσαν ὑπὸ μαστίγων.⁴ 6. καὶ οὐκέτι πέντε στάδια⁵ διειχέτην τῷ φάλαγγε. 7. τοῦτο τὸ χωρίον εἶχον τῶν Κιλικίων φύλακες. 8. τάφος γὰρ ἦν περὶ τὸ χωρίον καὶ σκόλοπες ἐπὶ τῆς ἀναβολῆς. 9. οἱ γὰρ τοξόται τοὺς κλώπας ἐκόλασαν. 10. ἔχει μισθοφόρους Χάλυβας καὶ Θράκας. 11. ἀλλ' ἐν μέσῳ⁶ ἦμεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. 12. τούτων δὲ τριακόσιοι Θράκες ἦσαν. 13. ὁ στρατηγὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχει χιλίους, Δόλοπας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους. 14. ἡ δὲ πλησίον⁷ χώρᾳ ἐστὶ Χάλυβες.⁸ 15. ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον ὑπερβολῇ ἦσαν φύλακες. 16. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα φύλακας Κίλικας. 17. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ Χαλύβων σταθμούς πέντε· οὗτοι εἶχον θώρακας λινούς, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν πτερίγων σπάρτα πυκνά.

II. 1. The whips are in the house. 2. This thief did not speak the truth. 3. The Thracian has the horses. 4. He will punish the guard with judgment.⁹ 5. He sent guards with the

¹ The *ū* of the stem *κηρυκ-* is shortened in the N. and V. sing.

² Cf. *Κιλικία*.

³ *ἔχω* in the sense of *have on*.

⁴ *under the lash*, that is, of their leaders. This was a part of Persian discipline.

⁵ Cf. 208, I. 5.

⁶ *in the middle*, i.e. *between*.

⁷ Here equal to *neighbouring*. See p. 23¹.

⁸ In English we should say, “is that of the Chalybians.”

⁹ Cf. 106, I. 12.

queen into Cilicia. 6. You were buying goats in the market-place. 7. The heavy-armed men had breastplates. 8. But on the following day he sent heralds. 9. He ordered the whole¹ phalanx to advance.² 10. The guards give attention³ to the words of the herald. 11. The canal is long and narrow, and upon (it) is a bridge. 12. There is a high palisade on the rampart of the camp.

220.

VOCABULARY.

ἀναβολή, *bank* (of earth), *rampart*.

δι-έχω, intrans., *be apart*.

ἐνθα (ἐν), adv., *there, here, thereupon*.

ἐντεῦθεν (ἐν), adv., *thence, thereupon*.

ἐπ-εμῖ (εἰμῖ), *be on, be upon, be over*.

ἵππικός, -ή, -όν (ἵππος), *for cavalry, cavalry*.

Κίλισσα (Κίλιξ), *Cilician queen*.

λίνας, -ᾶ, -ον,⁴ *of linen*.

μισθο-φόρος, -ον,⁵ *receiving pay*;

μισθοφόροι, as subst., *mercenaries*.

Ὀλύνθιος, ὁ, *an Olynthian*.

οὐκ-έτι,⁶ adv., *no longer*.

περί, prep., *around* on all sides:

with gen., *about, concerning*;

with dat., *around, about*; with

acc., *around, about*.

πλησίον (cf. πλησίον), adv., *near*.

πυκνός, -ή, -όν, *thick, close together*.

σπάρτον, *rope, cord*.

στάδιον, *stade* (measure of length = about 582 feet).

ὑπερβολή, *crossing, mountain-pass*.

ὑπό, prep., *under* (Latin *sub*): with

gen., *under, by*; with dat., *under*;

with acc., *under*.

LESSON XXIX.

Indicative Passive.

221. In the passive voice the subject is represented as acted on. Thus, λύομαι, *I am loosed*, ἐλύόμην, *I was loosed*, etc.

222. Examine the following: —

ὁ στρατηγὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας πέμψει, *the general will send the heavy-armed men*.

οἱ ὀπλῖται ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ πεμφθήσονται, *the heavy-armed men will be sent by the general*.

¹ For the order, cf. 208, I. 16.

² Cf. 201, I. 2.

³ Cf. 181, I. 7.

⁴ Declined like χρῦσοῦς (191).

⁵ μισθός and φέρω, *carry, gain*.

⁶ οὐ and ἔτι, *still, further, longer*.

οἱ πολέμοι τὰς σπονδὰς λελύκασι, *the enemy have violated the treaty.*

αἱ σπονδαὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις λέλυνται, *the treaty has been violated by the enemy.*

a. Observe that the object of the active becomes the subject of the passive; and that the subject of the active, the *agent*, when the sentence is converted into the passive, is expressed either by ὑπό (*by*) and the genitive, or, when the verb is in the perfect tense, by the dative. Hence:—

223. Rule of Syntax.—The agent is usually expressed, in the passive construction, by ὑπό with the genitive.

224. Rule of Syntax.—With the perfect and pluperfect passive the agent is sometimes expressed by the dative. This is called the *Dative of the Agent*.

225. The present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect have the same forms in the passive voice as in the middle. The remaining tenses are the aorist and the future.

226.**PARADIGMS.**

		FIRST AORIST.	FIRST FUTURE.
Indicative Passive.	S. 1.	ἐ-λύθη-ν	λυθήσο-μαι
	2.	ἐ-λύθη-ς	λυθήσῃ
	3.	ἐ-λύθη-η	λυθήσῃ-ται
	D. 2.	ἐ-λύθη-τον	λυθήσῃ-σθον
	3.	ἐ-λυθή-την	λυθήσῃ-σθον
	P. 1.	ἐ-λύθη-μεν	λυθησόμεθα
	2.	ἐ-λύθη-τε	λυθήσῃ-σθε
	3.	ἐ-λύθη-σαν	λυθήσονται

a. The first aorist passive uses the *first passive stem*, formed by adding the tense-sign -θε- (lengthened to -θη- in the indicative) to the theme. Thus λυ-θε- (λυ-θη-). As a secondary tense, it has augment in the indicative. It uses the *active secondary endings* (163).

b. The first future passive uses the first passive stem with $-\sigma\omicron/ε$ added and $-\thetaε$ lengthened to $-\thetaη$. Thus $λυ-θησ\omicron/ε$. It uses the *middle primary* endings (199).

c. For the form $λυθήσει$, see 200 b.

227. In the first aorist and first future passive of such verbs in $-\xi\omega$ as have already been introduced, δ of the theme (104) is changed to σ before the tense-sign $-\thetaε$ ($-\thetaη$).

Form the first aorist and first future passive of $\acute{\alpha}\rho\acute{\alpha}\xi\omega$, $\theta\alpha\nu\acute{\mu}\acute{\alpha}\xi\omega$, $\acute{\alpha}\tau\iota\acute{\mu}\acute{\alpha}\xi\omega$.

a. The first aorist and first future passive of $\acute{\alpha}\gamma\omega$ and $\acute{\pi}\acute{\epsilon}\mu\pi\omega$ are $\eta\chi\theta\eta\nu$, $\acute{\alpha}\chi\theta\acute{\eta}\sigma\omicron\mu\alpha\iota$ and $\acute{\epsilon}\acute{\pi}\acute{\epsilon}\mu\phi\theta\eta\nu$, $\acute{\pi}\acute{\epsilon}\mu\phi\theta\acute{\eta}\sigma\omicron\mu\alpha\iota$. These forms will be explained later. The first aorist and first future passive of $\acute{\epsilon}\chi\omega$ do not occur in Attic Greek.

228.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. $\pi\acute{\omega}\varsigma$ $λυθησόμεθα$; 2. $\kappa\alpha\iota$ $\omicron\upsilon\tau\omicron\varsigma$ $\delta\eta$ $\acute{\epsilon}\lambda\acute{\upsilon}\theta\eta$. 3. $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\iota\acute{\epsilon}\sigma\theta\eta$ $\acute{\upsilon}\pi\omicron$ $\tau\acute{\omega}\nu$ $\omicron\iota\kappa\omicron\iota$ ¹ $\acute{\alpha}\nu\tau\iota\sigma\tau\alpha\sigma\iota\omega\tau\acute{\omega}\nu$. 4. $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\iota$ $\tau\alpha\iota\varsigma$ $\theta\acute{\upsilon}\rho\alpha\iota\varsigma$ $\tau\alpha\iota\varsigma$ ² $\Delta\acute{\alpha}\rho\epsilon\iota\omicron\upsilon$ $\pi\alpha\iota\delta\epsilon\upsilon\theta\acute{\eta}\sigma\omicron\nu\tau\alpha\iota$. 5. $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\iota$ $\tau\acute{\omega}$ $\epsilon\acute{\upsilon}\omega\nu\acute{\nu}\mu\omega$ ³ $\acute{\epsilon}\tau\omicron\xi\epsilon\acute{\upsilon}\theta\eta\sigma\alpha\nu$ $\acute{\omicron}\pi\lambda\acute{\iota}\tau\alpha\iota$ $\delta\acute{\upsilon}\omicron$. 6. $\epsilon\iota\varsigma$ $\text{Καστωλο\acute{\upsilon}}$ $\pi\epsilon\delta\acute{\iota}\omicron\nu$ $\acute{\alpha}\theta\rho\omicron\iota\acute{\zeta}\omicron\nu\tau\alpha\iota$. 7. $\omicron\upsilon\tau\omega$ δ' $\alpha\acute{\upsilon}$ $\acute{\epsilon}\sigma\acute{\omega}\acute{\zeta}\omicron\nu\tau\omicron$ $\acute{\epsilon}\kappa\epsilon\acute{\iota}\nu\omicron\iota$ ⁴ $\sigma\acute{\upsilon}\nu$ ⁵ $\tau\omicron\iota\varsigma$ $\theta\epsilon\omicron\iota\varsigma$ $\acute{\epsilon}\kappa$ $\pi\acute{\alpha}\nu\nu$ ⁶ $\delta\epsilon\iota\nu\acute{\omega}\nu$. 8. $\acute{\omega}\sigma\tau\epsilon$ $\eta\gamma\alpha\gamma\kappa\acute{\alpha}\sigma\theta\eta$ $\acute{\omicron}$ $\phi\rho\omicron\upsilon\rho\alpha\rho\chi\omicron\varsigma$ $\pi\lambda\eta\sigma\iota\acute{\alpha}\xi\epsilon\iota\nu$. 9. $\tau\alpha\acute{\upsilon}\tau\alpha$ $\sigma\acute{\omega}\delta\epsilon\tau\alpha\iota$ $\delta\iota\acute{\alpha}$ ⁷ $\text{Κ\acute{\upsilon}\rho\omicron\nu}$ $\tau\acute{\eta}$ $\sigma\tau\rho\alpha\tau\iota\acute{\alpha}$. 10. $\text{Κ\acute{\upsilon}\rho\omicron\varsigma}$ $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\alpha\iota\delta\epsilon\acute{\upsilon}\epsilon\tau\omicron$ $\sigma\acute{\upsilon}\nu$ $\tau\omicron\iota\varsigma$ $\acute{\alpha}\lambda\lambda\omicron\iota\varsigma$. 11. $\kappa\alpha\iota$ $\epsilon\acute{\upsilon}\theta\acute{\upsilon}\varsigma$ $\mu\epsilon\tau\epsilon\pi\acute{\epsilon}\mu\phi\theta\eta\sigma\alpha\nu$ $\phi\rho\omicron\upsilon\rho\omicron\iota$ $\text{Ἰωνικο\acute{\iota}}$. 12. $\acute{\epsilon}\nu$ $\tau\omicron\upsilon\tau\omega$ $\tau\acute{\omega}$ $\chi\omega\rho\acute{\iota}\omega$ $\acute{\omicron}$ $\omicron\iota\pi\acute{\epsilon}\tau\eta\varsigma$ $\acute{\epsilon}\sigma\tau\iota\nu$, $\epsilon\acute{\iota}$ $\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\lambda\upsilon\tau\alpha\iota$. 13. $\mu\epsilon\tau\acute{\alpha}$ $\tau\acute{\omega}\nu$ $\sigma\tau\rho\alpha\tau\iota\omega\tau\acute{\omega}\nu$ $\acute{\epsilon}\lambda\acute{\upsilon}\theta\eta$ $\acute{\omicron}$ $\lambda\omicron\chi\acute{\alpha}\gamma\omicron\varsigma$ $\tau\omicron\nu\delta\epsilon$ $\tau\omicron\nu$ $\tau\rho\acute{\omicron}\pi\omicron\nu$ ⁸. 14. $\acute{\omega}\sigma\tau\epsilon$ $\eta\gamma\alpha\gamma\kappa\acute{\alpha}\zeta\omicron\nu\tau\omicron$ $\sigma\chi\omicron\lambda\acute{\eta}$ ⁹ $\pi\omicron\rho\epsilon\acute{\upsilon}\epsilon\sigma\theta\alpha\iota$. 15. $\tau\acute{\omega}$ $\acute{\alpha}\delta\epsilon\lambda\phi\acute{\omega}$ $\acute{\upsilon}\pi\omicron$ $\tau\omicron\upsilon$ $\delta\iota\delta\alpha\sigma\kappa\acute{\alpha}\lambda\omicron\nu$ $\pi\epsilon\pi\alpha\acute{\iota}\delta\epsilon\upsilon\sigma\theta\omicron\nu$. 16. $\acute{\epsilon}\kappa$

¹ See p. 23¹.

² Instead of the usual order, article, attributive, substantive (see 56, Rem.), the article with the attributive may follow the substantive, in which case the substantive itself may also have the article *before* it.

³ *Sc. wing.*

⁴ An emphatic *they*.

⁵ *by the favour of.*

⁶ Adverbial modifier of the following adj., although the latter is here used as a subst.

⁷ *through, by.*

⁸ *in the following manner.* The acc. is used in many expressions with the force of an adverb.

⁹ *Cf. 106, I. 12.*

τῶν κωμῶν διήρπαστο ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ (even) τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν ξύλα. 17. οἱ στρατιῶται πρὸς τοὺς πολέμους πορεύεσθαι ἐκεκέλευντο τῷ στρατηγῷ. 18. οὕτως οὖν ἡθροίσθησαν Κύρῳ στρατιῶται· ὅτε ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἀρταξέρξην ἐστρατεύετο.

II. 1. They were saved by the peltasts. 2. Ten thousand heavy-armed men were sent for. 3. Pay was sent to the soldiers by Cyrus. 4. The bridges will have been destroyed. 5. I have been compelled by the general to stop. 6. They will be collected in the villages. 7. The young men will be educated by good teachers. 8. I was compelled to send pay to the guards. 9. Ten bowmen on the right (wing) are shot. 10. He was shot through the breastplate by the bowman. 11. The villages have been saved by the satrap's army. 12. He sent gifts to the general because he had been saved.

229.

VOCABULARY.

ἀντιστασιώτης, *opponent*.

αὖ, *adv., again, in turn*.

δεινός, -ή, -όν, *dreadful, perilous*;
δεινόν, *as subst., peril, danger*.

δῆ, *intensive and postpositive particle, now, indeed, in particular*.

διδάσκαλος, ό, *TEACHER*.

δύο, *TWO*.

ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ο,¹ *that, that one*.

εὐθύς, *adv., straightway, immediately*.

εὐάνυμος, -ον, *left (as opposed to δεξιός)*.

Ἰωνικός, -ή, -όν, *Ionic*.

Καστωλός, ἡ, *Castolus*.

ξύλον, *wood, plur. timbers*.

ὅδε, ἡδε, τόδε,² *this*.

οἶκοι³ (οἶκος, οἰκία), *adv., at home*.

ὅτε, *conjunctive adv., when*.

παιδεύω (cf. παιδίον), *educate, train*.

πιέζω, *press hard*.

σχολή, *leisure*.

τρόπος, ό, *manner, character*.

φρούρ-αρχος,⁴ ό, *commander of a garrison*.

φρουρός, ό, *watcher, guard*.

Χειρίστροφος, ό, *Chrisophus*.

¹ Demonstrative pronoun, referring to something *remote*. Declined like ἄλλος (193). The rule in 174 applies also to ἐκεῖνος.

² Demonstrative pronoun, referring to something *near*, declined like the article, with the demonstrative suffix -δε added to the forms.

ὅδε is used in referring forward to an object yet to be mentioned, οὗτος in referring back to an object already mentioned. The rule in 174 applies also to ὅδε.

³ See 28.

⁴ φρουρός and ἄρχω, *rule*.

LESSON XXX.

Lingual Mute Stems of the Consonant-Declension.

230.

PARADIGMS.

	ἡ νύξ (νυκτ-) NIGHT	ἡ ἐλπίς (ελπίδ-) hope	ἡ χάρις (χαριτ-) favour	ὁ ἡ ὄρνις (ορνιθ-) bird	ὁ γέρων (γεροντ-) old man
S. N.	νύξ	ἐλπίς	χάρις	ὄρνις	γέρων
G.	νυκτ-ός	ἐλπιδ-ος	χαριτ-ος	ὄρνιθ-ος	γέροντ-ος
D.	νυκτ-ί	ἐλπιδ-ι	χαριτ-ι	ὄρνιθ-ι	γέροντ-ι
A.	νύκτ-α	ἐλπιδ-α	χάριν	ὄρνιν	γέροντ-α
V.	νύξ	ἐπί	χάρις	ὄρνις	γέρον
D. N. A. V.	νύκτ-ε	ἐλπιδ-ε	χαριτ-ε	ὄρνιθ-ε	γέροντ-ε
G. D.	νυκτ-οῖν	ἐλπιδ-οῖν	χαριτ-οῖν	ὄρνιθ-οῖν	γερόντ-οῖν
P. N. V.	νύκτ-ες	ἐλπιδ-ες	χαριτ-ες	ὄρνιθ-ες	γέροντ-ες
G.	νυκτ-ῶν	ἐλπιδ-ων	χαριτ-ων	ὄρνιθ-ων	γερόντ-ων
D.	νυξί	ἐλπίσι	χάρισι	ὄρνισι	γέρουσι
A.	νύκτ-ας	ἐλπιδ-ας	χαριτ-ας	ὄρνιθ-ας	γέροντ-ας

a. Observe the case-endings (212) and apply the principles stated in 213, 1, a, 2, b, e, f, 4.

Apply the following laws of euphony to the paradigms:—

231. Mutes before Σ.—A lingual mute before σ is dropped.

232. Final Consonants.—The only consonants which can stand at the end of a word are ν , ρ , and s . Final ψ ($\pi\varsigma$) and ξ ($\kappa\varsigma$) are not exceptions. Other final consonants are dropped.

233. N and a Lingual before Σ.— $\nu\tau$, $\nu\delta$, $\nu\theta$ are dropped before σ , and preceding a , i , u lengthened to $\bar{a}$, $\bar{i}$, $\bar{u}$, ϵ to ϵi , o to ou .

a. Observe that $\nu\acute{\xi}$ is for $\nu\kappa\tau-\varsigma$, $\nu\kappa\kappa-\varsigma$ (231, 215 b).

Review 44, 45.

234. Gender.—(a) Masculine are all substantives whose stems end in $-\nu\tau$. (b) Feminine are all those whose stems end in $-\delta$, $-\theta$. (c) Some words of masculine or feminine *form*, denoting persons or animals, are of *common* gender (p. 20³).

235. Like the above are declined: ἄρχων, ἄρχοντ-ος (*cf.* φρούραρχος, and for the voc., see 213 d), *leader, commander*; μῦριάς, μῦριάδ-ος¹ (μύριοι), *ten thousand*; παῖς, παιδ-ός,² ὁ, ἡ (*cf.* παιδεύω), *child, boy, girl*; στλεγγίς, στλεγγίδ-ος, *a tiara*; φυγάς, φυγάδ-ος,¹ ὁ, ἡ, *fugitive*.

236.**PARADIGMS.**

	τὸ σῶμα (σωματ-) <i>body</i>	τὸ ὄνομα (ονοματ-) <i>NAME</i>	τὸ φρέαρ (φρεᾶτ-) <i>well</i>	τὸ τέρας (τερατ-) <i>portent</i>
S. N. A. V. G. D.	σῶμα σώματ-ος σώματ-ι	ὄνομα ὀνόματ-ος ὀνόματ-ι	φρέαρ φρέατ-ος φρέατ-ι	τέρας τέρατ-ος τέρατ-ι
D. N. A. V. G. D.	σώματ-ε σώματ-οιν	ὀνόματ-ε ὀνόματ-οιν	φρέατ-ε φρέατ-οιν	τέρατ-ε τεράτ-οιν
P. N. A. V. G. D.	σώματ-α σώματ-ων σώμασι	ὀνόματ-α ὀνόματ-ων ὀνόμασι	φρέατ-α φρέατ-ων φρέασι	τέρατ-α τερότ-ων τέρασι

a. Observe the case-endings, and apply the principle stated in 213, 5. φρέαρ and τέρας, and a few others, are exceptions to the rule.

237. Gender.—Neuter are all substantives with stems in -ατ-.

238. Like σῶμα and ὄνομα are declined: κτήμα, κτήματ-ος, *a possession*; πρᾶγμα, πράγματ-ος, *thing, matter, event*, plur. *affairs, troubles*; στόμα, στόματ-ος, *mouth*; στράτευμα, στρατεύματ-ος (στρατεύω), *army*; σύνθημα, συνθήματ-ος, *watchword*; τόξευμα, τοξεύματ-ος (τόξον), *arrow*; χρήμα, χρήματ-ος, *a thing that one uses*, plur. *things, wealth, money, property*.

239.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. τῷ δ' ἄρχοντι ἐκείνοι ἐχθροὶ ἦσαν. 2. τὸ δὲ ἄθλον ἦν στλεγγίς καλὴ καὶ χρῦσῇ. 3. οὕτως οὖν ἐκινδύνευσαν οἱ ἄρχοντες. 4. καὶ τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων κτήμασιν οὐκ ἐπεβούλευε. 5. ἔστι δὲ στράτευμα βαρβαρικὸν ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ. 6. καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ πέμψει φυλακὴν. 7. τὴν γέφυραν ταύτην λέλυκεν ὁ

¹ See 213 e.² Voc. παῖ (213 f). The gen. dual and plur. are irregular in accent

παῖδοιν, παῖδων. See 216.

σατράπης τῆς νυκτός.¹ 8. τὸ τοῦ φρέατος στόμα μικρόν ἐστιν. 9. φανερά οὐκ ἦν ἡ τῶν φυγάδων ἐπιβουλὴ. 10. οὗτος γὰρ Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος ἐστι παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός. 11. καὶ ἄξω τοὺς φυγάδας εἰς τὴν χώραν ἔνθεν εἰμὶ φυγὰς. 12. χρήσιμα γὰρ ἦν τὰ τοξεύματα τοῖς τοξόταις. 13. τί ἐστι τὸ σύνθημα; 14. στρατηγοὶ γὰρ καὶ λοχαγοὶ οὐ χρημάτων ἔνεκα σὺν Κύρῳ ἐπορεύοντο. 15. τοῖς οὖν θεοῖς χάριν εἶχον² ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι ὀλίγοι ἦσαν. 16. σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς καλαὶ τῷ στρατεύματι ἐλπίδες εἰσὶ σωτηρίας. 17. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν τούτοις ἐσμὲν τοῖς πράγμασι, συμβουλευσόμεθά σοι.³ 18. πελτασταὶ δὲ τετρακισχίλιοι ἦσαν, καὶ τῶν μετὰ Κύρου βαρβάρων δέκα μυριάδες. 19. ἐνταῦθα, ὦ Σεύθη, ἔξει τὸ στράτευμα τροφήν.

II. 1. But they had bows and arrows. 2. Across the river were old men and boys. 3. But in the houses were goats and birds. 4. Clearchus was a Lacedaemonian fugitive. 5. We have saved our persons⁴ and our arms. 6. The boys will be punished by their teacher. 7. We rightly feel grateful to the old man. 8. He has a good name. 9. Thus they rested during the night.⁵ 10. The gods send portents to men. 11. The barbarians caused⁶ the army trouble. 12. And he ordered the exiles from Miletus to take the field.

240.

VOCABULARY.

βαρβαρικός, -ή, -όν (βάρβαρος), barbarian, foreign.

ἐμός, -ή, -όν, my.

ἔνεκα, adv., with gen., on account of.⁷

ἐνθεν (ἐν), thence, whence.

ἐπι-βουλή,⁸ a plan against, plot.

ἐχθρός, -ά, -όν, hostile.⁹

κινδυνεύω (κίνδυνος), be in peril, run a risk.

Παρυσάτις, -ιδος, Parysatis.

σωτηρία (σώζω), safety, deliverance.

τετρακισ-χίλιοι, -αι, -α (χίλιοι),¹⁰ 4000.

Τίγρης, -ητος, ὁ, the Tigris.

τροφή, nourishment, support.

χρήσιμος, -η, -ον (χρήμα), serviceable.

¹ The gen. denotes the time within which. Cf. the use of the abl. in Lat.

² χάριν ἔχω, feel grateful.

³ Dat. sing. of the pronoun σύ, you. An enclitic form.

⁴ I.e. bodies.

⁵ See p. 63².

⁶ Use παρέχω.

⁷ Often called an improper preposition. ἔνεκα comm. follows its case.

⁸ Cf. ἐπι-βουλεύω. The underlying word is βουλή, plan.

⁹ Of personal hostility, whereas πολέμιος carries the idea of πόλεμος.

¹⁰ τετράκις, four times.

LESSON XXXI.

Contract Verbs in the Indicative.

241. Contraction of Vowels. — Two successive vowels, or a vowel and a diphthong, within a word, are often united by *contraction* into a single long vowel or diphthong.

Vowel with Vowel. — a. An open and a close vowel (11), in this order, form a diphthong, as ὄρε-ῖ, ὄρει; κρέα-ῖ, κρέαι.

b. Two like vowels form the common long, as δηλό-ω, δηλῶ; φιλέ-ητον, φιλήητον.

c. But ε-ε gives ει, and ο-ο gives ου, as φιλέ-ετον, φιλεῖτον; δηλό-ομεν, δηλοῦμεν.

d. An ο-sound (ο or ω) absorbs α, ε, or η, and forms ω, as τῖμά-ω, τῖμῶ; τῖμά-ομεν, τῖμῶμεν; φιλέ-ω, φιλῶ; δηλό-ητον, δηλῶτον.

e. But ε-ο and ο-ε give ου, as φιλέ-ομεν, φιλοῦμεν; δηλό-ετον, δηλοῦτον.

f. If α and ε or η come together, the first absorbs the second and forms either ᾱ or η, as τῖμά-ετον, τῖμᾶτον; τῖμά-ητον, τῖμᾶτον; ὄρε-α, ὄρη.

Vowel with Diphthong. — g. A simple vowel is absorbed before a diphthong that begins with the same vowel, as φιλέ-εις, φιλεῖς; δηλό-ουσι, δηλοῦσι; φιλέ-ης, φιλής; δηλο-οίην, δηλοίην.

h. Further, ε is absorbed before οι, as φιλε-οίην, φιλοίην.

i. In other cases, a simple vowel before a diphthong is contracted with its first vowel. The second disappears, unless it is ι, when it becomes subscript. Thus τῖμά-εις, τῖμᾶς; τῖμά-ουσι, τῖμῶσι; φιλέ-ουσι, φιλοῦσι; τῖμά-ης, τῖμᾶς; τῖμα-οίην, τῖμῶην.

j. But ο-ει and ο-η give οι, as δηλό-εις, δηλοῖς; δηλό-ης, δηλοῖς.

242. Accent of Contracted Syllables. — If neither of the contracted syllables had an accent, the contract syllable receives none.

243. If either of the contracted syllables had an accent, the contract syllable receives one.

a. If the contract syllable is a penult or antepenult, the accent is regular (27-29).

b. If the contract syllable is an ultima, it has the circumflex, unless the ultima before contraction had the acute, when it has the acute.

For the application of these principles, cf. the examples in 241.

244. Contract Verbs in the Indicative. — Verbs in *-αω*, *-εω*, and *-ωω* contract the final *α*, *ε*, or *ο* of the theme with the following variable vowel. The only contracted tenses are the present and imperfect.

τιμά-ω (*τιμή*), *honour*, *φιλέ-ω* (*φίλος*), *love*, and *δηλό-ω* (*δῆλος*), *manifest*, are thus inflected in the indicative: —

245.**PARADIGMS.**

	ACTIVE.		MIDDLE and PASSIVE.	
	Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
S. 1.	τιμ(άω)ῶ	ἐτίμ(αον)ων	τιμ(άο)ῶμαι	ἐτίμ(άο)ῶ-μην
2.	τιμ(άεις)ῆς	ἐτίμ(αες)ῶς	τιμ(άει)ῆ	ἐτίμ(άου)ῶ
3.	τιμ(άει)ῇ	ἐτίμ(αε)ῶ	τιμ(άε)ᾶ-ται	ἐτίμ(άε)ᾶ-το
D. 2.	τιμ(άε)ᾶ-τον	ἐτίμ(άε)ᾶ-τον	τιμ(άε)ᾶ-σθον	ἐτίμ(άε)ᾶ-σθον
3.	τιμ(άε)ᾶ-τον	ἐτίμ(άέ)ᾶ-την	τιμ(άε)ᾶ-σθον	ἐτίμ(άέ)ᾶ-σθην
P. 1.	τιμ(άο)ῶ-μεν	ἐτίμ(άο)ῶ-μεν	τιμ(άο)ῶ-μεθα	ἐτίμ(άο)ῶ-μεθα
2.	τιμ(άε)ᾶ-τε	ἐτίμ(άε)ᾶ-τε	τιμ(άε)ᾶ-σθε	ἐτίμ(άε)ᾶ-σθε
3.	τιμ(άου)ῶσι	ἐτίμ(αον)ων	τιμ(άο)ῶ-νται	ἐτίμ(άο)ῶ-ντο
S. 1.	φιλ(έω)ῶ	ἐφιλ(εον)ουν	φιλ(έο)οὔ-μαι	ἐφιλ(έο)οὔ-μην
2.	φιλ(έεις)εῖς	ἐφιλ(εες)εῖς	φιλ(έει)εῖ	ἐφιλ(έου)οὔ
3.	φιλ(έει)εῖ	ἐφιλ(εε)εῖ	φιλ(έε)εῖ-ται	ἐφιλ(έε)εῖ-το
D. 2.	φιλ(έε)εῖ-τον	ἐφιλ(έε)εῖ-τον	φιλ(έε)εῖ-σθον	ἐφιλ(έε)εῖ-σθον
3.	φιλ(έε)εῖ-τον	ἐφιλ(έέ)εῖ-την	φιλ(έε)εῖ-σθον	ἐφιλ(έέ)εῖ-σθην
P. 1.	φιλ(έο)οὔ-μεν	ἐφιλ(έο)οὔ-μεν	φιλ(έο)οὔμεθα	ἐφιλ(έο)οὔ-μεθα
2.	φιλ(έε)εῖ-τε	ἐφιλ(έε)εῖ-τε	φιλ(έε)εῖ-σθε	ἐφιλ(έε)εῖ-σθε
3.	φιλ(έου)οὔσι	ἐφιλ(εον)ουν	φιλ(έο)οὔ-νται	ἐφιλ(έο)οὔ-ντο

S. 1.	δηλ(όω)ῶ	ἔδηλ(οον)ουν	δηλ(όο)οὔ-μαι	ἔδηλ(οό)οὔ-μην
2.	δηλ(έεις)οῖς	ἔδηλ(οες)ους	δηλ(έει)οῖ	ἔδηλ(όου)οὔ
3.	δηλ(έει)οῖ	ἔδηλ(οε)ου	δηλ(έε)οὔ-ται	ἔδηλ(έε)οὔ-το
D. 2.	δηλ(έε)οὔ-τον	ἔδηλ(έε)οὔ-τον	δηλ(έε)οὔ-σθον	ἔδηλ(έε)οὔ-σθον
3.	δηλ(έε)οὔ-τον	ἔδηλ(οέ)οὔ-την	δηλ(έε)οὔ-σθον	ἔδηλ(οέ)οὔ-σθην
P. 1.	δηλ(όο)οὔ-μεν	ἔδηλ(όο)οὔ-μεν	δηλ(οό)οὔ-μεθα	ἔδηλ(οό)οὔ-μεθα
2.	δηλ(έε)οὔ-τε	ἔδηλ(έε)οὔ-τε	δηλ(έε)οὔ-σθε	ἔδηλ(έε)οὔ-σθε
3.	δηλ(όου)οὔσι	ἔδηλ(οον)ουν	δηλ(όο)οὔ-νται	ἔδηλ(όο)οὔ-ντο

a. To obtain the *uncontracted* form, omit the syllable next after the parenthesis; to obtain the *contracted* form, omit the letters in the parenthesis.

246. In the same manner are inflected βοάω, *call out, shout*; ἐρωτάω, *ask, inquire*; νικάω, *conquer*; ἀδικέω (δίκη), *do wrong, wrong*; καλέω, *call*; ποιέω, *do, make*; θανατόω, *condemn to death*.

247.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ὦδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογὴν. 2. ᾠκουν¹ δὲ τοῦτον τὸν τόπον Μῆδοι. 3. νικάτε τοὺς σὺν Κύρῳ ὀπλίτας. 4. ἐρωτᾷ εἰ² καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατιώταις σπονδαί εἰσιν. 5. τούτους γὰρ οἱ πολῖται μάλιστα ἐφίλουν. 6. καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα ἀπὸ τῆς οὐράς. 7. ὁ δὲ τόπος οὗτος Καστωλοῦ πεδῖον ἐκαλεῖτο. 8. ἐδήλου δὲ τοῦτο τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ. 9. καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν οἱ Θρᾶκες. 10. ὁ δ' ἄρχων ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ τῆς κώμης. 11. τοὺς Κύρου φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν³ πειράται. 12. Κύρος ἐτίμα τοῦτον τὸν Πέρσην δι' εὐνοίαν. 13. εἰ τοῦτον θανατοῦσιν, ἀδικοῦσιν. 14. ὁ δὲ Κύρος ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον. 15. τί τοῦτο πρῶτον ἡρώτας; 16. πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κύρος ἡρώτα, Οὐκοῦν⁴ ὕστερον,⁵ ὥς αὐτὸς⁶ σὺ ὁμολογεῖς,

¹ See 76 end. αι- and ει- become η- when augmented; οι- becomes ω-.

² *whether*. The conjunctive particle *εἰ* (see 168) is used not only in *conditions*, in the sense of *if*, but also, as here, to introduce an *indirect question*.

³ Contract form for ποιεῖν. κακῶς ποίειν, *do harm to*.

⁴ *Not then?* Equivalent to *nōnne* in Latin.

⁵ *afterwards*, acc. sing. neut. used adverbially.

⁶ *yourself*, Latin *ipse*, to be taken with the following σὺ, *you*.

κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν; 17. ἐρωτῶμεν εἰ τὰ σώματα διεσώσασθε καὶ τὰ ὄπλα. 18. καὶ εὐθὺς τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐβόᾳ καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς. 19. τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόᾳ ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. 20. θήρᾳ ἐποιούντο οἱ τε¹ Ξενοφῶντος παῖδες καὶ οἱ τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν.²

II. 1. What are the other soldiers doing? 2. The river is called Marsyas. 3. The barbarians were wronging the guard. 4. He conquers the enemy. 5. For they were occupying strongholds. 6. You love these especially. 7. This (man) asks, What are you doing? 8. The Thracians wrong the exiles. 9. And he honoured the commanders with other gifts.³ 10. But Xenophon was asking, Why do you call? 11. But the soldiers were shouting to the guards to stop. 12. They ask why you are not calling the bowmen. 13. But when⁴ Cyrus called the generals, I proceeded to Asia.

248.

VOCABULARY.

βαρβαρικῶς (βαρβαρικός), adv., in the barbarian tongue.

Ἑλληνικῶς (Ἑλληνικός), adv., in Greek.

θήρᾳ (θηρεύω), a hunt or chase.

κακῶς (κακός), adv., badly, ill.

μάλιστα (μάλα), adv., most, especially.

μελετάω, practise.

Μήδος, ὁ, a Mede.

Ξενοφῶν, -ώντος, Xenophon.

οἰκέω⁵ (οἶκος), inhabit, dwell, occupy.

ὁμολογέω, agree, confess.

ὀρμάω, set in motion, often intrans. hasten; mid. start, set forth.

οὐρά, tail, rear (of an army).

παλιν, adv., again, back.

πειράω (πεῖρα), try, prove; mid.⁶ try.

πολιορκέω, besiege.

συλλογή, a levying, levy.

ὕστερος, -ᾱ, -ον (cf. ὕστεραίος), later.

ὥδε (ὅδε),⁷ adv., thus.

ὥς, conjunctive adv., as, how, proclitic.

¹ τε . . . καί, both . . . and. τέ is enclitic. For the accent of the preceding οἱ (proclitic), see 186 c.

² I.e. παῖδες.

³ See p. 47⁵.

⁴ Cf. 175, I. 8.

⁵ See p. 77¹.

⁶ Subjective middle (198).

⁷ See p. 71². The same distinction holds for the advs. οὕτως, which refers to what precedes, and ὥδε, which refers to what follows.

LESSON XXXII.

Affinity of Words. — Reading Lesson.

Give the meaning of the following words: —

249.

WORD LIST.

ἀγοράζω *	ἐμός	κτῆμα	πάνυ	σχολή
ἀδεῶς	ἐνεκα	λίνεος	παρασκευ-	σῶμα
ἀδικέω *	ἐνθα *	μάλιστα *	άζω *	σωτηριᾶ *
αἶξ	ἐνθεν *	μάστιξ	Παρύσατις	ταχέως
ἄκρον	ἐνταῦθα *	μελετάω	παύω *	τέρας
ἄλευρον	ἐντεῦθεν *	μετά	πειράω *	τετρακισχί-
ἀναβολή	ἐπειμι *	μεταπέμπω *	περί	λιοι *
ἀναπαύω *	ἐπιβουλή *	Μῆδος	πιέζω	Τίγρης
ἀντιστασιώ-	ἐπιμέλεια	μισθοφόρος *	πλησίον *	τιμάω *
της	ἐρωτάω	μυριάς *	ποιέω	τόξευμα *
ἀπέχω *	εὐθύς	νικάω	πολιορκέω	τρόπος
ἀποπέμπω *	εὐώνυμος	νύξ	πορεύω	τροφή
ἄρχων *	ἐχθρός	Ξενοφῶν	πράγμα	ὑπερβολή
αὖ	ἡδέως	ξύλον	Πρόξενος	ὑπό
βαρβαρικός *	ἡμελημένως	ὄδε *	πτέρυξ	ὑστερος *
βαρβαρικῶς *	θανατόω	οἰκέω *	πυκνός	φάλαγξ
βοάω	θήρᾱ *	οἰκοθεν *	σκευάζω *	φιλέω *
γέρον	Θράξ	οἰκοι *	σκόλοψ	φρέαρ
γεύω	θυσιᾶ *	ὀκηνηρῶς	σπάνιος	φρούραρχος *
δανείζω	θώραξ	ὄλος	Σπαρτιάτης	φρουρός *
δεινός	ιερεῖον *	Ὀλύνθιος	σπάρτον	Φρυγιά
δή	ἱππικός *	ὀμολογέω	στάδιον	φυγᾶς
δηλώω *	Ἰωνικός	ὄνομα	σταθμός	φύλαξ *
διδάσκαλος	κακῶς *	ὄπως *	στερρῶς	Χάλυψ
διέχω *	καλέω	ὀρμάω	στλεγγίς	Χάρις
διώρυξ	Καστωλός	ὀρνίς	στόμα	Χειρίσοφος
δόλοψ	κήρυξ	ὄτε	στράτευμα *	χιλός *
δύο	Κιλικιᾶ *	οὐκέτι *	συλλογή	χρήμα *
εἶτα	Κίλιξ *	οὐρά	σύνθημα	χρήσιμος *
εἰκίνος	Κίλισσα *	παιδεύω *	συσκευάζω *	χρῆτω
Ἑλληνικῶς *	κινδυνεύω *	παῖς *	συστρατεύο-	ᾧδε *
ἐλπὶς	κλώψ	πάλιν	μαι *	ᾧς

Review 194.

Associate each starred word in 249 with some other word or words of those given in 130, 194, and 249, related to it in form and meaning.

Review 140 and 142.

Read and translate again 143 and 195.

Read and translate the following passage:—

250. Κῦρος.

III. ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα τῷ Κύρῳ ἠθροίζετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς μὲν ἦν, φίλος δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ. τοῦτῳ Κῦρος ἔδωκε μῦρίους δāρεικούς. ὁ δὲ στράτευμα ἠθροισεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν
 5 χρημάτων, καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὀρμώμενος τοῖς Θραξί, καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ χρήματα ἔδωκαν αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ ἐν Χερρονήσῳ πόλεις. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτως ἐτρέφετο αὐτῷ τὸ
 10 στράτευμα. Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ἦν αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἰκοὶ ἀντιστασιωτῶν αἰτεῖ Κῦρον εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους μισθόν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους μισθόν. οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ αὐτῷ ἐτρέφετο στράτευμα. Πρόξενον δὲ καὶ Σοφαίνετον καὶ Σωκράτην ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους ἐκέλευσε στρα-
 15 τιώτᾳ λαμβάνειν· καὶ ἐποιοῦν οὕτως οὗτοι.

NOTES.

5. ἐπολέμει: this verb is followed by the dat. — ὀρμώμενος: contracted from ὀρμαόμενος, pres. part. mid. — 6. ὠφέλει, assisted (ὠφελέω). — Ἕλληνας: acc. plur. of Ἕλλην, Ἕλλην-ος, ὁ, a Greek. — ὥστε, so that, conj., compounded of ὡς (proclitic) and the enclitic particle τέ. See 186 c. — 8. πόλεις: nom. plur. of πόλις. — ἐτρέφετο: τρέφω, support, maintain. — 9. Θετταλός, ὁ, a Thessalian. See below Θετταλίᾳ, Thessaly. — 10. πιεζόμενος: here the passive participle. — αἰτεῖ, asks (αἰτέω). Such verbs take two accs., as here Κῦρον and μισθόν. — 11. εἰς, for. — ξένους: ξένος here in the sense of foreign soldier, mercenary. — 14. ὄντας: acc. plur. masc. of ὢν.

Note in the previous passages (I., II., III.) that each new sentence begins by the rule with a conjunction.

Review the directions for translating into Greek in 149.

Translate the following passage into Greek: —

251. Cyrus, the son of Darius and Parysatis, was satrap of Phrygia. When Darius died, Artaxerxes, Cyrus's brother, became king, and dishonoured Cyrus. But his mother loved him and rescued (him). When he had been sent back again to his province, he immediately collected an army, both Greek and barbarian. For he planned to become king instead of Artaxerxes. He collected his army in the following manner. He gave money to Clearchus and Aristippus and bade them to enlist soldiers with this. And they did so.

LESSON XXXIII.

Tense-Systems. — Principal Parts. — Vowel Verbs. — Deponents.

Review the indicative of λύω as given in 672-677.

252. The tense-stems (152) so far presented may be grouped in the following *Tense-Systems*: —

a. *Present* system, including the pres. and impf. tenses in all the voices. Tense-suffix -ο/ε, tense-stem λῡο/ε. Thus λύω, ἔ-λῡο-ν, λῡο-μαι, ἐ-λῡό-μην.

b. *Future* system, including the fut. act. and mid. Tense-suffix -σο/ε, tense-stem λῡσο/ε. Thus λύσω, λύσο-μαι.

c. *First aorist* system, including the first aor. act. and mid. Tense-suffix -σα, tense-stem λῡσα-. Thus ἔ-λῡσα, ἐ-λῡσά-μην.

d. *First perfect* system, including the first perf. and first plup. act. Tense-suffix -κα- (first plup. -κει-), tense-stem λελυκα- (first plup. λελυκει-). Thus λέλυκα, ἐ-λελύκει-ν.

e. *Perfect middle* system, including the perf., plup., and fut. perf. mid. and pass. Tense-suffix none (in the fut. perf. -σο/ε), tense-stem λελυ- (fut. perf. λελῡσο/ε). Thus λέλυ-μαι, ἐ-λελύ-μην, λελῡσο-μαι.

f. *First passive* system, including the first aor. and first fut. pass. Tense-suffix -θε, lengthened to -θη in indic. (first fut. pass. -θησο/ε), tense-stem λυθε-, λυθη- (first fut. pass. λυθησο/ε). Thus ἐ-λύθη-ν, λυθήσο-μαι.

Observe that the tense-suffixes and reduplication *form* the tense-stems, the personal-endings and augment (found only in the secondary tenses of the *indicative*) *inflect* them.

253. The *Principal Parts* of a verb are the first person singular indicative of the first tense named in each of the six systems above, namely, present active, future active, aorist active, perfect active, perfect middle, aorist passive, as λύω, λύσω, ἐλύσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην.

a. Not all verbs have all the principal parts; that is, some verbs are *defective*.

254. Verbs are called *Vowel Verbs*, *Mute Verbs*, *Liquid Verbs*, according as their themes end in a vowel, a mute, or a liquid.

a. In forming the different tense-stems, the theme of vowel verbs is sometimes modified,

b. Most themes ending in a short vowel lengthen this vowel in all the systems except the present, α to η, ε to η, ο to ω; but when α follows ε, ι, or ρ, it becomes ᾱ. Thus:—

τιμάω,	τιμήσω,	ἐτίμησα,	τετίμηκα,	τετίμημαι,	ἐτιμήθην.
φιλέω,	φιλήσω,	ἐφίλησα,	πεφίληκα, ¹	πεφίλημαι,	ἐφιλήθην.
δηλόω,	δηλώσω,	ἐδήλωσα,	δεδήλωκα,	δεδήλωμαι,	ἐδηλώθην.
πειράω,	πειράσω,	ἐπείρᾱσα,	πεπείρᾱκα,	πεπείρᾱμαι,	ἐπειράθην.

Give the principal parts of the following vowel verbs, all of which are regular and complete:—

ἀδικέω, *wrong*; λοιδορέω, *abuse*; μισθόω (μισθός), *let for hire, let*; νικέω, *conquer*; οἰκέω,² *inhabit*; ὁμολογέω, *agree*; ὀρμάω, *set in motion*; ποίω, *do, make*.

255. Many verbs, called *Deponent Verbs*, are never used in the active voice, but only in the middle, or in the middle and passive.

¹ See 120.

² See p. 77¹.

a. In most deponent verbs the principal parts are the pres., fut., aor., and perf., of the indicative middle. These are called *middle* deponents. Thus : —

αἰτιόμαι, blame, accuse,	αἰτιάσομαι, ἡτιᾶσάμην, ¹ ἡτιάμαι.
ἡγέομαι (ἄγω), lead, conduct,	ἡγήσομαι, ἡγήσάμην, ἡγήμαι.
χράομαι (χρήμα), use, employ,	χρήσομαι, ² ἐχρησάμην, κέχρημαι.

b. A few deponent verbs have the aor. pass. instead of the aor. mid. These are called *passive* deponents.

256.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. τοῦ στρατεύματος³ ἡγείτο εἰς τὸ πεδίον. 2. οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἔπαισαν καὶ ἐλοιδόρησαν τὸν ἄνθρωπον. 3. ἤδη ἐκκλησιᾶν ἐπεποιήκει τῶν στρατιωτῶν. 4. χρησόμεθα, ὦ ναῦται, τοῖς πλοίοις.⁴ 5. Κῦρος γὰρ τοῦτον ἐτετιμήκει δι' εὐνοίαν. 6. ἐμεμισθώμεθα⁵ τὴν οἰκίαν. 7. οἶνον ἐκ τῆς τοῦ φοίνικος βαλάνου πεποιήκᾱσι. 8. ὡς Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν⁶ λόγῳ δεδήλωται. 9. εἶτα δὲ ἐξήγον⁷ τὸν ἄρχοντα. 10. πορεύεσθαι εἰᾱσε⁸ τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς. 11. ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς ἐπειράσατο τὰς κώμας περιέχειν. 12. πολεμήσει σὺν τοῖς τῶν Μιλησίων φυγάσι. 13. καὶ τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν⁹ ὑπάγειν παρεκελεύετο. 14. Ξενοφῶν ἡσπάσατο τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς. 15. ἡτιῶντο δὲ τὸν ἄρμωστήν. 16. ἡκολούθησαν δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς¹⁰ εἰς ἀγορὰν τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν ὡς¹¹ διᾱκόσιοι. 17. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ἐπιωρκήκᾱσι τε¹² καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς

¹ See p. 77¹.

² Against the rule (254 b), α is lengthened to η.

³ The gen. is used with verbs of *ruling* and *leading*. But ἄγω is an exception.

⁴ χρᾶομαι takes the dat., as ὕτωρ in Latin the ablative.

⁵ Causative mid. (197 a), in the sense, *have let to oneself, hire*.

⁶ Cf. 228, I. 3. So ὁ ἔμπροσθεν λόγος, *the previous book*.

⁷ The accent in compound verbs cannot pass back beyond the augment or reduplication.

⁸ A few verbs beginning with a vowel take the syllabic augment (76). With ε- this augment is contracted into ει-. See p. 16².

⁹ *those in front*. A substantive denoting *men* or *things* is often omitted after the article and an attributive. — The dat. here follows παρεκελεύετο as *indirect object*. See p. 25².

¹⁰ The dat. is used with words expressing *association* or *opposition*.

¹¹ With words of *number* and *measure*, ὡς signifies *about*.

¹² Cf. 247, I. 20, and see 186 b.

καὶ τοὺς ὄρκους λελύκασιν. 18. τῷ σατράπῃ¹ οὐ τοῦ μισθοῦ ἔνεκα μόνον² ὑπηρετήσομεν ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος.³ 19. ἐτετίμησο γὰρ ὑπὸ Ἀρταξέρξου δι' εὐνοίαν τε καὶ πιστότητα.

II. 1. He was loved by the barbarians. 2. They have been hired by the general.⁴ 3. The army was besieged by the enemy. 4. Miletus was besieged both⁵ by land and by sea. 5. I made war against the Thracians. 6. Cyrus will besiege Miletus both by land and by sea. 7. Cyrus has honoured this (man) on account of his valour. 8. For the soldiers were not loved by the citizens. 9. He has been made satrap of this country by Darius. 10. But when Darius died, messengers were sent to Artaxerxes by Cyrus. 11. Since Clearchus has soldiers and boats, he will besiege the stronghold of the enemy.

257.

VOCABULARY.

ἀκολουθεῖν, follow, accompany.

ἀσπάζομαι, welcome, greet.

βάλανος, ἡ, acorn, date.

διᾶ-κόσιοι,⁶ -αι, -α, 200.

ἑάω, permit, allow.

ἐκ-κλησιᾶ (καλέω), a meeting, an assembly.

ἐμ-προσθεν (ἐν, πρόσθεν), adv., in front, before.

ἐξ-άγω, lead forth.

ἐπι-ορκέω⁷ (ὄρκος), swear falsely, commit perjury, forswear or perjure oneself.

Μιλήσιος, -ᾱ, -ον (Μίλητος), Milesian.

παρα-κελεύομαι, urge along, exhort.

περι-έχω,⁸ surround, encompass.

πιστότης, -ητος, ἡ (πιστός), fidelity.

πολεμέω (πόλεμος), make or carry on war.

τελευτάω, end, finish, die.

ὕπ-άγω, lead on slowly, intrans. advance slowly; mid. suggest craftily.

ὑπηρετέω, serve.

φοῖνιξ, -ῖκος,⁹ ὅ, the date-palm.

¹ The dat. of the indirect object (see p. 25²) is used with many intransitive verbs, some of which in English take a direct object without to.

² Used adverbially. οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καί, not only . . . but also.

³ In the same construction with μισθοῦ.

⁴ See 224.

⁵ See 181, I. 15.

⁶ See p. 43⁴.

⁷ The prep. does not suffer elision in any of the forms of ἐπιορκέω. See 127.

⁸ In compound verbs whose first part is περί, the prep. always retains its final vowel. See 127.

⁹ The ι of the stem φοινίκ- is shortened in the N. and V. sing. Cf. κῆρυξ, p. 67¹.

LESSON XXXIV.

Adjectives of the Consonant-Declension.

258. The feminine of adjectives of the consonant-declension, when it differs from the masculine, follows the A-declension. Its nominative singular ends in *a* (short).

259. Stems in -ντ-. — In these the feminine has -σα with the preceding vowel lengthened. But stems in -εντ- have the feminine in -εσσα.¹

260.

PARADIGMS.

	χαρίεις (χαριεντ-), ² <i>pleasing</i>			πᾶς (παντ-), ³ <i>all</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N.	χαρίεις	χαρίεσσα	χαρίεν	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πάν
G.	χαρίεντος	χαρίεσσης	χαρίεντος	παντός	πάσης	παντός
D.	χαρίεντι	χαρίεσση	χαρίεντι	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί
A.	χαρίεντα	χαρίεσσαν	χαρίεν	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πάν
V.	χαρίεν	χαρίεσσα	χαρίεν	πάν	πᾶσα	πάν
D. N. A. V.	χαρίεντε	χαρίεσσᾶ	χαρίεντε	πάντε	πᾶσᾶ	πάντε
G. D.	χαρίεντων	χαρίεσσῶν	χαρίεντων	πάντων	πᾶσῶν	πάντων
P. N. V.	χαρίεντες	χαρίεσσαι	χαρίεντα	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
G.	χαρίέντων	χαρίεσσῶν	χαρίέντων	πάντων	πᾶσῶν	πάντων
D.	χαρίσι	χαρίεσσαις	χαρίσι	πᾶσι	πᾶσαις	πᾶσι
A.	χαρίεντας	χαρίεσσᾶς	χαρίεντα	πάντας	πᾶσᾶς	πάντα

a. For the endings and formation of the cases in the masc. and neut., see 212, 213, 1, 2, f, 4, 5, 233. But note that *χαρίεσι* in the dat. plur. is formed on a shorter stem *χαριετ-* (231), and that the stem *παντ-*, although not barytone, forms the voc. *πάν* (213 f).

b. In the form *πάν* the vowel is long by exception; the compounds have it short, as *ἄπαν*, *σύμπαν*. The gen. and dat. sing. of *πᾶς* conform in accent to 216, but not the gen. and dat. dual and plur.

¹ Any further analysis of the feminine forms is here impracticable.

² Cf. *χάρις* (230), *grace, favour*.

³ Cf. *πᾶν* (202), *wholly, altogether*.

261. There are two other important adjectives with stems in -ντ-, *έκών*, *willing*, and its compound *ἄκων*, *ἄκουσα*, *ἄκον*,¹ *unwilling*, declined in the masculine like *γέρον* (230), except that the vocative singular is like the nominative. Present active participles are declined in the same manner.

262.

PARADIGMS.

	έκών (έκοντ-), <i>willing</i>			λύων (λύοντ-), <i>loosing</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N. V.	έκών	έκούσα	έκόν	λύων	λύουσα	λύον
G.	έκόντος	έκούσης	έκόντος	λύοντος	λύούσης	λύοντος
D.	έκόντι	έκούση	έκόντι	λύοντι	λύούση	λύοντι
A.	έκόντα	έκούσαν	έκόν	λύοντα	λύουσιν	λύον
D. N. A. V.	έκόντε	έκούσᾱ	έκόντε	λύοντε	λύούσᾱ	λύοντε
G. D.	έκόντοιιν	έκούσαιιν	έκόντοιιν	λύόντοιιν	λύούσαιιν	λύόντοιιν
P. N. V.	έκόντες	έκούσαι	έκόντα	λύόντες	λύουσιν	λύοντα
G.	έκόντων	έκουσῶν	έκόντων	λύόντων	λύουσῶν	λύόντων
D.	έκούσι	έκούσαις	έκούσι	λύουσι	λύούσαις	λύουσι
A.	έκόντας	έκούσας	έκόντα	λύοντας	λύούσας	λύοντα

263.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. πάντες οὗτοι οἱ σύμμαχοί ἀπεχώρουν. 2. οἱ λησται διαρπάξουσιν ἅπαντα. 3. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν ἡ γῆ πεδῖον ἅπαν.² 4. ἀλλὰ ψιλὴ ἦν ἅπασα ἡ χώρα. 5. ἐνταῦθα ἦν παράδεισος πάνυ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα³ ὦραι φύουσι. 6. πάντες γὰρ οἱ τούτων τῶν Περσῶν παῖδες ἐπὶ ταῖς Ἀρταξέρξου θύραις παιδεύονται. 7. πάντα δὲ ταῦτα σατραπεύουσιν οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι. 8. τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρακελεύεται ὁμολογεῖν. 9. αἱ σπονδαί εἰσι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπασι. 10. ὥστε χρήματα ἔπεμψεν εἰς τὴν τροφὴν πάντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἡ βασιλεία. 11. ταύτην τὴν χώραν διήρ-

¹ Compounded of *a-* *privative* (p. 51⁴) and *έκών*. Cf. English *un-willing*, Latin, *in-vītus*.

² *I.e. wholly a plain.*

³ *so many as, i.e. which*, acc. plur. neut. of the relative of quantity or number, *ὅσος, -η, -ον*. So *ὅσοι*, nom. plur. masc., in 15 below.

πασαν ὡς πολεμίαν οὖσαν.¹ 12. οἱ ἀνύπαντες ὀπλῖται ἦσαν μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι. 13. τὸ μὲν ἐνθύμημα χαρίεν ἦν, τὸ δ' ἔργον ἀδύνατον. 14. διαρπάζοντες τὰ χωρία τῶν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις θησαυρῶν² οὐκ ἀπειχόμεθα. 15. στρατηγὸν δὲ Κύρον ἐποίησε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται. 16. καὶ εὐθύς πᾶσιν ἐβόᾳ καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι Ἀρταξέρξης εἰς μάχην παρασκευάζεται. 17. κινδυνεύοντες καὶ ἄκοντες, ὅμως οἱ στρατιῶται δι' αἰσχύνην Κύρῳ συνηκολούθησαν.

II. 1. The gifts of the satrap were pleasing. 2. All had bronze armour. 3. All these barbarians are hostile to Cyrus. 4. He will withdraw with³ all his army. 5. Everything⁴ has been done by the generals. 6. All the soldiers proceeded willingly.⁵ 7. The entire army proceeded through the plain. 8. The soldiers all had shields. 9. All exhorted Xenophon⁶ to do this. 10. Clearchus commanded the entire army to proceed. 11. The Cilician queen, being in peril, withdrew from⁷ the country. 12. You put the man to death because he was plotting against⁸ Cyrus.

264.

VOCABULARY.

ἀ-δύνατος, -ον⁹ (δυνατός), impossible, unable, powerless.

αἰσχύνη, shame, disgrace.

ἀ-πᾶς, -ᾶσα, -αν (πᾶς),¹⁰ all together, all.

ἀπο-χωρεῖν,¹¹ withdraw, retreat.

ἐνθύμημα, -ατος, thought, device, plan.

ἔργον, WORK, deed, execution.

ληστής, plunderer, robber.

ὅμως, conj., nevertheless.

σύμ-πᾶς, -ᾶσα, -αν (σύν, πᾶς),¹² all together, all.

συν-ακολουθεῖν, follow with, accompany.

φύω, produce.

ψιλός, -ή, -όν, bare.

ᾠρά, period, time, season.

¹ ὦν, οὔσα, ὤν, pres. part. of εἶμι.

² Cf. 201, I. 3.

³ I.e. having.

⁴ Use the plur.

⁵ In Greek, willing, the adj., not the adv.

⁶ Cf. 256, I. 13, and I. 8 above.

⁷ ἐξ.

⁸ In Greek, as plotting against. Cf. I. 11 above.

⁹ See 147.

¹⁰ Strengthened by the prefix ἀ-. Cf. σύμ-πᾶς.

¹¹ χωρεῖν (cf. χάρα, χωρίον), give place, withdraw.

¹² See p. 45⁹.

LESSON XXXV.

Subjunctive Active.

265. The distinctions of *time* which mark the various tenses in the indicative disappear in the subjunctive and imperative and generally in the optative and infinitive.

266. When these distinctions disappear, the tenses differ only in denoting the *continuance*, the *completion*, or simply the *occurrence* of an action. The present tense denotes an action as *continued* or *repeated*, the perfect as *completed*, the aorist as simply *brought to pass*.

267. Only these three tenses occur in the subjunctive, and the perfect is rare. The *time* of the present and aorist is precisely the same, and is generally future. But the present expresses the action as *going on* or *repeated* in the future, while the aorist expresses simply its *occurrence*. Thus *ἐὰν κωλύῃ* means, *if he shall be hindering* or *if he shall hinder* (habitually), but *ἐὰν κωλύσῃ* means simply, *if he shall hinder*. See further the examples in 270, 272.

268.

PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT.	FIRST AORIST.	FIRST PERFECT.
S. 1	λύω	λύσω	λελύκω
2	λύῃς	λύσῃς	λελύκης
3	λύῃ	λύσῃ	λελύκη
D. 2	λύῃ-τον	λύσῃ-τον	λελύκη-τον
3	λύῃ-τον	λύσῃ-τον	λελύκη-τον
P. 1	λύω-μεν	λύσω-μεν	λελύκω-μεν
2	λύῃ-τε	λύσῃ-τε	λελύκη-τε
3	λύωσι	λύσωσι	λελύκωσι

a. The subjv. has the long variable vowel ω/η , even in the aor. and perf., in place of the final vowel ($\circ/\epsilon$, $-a$, $-a$) of the tense-suffix. The form is ω before μ or ν in the endings, elsewhere η .

b. The subjv. uses the endings of the primary tenses (156). For the forms λύω, λύῃς, λύῃ, λύωσι (for λύω-μι, λύῃ-σι, λύῃ-τι, λύω-νσι), and the corresponding forms in the aor. and perf., see 158 a.

269. Future Indicative and Present Subjunctive of εἰμι.

	FUTURE INDICATIVE.			PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.		
1	ἔσο-μαι		ἔσό-μεθα	ᾶ		ᾶ-μεν
2	ἔσει	ἔσει-σθον	ἔσ-εσθε	ῆς	ῆ-τον	ῆ-τε
3	ἔσ-ται	ἔσει-σθον	ἔσο-νται	ῆ	ῆ-τον	ᾶσι

a. The fut. has the mid. form. Cf. the paradigm in 200. In ἔσται (for ἔσει-ται) the variable vowel is dropped. ᾶ is for ἔω from εσ-ω (184), etc.

270. First Person of Subjunctive as Imperative.

Examine the following: —

γνώμη αἰὲν κολάζωμεν, *let us always inflict punishment with judgment.*

τὰ Λύκεια θύσωμεν, *let us offer the Lycaean sacrifices.*

μὴ λύσωμεν τὴν γέφυραν, *let us not destroy the bridge.*

a. Observe that these sentences all express exhortation; that the verb is in the first pers. plur. of the subjv.; and that, if the exhortation is neg., μὴ, *not*, is used. Hence: —

271. Rule of Syntax. — The first person of the subjunctive (generally plural) is used in exhortations. Its negative is μὴ.

272. Subjunctive in Protasis.

In conditional sentences the clause containing the condition is called the *protasis*, and that containing the conclusion is called the *apodosis*.

Examine the following: —

ἢν παρέχωμεν ἀγοράν, ἔξετε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, *if we provide a market, you will have supplies.*

εἰάν μὴ ταῦτα ποιήσῃ, ἀποχωρήσομεν, *if he does not do this, we shall withdraw.*

εἰάν νικήσωμεν, τὴν χώραν οὐ διαρπάσει, *if we conquer, he will not plunder the country.*

a. Observe that these sentences state a supposed future case *vividly*; that the protasis is expressed by the particle *ἐάν*,¹ *if*, with the subjv., and the apodosis by the fut. indic.; and that when the protasis is negative it takes *μή*, but when the apodosis is negative it takes *οὐ*. Hence:—

273. Rule of Syntax.—When a supposed future case is stated distinctly and vividly (as *if I shall go* or *if I go* in English), the protasis generally takes the subjunctive with *ἐάν*, the apodosis the future indicative (or some other form expressing future time). The negative adverb of the protasis is regularly *μή*, that of the apodosis is *οὐ*.

For the force of the tenses of the subjunctive in the examples above, see 267.

274.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἐξορμήσωμεν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρετὴν. 2. ἐὰν μὴ ταῦτα ἀσκήσῃ, ἀδικήσῃ. 3. τοῦτον οὐ τιμήσωμεν, ἐὰν ταῦτα πεποιήκῃ.² 4. ἦν δέ τις³ ἡμᾶς⁴ τῆς ὁδοῦ⁵ ἀποκωλύῃ, διαπολεμήσωμεν τούτῳ.⁶ 5. ἦν δ' ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν, οἱ ἡμέτεροι φίλοι ἐν τιμῇ ἔσονται. 6. ἦν οὕτω προσάγωμεν, περιττεύουσιν ἡμῶν⁷ οἱ πολέμιοι. 7. παρῶμεν οὖν ὥσπερ Κύρος κελεύει. 8. ἐὰν τούτους τοὺς παῖδας καλῶς παιδεύσῃς, τιμήσουσιν. 9. μὴ τοῦτο ποιήσωμεν. 10. ἐὰν φίλον ποιήσῃς⁸ τοῦτον, ὠφελήσῃ. 11. ἀνδρείως πολεμήσωμεν, ἦν τὰ ὄπλα ἔχωμεν. 12. ἦν Ἀβροκόμας ἢ ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, αὐτὸν κατέχειν πειρᾶσθαι. 13. ἦν δὲ ἀπῇ, ἐκεῖ

¹ *ἐάν* by contraction becomes *ἦν* or *ἄν*, and often appears in these forms. *κάν* results from crasis (p. 55⁴) of *καὶ ἄν*, and *if* or *even if*.

² *shall have done*, i.e. *shall prove to have done*.

³ *anybody*, nom. sing. masc. of the indefinite pron. *τις*, *τι*, an enclitic.

⁴ The declension of the personal pron. *ἐγώ*, *I*, in the sing. and plur. is as follows: N. *ἐγώ*, G. *ἐμοῦ* or *μοῦ*,

D. *ἐμοί* or *μοί*, A. *ἐμέ* or *μέ*; N. *ἡμεῖς*, *we*, G. *ἡμῶν*, D. *ἡμῖν*, A. *ἡμᾶς*. The monosyllabic forms are enclitic. With *ἐμοῦ*, etc., cf. *ἐμός*, *my*, with *ἡμεῖς*, etc., cf. *ἡμέτερος*, *our*.

⁵ Cf. 263, I. 14. ⁶ See p. 83¹⁰.

⁷ Verbs of *superiority* and *inferiority* take the gen.

⁸ Verbs signifying to *name*, *call*, *appoint*, *make*, may take a predicate acc. (here *φίλον*) besides the object acc.

πρὸς¹ ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. 14. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν γέφῃραι ὦσι, σωθησόμεθα. 15. ἔαν ἡμῖν φίλος ᾗ ὁ Κῦρος, τιμῆς² ἄξιον φίλον ἔξομεν. 16. ἦν τὸ ἐνθύμημα ᾗ παραπλήσιον, ταῦτα ποιήσομεν. 17. ἦν δὲ μὴ Χειρίσοφος πλοῖα ἄγῃ ἱκανά, τοῖς ἐνθάδε³ χρησόμεθα. 18. φίλος μοί ἐστιν, ὦ στρατιῶται, ὁ βάρβαρος· ἦν οὖν πέμψῃτέ με, πλοῖα ἔξετε.

II. 1. Let us, Cyrus, honour⁴ our guest. 2. If he does not collect an army, his brother will be king. 3. The messenger shall have ten talents, if he does⁴ this. 4. Let us besiege⁴ the emporium both by land and by sea. 5. If you are brave, you will be honoured by Cyrus. 6. If he does⁴ this, he will be punished. 7. Let us immediately convoke⁴ a meeting of the soldiers. 8. What⁵ will the soldiers have, if they conquer⁴? 9. And let us send with Xenophon⁶ the peltasts from the van.⁷ 10. If he does not send the money, I will borrow (it). 11. The soldiers will not approach, unless⁸ the general ends their suspicions.

275.

VOCABULARY.

ἀεὶ, adv., *always*, EVER.

ἀνδρείως (ἀνδρείος), adv., *bravely*, *courageously*.

ἄπ-εἰμι (εἶμι), *be away or absent*.

ἀπο-καλύω, *hinder or prevent from*.

ἀσκέω, *practise, observe*.

δια-πολεμέω, *carry the war through*, *fight it out*.⁴

ἐκεῖ (cf. ἐκεῖνος), adv., *there*.

ἐνθάδε (ἐνθα), adv., *there, here*.

ἐξ-ορμάω, *urge out, incite, arouse*.

καλῶς (καλός), adv., *beautifully, honourably, well*.

Λύκαιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *Lycæan*.

οὐδέ (οὐ, δέ), as conj., *and not, nor*; as adv., *not even*.

παρα-πλήσιος, -ᾱ, -ον, or -ος, -ον (πλησίον), *near by, similar, like*.

πάρ-εἰμι (εἶμι), *be near or present*.

περιτεύω (περ), *be over and above, reach beyond, out-flank*.

προσ-άγω, *lead to or against*, intrans. *advance*.

ὥσ-περ,⁹ *conjunctive adv., just as*.

ὠφέλειω, *be of service to, help, benefit, assist*.

¹ *in respect to*.

² The gen. is used with adjs. and advs. of value.

³ Sc. πλοίοις. Cf. 256, I. 4, and 228, I. 3.

⁴ Use the aor. ⁵ Cf. 181, I. 4.

⁶ See p. 31³.

⁷ στόμα.

⁸ I.e. *if not*.

⁹ ὥς strengthened by the intensive particle πέρ, which is enclitic. For the accent, see 186 c.

LESSON XXXVI.

Subjunctive Middle and Passive.

276.

PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT M. and P.	FIRST AORIST MIDDLE.	PERFECT M. and P.	FIRST AORIST PASSIVE.
S. 1	λύω-μαι	λύσω-μαι	λελυ-μένος (-η, -ον) ὦ	λυθῶ
2	λύῃ	λύσῃ	“ ἦς	λυθῇς
3	λύῃ-ται	λύσῃ-ται	“ ῆ	λυθῇ
D. 2	λύῃ-σθον	λύσῃ-σθον	λελυ-μένω (-ᾱ, -ω) ῆτον	λυθῇ-τον
3	λύῃ-σθον	λύσῃ-σθον	“ ῆτον	λυθῇ-τον
P. 1	λῦώ-μεθα	λῦσώ-μεθα	λελυ-μένοι (-αι, -α) ὦμεν	λυθῶ-μεν
2	λύῃ-σθε	λύσῃ-σθε	“ ῆτε	λυθῇ-τε
3	λύω-νται	λύσω-νται	“ ὦσι	λυθῶσι

a. The aor. has distinct forms for the middle and passive (225).

b. The long variable vowel is used also in the passive (268 a). But in the aor. pass. this is *added* to the tense-stem (252 f), as λυθέ-ω, λυθῶ (by contraction).

c. The subjv. uses the endings of the primary tenses (199), but in the aor. pass. the *active* endings occur (156).

d. The form λύῃ is for λῦῃ-σαι. The σ is dropped and the remaining final syllables are contracted (241 i, f). So λύσῃ arises from λῦσῃ-σαι.

e. The perf. is a compound form, consisting of the perf. mid. and pass. participle and the subjv. of εἰμί. The participle is declined like an adjective of the vowel-declension (144).

f. For the forms λυθῶ, λυθῇς, λυθῇ, λυθῶσι, see 268 b. For contraction in the forms of the aor. pass. (from λυθέω, λυθέης, λυθέη, etc.), see 241 d, g, b.

277. Subjunctive in Clauses which denote Purpose.

Examine the following:—

ζητοῦμεν τοὺς ἄρχοντας, ἵνα ἡμῖν συμβουλευώσι, *we are seeking the commanders, that they may give us their counsel.*

τὴν γέφυραν λύσομεν, ἵνα μὴ οἱ πολέμοι πλησιάσωσι, *we will destroy the bridge, that the enemy may not approach.*

τοῦτον ἄγομεν δεῦρο, μὴ κακῶς ἡμᾶς ποιήσῃ, *we are bringing him here, that he may not do us harm.*

a. Observe that the clause which denotes the purpose takes the subjv.; that the particle which introduces it is ἵνα, *that, in order that*; that the verb which precedes is in a primary tense (61); that the neg. of the clause of purpose is μὴ, *not*, and follows the particle ἵνα; but that sometimes in a neg. clause of purpose μὴ alone is used in the sense, *that not, in order that not.*

Two other particles, ὥς and ὅπως, will occur in the following exercises, used in the same way and in the same sense as ἵνα. Hence:—

278. Rule of Syntax.—Clauses which denote purpose are introduced by ἵνα, ὥς, ὅπως, *that, in order that*, and ἵνα μὴ, ὥς μὴ, ὅπως μὴ, μὴ, *that not, in order that not*, and take the subjunctive if the leading verb is in a primary tense.

279. Subjunctive in Object Clauses after Verbs of Fearing.

Examine the following:—

δέδοικα¹ μὴ τὰς γεφύρας λύωσι, *I fear that they will destroy the bridges.*

δεδοίκαμεν μὴ οὐ πιστοὶ ᾗτε, *we fear that you will not be faithful.*

a. Observe that the clause which expresses the thing feared is the *object* of the leading verb; that this object clause takes the subjv.; that the particle which introduces it is μὴ, *that, lest*; that the verb which denotes fear is in a primary tense; that the neg. of the object clause is οὐ.

In the following exercises an equivalent phrase will sometimes occur in place of the verb which denotes fear. Hence:—

280. Rule of Syntax.—After a verb or phrase which denotes *fear*, the object of the fear is expressed by μὴ, *that, lest*, or μὴ οὐ, *that not*, with the subjunctive, if the leading verb is in a primary tense.

For the force of the tenses of the subjunctives in the examples in 277 and 279, see 267.

¹ A perf. with the force of the pres., inflected like λέλυκα.

281.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. καὶ δέδοικα μὴ τὴν χώρᾱν κακὸν τι¹ ἐργάσωνται² οἱ πολέμιοι. 2. τοῦτον δὲ στρατηγὸν ποιήσομεν,³ ὥς εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν σωθῶμεν. 3. ἀναπαυσώμεθα, ὦ φίλοι, τούτου τοῦ πολέμου.⁴ 4. ἦν δὲ τὴν εἰρήνην ποιησώμεθα, ἀσφαλῶς τὴν χώρᾱν οἰκήσομεν. 5. σχολῇ⁵ πορεύονται, ἵνα μὴ ἡ φάλαγξ διασπασθῇ. 6. συνδείπνους μὴ ποιησώμεθα τοὺς ἄρχοντας τῶν κωμῶν. 7. βοῶσι πάντες, ἵνα οἱ πολέμιοι ἐξαπατηθῶσι. 8. ἦν δὲ ἡ γέφυρα λελυμένη ἦ, οἱ πολέμιοι ἀποχωρήσουσι. 9. φοβεῖται μὴ τὸ στράτευμα ἐπὶ τὴν ἐμὴν ἀρχὴν στρατεύηται. 10. πορευώμεθα, ἵνα ἀποσπασθῶμεν τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος. 11. φόβος τοὺς πολίτας ἔχει μὴ αἱ συνθῆκαι ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων λυθῶσιν. 12. ἦν δὲ δὴ καὶ σωθῶμεν ἐπὶ θάλατταν, πῶς πλοῖα ἔξομεν; 13. τοῦτον, ὦ στρατιῶται, παίσωμεν καὶ βιασώμεθα πορεύεσθαι. 14. ἔάν τις πιέζηται, ὁ πλησίον⁶ βοηθήσει. 15. ἐγὼ γὰρ δέδοικα μὴ οὐ τοῦ πολέμου πεπαυμένοι ὦσιν. 16. ἡ δὲ χώρᾱ πολεμιά ἐστίν· ἐπικίνδυνον οὖν ἔσται, ἦν ἀμελῶς τε καὶ ἀφυλάκτως πορεύησθε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.

II. 1. I fear that the satrap will be sent. 2. Let us there deliberate about⁷ this. 3. They are proceeding quickly, that they may not be separated⁸ from the other soldiers. 4. I do not fear that this (man) will be made satrap.⁹ 5. Let us deliberate about⁹ the safety of the soldiers. 6. He will send a messenger, if he arrives safely in Asia. 7. I fear that the bridges will be destroyed. 8. Let us halt, soldiers, and deliberate. 9. For the exiles will not follow with us, if we proceed to Miletus. 10. We will destroy the bridge, that the enemy may not send for the peltasts.

¹ Acc. sing. neut. of the indefinite pron. *τις, τι, some, any*, an enclitic.

² Verbs signifying to *do anything* to a person or thing may take two accusatives.

³ Cf. 274, I. 10.

⁴ Cf. 201, I. 3.

⁵ Cf. 228, I. 14.

⁶ Cf. 256, I. 13.

⁷ Cf. 274, I. 13.

⁸ Use the aor.

⁹ *περί* with gen.

282.

VOCABULARY.

ἀμελῶς, adv., *carelessly, incautiously.*

ἀπο-σπάω,¹ *draw off, separate.*

ἀρχή (cf. ἄρχων), *government, province.*

ἀσφαλῶς, adv., *safely, securely.*

ἀφυλάκτως (φύλαξ), adv., *unguardedly.*

βασιλικός, -ή, -όν (βασιλεύω), *royal, the king's.*

βιάζομαι, *force, compel.*

βοηθέω (βοήθεια), *give assistance, bring aid, help, assist.*

δεῦρο, adv., *here, hither.*

δια-σπάω,¹ *draw apart, scatter.*

εἰρήνη, *peace.*

ἐξ-απατάω,² *deceive grossly, mislead.*

ἐπι-κινδύνος, -ον (κινδύνος), *dangerous, perilous.*

ἐργάζομαι (ἔργον), *WORK, do.*

ζητέω, *seek.*

σύνδειπνος, ό, *table-companion.*

συνθήκη, *compact, agreement.*

φοβέω (φόβος), *frighten; φοβέομαι as pass. dep.,³ be frightened, be terrified, fear.*

LESSON XXXVII.

Contract Verbs in the Subjunctive.

Review 241-243 entire.

283.

PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT ACTIVE.	PRESENT MIDDLE and PASSIVE.
S. 1	τίμ(δω)ῶ	τίμ(δω)ῶ-μαι
2	τίμ(δης)ῆς	τίμ(δῆ)ῆ
3	τίμ(δῆ)ῇ	τίμ(δῆ)ᾶ-ται
D. 2	τίμ(δῆ)ᾶ-τον	τίμ(δῆ)ᾶ-σθον
3	τίμ(δῆ)ᾶ-τον	τίμ(δῆ)ᾶ-σθον
P. 1	τίμ(δω)ῶ-μεν	τίμ(αώ)ῶ-μεθα
2	τίμ(δῆ)ᾶ-τε	τίμ(δῆ)ᾶ-σθε
3	τίμ(δω)ῶσι	τίμ(δω)ῶ-νται

¹ σπάω, σπάσω, aor. pass. ἐσπείσθην, *draw.* The short vowel of the theme is retained by exception (see 254 b), and σ is added to the theme in the aor. pass.

² ἀπατάω, *deceive*, related to ἀπάτη, *deceit.*

³ The first aor., therefore, is ἐφοβήθην. See 255 b.

S. 1	φιλ(έω)ῶ	φιλ(έω)ῶ-μαι
2	φιλ(έης)ῆς	φιλ(έη)ῆ
3	φιλ(έη)ῇ	φιλ(έη)ῇ-ται
D. 2	φιλ(έη)ῇ-τον	φιλ(έη)ῇ-σθον
3	φιλ(έη)ῇ-τον	φιλ(έη)ῇ-σθον
P. 1	φιλ(έω)ῶ-μεν	φιλ(έω)ῶ-μεθα
2	φιλ(έη)ῇ-τε	φιλ(έη)ῇ-σθε
3	φιλ(έω)ῶσι	φιλ(έω)ῶ-νται
S. 1	δηλ(όω)ῶ	δηλ(όω)ῶ-μαι
2	δηλ(όης)οῖς	δηλ(όη)οῖ
3	δηλ(όη)οῖ	δηλ(όη)ῶ-ται
D. 2	δηλ(όη)ῶ-τον	δηλ(όη)ῶ-σθον
3	δηλ(όη)ῶ-τον	δηλ(όη)ῶ-σθον
P. 1	δηλ(όω)ῶ-μεν	δηλ(όω)ῶ-μεθα
2	δηλ(όη)ῶ-τε	δηλ(όη)ῶ-σθε
3	δηλ(όω)ῶσι	δηλ(όω)ῶ-νται

See 245 a.

284.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. κραυγὴν ποιῶμεν. 2. πειρώμεθα συνεργοὶ τοῖς φίλοις εἶναι. 3. ἐὰν δὲ τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς ἀδικῇ, οὐ πορευσόμεθα. 4. ἐὰν δὲ τούτους νικῶμεν, πάντα ἡμῖν πεποιήται. 5. τὰς ἀμάξας λύσωμεν, ἵνα μὴ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἡμῶν¹ στρατηγῇ. 6. δεδοίκασι μὴ τοὺς Κύρου φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν² πειρᾶσθε. 7. ἡν δὲ νικῶμεν, οἱ πολέμιοι ἔσονται σκευοφόροι ἡμέτεροι. 8. ἀλλὰ ἤδη δηῶμεν τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων γῆν. 9. ἐὰν δὲ ἡττώμεθα, τίς³ ἡμῶν σωθήσεται; 10. κοινῇ δὲ ἔρωτῶμεν τὸν κωμάρχην τίς ἐστὶν ἡ χώρα. 11. τοῦτον δέ, ἡν σωφρονήτε, τὴν νύκτα⁴ δήσετε. 12. φοβεῖται μὴ πειρῶνται οἱ πολῖται κατάγειν τοὺς φυγάδας. 13. εὐθὺς πορευώμεθα, ὥς μὴ τοῦτο ἐννοῶνται οἱ στρατιῶται. 14. ἐὰν ἡ φάλαγξ διασπᾶται, τοῦτο εὐθὺς ἀθύμίαν ποιήσει. 15. ἐὰν οὖν

¹ Cf. 256, I. 1.

² Cf. 247, I. 11.

³ *who?* See p. 50¹.

⁴ Cf. 239, II. 9.

νικῶσιν οἱ πολέμιοι, πῶς λύσομεν τὴν γέφυραν ; 16. ἡδέως πονῶμεν καὶ θαρραλέως κτώμεθα. 17. ἦν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτᾱς παρακαλῆτε, πειράσσονται πάντες ἀγαθοὶ εἶναι. 18. ἔὰν νῦν ὀλίγον¹ πονῶμεν, ἀμαχεὶ τὴν λοιπὴν ὁδὸν πορευσόμεθα. 19. ἦν δὲ Κῦρος ἐὰ τὸν Κλέαρχον τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς ἔχειν, οὐ στρατεύουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί. 20. τοὺς μὲν φίλους ἐλευθερῶμεν, τοὺς δ' ἐχθροὺς χειρῶμεθα.

II. 1. Let us free the servants. 2. We shall be honoured, if we conquer. 3. Soldiers, let us follow with² Xenophon. 4. With the help of³ the gods, let us conquer the enemy. 5. You will have supplies, if you conquer. 6. Let us set forth, soldiers, against the enemy courageously. 7. I fear that the soldiers will wrong these citizens. 8. I am frightened lest he may try to do this. 9. Let us, then, make the levy in the following manner. 10. You are fearful⁴ that the exiles will not accompany⁵ us, if we proceed to Asia. 11. Let us call out to the general⁶ to lead the targeteers against the stronghold. 12. If we free these men, I fear that the commander of the Medes will not withdraw.

285.

VOCABULARY.

ἀθυμῶ, *despondency, dejection.*
ἀ-μαχεῖ (μάχη), *adv., without fighting.*
δέω, *bind, fasten, tie.*
δηῶ, *lay waste, ravage.*
ἐλευθερῶ (ἐλεύθερος), *free, liberate.*
ἐν-νοέομαι (νόος), *pass. dep., have in mind, consider, be apprehensive.*
ἡττάομαι, *pass. dep., be inferior, be defeated.*
θαρραλέως, *adv., courageously, boldly.*
κατ-άγω, *lead down or back, restore.*
κοινῇ, *adv., in common, jointly.*

κραυγῇ, *outcry, clamour.*
κτάομαι (cf. κτήμα), *acquire, gain.*
λοιπός, -ή, -όν, *remaining, the rest of.*
παρα-καλέω, *call forth, call to, urge.*
πονέω, *toil, labour.*
σκενο-φόρος, ὁ (σκενή, φέρω, carry), *baggage-carrier.*
στρατηγέω (στρατηγός), *be general, command, lead.*
συν-εργός, ὁ (ἔργον), *helper, assistant.*
σωφρονέω, *be prudent, be wise.*
χειρῶ, *handle, subdue.*

¹ Cf. the use of ὑστερον, 247, I. 16.

² Use σύν.

³ with the help of, σύν.

⁴ Use φοβερός.

⁵ Cf. 283, I. 17.

⁶ Cf. 247, I. 19.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Liquid Stems of the Consonant-Declension.

For the liquids, see 113.

286.

PARADIGMS.

	ὁ λιμήν (λιμεν-) harbour	ὁ μήν (μην-) MONTH	ὁ ἀγών ¹ (αγων-) contest	ὁ δαίμων (δαιμον-) divinity	ὁ ῥήτωρ (ρητορ-) orator
S. N.	λιμήν	μήν	ἀγών	δαίμων	ῥήτωρ
G.	λιμέν-ος	μην-ός	ἀγών-ος	δαίμον-ος	ρήτορ-ος
D.	λιμέν-ι	μην-ί	ἀγών-ι	δαίμον-ι	ρήτορ-ι
A.	λιμέν-α	μῆν-α	ἀγών-α	δαίμον-α	ρήτορ-α
V.	λιμήν	μήν	ἀγών	δαῖμον	ρήτορ
D. N. A. V.	λιμέν-ε	μῆν-ε	ἀγών-ε	δαίμον-ε	ρήτορ-ε
G. D.	λιμέν-οιν	μην-οῖν	αγών-οιν	δαιμόν-οιν	ρητόρ-οιν
P. N. V.	λιμέν-ες	μῆν-ες	ἀγών-ες	δαίμον-ες	ρήτορ-ες
G.	λιμέν-ων	μην-ων	ἀγών-ων	δαιμόν-ων	ρητόρ-ων
D.	λιμέσι	μησί	ἀγῶσι	δαίμοσι	ρήτορ-σι
A.	λιμέν-ας	μῆν-ας	ἀγών-ας	δαίμον-ας	ρήτορ-ας

a. Observe the application of the principles stated in 213 a, 2, 3, c, 4, and 216.

Apply the following law of euphony in forming the dat. plur. : —

287. N before Σ. — ν before σ is dropped, and the preceding vowel is lengthened (see 233). But before σι of the dative plural the vowel remains unchanged.

288. Like the above are declined Ἑλλήν, Ἑλλήν-ος (*cf.* Ἑλληνικός), a Greek; ἡγεμών, ἡγεμόν-ος (ἡγέομαι), leader; κῶπτήρ, κῶπτήρ-ος, mixing-bowl.

¹ Related to ἄγω, in the sense of *a bringing together*, especially to witness a contest, and so *a contest, games*.

For the gender of these words, see 292.

289. Syncopated Stems in -ερ-. — Four substantives with stems in -ερ-, *πατήρ*, *μήτηρ*, *θυγάτηρ*, *γαστήρ*, drop ε of the stem in the genitive and dative singular and accent the ultima. In the other cases they retain ε and accent it, except in the vocative singular, where they all have recessive accent. The vocative singular of all of these substantives is the mere stem. In the dative plural -ερ- is changed to -ρα-.

290. A fifth substantive, *άνήρ* (cf. *άνδρεϊος*), follows the analogy of *πατήρ*, but syncopates *all* of the cases in which -ερ- comes before a vowel and inserts δ between ν and ρ. In these cases the accent is thrown back on the previous syllable, except in the genitive and dative singular and dual and in the genitive plural, which accent the ultima.

291. PARADIGMS.

	ὁ πατήρ (πατερ-) FATHER	ἡ μήτηρ (μητερ-) MOTHER	ἡ θυγάτηρ (θυγατερ-) DAUGHTER	ὁ άνήρ (ανερ-) man
S. N.	πατήρ	μήτηρ	θυγάτηρ	άνήρ
G.	πατρ-ός	μητρ-ός	θυγατρ-ός	άνδρ-ός
D.	πατρ-ί	μητρ-ί	θυγατρ-ί	άνδρ-ί
A.	πατέρ-α	μητέρ-α	θυγατέρ-α	άνδρ-α
V.	πάτερ	μήτερ	θύγατερ	άνερ
D. N. A. V.	πατέρ-ε	μητέρ-ε	θυγατέρ-ε	άνδρ-ε
G. D.	πατέρ-οιν	μητέρ-οιν	θυγατέρ-οιν	άνδρ-οιν
P. N. V.	πατέρ-ες	μητέρ-ες	θυγατέρ-ες	άνδρ-ες
G.	πατέρ-ων	μητέρ-ων	θυγατέρ-ων	άνδρ-ων
D.	πατρά-σι	μητρά-σι	θυγατρά-σι	άνδρά-σι
A.	πατέρ-ας	μητέρ-ας	θυγατέρ-ας	άνδρ-ας

292. Gender. — (a) Masculine are all substantives whose stems end in -ν-. (b) Masculine also are all those whose stems end in -ρ-, except *ἡ γαστήρ*, *belly*, and *ἡ μήτηρ*, *ἡ θυγάτηρ*, for which see 84.

293.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία ἄνευ ἡγεμόνος ἐπορεύοντο. 2. ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κύρος. 3. ὁ ἀνὴρ οὗτος καινοῖς δαίμοσιν ἔθυνεν. 4. Ἀβροκόμας ἐχθρὸς ἀνὴρ ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ ἐστι. 5. συμβουλεύω ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι. 6. τῶν δὲ Ἑλλήνων ἔχει ὀπλίτας τριακοσίους. 7. καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ. 8. ἦγε δὲ καὶ τὴν Ἀρταξέρξου θυγατέρα ἐπὶ¹ γάμῳ. 9. καὶ αἰτεῖ² Κύρον ἐξ μηνῶν μισθόν. 10. ἀλλὰ καὶ πατέρα ἐμὲ ἐκαλεῖτε.³ 11. ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ τόπῳ. 12. ἐν δὲ τῇ βουλῇ εἶχον ῥήτορας ἐπιτηδεῖους οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι. 13. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ πῦροι καὶ κριθαὶ καὶ οἶνος κριθίνος ἐν κράτῃσιν. 14. ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι ἐλευθερίας.⁴ 15. ὧν⁵ μάλιστα ἄνθρωποι ἐπιθυμοῦσιν, ὁ δαίμων ἡμῖν ταῦτα παρεσκεύακεν. 16. τοῦ δὲ στρατεύματος ἦσαν ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες τέτταρες. 17. ταύτην οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν ἠυλίζοντο⁶ πρὸς τῷ λιμένι. 18. καὶ τότε μὲν περὶ τῆς Κύρου βασιλείας ἄνδρες ἦτε ἀγαθοί· νῦν δὲ περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας σωτηρίας ὁ ἀγὼν ἐστίν.

II. 1. I have two men. 2. He asks Cyrus for a leader. 3. His father summoned Cyrus. 4. They send men with Clearchus. 5. Cyrus was made satrap of Phrygia by his father. 6. Cyrus sent six months' pay to the general. 7. You were calling Xenophon father. 8. And Cyrus summoned the generals of the Greeks. 9. Each man shall have five minas of silver. 10. His mother sends Cyrus back again to his province. 11. He carried on war with the Thracians⁷ and was of service to⁸ the Greeks. 12. Thence they proceeded to the villages of Parysatis, the mother of Cyrus.

¹ upon terms of, i.e. in.

² Verbs signifying to ask, demand, may take two object accs., one of the person, the other of the thing.

³ See p. 90⁸. ⁴ Cf. 274, I. 15.

⁵ what, gen. plur. neut. of the relative ὅς, ἥ, ὅ. For the case, see p. 63⁸.

⁶ For the augment, see 76 end.

⁷ Use the simple dat. (p. 83¹⁰).

⁸ Use ὡφελέω (275) with the acc.

294.

VOCABULARY.

αἰτέω, *ask, demand.*ἄνευ, *adv., with gen., without.*¹ἀριθμός, *ό, number, enumeration.*αὐλιζομαι, *pass. dep., lodge, be quartered, bivouac.*βασιλεία (βασιλεύω), *kingdom.*βουλή (*cf. βουλεύω*), *WILL, plan, senate.*γάμος, *ό, marriage.*γυμνικός, -ή, -όν, *gymnastic.*ἐκποδόν, *adv., out of the way.*ἕξ, *indec., six.*ἐπι-θύμω,² *desire, long for.*θεωρέω, *view, witness, inspect.*καινός, -ή, -όν, *new, strange.*κριθή, *barley, commonly plur.*κριθίνος, -η, -ον (κριθή), *of barley.*πῦρός, *ό, wheat, commonly plur.*τέτταρες (*cf. τετρακισ-χίλιοι*), *FOUR.*ὑμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον (*cf. ὑμεῖς*), *YOUR.*

LESSON XXXIX.

Optative Active.

295. Besides the present, aorist, and perfect, two other tenses occur in the optative, the future and future perfect.

296. The distinction between the present and aorist is generally precisely that found in the subjunctive (267). Thus *εἰ κωλύοι* means, *if he should be hindering* or *if he should hinder* (habitually), but *εἰ κωλύσειε* means simply, *if he should hinder*. See further the examples in 299, 301, 303.

297.

PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT.	FUTURE.	FIRST AORIST.	FIRST PERFECT.
S. 1	λύοι-μι	λύσοι-μι	λύσαι-μι	λελύκοι-μι
2	λύοι-ς	λύσοι-ς	λύσεια-ς, λύσαι-ς	λελύκοι-ς
3	λύοι	λύσοι	λύσειε, λύσαι	λελύκοι
D. 1	λύοι-τον	λύσοι-τον	λύσαι-τον	λελύκοι-τον
2	λύοι-την	λύσοι-την	λύσαι-την	λελύκοι-την
P. 1	λύοι-μεν	λύσοι-μεν	λύσαι-μεν	λελύκοι-μεν
2	λύοι-τε	λύσοι-τε	λύσαι-τε	λελύκοι-τε
3	λύοι-ν	λύσοι-ν	λύσεια-ν, λύσαιε-ν	λελύκοι-ν

¹ Often, like *ἐνεκα* (240), called an *improper preposition*.

² The underlying word is *θύμός*,

δ, soul, heart, especially as the seat of desire. Here belong also *προ-θύμως*, *ἐν-θύμημα*, and *ἀ-θύμιά*.

a. The opt. adds the mood-suffix *-ι-* (in the third pers. plur. *-ι-*) to the tense-stem (which has the form in *-ο-* when it ends in the variable vowel, 153), as λύο-ι-μῦ, λύσα-ι-μῦ. In the perf. the *-α-* of the stem is changed to *-ο-*.

b. The opt. uses the endings of the secondary tenses (163), but the first pers. sing. act. takes *-μι*.

c. The forms λύσεια-ς, λύσειε, λύσεια-ν in the aor. are irregular. But they occur more frequently than the regular forms λύσαι-ς, λύσαι, λύσαιε-ν.

d. For the accent of the forms ending in *-αι* and *-αι*, see 28.

298. Present Optative of εἰμί.

1	εἴη-ν		εἶ-μεν or εἴη-μεν
2	εἴη-ς	εἶ-τον or εἴη-τον	εἶ-τε or εἴη-τε
3	εἴη	εἶ-την or εἴη-την	εἶ-ν or εἴη-σαν

a. εἴην is for εἶ-ην (184), the mood-suffix being *-ι-*, etc.

299. Optative in Protasis.

Examine the following :—

εἰ παρέχομεν ἀγοράν, ἔχετε ἂν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, *if we should provide a market, you would have supplies.*

εἰ μὴ ταῦτα ποιήσεις, ἀποχωρήσῃμεν ἂν, *if he should not do this, we should withdraw.*

εἰ νικήσῃμεν, τὴν χώραν οὐκ ἂν διαρπάσεις, *if we should conquer, he would not plunder the country.*

a. Observe that these sentences state a supposed future case less vividly than the subjv. (see 272); that the protasis is expressed by the particle *εἰ*, *if*, with the opt., and the apodosis by the opt. with the particle *ἂν*¹; and that when the protasis is neg. it takes *μή*, but when the apodosis is neg. it takes *οὐ*. Hence :—

300. Rule of Syntax.—When a supposed future case is stated less distinctly and vividly than the subjunctive would state it (as *if I should go* in English), the protasis takes the optative with *εἰ*, the apodosis the optative with *ἂν*. The negative adverb of the protasis is regularly *μή*, that of the apodosis is *οὐ*.

¹ This particle *ἂν*, which is used only in apodosis, must be carefully distinguished from the conditional particle *ἄν*, a contracted form of *ἐάν*.

301. Optative in Clauses which denote Purpose.

Examine the following : —

ἐζητοῦμεν τοὺς ἀρχοντας, ἵνα ἡμῖν συμβουλευόεν, *we sought the commanders, that they might give us their counsel.*

τὴν γέφυραν ἐλύσαμεν, ἵνα μὴ οἱ πολέμοι πλησιάσειαν, *we destroyed the bridge, that the enemy might not approach.*

τοῦτον ἤγομεν δεῦρο, μὴ κακῶς ἡμᾶς ποιήσεις, *we brought him here, that he might not do us harm.*

a. Observe that the clause which denotes the purpose takes the opt. ; that the particle which introduces it is *ἵνα* ; that the preceding verb is in a secondary tense (61) ; that the neg. of the clause of purpose is *μή*, and follows *ἵνα* ; but that sometimes in a neg. clause of purpose *μή* alone is used in the sense, *that not, in order that not.* ὥς and ὅπως may occur in place of *ἵνα*. Hence : —

302. Rule of Syntax. — Clauses which denote purpose are introduced by *ἵνα*, ὥς, ὅπως, *that, in order that*, and *ἵνα μή*, ὥς μή, ὅπως μή, μή, *that not, in order that not*, and take the optative if the leading verb is in a secondary tense.

303. Optative in Object Clauses after Verbs of Fearing.

Examine the following : —

ἔδεισα ¹ μὴ τὰς γεφύρας λύοιεν, *I feared that they would destroy the bridges.*

ἐδείσαμεν μὴ οὐ πιστοὶ εἴτε, *we feared that you would not be faithful.*

a. Observe that the clause which expresses the thing feared is the *object* of the leading verb ; that this object clause takes the opt. ; that the particle which introduces it is *μή*, *that, lest* ; that the verb which denotes fear is in a secondary tense ; that the neg. of the object clause is *οὐ*. Sometimes an equivalent phrase is used in place of the verb which denotes fear. Hence : —

304. Rule of Syntax. — After a verb or phrase which denotes *fear*, the object of the fear is expressed by *μή*, *that, lest*, or *μὴ οὐ*, *that not*, with the optative, if the leading verb is in a secondary tense.

a. For the force of the tenses of the opts. in 299, 301, 303, see 296.

¹ Aor., corresponding to the perf. *δέδοικα*, and inflected like *ἐλύσα*.

305.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἐπαύσατο, ἵνα μὴ πλησιάσειε τοῖς πολεμίοις.¹ 2. ὁ δὲ Κλεάρχος ταῦτα ὑπήγετο,² ὅπως εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν³ αὐτῷ⁴ οἱ Ἕλληνες. 3. οὐκ ἐφοβείτο μὴ δόξαν πονηρίᾳς ἔχοι. 4. τούτους δὲ φίλους ἐποιεῖτο, ὥς συνεργοὺς ἔχοι. 5. ἔδεισαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μὴ ταύτη⁵ προσάγοιεν οἱ πολέμιοι. 6. τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐπεβούλευε Μένων, ὅπως φίλος εἴη τῷ σατράπῃ. 7. ἄξιοι ἂν εἶμεν φίλοι, εἰ ἔχοιμεν τὰ ὄπλα. 8. εἰ ἀποσώσαιμι ὑμᾶς⁶ εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, οὐκ ἂν ἀχαρίστως ἔχοι. 9. εἰ τὰς πύλας κλείσειαν, πολιορκήσασιν ἂν τὸ χωρίον. 10. ὁ τῆς χώρᾳς ἄρχων τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἡγεμόνα ἐπεμψεν, ὅπως διὰ τῆς πολεμίας χώρᾳς ἄγοι αὐτούς.⁷ 11. τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων⁸ ἐπεμελείτο, ὥς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἴησαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ. 12. τὸν στρατιώτην οὗτος ἀπῆγεν, ἵνα διασώσειε τοῖς λησταῖς τὰ χρήματα. 13. συνεβούλευσα ἐγὼ τοῦτον ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι, ὥς σχολὴ εἴη ἡμῖν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιεῖν.⁹ 14. καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν¹⁰ μὲν εἶην ἂν τίμιος, ὑμῶν¹¹ δὲ εἰ ἔρημος εἶην, ἀδύνατος ἂν εἶην. 15. Ξενοφῶν δὲ τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἤγε πρὸς τοῦτο τὸ χωρίον, ὅπως τούτῳ οἱ πολέμιοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν. 16. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐπιέζοντο ὑπὸ τῶν τοξευμάτων καὶ σφενδονῶν, ἐπορεύοντο κύκλῳ,¹² ὅπως τὰ ὄπλα ἔχοιεν πρὸ¹³ τῶν τοξευμάτων. 17. πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος, Ἐτι οὖν ἂν εἴης¹⁴ τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός;

¹ See p. 83 ¹⁰.² See 257.³ *be well-disposed*. ἔχω is used with an adv. in the sense of *εἶμι* with an adj., as *καλῶς ἔχει*, *it is well*.⁴ *to him*, dat. sing. masc.⁵ Dat. sing. fem. of *οὗτος* as adv., *in this way or direction*.⁶ The declension of the personal pron. *σύ*, *τιοῦ*, *you*, in the sing. and plur. is as follows: N. *σύ*, G. *σοῦ*, D. *σοί*, A. *σέ*; N. *ὑμεῖς*, *you*, G. *ὑμῶν*, D. *ὑμῖν*, A. *ὑμᾶς*. The forms *σοῦ*, *σοί*, *σέ*, are enclitic, unless there is special emphasis on them. With *ὑμεῖς*, etc., cf. *ὑμέτερος*, *YOUR*.⁷ *them*, acc. plur. masc.⁸ See p. 63 ³.⁹ *benefit*. Cf. *κακῶς ποιέω*, p. 77 ³.¹⁰ The protasis is sometimes not expressed in the regular form with *εἰ*, but is contained in a participle, or implied in an adv. or some other part of the sentence, as here in *σὺν ὑμῖν*.¹¹ The gen. is used with adjs. of plenty or want.¹² See p. 25 ⁵.¹³ *I.e. as a defence against*.¹⁴ The protasis is often altogether omitted, leaving the opt. with *ἂν* alone as an apodosis.

18. οὐδ' ¹ εἰ φίλος καὶ πιστός σοι εἶην, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐμοί ² γ' ἄν ποτε ἔτι πιστεύοις.

II. 1. He feared that he would not have friends. 2. He acquired good friends, that he might have helpers. 3. If you should do this, we should justly feel grateful to you.³ 4. They feared that the soldiers would not be well-disposed. 5. If you should plot evil against me,⁴ you would be evil-minded.⁵ 6. All the soldiers feared that the enemy would plunder the camp. 7. This he did, that the rest of the Greeks⁶ might approach. 8. But I was terrified lest he might lead us among⁷ the enemy. 9. It would be well, if the general would convoke⁸ a meeting of the soldiers. 10. And the Greeks were anxious⁹ lest they should not have provisions.

306.

VOCABULARY.

ἀπ-άγω, *lead away.*

ἀπο-σφίω, *bring back in safety, restore safe.*

ἀ-χαρίτως (χάρις), *adv., without thanks.*

γέ, *intensive particle, even, at least (Lat. quidem), postpositive¹⁰ and enclitic.*

Ἑλλάς, -άδος (cf. Ἕλλην), *Greece.*

ἐπι-μελέομαι, ¹¹ *pass. dep., care for, give attention to.*

ἔρημος, -ον, or -η, -ον, *deserted, destitute of, deprived of.*

ἔτι (cf. οὐκ-έτι), *adv., yet, still, further.*

εὖ (cf. εὖ-νοος), *adv., well, well off, happily.*

εὖ-νοϊκῶς ¹² (εὖ-νοος), *adv., with good will, kindly.*

κλείω, *shut, close.*

κύκλος, ὁ, *circle, curve.*

Μένων, -ωνος, **Menon.**

ὀπισθο-φύλαξ, ¹³ -ακος, ὁ, *rear-guard.*

πιστεύω (πιστός), *trust, rely upon.*

πονηρίᾱ (cf. πονέω), *a bad state, wickedness, knavery.*

ποτε, *adv., at some time, ever, enclitic.*

πρό (cf. πρόσω, πρῶτος), *prep. with gen. (Lat. prō), before, for, in preference to, in behalf of.*

τίμος, -ᾱ, -ον (τιμή), *valued, honoured, worthy.*

¹ The accent is lost with the elided vowel.

² See p. 84 ¹.

³ Use χάριν ἔχω, and cf. 239, I. 15.

⁴ Cf. 129, I. 5.

⁵ κακόνοος.

⁶ I.e. the other Greeks.

⁷ εἰς.

⁸ Use the aor.

⁹ Use the impf. of ἐννοέομαι.

¹⁰ See p. 15 ².

¹¹ Cf. ἐπι-μέλεια. Here belong also ἀ-μελῶς, μελετᾶω, ἡμελημένως, all formed on the root μελ.

¹² A word of four syllables, as the two dots (diæresis) show.

¹³ ὕπισθεν, *adv., behind.*

LESSON XL.

Optative Middle and Passive.

307.

PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT M. and P.	FUTURE MIDDLE.	FIRST AOR. MIDDLE.	PERFECT M. and P.
S. 1	λύοι-μην	λύσοι-μην	λύσαι-μην	λελυ-μένος (-η, -ον) εἶην
2	λύοι-ο	λύσοι-ο	λύσαι-ο	“ εἶης
3	λύοι-το	λύσοι-το	λύσαι-το	“ εἶη
D. 2	λύοι-σθον	λύσοι-σθον	λύσαι-σθον	λελυ-μένος (-ᾱ, -ω) εἶτον or εἶητον
3	λύοι-σθην	λύσοι-σθην	λύσαι-σθην	“ εἶτην εἶήτην
P. 1	λύοι-μεθα	λύσοι-μεθα	λύσαι-μεθα	λελυ-μένοι (-αι, -α) εἶμεν εἶημεν
2	λύοι-σθε	λύσοι-σθε	λύσαι-σθε	“ εἶτε εἶητε
3	λύοι-ντο	λύσοι-ντο	λύσαι-ντο	“ εἶεν εἶησαν

	FUTURE PERFECT M. and P.	FIRST AORIST PASSIVE.	FIRST FUTURE PASSIVE.
S. 1	λελύσοι-μην	λυθεί-ν	λυθήσοι-μην
2	λελύσοι-ο	λυθεί-ς	λυθήσοι-ο
3	λελύσοι-το	λυθεί	λυθήσοι-το
D. 2	λελύσοι-σθον	λυθεί-τον or λυθείη-τον	λυθήσοι-σθον
3	λελύσοι-σθην	λυθεί-την λυθείη-την	λυθήσοι-σθην
P. 1	λελύσοι-μεθα	λυθεί-μεν λυθείη-μεν	λυθήσοι-μεθα
2	λελύσοι-σθε	λυθεί-τε λυθείη-τε	λυθήσοι-σθε
3	λελύσοι-ντο	λυθεί-ν λυθείησαν	λυθήσοι-ντο

a. The fut. and aor. have distinct forms for the mid. and pass.

b. The same mood-suffix is used as in the act. (297 a), except in the aor. pass.; here it is -ιη- in the sing. and sometimes in the dual and plur., but the shorter forms λυθεί-τον, λυθεί-την, etc., occur more frequently. In these forms the accent cannot go back of the mood-suffix.

c. The opt. uses the endings of the secondary tenses (199), but in

the aor. pass. the *active* endings occur (163). The mid. ending -so in the second pers. sing. drops σ between the vowels.

d. The perf. is a compound form, as in the subjv. (276 e), consisting of the perf. mid. and pass. participle and the opt. of εἰμί.

308.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἐνενοήθη μὴ οἱ ἐχθροὶ τῖμηθῇεν. 2. εἰ ἅμα ἐλεύθερος εἷης καὶ πλούσιος, τίνος¹ ἂν ἔτι δέοιο²; 3. οἱ στρατιῶται εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν γῆν ἐπορεύθησαν,³ ἵνα διαρπάζοντο. 4. τῶν στρατηγῶν⁴ κατηγόρησεν, ἵνα αὐτὸς⁵ σωθῇ. 5. Κύρῳ φίλοι εἶναι περὶ παντὸς⁶ ἂν ποιησαίμεθα. 6. εἰ τούτους συμμάχους⁷ ἔχοιτε, τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους ῥαδίως ἂν κολάσαισθε. 7. εἰ νικῆσαιμεν, καὶ σφζοίμεθα ἂν καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχοιμεν. 8. Δέξιππον ἄρχοντα ἐποιησάμεθα, ὡς σφζοίμεθα. 9. πορευοίμεθα δ' ἂν οἴκαδε, εἰ Ἀρταξέρξης μὴ κωλύει. 10. οὕτω⁸ γὰρ ἂν ὑμεῖς ἀπολελυμένοι τῆς αἰτίας εἶτε. 11. εἰ ὅπλα μὴ ἔχοιμεν, καὶ τῶν σωμάτων⁹ στερηθεῖμεν ἂν. 12. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἔδωκαν μὴ ἀποκλεισθῇεν.¹⁰ 13. εἰ σωθεῖμεν ὑπὸ σοῦ, σοὶ χάριν ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως. 14. ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐφοβήθη μὴ κυκλωθῇ ἐκατέρωθεν. 15. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ ἡ γέφυρα λυοῖτο ὑπὸ τοῦ σατράπου τῆς νυκτός.¹¹ 16. ὑμᾶς, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί,¹² παρεκαλούμεθα,

¹ Gen. sing. neut. of the interrogative τίς, *who? what?* Observe that the gen. is used with verbs of *plenty* and *want*.

² Verbs in -εω of two syllables admit only the contraction into εἰ. Other combinations than those that would result in εἰ remain uncontracted.

³ Aor. with the force of the mid., so that πορεύομαι (196) is practically a pass. dep.

⁴ The gen. often depends on a prep. included in a compound verb. Many compounds of κατά, especially, which involve the idea of feeling or acting *against* take the gen. of the person.

⁵ himself, Lat. *ipse*. Cf. 247, I. 16.

⁶ surpassing (περὶ) everything, i.e. all important.

⁷ as allies. See p. 25³.

⁸ See p. 104¹⁰.

⁹ Verbs of *depriving* sometimes take the gen. This is, in fact, the gen. of *separation* (see p. 60²).

¹⁰ The aor. pass. of κλείω is ἐκλείσθη. Cf. the aor. pass. of σπῶ (p. 95¹).

¹¹ Cf. 239, I. 7.

¹² Words denoting station or condition are often connected as appositives with ἄνδρες, which then implies respect.

ὅπως πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευοίμεθα. 17. τὸν κωλύοντα¹ τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας πορεύεσθαι ἔπαισα πύξ, ὅπως μὴ λόγχῃ² ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων παίοιτο. 18. παρεκάλουν ὑμᾶς, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευοίμην τί³ δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων.

II. 1. I feared that the bridge would be destroyed. 2. The general would do wrong,⁴ if he should send for the boats. 3. I struck this (man), fellow-soldiers, with my fist, that I might force⁵ him to desist. 4. How, then, could I⁶ force you to proceed with me? 5. He was terrified lest the enemy should not cease from war. 6. We rested in the plain to deliberate⁷ about a truce. 7. How, then, should we proceed in safety, if it should be proper to proceed? 8. I would not take part in the expedition, unless⁸ Xenophon were present. 9. We made Xenophon our commander, that we might be brought safely⁹ to Greece. 10. There was danger that the enemy would try⁴ to withdraw within the night.

309.

VOCABULARY.

αἰτία (cf. αἰτιδομαι), blame, censure.

ἅμα, adv., at the same time.

ἀπο-κλείω, shut off, intercept.

ἀπο-λύω, LOOSE from, acquit.

Δέξιππος, ὁ, Dexippus.

δέω,¹⁰ want, need; mid., as pass. dep., want, beg, request.

ἐκατέρωθεν (cf. ἑκαστος), adv., on both sides.

κατ-ηγορέω,¹¹ speak against, charge, accuse.

κυκλόω (κύκλος), surround, encircle, hem in.

οἰκαδε (οἶκος), adv., homeward.

πλούσιος, -ᾱ, -ον, rich, wealthy.

πύξ (cf. πυκνός), adv., with the fist.

ρᾶδως, adv., easily, readily.

στερέω, deprive, rob.

¹ the one hindering (see p. 83⁹), i.e. him who hindered.

² Cf. 175, I. 11.

³ Cf. 201, I. 10.

⁴ Use the aor.

⁵ Cf. 281, I. 13.

⁶ To be expressed in Greek, as emphatic.

⁷ Use the finite mood in Greek, and cf. I. 16 above.

⁸ I.e. if not.

⁹ Cf. 305, I. 8.

¹⁰ δέω, δεήσω, etc. The theme, except in the pres., is δεε-. The act. is used commonly only in the impersonal form δεῖ, fut. δεήσει (subjv. δέη, opt. δέοι), it is necessary or proper, it behooves, one must or ought or should.

¹¹ Cf. ἀγορεύω (ἀγορά), speak publicly, harangue.

LESSON XLI.

Contract Verbs in the Optative.

Review 241-243 entire.

310.

PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT ACTIVE.	PRESENT MID. and PASS.
S. 1	τῖμ(αοί)ῶ-ν or τῖμ(δοί)ῶ-μι	τῖμ(αοί)ῶ-μην
2	τῖμ(αοί)ῶ-ς τῖμ(δοίς)ῶ-ς	τῖμ(δοί)ῶ-ο
3	τῖμ(αοί)ῶ τῖμ(δοί)ῶ	τῖμ(δοί)ῶ-το
D. 2	τῖμ(δοί)ῶ-τον	τῖμ(δοί)ῶ-σθον
3	τῖμ(αοί)ῶ-την	τῖμ(αοί)ῶ-σθην
P. 1	τῖμ(δοί)ῶ-μεν	τῖμ(αοί)ῶ-μεθα
2	τῖμ(δοί)ῶ-τε	τῖμ(δοί)ῶ-σθε
3	τῖμ(δοί)ῶ-ν	τῖμ(δοί)ῶ-ντο
S. 1	φιλ(εοί)οίη-ν or φιλ(έοι)οῖ-μι	φιλ(εοί)οῖ-μην
2	φιλ(εοί)οίη-ς φιλ(έοις)οῖ-ς	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-ο
3	φιλ(εοί)οίη φιλ(έοι)οῖ	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-το
D. 2	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-τον	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-σθον
3	φιλ(εοί)οῖ-την	φιλ(εοί)οῖ-σθην
P. 1	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-μεν	φιλ(εοί)οῖ-μεθα
2	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-τε	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-σθε
3	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-ν	φιλ(έοι)οῖ-ντο
S. 1	δηλ(οοί)οίη-ν or δηλ(δοί)οῖ-μι	δηλ(οοί)οῖ-μην
2	δηλ(οοί)οίη-ς δηλ(δοίς)οῖ-ς	δηλ(δοί)οῖ-ο
3	δηλ(οοί)οίη δηλ(δοί)οῖ	δηλ(δοί)οῖ-το
D. 2	δηλ(δοί)οῖ-τον	δηλ(δοί)οῖ-σθον
3	δηλ(οοί)οῖ-την	δηλ(οοί)οῖ-σθην
P. 1	δηλ(δοί)οῖ-μεν	δηλ(οοί)οῖ-μεθα
2	δηλ(δοί)οῖ-τε	δηλ(δοί)οῖ-σθε
3	δηλ(δοί)οῖ-ν	δηλ(δοί)οῖ-ντο

a. In the act. these verbs generally have -ιη- as mood-sign in the sing., but -ι- in the dual and plur., as also in all the numbers of the mid. and pass.

b. Observe that when the mood-sign is *-η* the first pers. sing. act. has the regular ending *-ν* (163), but when it is *-ι* the ending is *-μ* (297 b). For the mood-suffix *-η*, see 298 a and 307 b.

311.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοίμην; 2. εἰ δὲ ἤττωντο, οὐκ ἂν σωθεῖεν. 3. ἐπλησίαζον, ἵνα τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους¹ ἐλευθεροῖεν. 4. οὐκέτι ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ οἱ ὀπλῖται ἀθῦμοιεν. 5. εἰ οἱ Ἕλληνες νικῶεν τοὺς βαρβάρους, καλῶς ἂν ἔχοι. 6. οὐκ ἂν οὖν θαυμάζοιμι εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι ἡμῖν² ἐπακολουθοῖεν. 7. κίνδυνος ἦν μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι σφενδονῶεν καὶ τοξεύοιεν. 8. εἰ Ξενοφῶν ἡμῶν στρατηγοίη, εὐπετῶς ἂν σωθεῖμεν. 9. εἰ ἔχοιμεν χρήματα, φίλους ῥαδίως ἂν ποιοίμεθα. 10. εἴτα δὲ τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς ἀπήγον, ἵνα τῶν κακῶν ἔργων³ ζημιοῖντο. 11. πάντες ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ ὁ Κλέαρχος τιμωροῖτο τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς. 12. εἰ ὅπλα ἔχοιμεν, καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ ἂν χρῶμεθα. 13. ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ οὐκέτι τῷ στρατεύματι⁴ ἡγοῖτο. 14. τοὺς τοὺς μισθοφόρους τάχ' ἂν μισθοῖτο, εἰ πορεύοιντο εἰς τὴν ἀρχήν. 15. ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ ἐξ ὑποψίας ποιοῖεν ἀνήκεστα κακὰ⁵ τοὺς Ἕλληνας. 16. ἀλλ' εἰ τοῦτοις προσφιλῶς χρῶμεθα, ἡμῖν εὖνοι ἂν εἶεν. 17. εἰ δέ τις⁶ σε λῦποιή, ὥς δεσπότης ἂν κολάσειας, ἔχων⁷ ἡμᾶς ὑπηρέτᾶς. 18. σοὶ οὐκ ἂν τοῦ μισθοῦ ἕνεκα μόνον ὑπηρετοῖμεν⁸ ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος, ἦν⁹ σοι ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως.

II. 1. I feared that they would depart to¹⁰ the boats. 2. If we should ravage their land, the enemy would be frightened. 3. They feared that the citizens would be discouraged. 4. They sent a thousand soldiers, that the enemy might not give assist-

¹ the captives. See p. 83⁹.

² Cf. 256, I. 16.

³ Verbs of judicial action take a gen. expressing the crime.

⁴ Cf. 106, I. 10.

⁵ See p. 31² and p. 94².

⁶ Cf. 274, I. 4. For the accent, see 186 c.

⁷ See p. 104¹⁰.

⁸ Cf. 256, I. 18.

⁹ which, acc. sing. fem. of the relative pron. ὅς, ἥ, ὅ.

¹⁰ πρὸς.

ance. 5. But if we should be worsted, we should depart. 6. We should proceed homeward, unless somebody¹ molested us. 7. The barbarians feared that they would be besieged. 8. If we should be of service to the citizens, they would feel grateful to us. 9. But when Cyrus called (me), I proceeded, that I might be of service to him.² 10. If we should try to be co-workers with these men, they would always love us.

312.

VOCABULARY.

ἀ-θυμέω (θυμός), be discouraged, be dejected.

αἰχμαλωτός, -ον, taken in war, captured.

ἀνήκεστος, -ον, incurable, irreparable.

δεσπότης, master, lord.

ἐπ-ακολουθέω, follow upon or after, pursue.

εὐπετῶς, adv., easily.

ζημιώω, do damage to, punish.

λύπew, grieve, distress, annoy, molest.

προσ-φιλῶς (φίλος), adv., in a friendly way toward, kindly.

σφενδονάω (σφενδόνη), use the sling, throw with a sling.

τάχα (ταχέως), adv., quickly, forthwith; in apodosis with ἄν, perhaps.

τιμωρέω, avenge; mid. avenge oneself on, take vengeance on.

ὑπηρέτης (cf. ὑπηρετέω), assistant, attendant.

LESSON XLII.

Affinity of Words. — Reading Lesson.

Give the meanings of the following words: —

313.

WORD LIST.

ἀγών *	αἰχμαλωτός	ἀνήκεστος	ἀποσφίζω *	ἀχαρίστως *
ἀδύνατος *	ἀκολουθέω *	ἀντήρ *	ἀποχωρέω *	βάλανος
αἶ	ἄκων *	ἀπάγω *	ἀριθμός	βασιλείᾱ *
ἀθυμέω *	ἄμα	ἄπᾶς *	ἀρχή *	βασιλικός *
ἀθυμιά *	ἀμαχεῖ *	ἄπειμι *	ἀσκέω	βιάζομαι
αἰσχύνη	ἀμελῶς *	ἀποκλείω *	ἀσπάζομαι	βοηθέω *
αἰτέω	ἄν	ἀποκωλύω *	ἀσφαλῶς	βουλή *
αἰτιά *	ἀνδρείως *	ἀπολύω *	αὐλλίζομαι	γάμος
αἰτιόδομαι *	ἄνευ	ἀποσπᾶω *	ἀφυλάκτως *	γαστήρ

¹ Cf. I. 17 above.

² αὐτόν, acc. sing. masc.

γέ	ἔξ	κατάγω *	οὐδέ *	στρατηγέω *
γυμνικός	ἐξάγω *	κατηγορέω *	παρακαλέω *	σὺμπᾶς *
δαίμων	ἐξαπατάω	κλείω *	παρακελεύομαι *	συνακολουθέω *
Δέξιππος	ἐξορμάω *	κοινῇ		σύνδειπνος
δεσπότης	ἐπακολουθέω *	κρᾶτήρ	παραπλήσιος *	συνεργός *
δεῦρο	ἐπιθῦμέω *	κραυγῇ		συνθήκη
δέω (bind)	ἐπικίνδυνος *	κρίθῃ *	πάρειμι *	σφενδονάω *
δέω (need)	ἐπιμελόμαι *	κρίθινος *	πᾶς *	σωφρονέω
δηῶ	ἐπιορκέω *	κτάομαι *	πατήρ	τάχα *
διᾱκόσιοι *	ἐργάζομαι *	κύκλος *	περίχω *	τελευταίω
διαπολεμέω *	ἔργον *	κυκλώω *	περιτεύω *	τέτταρες *
διασπᾶω *	ἔρημος	ληστής	πιστεύω *	τίμιος *
ἑάν (ἄν, ἦν)	ἔτι *	λιμὴν	πιστότης *	τίμωρέω
ἑάω	εὖ *	λοιδορέω	πλούσιος	ὑμέτερος *
εἰρήνη	εὐνοϊκῶς *	λοιπός	πολεμέω *	ὑπάγω *
ἐκατέρωθεν *	εὐπετῶς	Λύκαιος	πονέω *	ὑπηρετέω *
ἐκεῖ *	ζημιοῶ	λύπεω	πονηρίᾱ *	ὑπηρετῆς *
ἐκκλησίᾱ *	ζητέω	Μένων	ποτέ	φοβέω *
ἐκποδών	ἡγεμών *	μή	πρὸ *	φοινίξ
ἐκών *	ἡγέομαι *	μήν	προσάγω *	φύω
ἐλευθερώω *	ἡττάομαι	μήτηρ	προσφιλάω *	χαρίζω *
Ἑλλάς *	θαρραλέως	Μιλῆσιος *	πύξ *	χειρόω
Ἑλλην *	θεωρέω	μισθόω *	πῦρός	χράομαι *
ἔμπροσθεν *	θυγάτηρ	οἰκαδε *	ῥαδίως	ψιλός
ἐνθάδε *	ἵνα	ὄμως	ῥήτωρ	ῥᾶ
ἐνθύμημα *	καινός	ὀπισθοφυ-	σκευοφόρος *	ὥσπερ *
ἐννοέομαι *	καλῶς *	λαξ *	στερέω	ὠφέλεω

Review 249.

Associate each starred word in 313 with some other word or words of those given in 130, 194, 249, and 313, related to it in form and meaning.

Review 140, 142.

Read and translate again 143, 195, 250.

Read and translate the following passage : —

314.

Κῦρος.

IV. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔτοιμος ἦν Κῦρος πορεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφόν, ἐκέλευσε τοὺς στρατηγούς παρεῖναι. καλεῖ δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας

κελεύει σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι. οἱ δὲ ἡδέως ἠκολού-
 5 θουν· ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ. Τισσαφέρνης δὲ ἐπεὶ ταῦτα
 κατενόησε, πορεύεται πρὸς τὸν Ἀρταξέρξην. ὁ δὲ οὕτω
 τὴν ἐπιβουλὴν ἤσθάνετο καὶ ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων τούτους τοὺς στρατιωτὰς ὥρμητο ἀπὸ
 Σάρδεων· καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς
 10 παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν.
 ἐπὶ δὲ τούτῳ γέφυρα ἐπήν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς
 τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ ὀκτὼ εἰς Κελαινάς, τῆς
 Φρυγίᾳς πόλιν. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασιλεία ἦν καὶ παράδει-
 σος ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου.
 15 διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ρεῖ ὁ Μαίανδρος ποταμός·
 αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ
 τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι δὲ καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου βασιλεία
 ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποτα-
 μοῦ· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμβάλλει εἰς
 20 τὸν Μαίανδρον. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος
 ἀπεχώρει, ὠκοδόμησε ταῦτα τὰ βασιλεία. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε
 Κῦρος ἡμέρας τριάκοντα, καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποί-
 ησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἦσαν οἱ ὀπλῖται μὲν μύριοι καὶ
 χίλιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ δισχίλιοι.

NOTES.

1. ἔτοιμος, ready, prepared. — 3. πολιορκοῦντας: pres. part., contracted from πολιορκέοντας. — 4. οἱ δέ, and they. Cf. ὁ δέ, and he. — 6. κατενόησε: aor. of κατα-νοέω, observe. — 7. ἤσθάνετο: imperf. of αἰσθάνομαι, perceive. — ἀντι-παρεσκευάζετο: note the force, in composition, of the first prep. — 9. Σάρδεων: gen. of Σάρδεις, Sardis. — ἐξελαύνει, marches. — Λυδίας: Λυδία, Lydia. — τρεῖς, THREE. — 10. παρασάγγας: παρασάγγης, a parasang, a Persian road-measure, equal to about three and one-third miles. — εἴκοσι, twenty. — 12. τέτταρας: acc. plur. masc. of τέτταρες. — ὀκτὼ, EIGHT. — 13. πόλιν: acc. sing. of πόλις. — 14. πλήρης, FULL. See p. 21¹. — ἃ: acc. plur. neut. of the rel. pron. ὅς, ἡ, ὃ, which, referring to θηρίων. — 15. ρεῖ: ρέω, flow. — 16. αὐτοῦ, of it, gen. sing. masc. — 17. πόλεως: gen. sing. of πόλις. — 19. ἐμβάλλει, empties. — 21. ὠκοδόμησε: aor. of οἰκοδομέω, build. — ἔμεινε: ἔμεινα, aor. of μένω, remain. — 22. τριάκοντα, thirty.

Translate the following passage into Greek : —

315. Thus, then, Cyrus collected an army both Greek and barbarian. Of the Greeks there were 11,000 heavy-armed men and 2000 targeteers. With these he marches through Lydia and Phrygia to Celaenae. There he had a beautiful park, abounding in trees and vines. Through Celaenae flows the river Marsyas, and empties into the river Maeander. There Xerxes built a fortified palace at the sources of the Marsyas. Cyrus remained a month at Celaenae and made an enumeration of his Greek soldiers in the park.

LESSON XLIII.

Stems in -σ- (-εσ- and -ασ-) of the Consonant-Declension.

316.

PARADIGMS.

	τὸ ὄρος (ορεσ-) mountain	ὁ Σωκράτης (Σωκρατεσ-) Socrates	τὸ κρέας (κρεασ-) meat
S. N.	ὄρος	Σωκράτης	κρέας
G.	(ὄρε-ος) ὄρους	(Σωκράτε-ος) Σωκράτους	(κρέα-ος) κρέως
D.	(ὄρε-ϊ) ὄρει	(Σωκράτε-ϊ) Σωκράτει	(κρέα-ϊ) κρέαι
A.	ὄρος	(Σωκράτε-α) Σωκράτη	κρέας
V.	ὄρος	Σώκρατες	κρέας
D. N. A. V.	(ὄρε-ε) ὄρη		
G. D.	(ὀρέ-οιν) ὀροῖν		
P. N. A. V.	(ὄρε-α) ὄρη		(κρέα-α) κρέα
G.	(ὀρέ-ων) ὀρών		(κρέα-ων) κρέων
D.	ὄρε-σι		κρέα-σι

Observe the application of the principles stated in 213 a, 2, 3, 5. But note (a) that neut. stems in -εσ- have -ος for -ες in the nom., acc., and voc. sing.; (b) that final -σ- of the stem falls away before all case-endings, and that vowels thus brought together are contracted (see 241, but -ε-ε give -η, and -α-α give -α, not -ᾱ); and (c) that such substantives as Σωκράτης have recessive accent in the voc.

317. Gender. — Neuter are all substantives whose stems end in -εσ-, -ασ-, except names of males.

318. Like ὄρος are declined: βάθος, depth; βέλος, missile; ἔθνος, nation, tribe; εὖρος, breadth, width; κράνος, helmet; μέγεθος, greatness, magnitude; τεῖχος, wall; τέλος, fulfilment, end, plur. magistrates; ὕψος, height.

319.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἦν. 2. τούτου τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ εὖρος ἐστὶ δύο πλέθρα. 3. εἶχον δὲ κράνη χαλκᾶ. 4. καὶ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἔξω τῶν βελῶν¹ ἀπεχώρει. 5. πάντες δ' οὗτοι κατὰ² ἔθνη ἐπορεύοντο. 6. καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως³ ἡγεῖσθαι. 7. ἦσαν κατὰ² τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἑλλήνων κέρας. 8. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἀγρίων ὄνων ἦν παραπλήσια⁴ τοῖς ἐλαφείοις.⁵ 9. τὸ Μένωνος στρατεύμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν εἴσω τῶν ὁρέων.¹ 10. ἔνθεν μὲν⁶ γὰρ ὄρη ἦν ὑψηλά, ἔνθεν δὲ ὁ ποταμός. 11. τέλος⁷ δὲ καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. 12. ἐνταῦθα ἦν πύραμις, τὸ μὲν εὖρος⁸ πλέθρου,⁹ τὸ δὲ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων. 13. ἡ τοῦ ὄρους κορυφὴ ὑπὲρ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἦν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδος ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον ἔνθα¹⁰ ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι. 14. ἐθανατώθη ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν τῇ Σπάρτῃ τελῶν οὗτος ὁ ἄνθρωπος. 15. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ταῖς¹¹ Τισσαφέρνους, οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρεκλήθησαν εἴσω. 16. ἔνθα ὁ μὲν Τίγρης ποταμὸς ἄπορος ἦν διὰ τὸ βάθος καὶ μέγεθος. 17. ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς¹² εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος. 18. ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν κρηπὶς τὸ εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, καὶ τὸ ὕψος πεντήκοντα. ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ

¹ Cf. 111, I. 12.

² See 182.

³ Cf. 256, I. 1.

⁴ Words of likeness or unlikeness take the dat.

⁵ Sc. κρέασι.

⁶ ἔνθεν μὲν . . . ἔνθεν δέ, on the one side . . . and on the other.

⁷ Finally, neut. acc. used as adv.

⁸ The acc. is joined with verbs, adjectives, and substantives, to denote, that in respect to which the expression is used. This is called the accusative of specification.

⁹ Gen. of measure.

¹⁰ Here in the sense of where.

¹¹ Cf. 228, I. 4.

¹² Cf. 256, I. 16.

ἦν τεῖχος, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἑκατόν.

II. 1. The generals proceeded through the mountains. 2. But Menon had the left wing. 3. And Socrates advises¹ Xenophon. 4. But the breadth of this wall is twenty feet.² 5. The tables were laden with³ meat. 6. They lead peltasts to⁴ the mountain. 7. On the table is venison.⁵ 8. Thence he sent the messenger upon the mountains. 9. But a lofty mountain surrounds this plain from sea to sea. 10. But this wall was twenty feet² in breadth and one hundred in height.

320.

VOCABULARY.

εἴκοσι, indec., *twenty*.

εἰσω (eis), adv., *within, inside of*.

ἐλάφειος, -ον, *of a deer*.

ἔξω (ἐξ), adv., *without, outside of, beyond the reach of*.

ἔφ-οδος, ἡ (ἐπί, ὁδός), *way to, approach*.

κέρας, -ας, -ως, *horn, peak, wing*.

κορυφή, *top, summit*.

κρηπίς, -ιδος, *foundation, base*.

πεντήκοντα (πέντε), indec., *fifty*.

πλῆθρον, *a plethrum* (100 Greek feet).

πούς, ποδός, ὁ,⁶ *foot*.

πύραμις, -ιδος, *pyramid*.

Σπάρτη (cf. Σπαρτιάτης), *Sparta*.

Τισσαφέρνης, -εος, -ους,⁷ *Tissaphernes*.

ὑπέρ, prep., *over* (Latin *super*): with gen., *over, above, for, in behalf of*; with acc., *over, beyond*.

ὕψηλος, -ή, -όν (ὑψος), *high, lofty*.

LESSON XLIV.

Imperative Active.

Review 265, 266.

321. The only tenses found in the imperative *active* are the present and aorist.⁸ The distinction between these is precisely that found in the subjunctive (267). Thus τοῖς θεοῖς θύε means *offer sacrifice to the gods* (habitually), but θύσον means simply, *sacrifice*. See further the examples in 324, 326.

¹ Use συμβουλεύω, and see p. 31⁸.

² Use the gen. (of *measure*).

³ Use μεστός, and cf. 92, I. 6.

⁴ πρὸς.

⁵ *deer-meat, meat* (plur.) *of a deer*.

⁶ An exception to 234 b.

⁷ The acc. is Τισσαφέρην, the voc. Τισσαφέρην, formed on the analogy of masc. substantives of the A-declension (see 107).

⁸ Only a few *perfect active* forms occur, and these are rare.

322. The personal endings, which are peculiar to the imperative, in the active are : —

	SINGULAR.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
2	-θι	-τον	-τε
3	-τω	-των	-ντων

323.

PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT.	FIRST AORIST.	PRES. IMP. of εἰμί.
S. 2	λῦε	λύσον	ἴσ-θι
3	λύε-τω	λύσά-τω	ἴσ-τω
D. 2	λύε-τον	λύσα-τον	ἴσ-τον
3	λύε-των	λύσά-των	ἴσ-των
P. 2	λύε-τε	λύσα-τε	ἴσ-τε
3	λύό-ντων	λύσά-ντων	ἴσ-των

a. In the second pers. sing. of the pres. the ending -θι is omitted. The form λύσον in the aor. is irregular.

b. In the impv. of εἰμί, ἴσ-θι is for ἐσ-θι, and ἴσ-των (third plur.) for ἐσ-ντων, which would be unpronounceable.

324. Imperative in Commands, Exhortations, and Entreaties.

Examine the following : —

παῖε, εἰ κελεύει ὁ παῖς, *strike, if the lad commands it.*

ἀγόντων τοὺς στρατιώτας, *let them bring the soldiers.*

σὺ οὖν πρὸς θεῶν συμβούλευσον ἡμῖν, *do you, then, in Heaven's name, advise us.*

325. Rule of Syntax. — The imperative expresses a command, exhortation, or entreaty.

326. Imperative and Subjunctive in Prohibitions.

Examine the following : —

μὴ παιδεύετε τοὺς παῖδας ἀδικεῖν, *do not train the boys to do wrong.*

τοῦτον τὸν παῖδα μὴ κολάσης, *do not punish this boy.*

327. Rule of Syntax. — In negative commands, or prohibitions, μή is used with the present imperative if the act is continued, but with the aorist subjunctive if the simple occurrence of the act is to be expressed.

328.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. διάσωσον ἡμῖν τὰ πρόβατα. 2. τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους πάραγε. 3. μὴ ἄγε, ὦ Κλέαρχε, τὸ στράτευμα δεῦρο. 4. μὴ ποιήσης ταῦτα, ὦ Κλέαρχε. 5. μὴ λῦπῆσης τὸν πατέρα. 6. Κύρῳ μᾶλλον φίλοι ἔστε ἢ τῷ ἀδελφῷ. 7. ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τὸν σκοπὸν πεμφάντων ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. 8. ἐᾶσάτω με εἶναι καλὸν τε καὶ ἀγαθόν. 9. μὴ καταφρονήσης τοῦ ἀγγέλου.¹ 10. ἡμᾶς κακῶς μὴ ποιήσης, τοὺς Κύρου φίλους. 11. μὴ καταλύσης πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτᾱς. 12. πέμψατε πρὸς τὸν ἀρμοστήν στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τοὺς ἐπιτηδεῖους. 13. Ξενοφῶντα προπέμψατε τοῖς ἵπποις² ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα. 14. σὺ δέ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἀνακοίνωσον τῷ θεῷ³ περὶ τῆς πορείᾱς. 15. καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ πέμψατε φυλακὴν. 16. ἐὰν δὲ οὗτος οὕτω κελεύσῃ, πάρεστε εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν. 17. ἄγετε, ὦ ἄνδρες λοχαγοί, τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους,⁴ τοὺς μὲν⁵ ἐν ἀριστερᾷ,⁶ τοὺς δ' ἐν δεξιᾷ.⁶ 18. καὶ εἰς τὸ μέσον⁷ τοῦ στρατοπέδου τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἄγετε· παρέστω δ' ἡμῖν⁸ καὶ Τολμίδης ὁ κῆρυξ. 19. Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων ἐπείπερ εἰσὶ ὑμέτεροι μὲν εὐεργέται, ἡμέτεροι δὲ στρατηγοί, πέμψατε αὐτοὺς δεῦρο.

II. 1. Send Xenophon with me. 2. Be well-disposed to the Greeks. 3. Send the messengers here. 4. Do not destroy the bridge. 5. Send men with me from the van.⁹ 6. But do you,

¹ See p. 107⁴.

² on horseback. See p. 25⁵.

³ See p. 83¹⁰.

⁴ in column.

⁵ οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ, some . . . others.

⁶ So we say on the left, on the

right. The dat. of χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ, hand, is understood.

⁷ Cf. 175, I. 6.

⁸ Some verbs compounded with πρὸς, παρὰ, περὶ, ὑπό, take a dat. depending on the prep. See p. 31⁸.

⁹ Use στόμα.

fellow-soldiers, bring hoplites. 7. Do not make us foes¹ to the Greeks. 8. And let this be the watchword. 9. But send others upon the mountain. 10. Be friends and allies, soldiers, to Cyrus. 11. But do you, Xenophon, call the (two) Lacedaemonians. 12. Fellow²-soldiers, do not wonder that³ I am grieved.

329.

VOCABULARY.

ἀνα-κοινῶ,⁴ consult with, confer with.

ἀριστερός, -ά, -όν, left.

ἐπεὶ-περ,⁵ conj., since indeed.

εὖ-εργέτης, -ου (εὖ, ἔργον), well-doer, benefactor.

κατα-τίω, LOOSE OR put down, unyoke, make peace.

κατα-φρονέω,⁶ despise.

λόχος, ὁ (cf. λοχ-ἄγός), company.

παρ-άγω, lead along, lead on.

πορεία (cf. πορεύω), journey, march.

πρόβατον, com. plur., sheep, cattle.

προ-πέμπω, send forward, escort.

σκοπός, ὁ, scout, sentinel.

Τολμίδης, -ου, Tolmides.

LESSON XLV.

Imperative Middle and Passive.

330. The tenses occurring in the imperative *middle* and *passive* are the present, aorist, and perfect. The aorist has distinct forms for the middle and passive.

331. The personal endings in the imperative middle and passive are:—

	SINGULAR.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
2	-σο	-σθον	-σθε
3	-σθω	-σθων	-σθων

¹ Use ἐχθρός (240).

² Cf. I. 17 above.

³ Use ὅτι.

⁴ For the force of ἀνά, see p. 64⁴.
κοινῶ means make common (κοινός,

-ή, -όν, common, joint; cf. κοινῇ in 285), consult.

⁵ ἐπεὶ, since, and πέρ, very, just, even, postpositive and enclitic particle.

⁶ See p. 124⁴.

332.

PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT M. and P.	FIRST AORIST M.	PERFECT M. and P.	FIRST AORIST P.
S. 2	λύου	λύσαι	λέλυ-σο	λύθη-τι
3	λύέ-σθω	λύσά-σθω	λελύ-σθω	λυθή-τω
D. 2	λύε-σθον	λύσα-σθον	λέλυ-σθον	λύθη-τον
3	λύέ-σθων	λύσά-σθων	λελύ-σθων	λυθή-των
P. 2	λύε-σθε	λύσα-σθε	λέλυ-σθε	λύθη-τε
3	λύέ-σθων	λύσά-σθων	λελύ-σθων	λυθέ-ντων

a. λύου is for λῡε-σο (see 200 b). λύσαι is irregular.

b. In the aor. pass., which always uses *active* endings (see 226 a, 276 c, 307 c), λύθη-τι is for λυθη-θι, to avoid the occurrence of the rough mute (114) at the beginning of successive syllables. Observe that the aor. pass. lengthens the tense-suffix *x*, before a single consonant.

333.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. εἰς τὸ πεδίον ἀθροισθέντων οἱ Ἕλληνες. 2. ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τοῖς θεοῖς θύσασθε. 3. ἡγησai, ὦ Κλέαρχε, τοῦ στρατεύματος εἰς Βυζάντιον. 4. σύνδειπνον μὴ ποιήσῃ¹ τὸν κωμάρχην. 5. εὐθύς οὖν πορεύεσθε, ἵνα ἡμῖν² παρασκηνητε. 6. τιμηθήτω οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ διαφερόντως. 7. εἰ δὲ χρήζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. 8. εἰς Χερρόνησον βιά³ διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους πορεύεσθε. 9. συστρατεύεσθε ἡμῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους. 10. σφζέσθων ὅπη δυνατόν ἐστιν. 11. κολασθέντων δὲ νῦν ἀξίως τῆς ἀδικίᾱς.⁴ 12. αἰσχροῦν οὖν ἔργων⁵ ἀπέχου. 13. τὰ πλοῖα μὴ μεταπέμψησθε. 14. λελύσθω⁶ ἡ γέφυρα. 15. μὴ αἰτιάσησθε τὸν ἄρχοντα. 16. τοῦτον, ὦ ἄνδρες, παίετε καὶ βιάσασθε πορεύεσθαι. 17. ἐνθυμήθητε ὅτι ἄδηλα παντὶ ἀνθρώπῳ ταῦτά ἐστιν. 18. τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' ἀγοράζεσθε, καὶ συσκευάζεσθε. 19. εἰς τὴν ἔω⁷ ὀρμησάσθων ἀπὸ τῶν

¹ See 327 and 276.

² Cf. 328, I. 18.

⁴ See p. 91².

⁶ Cf. 263, I. 14.

³ See p. 25⁵.

⁶ The perf. impv. expresses finality, *let it be destroyed once for all*; literally, *let it have been destroyed*.

⁷ Cf. 175, I. 9.

τῆς Παρυσάτιδος κωμῶν. 20. παραιτησάσθων οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ περὶ τοῖν ἀνδροῖν.

II. 1. Rest in the plain. 2. Put¹ this man out of the way. 3. Call a meeting,² Cyrus, of the citizens. 4. Desist,³ therefore, from this war. 5. Proceed slowly,⁴ soldiers, through the plain. 6. Summon, Cyrus, the general and the peltasts. 7. Welcome the soldiers, Xenophon. 8. Summon the generals and the captains of the Greeks. 9. Let the citizens ransom their children with money.⁵ 10. Let the boys be well educated. 11. Proceed with me, fellow-soldiers, against Miletus. 12. Let the citizens be collected in the market-place.

334.

VOCABULARY.

αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν (cf. αἰσχύνῃ), shame-ful, disgraceful, base.

ἀξίως (ἀξιος), adv., worthily, fitly.

βίᾳ (cf. βιάζομαι), force, violence.

διαφερόντως, adv., pre-eminently.

ἐν-θυμέομαι,⁶ pass. dep., have in mind, reflect.

οἷ (cf. οἶσιν), conjunctive adv., wherever, in whatever way.

παρ-αιτέομαι (αἰτέω), beg, intercede.

παρ-α-σκηνέω (σκηνή), encamp near or by.

χρηζῶ, want, need, desire.

LESSON XLVI.

Contract Verbs in the Imperative.

Review 241-243.

335.

PARADIGMS.

	PRESENT ACTIVE.	PRESENT MIDDLE and PASSIVE.
S. 2	τίμ(αε)ᾶ	τίμ(αου)ῶ
3	τίμ(αέ)ᾶ-τω	τίμ(αέ)ᾶ-σθω
D. 2	τίμ(αε)ᾶ-τον	τίμ(αε)ᾶ-σθον
3	τίμ(αέ)ᾶ-των	τίμ(αέ)ᾶ-σθων
P. 2	τίμ(αε)ᾶ-τε	τίμ(αε)ᾶ-σθε
3	τίμ(αό)ῶ-ντων	τίμ(αέ)ᾶ-σθων

¹ Use the aor. mid. of ποιεῖν.

² Cf. 256, I. 3. Use the aor. mid.

³ Use ἀναπαύομαι.

⁴ Cf. 228, I. 14.

⁵ See p. 47⁶.

⁶ See p. 101².

S. 2	φιλ(εε)ει	φιλ(έου)ού
3	φιλ(εε)ει-τω	φιλ(εε)ει-σθω
D. 2	φιλ(έε)ει-τον	φιλ(έε)ει-σθον
3	φιλ(εε)ει-των	φιλ(εε)ει-σθων
P. 2	φιλ(έε)ει-τε	φιλ(έε)ει-σθε
3	φιλ(εό)ού-ντων	φιλ(εε)ει-σθων
S. 2	δηλ(αε)ου	δηλ(όου)ού
3	δηλ(αε)ού-τω	δηλ(αε)ού-σθω
D. 2	δηλ(όε)ού-τον	δηλ(όε)ού-σθον
3	δηλ(αε)ού-των	δηλ(αε)ού-σθων
P. 2	δηλ(όε)ού-τε	δηλ(όε)ού-σθε
3	δηλ(αό)ού-ντων	δηλ(αε)ού-σθων

336.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. μὴ πολεμεῖτε ἄδικον πόλεμον.¹ 2. τολμάτω καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης πορεύεσθαι. 3. εὐθὺς ἡγοῦ πρὸς τὰ πειτήδεια.² 4. οὕτω ποιεῖτε, καὶ συσκευάσασθε. 5. θαρρούντων οἱ ὀπλῖται. 6. ἀμιλλᾶσθε, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. 7. κάλει τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους δεῦρο. 8. σφενδονάτε, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ τοξεύετε. 9. τοὺς ἄργους μήποτε μισθοῦσθε. 10. ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖτε, ὅστις³ διὰ φιλιᾶς τῆς χώρᾳς ἀπάξει. 11. ἐρώτᾳ δὲ αὐτοὺς τίνας⁴ ἔνεκα ἐστράτευσαν ἐπ' ἐμέ. 12. ἡγοῦ, ὦ Δρακόντιε, ὅπου τὸν δρόμον πεποίηκας. 13. τοὺς δὲ γέροντας, ὦ Σεύθη, οἴκοι ἔα. 14. μηκέτι ἀπαιτεῖτε τὸν μισθόν. 15. κράτει τῶν αἰσχροῶν ἐπιθυμιῶν.⁵ 16. τῷ λοχαγῷ βοᾶτε ἄγειν τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. 17. ἡμᾶς ἐκ τῆς χώρᾳς ἔατε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν. 18. χρήματα μὴ κτάσθων οἱ παῖδες. 19. ἡμᾶς τοὺς Κύρου φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν μὴ πειράσθω. 20. εἰς τὴν ἔω ὁρμάσθε ἐκ Χερρονήσου. 21. μηκέτι φοβοῦ, ὦ Κλέαρχε, μὴ κυκλωθῆς ἐκατέρωθεν. 22. ἀλλ'

¹ An acc. may repeat the idea already contained in the verb. This is called the *cognate accusative*, and may follow intransitive as well as transitive verbs.

² See p. 55⁴.

³ ὅς, nom. sing. masc. of the general relative pron., ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι.

⁴ Cf. 308, I. 2.

⁵ See p. 90⁷.

ὑμεῖς μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τούτων¹ ἐπιμελείσθε, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι πορευέσθων. 23. μὴ ἀθυμεῖτε, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ὅτι² ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶ³ τοξόται, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις πάρεισιν. 24. ὅστις⁴ ζῆν⁵ ἐπιθυμῇ, πειράσθω νικᾶν· καὶ⁶ εἴ τις⁷ δὲ χρημάτων⁸ ἐπιθυμῇ, κρατεῖν πειράσθω.

II. 1. Ask Cyrus for boats.⁹ 2. Do not do this, Clearchus. 3. Always fear the gods. 4. Thus, therefore, Cyrus, make your levy. 5. Call the general from¹⁰ the rear. 6. Conquer the hoplites with Clearchus. 7. Try to do well by¹¹ your friends. 8. Besiege the stronghold by land and by sea. 9. Let the general be honoured by the citizens. 10. Let Clearchus lead the right wing¹² and Menon the left. 11. Let him lead the heavy-armed men slowly to the camp. 12. Call out to the general to bring the army here. 13. Try, Seuthes, to be a helper to your friends. 14. Fellow-soldiers, do not give assistance to the satrap. 15. Confer, Xenophon, with Socrates, the Athenian, about your journey.

337.

VOCABULARY.

ἀ-δικος, -ον (δίκη), *unjust, wicked*.
ἀμιλλάζομαι, *pass. dep., race, struggle*.
ἀπ-αιτέω, *ask from, demand*.
ἀργός, -όν,¹³ *not working, idle*.
Δρακόντιος, ὁ, *Dracontius*.
δρόμος, ὁ, *run, race, race-course*.
ἐπι-θυμῶ,¹⁴ *desire*.
ζάω, *live*.
θαρρῶ (cf. θαρραλέως), *be bold or courageous, take heart*.

ιδιώτης, -ον, *an ordinary or private person or soldier, private*.
κρατέω, *control, be superior, master, overcome*.
μηκέτι (μή, ἔτι), *no longer*.
μήποτε (μή, ποτέ), *not ever, never*.
ὅπου (cf. ὅπρ, ὅπως), *conjunctive adv., wherever, where*.
τολμῶ, *venture, dare, have the courage*.

¹ Cf. 305, I. 11.

² *because*.

³ After οὐ the enclitic εἰσὶ retains its accent. See also 188 c.

⁴ *whoever*. Cf. I. 10 above.

⁵ Contracted form of ζάειν.

⁶ *also, further*.

⁷ See p. 90³.

⁸ Cf. 293, I. 15.

⁹ Cf. 293, I. 9.

¹⁰ Cf. 247, I. 6.

¹¹ εὖ ποιέω, *do well by*. Cf. 247, I. 11.

¹² Cf. 256, I. 1.

¹³ Contracted from ἀ-εργός (ἔργον).

¹⁴ See p. 101².

LESSON XLVII.

Adjective Stems in *-ν-* and *-σ-* of the Consonant-Declension.

Review 258.

338.

PARADIGMS.

	μέλας (μελαν-) black			εὐδαίμων (ευδαιμον-) ¹ fortunate	
	M.	F.	N.	M. F.	N.
S. N.	μέλας	μέλαινα	μέλαν	εὐδαίμων	εὐδαιμον
G.	μέλανος	μελαίνης	μέλανος	εὐδαίμονος	
D.	μέλανι	μελαίνῃ	μέλανι	εὐδαίμονι	
A.	μέλανα	μέλαιναν	μέλαν	εὐδαίμονα	εὐδαιμον
V.	μέλαν	μέλαινα	μέλαν	εὐδαιμον	
D. N. A. V.	μέλανι	μελαίνᾱ	μέλανι	εὐδαίμονι	
G. D.	μελάνοιν	μελαίνοιιν	μελάνοιν	εὐδαιμόνοιιν	
P. N.	μέλανες	μέλαιναι	μέλανα	εὐδαίμονες	εὐδαίμονα
G.	μελάνων	μελαίνων	μελάνων	εὐδαιμόνων	
D.	μέλασι	μελαίναις	μέλασι	εὐδαίμοσι	
A.	μέλανας	μελαίνᾱς	μέλανα	εὐδαίμονας	εὐδαίμονα

a. Observe the application of the principles stated in 213 a, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 287.

b. But stems in *-αν-* add *-ς* to form the nom. sing. masc., against the rule (213 a). The fem. ends in *-αινα*.²

c. Most other stems in *-ν-* are of two endings (147), and form the nom. sing. masc. and fem. regularly (213 a). The accent is recessive (32). Cf. the declension of *δαίμων* in 286.

339. Like *εὐδαίμων* are declined: *ἄ-γνώμων*,³ *ignorant, thoughtless*; *ἄ-φρων*,⁴ *senseless, foolish*; *μνήμων*, *mindful*; *σώ-φρων*,⁴ *of sound mind, discreet*; *ὑπέρ-φρων*,⁴ *high-minded, haughty, arrogant*.

¹ *εὐ-δαίμων* (*δαίμων*), *of good fate or fortune*.

² See p. 85¹.

³ Root *γνω*, *γνω*, *KNOW*. Cf. *γνώμη*, *νόος* (where *γ* is lost, as in Lat. *nōscō*), *ἐν-νοέω*, *εὐ-νοος*, *εὐ-νοία*, *εὐ-νοϊκῶς*, *κακό-νοος*, *ὄνομα*, 'that by

which one is known' (cf. Lat. *nō-men*).

⁴ Related to *φρήν*, *φρεν-ός*, *ἦ*, *midriff, heart, mind*. So *σώ-φρων* (*σώ(ω)*), *σωφρωνέω*, *ὑπέρ-φρων*, and *κατα-φρονέω*, which means literally, *set one's mind against*.

340. Adjectives with stems in -εσ- are of two endings.

341. PARADIGMS.

ἀληθής (αληθεσ-), ¹ true		πλήρης (πληρεσ-), full	
M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
ἀληθής	ἀληθές	πλήρης	πλήρες
(ἀληθέ-ος)	ἀληθοῦς	(πλήρε-ος)	πλήρους
(ἀληθέ-ι)	ἀληθεί	(πλήρε-ι)	πλήρει
(ἀληθέ-α) ἀληθῇ	ἀληθές	(πλήρε-α) πλήρη	πλήρες
	ἀληθές		πλήρες
(ἀληθέ-ε)	ἀληθῇ	(πλήρε-ε)	πλήρη
(ἀληθέ-οιν)	ἀληθοῖν	(πληρέ-οιν)	πληροῖν
(ἀληθέ-ες) ἀληθεῖς	(ἀληθέ-α) ἀληθῇ	(πλήρε-ες) πλήρεις	(πλήρε-α) πλήρη
(ἀληθέ-ων) ἀληθῶν		(πληρέ-ων) πληρῶν	
	ἀληθέσι		πλήρεσι
ἀληθεῖς	(ἀληθέ-α) ἀληθῇ	πλήρεις	(πλήρε-α) πλήρη

a. Observe the application of the principles stated in 213 a, 2, 3, 5. The masc. and fem. acc. plur. in -εις irregularly follows the nom.

b. Review 316 b, and compare the first two paradigms in 316.

342. Like the above are declined: ἀσθενής, *weak, feeble*; ἀσφαλής (cf. ἀσφαλῶς), *safe, sure, secure*; ἀφανής, *unseen, out of sight*; ἐγκρατής,² *in possession of, master of*; εὐώδης, *sweet-smelling, fragrant*; ἡμιδεής, *half full*; καταφανής, *clearly seen, in plain sight, visible*; ὁμαλής, *level*; σαφής, *clear, manifest*.

343. EXERCISES.

I. 1. μέλαν τὸ χωρίον ἦν. 2. οὐπω πᾶσιν ἐξῆν εὐδαίμοσιν εἶναι. 3. οὗτοι δὲ πάντες ὅπλα μέλανα εἶχον. 4. καὶ κινεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς³ οὐκ ἀσφαλές ἦν. 5. Κῦρος γὰρ ἔπεμπε βίκους οἴνου ἡμιδεεῖς. 6. εὐδαίμονές εἰσιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι οἱ⁴ ἰλεως ἔχουσι τοὺς θεούς. 7. ἔστι τις οὕτως ἄφρων; 8. ἦν γὰρ οὕτω σωτηρίᾳ ἀσφαλής, ἄλλως δὲ πάνν

¹ Cf. ἀλήθεια, ἀληθεύω.

² in control of (cf. κρατέω).

³ Cf. 308, I. 15.

⁴ who, nom. plur. masc. (p. 45³).

χαλεπὸν ἦν ἀποχωρεῖν. 9. οὕτως οὖν ἐκόλασαν οἱ θεοὶ τοὺς ὑπέρφρονας τούτους. 10. ἐπίστευον δὲ αὐτῷ οἱ στρατιῶται ὡς στρατηγῷ σώφρονι ὄντι.¹ 11. οἱ ἡμέτεροι φίλοι τῆς ἀρχῆς² τῆς πατρώας ἐγκρατεῖς ἔσονται. 12. μνήμονες τῶν τοῦ διδασκάλου λόγων³ ἦσαν οἱ τῶν Περσῶν παῖδες. 13. παντάπᾳσιν ἀγνώμονές ἐστε. 14. ἐρωτᾷ τὸν Θρᾶκα εἰ ἀληθὴ ταύτ' ἐστί.⁴ 15. σαφὲς πᾶσιν ἤδη ἐστὶν ὅτι ὁ στόλος ἐστὶν ἐπὶ Ἀρταξέρξην. 16. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδίον ἅπαν ὁμαλὲς ὥσπερ θάλαττα, ἀψινθίου δὲ πλήρες. 17. μέλαν τι⁵ ἔχων ὡς ἐπικούρημα τῆς χιόνος⁶ πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐπορεύετο. 18. ἡ τοῦ Ἀρταξέρξου ἀρχὴ πλήθει⁷ μὲν χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰσχυρὰ ἦν, τοῖς δὲ μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν ἀσθενής. 19. ἐνταῦθα εἶχον πάντα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα⁸ ἐστὶν ἀγαθὰ, ἱερεῖα, σῖτον, οἶνους παλαιοὺς εὐώδεις.

II. 1. But the birds were black. 2. All were senseless. 3. But this⁹ was true. 4. These are not ignorant. 5. The people¹⁰ in this country were all blacks. 6. The Chersonese was a fair and flourishing¹¹ country. 7. Thence the Greeks proceeded to prosperous¹² villages. 8. The soldiers were not yet out of sight. 9. For it was not safe to be among¹³ the trees. 10. It was already mid-day,¹⁴ and the enemy were not yet visible. 11. There Cyrus had a palace, and a park full of wild beasts, which he used to hunt on horseback. 12. But there were also other villages in this plain, full of supplies,¹⁵ along the river¹⁵ Tigris.

¹ Cf. 263, I. 11.

² The gen. is used with adjs. expressing *power*, as with verbs of ruling and leading (see p. 83⁸).

³ The gen. is used with adjs. expressing *sensation* or *mental* action, as with the corresponding verbs (see p. 63⁸).

⁴ See 187 a.

⁵ *something*. Cf. 281, I. 1.

⁶ *protection against the snow*. The attributive gen. here expresses

the *object* of the action. This is called the *objective genitive*.

⁷ *Dative of respect*, a species of the dat. of manner (see p. 25⁶).

⁸ Cf. 263, I. 5.

⁹ Use the neut. plur.

¹⁰ Use the plur. of ἀνθρωπος.

¹¹ Use εὐδαίμων.

¹² ἐν.

¹³ μέσον ἡμέρας.

¹⁴ ἀγαθὰ ('good things').

¹⁵ Use the acc.

344.

VOCABULARY.

ἄλλως (ἄλλος), adv., otherwise.

ἀψινθιον, wormwood.

ἔξ-εστί (εἰμί), impersonal, it is allowed or possible.

ἐπικούρημα, -ατος, protection, relief.

κινῶ, move, remove.

μήκος, -εος (cf. μακρός), length.

οὐ-πω,¹ adv., not yet.

ὄφθαλμός, ὁ, eye.

παλαιός, -ά, -όν, ancient, old.

παντά-πᾶσι (πᾶς), adv., all in all, altogether, wholly.

πατῖνος, -ᾶ, -ον (πατήρ), ancestral, hereditary.

πλήθος, -εος (cf. πλήρης), fulness, extent, number, multitude.

στόλος, ὁ, armed force, expedition.

χιών, -όνος, ἡ,² snow.

LESSON XLVIII.

Infinitive Active, Middle, and Passive.

345. The forms of the infinitive are as follows:—

	PRESENT.	FUTURE.	FIRST AOR.	FIRST PERF.	FUT. PERF.
Active.	λύειν	λύσειν	λύσαι	λελυκέ-ναι	
Middle.	λύε-σθαι	λύσε-σθαι	λύσα-σθαι	λελύ-σθαι	λελύσε-σθαι
Passive.	λύε-σθαι	λυθήσε-σθαι	λυθη-ναι	λελύ-σθαι	λελύσε-σθαι

a. The inf. endings are: *active*, -ειν (contracted with a preceding ε to -ειν, as λῦε-εν, λῦειν) or -ναι; *middle* and *passive*, -σθαι.

b. The perf. act. and aor. pass. (which always uses *active* endings) add -ναι, but the perf. changes α of the stem to ε, and the aor. lengthens the tense-suffix as in the indic. (226 a). The aor. act. is irregular in form.

c. Observe, as exceptions to the principle of recessive accent in verbs (62), that all infs. in -ναι, the aor. act. inf., and the perf. mid. and pass. inf. accent the penult.

346. The present infinitive of εἰμί is εἶναι (for εσ-ναι).

347. The present infinitive of contract verbs is as follows:—

τῖμ(δείν)ᾶν

φιλ(έειν)εῖν

δηλ(όειν)οῦν

τῖμ(δέ)ᾶ-σθαι

φιλ(έε)εῖ-σθαι

δηλ(όε)οῦ-σθαι

¹ οὐ and πῶ, indefinite enclitic adv., yet, up to this time.

² An exception to 292 a.

a. Observe that -α-ειν and -ο-ειν are here contracted into -ᾶν, -οῦν (not into -ᾱν, -οῖν), against the rule (241 i, j).

348. Present and Imperfect Indicative of φημί, say.

	PRESENT.			IMPERFECT.		
1	φη-μί		φα-μέν	ἔφη-ν		ἔφα-μεν
2	φῆς	φα-τόν	φα-τέ	ἔφη-σθα or ἔφη-ς	ἔφα-τον	ἔφα-τε
3	φη-σί	φα-τόν	φᾶσί	ἔφη	ἔφά-την	ἔφα-σαν

a. The theme is φα- (Latin *fā-rī*), which is lengthened to φη- in the sing. All the forms of the pres. indic. are enclitic, except φῆς.

Review 186, 187.

349. Subject of the Infinitive.

Examine the following: —

φησὶ Κλέαρχον ἡγεῖσθαι, *he says that Clearchus is leading the way.*

Μένων ἐπιθυμῇ πλουτεῖν, *Menon desires to be rich.*

συμβουλεύω σοι θύεσθαι, *I advise you to offer sacrifice.*

350. Rule of Syntax. — The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. But the subject of the infinitive is not expressed when it is the same as the subject or the object of the leading verb.

351. Infinitive as Subject.

Examine the following: —

δεῖ¹ τοὺς λοχᾶγους ἀποχωρεῖν, *the captains must withdraw.*

ἀδύνατόν ἐστι ταῦτα ποιῆσαι, *it is impossible to do this.*

ἔξην² ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι, *it was permitted us to proceed.*

352. Rule of Syntax. — As subject nominative the infinitive is used chiefly with impersonal verbs or ἐστί.

353. Infinitive in Indirect Discourse and as Simple Object.

Examine the following: —

φησὶ Κλέαρχον ἡγεῖσθαι, *he says that Clearchus is leading the way.*

φησὶ Κῦρον θηρεῦσαι, *he says that Cyrus hunted.*

¹ See p. 108¹⁰.

² See p. 83⁷.

κελεύει Κλέαρχον ἡγεῖσθαι, *he orders Clearchus to lead the way.*
 τί οὖν κελεύω ὑμᾶς ποιῆσαι, *what, then, do I bid you do?*

a. Observe that in all of the last four examples the inf. is the *object* of the principal verb, but that in the first two it represents the words of an original speaker and its tense corresponds in time to the same tense of the indic. (the speaker said: Κλέαρχος ἡγείται, Κῦρος ἐθήρυσσε), whereas in the last two examples, where the inf. is the obj. of a simple verb of commanding, this distinction of tense does not exist, but both ἡγεῖσθαι and ποιῆσαι refer to the future. This is the use of the pres. and aor. also in the subj., opt., and imv. See 267, 296, 321. Hence:—

354. Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive *in indirect discourse* is used as the object of verbs of *saying* or *thinking*, or equivalent expressions. Each tense of the infinitive represents the corresponding tense of a finite mood.

355. Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive, *when not in indirect discourse*, may be used as the object of any verb whose action directly implies another action or state as its object. The present infinitive when thus used expresses *continuance*, the aorist *the simple occurrence of the action*.

Observe sharply the force of the tenses of the infs. in the following exercises.

356.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. τὰ γὰρ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκ ἔστιν¹ ἔχειν. 2. Μίδᾱν τὸν Σάτυρον θηρεύσαι² φᾶσιν. 3. ἀλλ' ἀνάγκη ἐστὶν ἤδη πορεύεσθαι. 4. ἔφη χρήματα κτήσασθαι.³ 5. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἔφασαν βουλεύσεσθαι. 6. κακῶς ἔφατε τούτους βεβουλεύσθαι πρὸ ὑμῶν. 7. ἡμεῖς χρήζομεν διασωθῆναι πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα περὶ. 8. ἂρ' οὐχὶ⁴ καὶ ἀρπάσαι ἀξιόν ἐστι; 9. οἱ θεῶν ὄρκοι ἡμᾶς κωλύουσι πολεμίους εἶναι. 10. καὶ τοὺς φυγά-

¹ See 188 a and c.

² They say, Μίδᾱς τὸν Σάτυρον ἐθήρυσσε.

³ He said, χρήματα ἐκτησάμην.

⁴ Strengthened form of οὐ.

δας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι. 11. ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, δέομαι¹ ὑμῶν² στρατεύεσθαι σὺν ἐμοί. 12. καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον τοῦ δεξιῦ κέρως ἡγείσθαι. 13. ἡ νικᾶν δεήσει¹ ἢ ἡττᾶσθαι. 14. ἐπιθυμῇ μὲν πλουτεῖν ἰσχυρῶς, ἐπιθυμῇ δὲ τῖμᾶσθαι. 15. τῖμᾶσθαι δὲ καὶ θεραπεύεσθαι ἡξίου. 16. τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον ἔφασαν τὸν Κῦρον διαφερόντως τῖμᾶν. 17. πέμψαι κελεύουσιν φυλακὴν, ὡς διανοεῖται τὴν γέφυραν λῦσαι Τισσαφέρνῃς τῆς νυκτός. 18. Ξενοφῶντος δὲ κατηγορήσαν φάσκοντες³ ἀδικηθῆναι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ. 19. ἡρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτόν, Ὁμολογεῖς⁴ οὖν ἐμὲ ἀδικεῖν ;

II. 1. They said that Cyrus was loved⁵ by the Greeks. 2. He said a Greek had been shot.⁶ 3. Try, Cyrus, to make use of these.⁷ 4. We, fellow-soldiers, must do this. 5. And they bid him keep the sheep safe. 6. Why should⁸ we destroy the bridge? 7. I advise you to put this man out of the way. 8. They were trying to conquer the enemy. 9. But the general compelled the Greeks to proceed slowly. 10. I not only⁹ struck the man, but also forced him to proceed. 11. He said that the Lacedaemonians were taking the field against Tissaphernes.

357.

VOCABULARY.

ἀνάγκη (cf. ἀναγκάζω), necessity, constraint.

ἀξιόω (ἄξιος), deem worthy, deem proper, demand.

ἄρα, interrogative particle ; joined with οὐ (ἄρ' οὐ) it implies the answer yes.

δια-νοέμαι,¹⁰ pass. dep., be minded, intend, purpose.

Μίδας, **Midas**.

πέζος, -ή, -όν (πούς), on foot ; dat. sing. fem. πεζῇ as adv., on foot.

πλουτέω (cf. πλούσιος), be rich.

Σάτυρος, ὁ, the **Satyr Silenus**.

¹ See 309.

² For the const. after verbs of plenty and want, see p. 107¹. When δέομαι means request, it may take a gen. of the person and an acc. of the thing (here the inf.).

³ Pres. part. of φάσκω, say, allege, φημί having no part. in Attic prose.

⁴ This verb takes the inf. in indirect discourse.

⁵ They said, Κῦρος φιλεῖται.

⁶ He said, ἑλληὲν ἐτοξεύθη.

⁷ Cf. 256, I. 4.

⁸ See p. 108¹⁰.

⁹ not only . . . but also, καὶ . . . καί (both . . . and). ¹⁰ See p. 124³.

LESSON XLIX.

Stems in -ι- and -υ- of the Consonant-Declension.

358.

PARADIGMS.

	ἡ πόλις city (πολι-)	ὁ πῆχυς fore-arm (πηχυ-)	τὸ ἄστυ town (αστυ-)	ὁ ἰχθύς fish (ιχθυ-)
S. N.	πολι-ς	πῆχυ-ς	ἄστυ	ἰχθύ-ς
G.	πολε-ως	πήχε-ως	ἄστυ-ως	ἰχθύ-ος
D.	(πόλε-ϊ) πόλει	(πήχε-ϊ) πήχει	(ἄστυ-ι) ἄστυι	ἰχθύ-ϊ
A.	πολι-ν	πῆχυ-ν	ἄστυ	ἰχθύ-ν
V.	πολι	πῆχυ	ἄστυ	ἰχθύ
D. N. A. V.	πολε-ε	πήχε-ε	ἄστυ-ε	ἰχθύ-ε
G. D.	πολέ-οιν	πήχε-οιν	ἄστυ-οιν	ἰχθύ-οιν
P. N. V.	(πόλε-ες) πόλεις	(πήχε-ες) πήχεις	(ἄστυ-α) ἄστυα	ἰχθύ-ες
G.	πολε-ων	πήχε-ων	ἄστυ-ων	ἰχθύ-ων
D.	πολε-σι	πήχε-σι	ἄστυ-σι	ἰχθύ-σι
A.	πόλεις	πήχεις	(ἄστυ-α) ἄστυα	ἰχθύς

a. Apply the principles stated in 213, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. In the acc. plur. πόλεις, πήχεις irregularly conform to the nom. plur., but ἰχθύς is for ἰχθυ-νς (213, 4).

b. Except in the nom. acc. and voc. sing., most stems in -ι- and some in -υ- insert an ε before the -ι- or -υ-, and the latter is dropped. Contraction then occurs, but only in the dat. sing. and nom. and voc. plur. See 241 a, c, f. The gen. sing. has -ως instead of -ος, but this does not affect the accent. The gen. plur. follows the accent of the gen. sing.

c. Most substantives in -νς retain -ν- and are regular, like ἰχθύς.

d. Oxytones and monosyllables with stems in -υ- have υ in the nom. acc. and voc. sing.

359. Gender. — Feminine are all substantives with stems in -ι- with nominative in -ις. Neuter are all those with stems in -ι-, -υ-, with nominative in -ι, -υ.

360. Like πόλις are declined : ἀκρό-πολις (cf. ἄκρον), *citadel, acropolis* ; ἀνά-βασις,¹ *ascent, march inland* ; διά-βασις,¹ *crossing, ford* ; δύναμις (cf. δυνατός), *ability, force* ; ἐξέτασις, *inspection, review* ; κατά-βασις,¹ *descent, march to the coast* ; τάξις, *order, rank*.

361.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς θύσομεν κατὰ² δύναμιν. 2. ὁ ποταμός ἐστι τὸ εὖρος³ πλέθρου, πλήρης δ' ἰχθύων. 3. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ θαλάττῃ παντοῖοι ἰχθύες ἦσαν. 4. ἐν τῷ τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἄστει νεῶ καλοὶ ἦσαν. 5. ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους.⁴ 6. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασεν. 7. οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ⁵ ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἀκρόπολιν. 8. ἔχει δὲ δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἵππικὴν. 9. εἶχον⁶ δὲ οἱ Χάλυβες καὶ δόρυ ὡς⁷ πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεων,⁸ λόγχην⁹ ἔχον. 10. ἡ κατάβασις ἦν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. 11. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κύρος ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας. 12. χρόνου πλήθος τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως ἐνιαυτὸς ἦν καὶ τρεῖς μῆνες. 13. Αἰγυπτίους δέ, εἰ τῇ δυνάμει¹⁰ τῇ νῦν σὺν ἐμοὶ¹¹ χρήσασθε, κολάσασθε ἄν. 14. ἔστι¹² δὲ καὶ βασιλεια ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει. 15. Ξέρξης ὠκοδόμησε ταῦτά τε τὰ βασιλεια καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν ἀκρόπολιν. 16. οἱ δὲ Μάκρωνες ἔχοντες γέρρα καὶ λόγχᾱς καταντιπερᾱς τῆς διαβάσεως¹³ ἦσαν. 17. σὺ δέ, ὦ σατράπῃ, τὴν τε Κύρου δύναμιν καὶ χώρᾱν ἔχεις καὶ τὴν σαυτοῦ¹⁴ ἀρχὴν σφῶεις, ἡ δὲ Ἀρταξέρξου δύναμις σοι σύμμαχος¹⁵ ἐστίν.

¹ Compounded of the prep. ἀνά, *up*, and the root βα which appears in βαῖνω, *go*. So διὰ-βασις and κατά-βασις.

² according to.

³ Cf. 319, I. 12.

⁴ Predicate gen. of possession.

⁵ Cf. 274, I. 4.

⁶ carried.

⁷ Cf. 319, I. 17.

⁸ cubits, a cubit being about the length of the fore-arm.

⁹ Here, point or spike.

¹⁰ Cf. 256, I. 4.

¹¹ See p. 70².

¹² See 188 b.

¹³ See p. 28¹.

¹⁴ of yourself, gen. of the reflexive pron.

¹⁵ Here the adj. σύμ-μαχος, -ον. The word given in 91 is the masc. of this, used as a subst.

II. 1. Tissaphernes plots against the cities. 2. There are fish in these rivers. 3. For Cyrus sent the tributes from the cities. 4. You have a city, you have money, you have men. 5. There was a road to the ford. 6. There Cyrus made a review and enumeration of the Greeks. 7. The spears and the ranks of the soldiers were in sight. 8. He collected his Greek force in the following manner. 9. The soldiers of Tissaphernes were withdrawing from the towns. 10. If you make use of the Greek force, you will easily conquer these barbarians.

362.

VOCABULARY.

δόρυ, δόρατ-ος, τό, *spear*.

ἐνιαυτός, ό, *a year*.

καταντιπέρως, adv., *over against, opposite*.

Μάκρων, -ωνος, *a Macronian*.

οἰκο-δομέω (οἶκος),¹ *build, construct*.

παντοῖος, -ᾱ, -ον (πᾶς), *of all sorts*.

πεντε-καί-δεκα, indec., *15*.

Σάρδεις, -ων, plur., *Sardis*.

τρεις, *THREE*.

τρίτος, -η, -ον (τρεῖς), *THIRD*.

χρόνος, ό, *time*.

LESSON L.

Participles Active.

363. The forms of the participles in the active are : —

PRESENT.	FUTURE.	FIRST AORIST.	FIRST PERFECT.
λύων	λύσων	λύσᾱς	λελυκώς

a. For the declension of λύων, see 262. λύσων, *about to loose*, is declined in the same manner.

364.

PARADIGMS.

	λύσᾱς (λύσαντ-), <i>having loosed</i>			λελυκώς (λελυκοτ-), <i>having loosed</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N. V.	λύσᾱς	λύσᾱσα	λύσαν	λελυκώς	λελυκυῖα	λελυκός
G.	λύσαντος	λύσᾱσης	λύσαντος	λελυκότος	λελυκυῖας	λελυκότος
D.	λύσαντι	λύσᾱσῃ	λύσαντι	λελυκότι	λελυκυῖᾳ	λελυκότι
A.	λύσαντα	λύσᾱσαν	λύσαν	λελυκότα	λελυκυῖαν	λελυκός

¹ The second part is related to δέμω, *build* (cf. Latin *domus*).

D. N. A. V.	λύσαντε	λυσάσᾱ	λύσαντε	λελυκότε	λελυκυῖᾱ	λελυκότε
G. D.	λυσάντων	λυσάσαιν	λυσάντων	λελυκότων	λελυκυῖαιν	λελυκότων
P. N. V.	λύσαντες	λυσάσαι	λύσαντα	λελυκότες	λελυκυῖαι	λελυκότα
G.	λυσάντων	λυσάσων	λυσάντων	λελυκότων	λελυκυῖων	λελυκότων
D.	λυσάσι	λυσάσαις	λυσάσι	λελυκόσι	λελυκυῖαις	λελυκόσι
A.	λύσαντας	λυσάσας	λύσαντα	λελυκότας	λελυκυῖας	λελυκότα

a. The participles form their stems by a special suffix added to the tense-stems. In the *active* this is *-ντ-* (but for the perf. *-στ-*). Thus, pres. λῦο-ντ-, fut. λῦσο-ντ-, aor. λῦσα-ντ-, perf. λελυκ-στ-. The *a* of the perf. stem (160) disappears before the suffix *-στ-*.

b. For the formation of the cases in the masc. and neut. from these stems, see 213, 1, 2, d, 4, 5. The forms λελυκώς and λελυκός are irregular. The fem. of the aor. ends in *-ᾱσα*, of the perf. in *-υῖα*.

c. Observe, as to accent, that the perf. act. participle is oxytone (33).

365. The present participle of εἰμί is ὢν, οὔσα, ὄν, genitive, ὄντος, οὔσης, ὄντος, etc. (for ἔων from εσ-ων, etc.).

366. Participles in *-άων*, *-έων*, *-όων* are contracted: —

τιμάων, τιμάουσα, τιμάον, contracted τιμῶν, τιμῶσα, τιμῶν;

φιλέων, φιλέουσα, φιλέον, contracted φιλῶν, φιλούσα, φιλοῦν;

δηλόων, δηλόουσα, δηλόον, contracted δηλῶν, δηλούσα, δηλοῦν.

Review 241, 242, 243.

367. The contracted forms are declined as follows: —

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
S. N. V.	τιμῶν	τιμῶσα	τιμῶν	φιλῶν	φιλοῦσα	φιλοῦν	
G.	τιμῶντος	τιμῶσης	τιμῶντος	φιλοῦντος	φιλούσης	φιλοῦντος	
D.	τιμῶντι	τιμῶσῃ	τιμῶντι	φιλοῦντι	φιλούσῃ	φιλοῦντι	
A.	τιμῶντα	τιμῶσαν	τιμῶν	φιλοῦντα	φιλοῦσαν	φιλοῦν	
D. N. A. V.	τιμῶντε	τιμῶσᾱ	τιμῶντε	φιλοῦντε	φιλούσᾱ	φιλοῦντε	
G. D.	τιμῶντων	τιμῶσαιν	τιμῶντων	φιλοῦντων	φιλούσαιν	φιλοῦντων	
P. N. V.	τιμῶντες	τιμῶσαι	τιμῶντα	φιλοῦντες	φιλοῦσαι	φιλοῦντα	
G.	τιμῶντων	τιμῶσων	τιμῶντων	φιλοῦντων	φιλουσῶν	φιλοῦντων	
D.	τιμῶσι	τιμῶσαις	τιμῶσι	φιλοῦσι	φιλούσαις	φιλοῦσι	
A.	τιμῶντας	τιμῶσας	τιμῶντα	φιλοῦντας	φιλούσας	φιλοῦντα	

a. δηλῶν (contracted from δηλόων) is declined like φιλῶν.

368. The Attributive Participle used Adjectively.

Examine the following :—

οὐκ ἐφίλει τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην, *she did not love Artaxerxes, who was king.*

ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν πορεύονται, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλῆθρον, *they proceed to the river, which is a hundred feet wide.*

a. Observe that the participle is here used as an attributive adj., to modify a subst. Hence :—

369. Rule of Syntax.—The participle, like any adjective, may qualify a substantive as an attributive.

370. The Attributive Participle used Substantively.

Examine the following :—

τὸν τοὺς ἵππους λύσαντα ἐκόλασε, *he punished him who had loosed the horses.*

οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ ὑμᾶς πάντας ἀδικήσοντες, *these are the men who will wrong you all.*

a. Observe that in these examples the subst. is omitted. Hence :—

371. Rule of Syntax.—The attributive participle with the article may be used substantively.

a. Observe, in the examples given above, the *time* of the participle in relation to that of the principal verb. Hence :—

372. Rule of Syntax.—Participles denote time present, past, or future, relatively to the time of the leading verb.

373.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. οἱ πρόσθεν ἡμᾶς βοηθήσαντες τοὺς ὄρκους λελύ-
κασιν. 2. ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ κωλύσοντες πέρᾱν¹ τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
3. ὧ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, χαλεπά ἐστι τὰ παρόντα.² 4. παύειν
ἐπειράτο τοὺς κωλύοντας τὴν πάροδον.³ 5. τριήρεις γὰρ
ἔχει ἡμᾶς ὁ κωλύσων. 6. Ξενοφῶν ἐρωτᾷ τί τὸ κωλύόν⁴ ἐστι
πορεύεσθαι. 7. ὁ δ' αὐτοὺς κελεύει τὸν ἀρπάζοντα ἄγειν

¹ Cf. 111, I. 12.

² The (things) that are at hand
(275), i.e. the present situation.

³ Here *passage* in the sense of
the act of passing.

⁴ I.e. the obstacle.

πρὸς αὐτόν. 8. τῶν γὰρ νικῶντων ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἐαυτῶν¹ σφάζειν. 9. καὶ τὸν πρῶτον βοηθήσαντα μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν. 10. ἄλλον δὲ κωλύοντα καὶ ὑμᾶς καὶ ἡμᾶς πορεύεσθαι ἔπαισα πύξ. 11. πρὸς τῷ ποταμῷ κώμη ἦν, ἀπέχουσα² τοῦ ποταμοῦ παρασάγγην.³ 12. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων. 13. ὑμᾶς, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ἐπαινοῦμεν, ὅτι νικᾶτε Ἑλληνες ὄντες βαρβάρους. 14. ἀλλ' οὔτε τούτοις⁴ ἐπικουρεῖτε οὔτε σὺν ἐμοὶ τὸν ἀτακτοῦντα παίετε. 15. Ἀβροκόμας ἐχθρὸς ἀνὴρ ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ ἐστίν, ἀπέχων δώδεκα σταθμούς.³ 16. ἔφη τὸν μὲν καλῶς ποιοῦντα ἐπαινεῖν, τὸν δὲ ἀδικοῦντα οὐκ ἐπαινεῖν.

II. 1. Parysatis loved Cyrus more than Artaxerxes, who was king. 2. He sent those who would rescue⁵ the queen. 3. He courted those who were rich. 4. With the help of⁶ the gods we will try to punish the wrong-doer.⁷ 5. But he called those also who were besieging Miletus. 6. Those who dwelt along⁸ the sea were brave. 7. For I, Clearchus, am the one who bade the soldiers strike Dexippus. 8. Aristippus, the Thessalian, who was⁹ guest-friend to Cyrus, asked (him) for pay.¹⁰ 9. Here there was a prosperous city, twenty parasangs distant from the sea. 10. He says that this commander always punishes wrong-doers.

374.

VOCABULARY.

Ἀρίστιππος, ὁ, **Aristippus**.
ἀ-τακτέω (cf. τάξις),¹¹ *be out of order*.
δώ-δεκα (δύο, δέκα), **TWELVE**.
ἐπαινέω, *approve, commend, praise*.
ἐπικουρέω, *lend assistance*.
Θετταλός, ὁ, *a Thessalian*.

μακαριστός, -ή, -όν, *deemed happy, enviable*.
παρασάγγης, -ου, **parasang**, Persian road-measure = about a league.
τριήρης, -eos, ή, *war-vessel, trireme*.
Χάλος, ὁ, *the river Chalus*.

¹ of themselves, gen. plur. of the reflexive pron. See p. 83⁹.

² Here intransitively, *be distant*.

³ See p. 63².

⁴ See p. 25².

⁵ See p. 24⁴.

⁶ σὺν.

⁷ See 246, and cf. 16 above.

⁸ παρὰ with acc.

⁹ I.e. being.

¹⁰ See p. 100².

¹¹ See p. 51⁴.

LESSON LI.

Participles Middle and Passive.

375. The forms of the participles in the mid. and pass. are : —

	PRESENT.	FUTURE.	FIRST AOR.	FIRST PERF.	FUT. PERF.
Middle	λῦό-μενο-ς	λῦσό-μενο-ς	λῦσά-μενο-ς	λελυ-μένο-ς	λελύσώ-μενο-ς
Passive	λῦό-μενο-ς	λυθησώ-μενο-ς	λυθείς	λελυ-μένο-ς	λελύσώ-μενο-ς

a. All participles in -ος are declined like ἀγαθός (144).

b. The special suffix (364 a) added to the tense stem in the mid. and pass. to form the participles is -μενο-.

c. But the aor. pass. uses the *active* ending -ντ- (364 a). Thus, λυθε-ντ-.

376.

PARADIGM.

λυθείς (λυθεντ-), loosed

	M.	F.	N.
S. N. V.	λυθείς	λυθείσα	λυθέν
G.	λυθέντος	λυθείσης	λυθέντος
D.	λυθέντι	λυθείσῃ	λυθέντι
A.	λυθέντα	λυθείσαν	λυθέν
D. N. A. V.	λυθέντε	λυθείσᾱ	λυθέντε
G. D.	λυθέντοιιν	λυθείσαιιν	λυθέντοιιν
P. N. V.	λυθέντες	λυθείσαι	λυθέντα
G.	λυθέντων	λυθείσων	λυθέντων
D.	λυθείσι	λυθείσαις	λυθείσι
A.	λυθέντας	λυθείσας	λυθέντα

a. See 213, 1, 2, d, 4, 5. The fem. ends in -είσα.

b. The aor. pass. part. is oxytone; the pf. mid. and pass., paroxytone.

377. The present participle of contract verbs in the middle and passive is as follows : —

τιμ(αό)ώ-μενο-ς, -η, -ον; φιλ(εό)ού-μενο-ς, -η, -ον; δηλ(οό)ού-μενο-ς, -η, -ον.

378. Uses of the Circumstantial Participle.

Examine the following:—

τοὺς βαρβάρους νικήσαντες οἵκαδε ἐπορεύοντο, *when they had conquered the barbarians, they proceeded home.*

ἀδικηθεὶς αὐτὸν ἔπαισα, *I struck him because I had been wronged.*

ἐπορεύοντο τὴν χώρην ἀρπάζοντες, *they advanced ravaging the country.*

λῃζόμενοι ζῶσι, *they live by plundering.*

ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὴν πόλιν τὰς σπονδὰς ποιησόμενος, *he proceeded to the city to make the truce.*

σωθέντες χάριν ἔμιν ἂν ἔχοιμεν, *if we should be saved, we should feel grateful to you.*

αὐτὸν προσεκύνησαν ἐπὶ θάνατον ἀγόμενον, *they saluted him, although he was being led to execution.*

παρὴν ἔχων ὀπλίτας τριακοσίων, *he was there with 300 hoplites.*

a. Observe that these participles are adverbial in their nature, that they define the *circumstances* of the action of the principal verb, and that they express respectively relations of *time, cause, manner, means, purpose, condition, concession, and attendant circumstance.* Hence:—

379. Rule of Syntax.—The circumstantial participle, which is predicate in its nature, defines the circumstances of an action, and expresses relations of *time, cause, manner, means, purpose, condition, concession, or attendant circumstance.*

a. The rule in 372 applies also to the circumstantial participle.

380.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. ἦν δὲ οὗτος τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον στρατευομένων.¹
 2. ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, θυομένῳ τὰ ἱερὰ² καλὰ ἦν. 3. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ ἦν, Χειρίσοφος θυσάμενος ἦγε κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν. 4. ἡγείτο δὲ ὁ κωμάρχης λελυμένος διὰ χιόνος. 5. ἐστρατεύετο δὴ οὕτως ἐξαπατηθεὶς. 6. νῦν ἔξεστιν αὐτοῖς σωθεῖσι πορεύεσθαι. 7. ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ³ ἀπεχώρει.

¹ Predicate *partitive* gen., *was (one) of those who, etc.*

² *the sacrifices* (p. 83⁹).

³ See p. 25⁵.

8. φοβούμενοι δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν ὁμῶς συνηκολούθησαν. 9. ἐγγὺς εἰσιν οἱ πολέμιοι εἰς¹ μάχην παρεσκευασμένοι. 10. διὰ δεινῶν πρᾶγμάτων, ὧς ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, σεσωμένοι πάρεστε. 11. καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος τοῖς Θραξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλήσποντον οἰκοῦσι. 12. τῖμώμενος μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύρου ζῶντος, νῦν ἡμᾶς τοὺς Κύρου φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν πειρᾶται. 13. ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. 14. οἱ Ἕλληνες κοιμῶνται οἰόμενοι τὰ πάντα νικᾶν² καὶ Κύρον ζῆν.³ 15. στρατεύόμενος οὖν εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας τούτους ἄρχοντας⁴ ἐποίει, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλοις δώροις⁵ ἐτίμα. 16. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία θύσαντες καὶ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο τοὺς τοξότας μεταξὺ τῶν λόχων⁶ ἔχοντες. 17. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία θυσάμενος ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐξάγει νύκτωρ πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα. 18. Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κύρος, ἀδικηθεῖς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν ἐπιβουλεύεις μοι ;

II. 1. He sent wine that had been made from dates.⁷ 2. If we make a truce, we shall not be wronged by our opponents at home.⁸ 3. When they had packed up, they at once advanced through the snow. 4. Aristippus, the Thessalian, since he was hard pressed by his opponents at home, asked Cyrus for pay.⁹ 5. Those who took the field against Artaxerxes were Greeks. 6. But Xenophon, when he had thus offered sacrifice, proceeded to Asia. 7. But Cyrus, since he had been in peril and had been dishonoured, deliberated¹⁰ how he should be king in place of his brother. 8. Phalinus, although he had been sent to bid¹¹ the Greeks proceed, advised them¹² as follows.¹³ 9. He did not withdraw his right wing from the river, since he was afraid that he might be hemmed in on both flanks.¹⁴

¹ *for.*

² See 354.

³ *ζῶ* takes *η* instead of *α* in the contract forms (see 347).

⁴ Cf. 274, I. 10.

⁵ See p. 47⁵.

⁶ See p. 28¹.

⁷ *from the date.*

⁸ Cf. 228, I. 3.

⁹ Cf. 293, I. 9.

¹⁰ Use the historical pres., and say, *deliberates how he shall, etc.*

¹¹ Cf. 378, fifth example.

¹² αὐτοῖς (p. 31³). Use *συμβουλεύω* for *advise*.

¹³ τᾷδε, a cognate acc. (p. 122¹). For the declension of ὅδε, see p. 71².

¹⁴ Cf. 308, I. 14.

381.

VOCABULARY.

ἀμφί, prep., on both sides of: with gen., about, concerning; with acc., about.

ἄριστάω (ἄριστον), breakfast.

Ἑλλησποντος, ὁ, the Hellespont.

ἐξ-αιτέω (αἰτέω), ask from, demand; mid. beg off, save by entreaty.

ἐπ-εῖτα (ἐπί, εἶτα), adv., there-upon, there-after, moreover.

θάνατος, ὁ (cf. θανατόω), death.

κοιμάω, put to sleep; mid. go to sleep, sleep.

ληΐζομαι (cf. ληστής), plunder, pil-lage.

νύκτωρ (νύξ), adv., by night.

οἶομαι,¹ pass. dep., think, believe.

προσ-κυνέω,² make obeisance to, sa-lute.

LESSON LII.

Adjective Stems in -v- of the Consonant-Declension. — Irregular Adjectives.

Review 258.

382.

PARADIGM.

ἡδύς (ἡδύ-), ³ SWEET				
S. N.	ἡδύς	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ	
G.	ἡδέος	ἡδεῖᾱς	ἡδέος	
D.	(ἡδέϊ) ἡδεῖ	ἡδεῖα	(ἡδέϊ) ἡδεῖ	
A.	ἡδύν	ἡδεῖαν	ἡδύ	
V.	ἡδύ	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ	
D. N. A. V.	ἡδέε	ἡδεῖᾱ	ἡδέε	
G. D.	ἡδέοιν	ἡδεῖαιν	ἡδέοιν	
P. N. V.	(ἡδέες) ἡδεῖς	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέα	
G.	ἡδέων	ἡδεῖῶν	ἡδέων	
D.	ἡδέσι	ἡδεῖαις	ἡδέσι	
A.	ἡδεῖς	ἡδεῖᾱς	ἡδέα	

a. Observe the application of the principles stated in 213, 1, 2, 3, 5.

b. The masc. is declined like πῆχυσ and the neut. like ἄστυ (358). But the gen. sing. masc. and neut. has the regular ending -ος (not -ως), and the nom., acc., and voc. plur. neut. remain uncontracted.

c. The fem. ends in -εα.⁴

¹ The fut. and aor. are formed on the theme οἰε-, οἰήσομαι, φήσθην.

² Cf. κυνέω, kiss.

³ Cf. ἡδέως.

⁴ See p. 85¹.

383. Like ἡδύς are declined: βαθύς (βάθος), *deep*; δασύς, *thick, dense*; ἡμους,¹ *half*; παχύς, *thick, stout*; τραχύς, *harsh, rough*.

384. Irregular Adjectives.—Two adjectives are *irregular*, their forms being derived from different stems.

385.**PARADIGMS.**

	μέγας ² (μεγα-, μεγαλο-) <i>great</i>			πολύς (πολυ-, πολλο-) <i>much, many</i>		
S. N.	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ
G.	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
D.	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ
A.	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ
V.	μέγα	μεγάλη	μέγα	πολύ	πολλή	πολύ
D. N. A. V.	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ			
G. D.	μεγάλοιν	μεγάλαιν	μεγάλοιν			
P. N. V.	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
G.	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
D.	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
A.	μεγάλους	μεγάλας	μεγάλα	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά

386.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. καὶ πάνυ ἡδὺ τὸ πῶμα ἦν. 2. τραχύς γὰρ ἦν τῇ φωνῇ³ Κλέαρχος, καὶ ἐκόλαζεν αἰεὶ ἰσχυρῶς. 3. ἐνταῦθα ἦν παράδεισος πάνυ μέγας καὶ καλός. 4. καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι ὤκειτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων. 5. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ⁴ ἄξιος φίλος ἐστί. 6. τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς ἦν. 7. Κύρῳ ἔπεμπεν ἡ Κίλισσα χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν. 8. κατὰ γὰρ μέσον⁵ τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον τάφρος ἦν ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα. 9. καὶ τραχύς ἦν ὁ ποταμὸς μεγάλοις λίθοις.⁶ 10. τῶν δὲ ὀπισθοφυλάκων τοὺς ἡμίσεις ὀπισθεν τῶν ὑποζυ-

¹ ἡμι-, inseparable prefix, *half*-, cf. Lat. *sēmi*-.

² Cf. μέγεθος. ³ Cf. 343, I. 18.

⁴ worth much, valuable. See p.

91².

⁵ μέσος in the predicate position

refers to a part of the subject. Thus μέση ἡ χώρα, *the middle of the country*, but ἡ μέση χώρα, *the middle country*.

⁶ The dat. is used to denote the cause. See p. 47⁵.

γίων¹ εἶχεν. 11. πολλάκις δὲ χήνας ἡμιβρώτους ἔπεμπε καὶ ἄρτων ἡμίσεια.² 12. ἐνταῦθά ἐστι κρήνη ἡδέος ὕδατος καὶ ἄφθονος. 13. ἦν δὲ οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς δασὺς δένδροις, παχέσι μὲν οὐ,³ πυκνοῖς δέ. 14. ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ εἰσὶ τέτταρες διώρυχες, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς. 15. μετὰ ταῦτα Κύρος ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων μεγάλων. 16. ἐσκήνησαν ἐγγὺς παραδείσου¹ μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ καὶ δασέος παντοίων δένδρων.⁴ 17. Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγείτο, ἔχων τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ δ' ἥμισυ ἔτι ἦν σὺν Ξενοφῶντι. 18. ἐντεῦθεν πορεύονται εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην. 19. ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὥρμουν αὐτόθι ὀλκάδες πολλαί.

II. 1. The soldiers were in great hopes. 2. The wine was both fragrant and sweet. 3. There Cyrus had a palace and a great park. 4. We have plundered much property of the Cilicians. 5. Xenophon proceeded to the place with⁵ the half of the rear guard. 6. But the place was thickly grown⁶ with large trees. 7. Thence they proceeded into a large⁷ and beautiful plain. 8. There were many villages in this plain, full of food and wine. 9. Abrocomas will do this, since he has⁸ a large⁷ army. 10. At about the middle of this day's march there was a deep river, a plethrum in width.

387.

VOCABULARY.

ἄρτος, ὁ, a loaf of bread.

αὐτόθι, adv., here, there.

ἡμι-βρωτός, -ον,⁹ half-eaten.

Κολοσσαί, Colossae.

λίθος, ὁ, a stone.

ὀλκάς, -άδος, merchantman.

ὀπισθεν (cf. ὀπισθο-φύλαξ), adv., behind, in the rear.

¹ Cf. 319, I. 4.

² halves. Observe that the neut. plur. is here used. See p. 31².

³ The proclitic οὐ takes an accent at the end of a sentence or clause.

⁴ The subst. in the gen. limits παραδείσου. If it stood with δασέος it would be in the dat. Cf. 13 above.

⁵ I.e. having (378).

⁶ thickly grown, i.e. thick, dense.

⁷ Use μέγας when the idea is largeness in extent, πολὺς when it is largeness in amount or number.

⁸ since he has, i.e. having (378).

⁹ ἡμι- and βρωτός, to be eaten, verbal adj. from βιβρώσκω, eat. Cf. ἡμι-δεής (342), wanting-half (309).

ὀρμέω, *lie at anchor, be moored.*

ὀρυκτός, -ή, -όν, *dug, artificial.*

πλεθρίαίος, -ᾶ, -ον (πλέθρον), *of a plethrum, a hundred feet.*

πολλάκις (πολύς), *adv., many times, often, frequently.*

πῶμα, -ατος, *drink.*

σκημέω (σκημή), *encamp, be encamped.*

ὔδωρ,¹ -ατος, τό, *water.*

φωνή (cf. φημί), *voice, speech.*

χήν, -νός, ό, ή, *GOOSE.*

LESSON LIII.

Stems in a Diphthong of the Consonant-Declension.

388.

PARADIGMS.

	ὁ βασιλεύς ² (βασιλευ-) <i>king</i>	ὁ ἡ βοῦς (βου-) <i>ox, cow</i>	ἡ γράυς ³ (γραν-) <i>old woman</i>	ἡ ναῦς ⁴ (ναυ-) <i>ship</i>
S. N.	βασιλεύ-ς	βοῦ-ς	γράυ-ς	ναῦ-ς
G.	βασιλέ-ως	βο-ός	γρά-ός	νε-ός
D.	(βασιλέ-ϊ) βασιλεῖ	βο-ϊ	γρά-ϊ	νη-ϊ
A.	βασιλέ-ᾶ	βοῦ-ν	γράυ-ν	ναῦ-ν
V.	βασιλεῦ	βοῦ	γράυ	ναῦ
D. N. A. V.	βασιλέ-ε	βό-ε	γρά-ε	νῆ-ε
G. D.	βασιλέ-οιν	βο-οῖν	γρά-οῖν	νε-οῖν
P. N. V.	(βασιλέ-ες) βασιλεῖς	βό-ες	γρά-ες	νῆ-ες
G.	βασιλέ-ων	βο-ῶν	γρά-ῶν	νε-ῶν
D.	βασιλεῦ-σι	βου-σί	γραν-σί	ναυ-σί
A.	βασιλέ-ας	βοῦ-ς	γράυ-ς	ναῦ-ς

a. Observe the application of the principles stated in 213, 1, 2, 3, 4. But (a) subst. in -εὺς add -ᾶ and -ᾶς (with the vowel lengthened) in the acc. sing. and plur.; (b) in the acc. plur. βούς, γράυς, ναῦς are for βου-νς, γραυ-νς, ναυ-νς, ν being dropped (287); (c) final ν of the diphthong is dropped before all vowels in the endings, and in ναῦς the resulting να- becomes νε- before a long vowel and νη- before a short vowel; (d) the gen. sing. may end in -ως instead of -ος.

¹ See 236 a.

² Cf. βασιλεύω.

³ Cf. γέρων.

⁴ Cf. ναύτης.

389. Gender. — Masculine are all substantives whose stems end in *-εν*.

390. Like βασιλεύς are declined: ἑρμηνεύς (*cf.* Ἑρμῆς),¹ interpreter, and ἵπνεύς (ἵππος), horseman, knight, plur. cavalry.

391.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. ἔτοιμοί εἰσι τῷ Κύρῳ οἱ ἵππεῖς. 2. εἶχε ναῦς, αἷς² ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον. 3. ἵππέας χιλίους μετεπέμψατο. 4. καὶ βασιλεὺς³ δὴ ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο. 5. ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, βόες, ὄρνιθες, καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων. 6. εἰ βασιλεὺς ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ στρατοπεδεύοιτο, ὀπλίσαιντο αὖ οἱ ὀπλίται. 7. τέλος δὲ πάντες οἱ ἵππεῖς ἀπεχώρησαν. 8. καὶ Κύρῳ⁴ παρήσαν αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε. 9. πρὸς δὲ βασιλέῃ ἔπεμπεν ἀγγέλους. 10. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἐπορίζετο σῖτον ἐκ τῶν βοῶν καὶ ὄνων. 11. πορεύεται ὡς⁵ βασιλέῃ ἵππέας ἔχων ὡς⁶ πέντακοσίους. 12. ταύτης ἕνεκα τῆς παρόδου Κύρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο. 13. ἦσαν δ' αὐτοῖς ἱκανοὶ βόες ἀποθῦσαι τῷ Διὶ τῷ σωτήρι. 14. καὶ παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως παρῆν Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς⁷ καὶ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι τρεῖς. 15. ἡγεῖτο δὲ Ταμῶς Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναῦς Κύρου πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν. 16. κοινῇ δὴ ἀνερωτῶσι τὸν κωμάρχην διὰ τοῦ περσίζοντος ἑρμηνέως τίς ἐστὶν ἡ χώρα. 17. ὁ δ' ἑρμηνεὺς εἶπε⁸ περσιστί, ὅτι παρὰ βασιλέως πορεύονται πρὸς τὸν σατράπην. 18. ὁ δὲ τῶν

¹ Hermes (or Mercury) was herald of Zeus and the god of persuasive speech.

² *with which*, dat. plur. fem. of the relative pron. *ἧς, ἡ, ἥ*. For the case, *cf.* 175, I. 11.

³ *the king*. When the reference is to the great king of Persia, the article is commonly omitted.

⁴ *Cf.* 106, I. 10.

⁵ *to*. *ὡς*, in its use as an improper prep. (see p. 74⁷), takes the acc. of the person.

⁶ *Cf.* 319, I. 17.

⁷ *I.e.* ὁ ἀδελφὸς τῆς γυναικὸς βασιλέως.

⁸ *said*, third sing. of the second aor. *εἶπον*, *I said*, inflected like the impf.

Ἑλλήνων ἑρμηνεὺς ἔφη τὸν Τισσαφέρνους ἀδελφὸν σὺν τοῖς Πέρσαις εἶναι. 19. ἐνταῦθα ὁ Θράξ ἔχων ἱππέας ὡς τριάκοντα ἡῆτομόλησε πρὸς βασιλέα. 20. εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἀθῦμει ὅτι ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶν ἱππεῖς, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις πολλοὶ πάρεσιν, ἐνθῦμήθητε ὅτι οἱ μῦριοι ἱππεῖς οὐδὲν¹ ἄλλο ἢ μῦριοι εἰσιν ἄνθρωποι.

II. 1. The ships lay at anchor by² the tent of Cyrus. 2. It was evident that the³ king was near. 3. He sent the interpreter to² the generals of the Greeks. 4. The expedition⁴ will be against the great king. 5. Chirisophus also, a Lacedaemonian, was on board⁵ the ships. 6. Let us plunder the king's country. 7. The horsemen often hunted these wild animals. 8. For Cyrus sent to the king the tributes from the cities. 9. They asked the village-chief⁶ for sheep and goats and cattle and asses. 10. And Xenophon through an interpreter demanded back the horses. 11. There is a fortified palace of the great king in Celaenae at the sources of the river Marsyas.

392.

VOCABULARY.

ἀν-ερωτάω,¹ ask, inquire of, question.

ἑαυτοῦ-παρα-σκευάζομαι, prepare one-self in turn.

ἀπο-θέω, sacrifice in payment of a vow, offer a votive sacrifice.

ἀγρονομία, desert.

γυνή, ἡ,⁸ woman, wife.

ἐκγονος, -ον, born or sprung from; ἐκγονον, as subst., offspring.

ἔτοιμος, -ον, or -η, -ον, ready, prepared.

Ζεὺς, ὁ,⁹ Zeus, highest of the gods.

ὀπλίζω (ὀπλον), arm.

Πελοπόννησος, ἡ (cf. Πελοποννήσιος) Peloponnesus.

περσίζω (Πέρσης), speak Persian.

περισσὶ (περίσσω), adv., in Persian.

πορίζω, furnish, provide.

στρατοπεδεύω (στρατόπεδον), encamp.

σωτήρ, -ῆρος (σῶζω), saviour.

τριάκοντα (τρεῖς), indec., THIRTY.

¹ Neut. of οὐδεὶς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν, nobody, nothing.

² παρὰ with acc.

³ Cf. I. 4 above.

⁴ Use ὁδός.

⁵ Use πάρεμι ἐπὶ with gen.

⁶ Cf. 293, I. 9.

⁷ See p. 64⁴.

⁸ Irregularly declined: sing., γυνή, γυναικός, γυναική, γυναῖκα, γύναι; dual, γυναῖκε, γυναικοῖν; plur., γυναῖκες, γυναικῶν, γυναιξί, γυναῖκας.

⁹ Irregularly declined: Ζεὺς, Διός, Δί, Δία, Ζεῦ.

LESSON LIV.

Affinity of Words.—Reading Lesson.

Give the meaning of the following words:—

393.

WORD LIST.

ἀγνώμων *	βάθος *	ἔπειτα *	κορυφή	παλαιός
ἄδικος *	βαθύς *	ἐπιθυμία *	κράνος	παντάπῃσι *
αἰσχροῦς *	βασιλεύς *	ἐπικουρέω *	κρατέω *	παντοῖος *
ἀκρόπολις *	βέλος	ἐπικούρημα *	κρέας	παράγω *
ἀληθής *	βία *	ἐρμηνεύς *	κρηπίς	παραιτέομαι *
ἄλλως *	βοῦς	ἔτοιμος	λήζομαι *	παρασάγγης
ἀμιλλάσθαι	γραῦς *	εὐδαίμων *	λίθος	παρασκηνέω *
ἀμφί	γυνή	εὐεργέτης *	λόχος *	πατρώος *
ἀνάβασις *	δασύς	εὖρος	μακαριστός	παχύς
ἀνάγκη *	διάβασις *	εὐώδης	Μάκρων	πεῖρος *
ἀνακοινῶ *	διανοέομαι *	ἔφοδος *	μέγας *	Πελοπόννη-
ἀνερωτάω *	διαφερόντως	ζάω	μέγεθος *	σος *
ἀντιπαρασκευ-	δόρυ	Ζεύς	μέλᾱς	πεντεκαίδε-
άζομαι *	Δρακόντιος	ἡδύς *	μηκέτι *	κα *
ἄξιός *	δρόμος	ἡμίβρωτος *	μήκος *	πεντήκοντα *
ἄξιως *	δύναμις *	ἡμιδεής *	μήποτε *	περσίζω *
ἀπαιτέω *	δώδεκα *	ἡμισυς *	Μίδᾱς	περσιτί *
ἀποθύω *	ἐγκρατής *	θάνατος *	μνήμων	πήχυς
ἄρα	ἔθνος	θαρρέω *	ναῦς *	πλεθριαῖος *
ἄργος *	εἰκοσι	Θέτταλος	νύκτωρ *	πλέθρον *
ἄριστάω *	εἰσω *	ιδιώτης	οἰκοδομέω *	πλήθος *
ἄριστερός	ἔκγονος	ἱππεύς *	ολομα *	πλήρης *
Ἀρίστιππος	ἐλάφειος	ἰχθύς	οἰκάς	πλουτέω *
ἄρτος	Ἑλλήσπον-	κατάβασις *	ὀμαλῆς	πόλις *
ἀσθενής	τος	καταλύω *	ὀπη *	πολλάκις *
ἄστυ	ἐνθυμέομαι *	καταντιπέ-	ὀπισθεν *	πολύς *
ἀσφαλῆς *	ἐνιαυτός	ρᾱς	ὀπλίζω *	πορεῖα *
ἀτακτέω *	ἐξαίτεω *	καταφανής	ὀπου *	πορίζω
αὐτόθι	ἔξεστι *	καταφρονέω *	ὀρμέω	πούς *
αὐτομολέω	ἐξέτασις	κέρας	ὄρος	πρόβατον
ἀφανής	ἔξω *	κινέω	ὀρυκτός	προπέμπω *
ἄφρων *	ἐπαινέω	κοιμάω	οὐπω *	προσκυνέω
ἄψινθιον	ἐπείπερ *	Κολοσσαί	ὀφθαλμός	πύραμις

πῶμα	στόλος	τέλος	τρίτης	φημί *
Σάρδεις	στρατοπεδεύω *	Τισσαφέρης	τρίτος *	φωνή *
Σάτυρος	Σωκράτης	τολμάω	ὔδωρ	Χάλος
σαφής	σωτήρ *	Τολμίδης	ὑπέρ	χίν
σκηνέω *	σώφρων *	τῶχός	ὑπέρφρων *	χιών
σκοπός	τάξις *	τρεῖς *	ὑψηλός *	χρήζω
Σπάρτη *	τείχος	τριάκοντα *	ὑψος *	χρόνος

Review 313.

Associate each starred word in 393 with some other word or words of those given in 130, 194, 249, 313, and 393, related to it in form and meaning.

Review 140, 142.

Read and translate again 143, 195, 250, 314.

Read and translate the following passage : —

394. Κῦρος.

V. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς ἐπτὰ παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα καὶ δύο εἰς πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνεῖται παρὰ Κῦρον ἡ τοῦ Κιλικῶν βασιλέως γυνή, καὶ αὐτῷ ἔδωκε χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δὲ στρατιᾷ τότε ἀπέδωκε

5 Κῦρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα καὶ φύλακας περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπενδίους.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Τυριαῖον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς. καὶ ἐδεῖτο ἡ Κίλισσα Κῦρου ἐξετάζειν

10 τὸ στράτευμα. ἐξέτασιν οὖν ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων. εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί.

ἔθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους, εἶτα

15 δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας. εἶχον δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκᾷ καὶ ἀσπίδας. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντας ἔθεώρησε, πέμψας ἑρμηνεᾶ παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσεν ἐπιχωρήσαι ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα. τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς ἦν καὶ ἡ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἀρμαμάξης

20 καὶ οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἔφυγον· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες σὺν γέλῳτι ἐπὶ τὰς σκηναὺς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασεν.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Φρυγίᾳς καὶ τῆς Λυκαονίᾳς σταθμοὺς ὅκτῳ παρασάγγᾳς πεντήκοντα. τὴν δὲ Λυκάο-
 25 νίαν διήρπασαν οἱ Ἕλληνες ὡς πολεμίᾳν οὔσαν. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει· καὶ συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ Μένωνα καὶ τοὺς ἐκείνου. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καππαδοκίᾳς σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγᾳς εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε πρὸς Δάνα, πόλιν
 30 οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα.

NOTES.

1. ἑπτὰ, SEVEN. — 2. ἀφικνέται: ἀφικνέομαι, arrive. — 4. ἀπέδωκε: ἀπό in composition often signifies *what is due*. — 5. τεττάρων: gen. plur. masc. — 6. αὐτήν, herself, acc. sing. fem. of the reflexive pron. — Ἀσπενδίους, Aspendians. — 7. Review 141, 2. — 9. Κῦρον: cf. 356, I. 11. — 12. οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, those with him. See p. 83⁹ and cf. οἱ ἐκείνου, οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ, in lines 13 and 20. — 14. πρῶτον: acc. sing. neut. used adverbially. — 16. ἀσπίδας: ἀσπίς, -ῖδος, a shield. — 17. ἐπιχωρήσαι: ἐπι-χωρέω, advance. — 20. γέλῳτι: γέλως, -ωτος, laughter. — 21. λαμπρότητα: λαμπρότης, -ητος, splendour. — 27. αὐτῇ, her, dat. sing. fem.

Translate the following passage into Greek:—

395. When he had made this enumeration of his soldiers in the park, Cyrus set out from Celaenae, and marched through Phrygia 7 stages, 52 parasangs, to an inhabited city. Here he remained five days; for his soldiers were demanding their pay. At this point the Cilician queen arrived (on a visit) to Cyrus, accompanied by Cilicians and Aspendians, and made him a large gift of money. With this Cyrus paid his troops. Thence he marches to Thymbrium (Θύμβριον), a city of Phrygia. Here by the side of the road is the spring of Midas, king of Phrygia. At this spring they say that Midas caught the Satyr. Thence Cyrus marches many stages through Phrygia, Lycaonia, and Cappadocia to Dana, a populous city, large and flourishing.

LESSON LV.

Formation of Words.

NOTE. — Lessons LV. and LVI. should be read carefully (the teacher explaining difficulties), and should then be used for reference. A careful reading of these two Lessons, with proper inspection of the examples, will make it easy for the pupil to understand the formation of the words subsequently to be introduced, especially in the groups which are to be a part of the following Lessons.

396. Simple and Compound Words. — A *simple* word contains a single stem, as *κακό-s*, *evil*; *νόο-s*, *mind*. A *compound* word contains two or more stems, as *κακό-νοο-s*, *evil-minded*.

397. Primitives and Denominatives. — A word formed directly from a root (133) or the theme of a verb (151) is called a *primitive*, as *ἀρχ-ή*, *beginning, rule*, from *αρχ*, root and also theme of *ἀρχ-ω*, *begin, rule*. A word formed directly from the stem of a noun (substantive or adjective) is called a *denominative*, as *ἀρχα-ῖο-s*, *original, ancient*, from *αρχᾶ-*, stem of *ἀρχ-ή*.

398. Suffixes. — Most substantives and adjectives are formed by means of certain endings called *suffixes*. Thus *λόγ-ο-s* (stem *λογ-*) from the root *λεγ* (*cf. λέγ-ω, say*), by means of the suffix *-ο-*; *ἀρχα-ῖο-s* (stem *αρχαιο-*) from the stem *αρχᾶ-*, by means of the suffix *-ῖο-*.

399. A root may suffer change of form in the process of word-formation. In particular, the vowel of the root is often changed.

400. A root is sometimes *increased* by the addition of a consonant at the end. The consonants most commonly added are *θ, ν, σ*.

401. The addition of suffixes gives rise to many sound-changes. For example: —

a. The final consonant of a root, theme, or stem, is subject to the usual euphonic change before a consonant in the suffix, as *λέξις*, *speaking*, for *λεγ-σι-s* (215 b); *δικαστής*, *judge*, for *δικαδ-τη-s* (p. 150¹).

b. Vowels brought together are often contracted, as ἀρχαῖος, *ancient*, for αρχαι-ος; δίκαιος, *just*, for δικα-ιος.

c. The final vowel or diphthong of a noun-stem is often dropped before a suffix that begins with a vowel, as ἄγρ-ιος, *wild*, from ἄγρός, *field*; βασιλ-ικός, *royal*, from βασιλεύς, *king*.

d. The final vowel of a noun-stem is sometimes changed to another vowel, as οἰκέ-της, *servant*, from οἶκος, *house*; φοβε-ρός, *fearful*, from φόβος, *fear*.

e. The final vowel of a verb-theme may be lengthened before a consonant, as ἀξιώ-μα, *dignity*, from ἀξιόω, *think worthy*; ποιή-σις, *composition*, from ποιέω, *make*.

Formation of Substantives.

402. A few substantives are formed from roots or verb-themes without suffix. Thus:—

κλώψ (stem κλωπ-), *thief*, from the root κλεπ (399), *steal*; φύλαξ (φυλακ-), *guard*, from the theme φυλακ- of φυλάττω, *guard*.

403. Many substantives are formed with the suffixes:—

-ο- (nom. -ος, masc. or fem., or -ον, neut.) and -ᾱ- (nom. -ᾱ or -η, fem.). Thus:—

λόγ-ος, *word*, root λεγ (399), *speak*. φορ-ᾱ, *tribute*, root φερ (399), *bring*.
πέδ-ον, *ground*, root πεδ, *tread*. πέδ-η, *fetter*, root πεδ, *tread*.

404. The following suffixes denote the *agent* in primitives (397), the *person who has to do with* an object in denominatives:—

-ευ- (nom. -ευς, masc.), as γραφ-εύς, *writer*, root γραφ (γράφω, *write*);
ἵππ-εύς (401 c), *horseman*, stem ἵππο- (ἵππος, *horse*).

-τηρ- (nom. -τηρ, masc.), as σω-τήρ, *saviour*, theme σω- (σώζω, *save*).

-τωρ- (nom. -τωρ, masc.), as ῥή-τωρ (399), *orator*, theme ερ-, ῥε- (ῥέω, *I shall say*).

-της- (nom. -της, masc.), as λησ-τής (401 a),¹ *robber*, theme ληδ- (λῃζομαι, *plunder*); τοξό-της, *bowman*, stem τοξο- (τόξον, *bow*).

405. The *action* is expressed (in primitives only) by the suffixes:—

-τι- (nom. -τις, fem.), as πίσ-τις (401 a),¹ *faith*, root πιθ (πείθω, *persuade*).

-σι- (nom. -σις, fem.), as τάξις (for ταγ-σις, 401 a, 215 b), *arrangement*, theme ταγ (τάττω, *arrange*).

-σιᾱ- (nom. -σιᾱ, fem.), as θυ-σιᾱ, *offering*, root θυ (θύω, *sacrifice*).

¹ A lingual mute (114) before another lingual mute is changed to σ.

-μο- (nom. -μο-s, masc.), as σπασ-μό-s (400), *spasm*, root σπα (σπά-ω, *draw*).

-μᾱ- (nom. -μη, fem.), as τι-μή, *honour*, root τι (τί-ω, *honour*).

-εἰᾱ- (nom. -εἰᾱ, for -ευ-εἰᾱ, from verbs in -ευ-ω), as στρατ-εἰᾱ, *campaign*, (στρατεύ-ω, *march*).

406. The *result* of an action is expressed (in primitives only) by the suffixes:—

-ματ- (nom. -μα, neut.), as ῥῆ-μα (401 e), *word*, theme ερ-, ῥε- (ἐρ-ῶ, *I shall say*).

-εσ- (nom. -ος, neut.), as γέν-ος, *race*, root γεν, *produce*.

407. The *means* or *instrument* is expressed by the suffix:—

-τρο- (nom. -τρο-ν, neut.) as λύ-τρο-ν, *ransom*, theme λυ- (λύ-ω, *loose*); ἄρο-τρο-ν, *plough*, theme ἀρο- (ἀρό-ω, *plough*).

408. Substantives expressing *quality* are formed from adjective-stems by the suffixes:—

-τητ- (nom. -τη-s, fem.), as πιστό-τη-s, *fidelity*, stem πιστο- (πιστό-, *faithful*).

-συνᾱ- (nom. -συνη, fem.), as δικαιο-σύνη, *justice*, stem δικαιο- (δίκαιο-s, *just*).

-εἰᾱ- (nom. -εἰᾱ, fem.), as ἐλευθερ-εἰᾱ (401 c), *freedom*, stem ἐλευθερο- (ἐλεύθερο-s, *free*).

-εσ- (nom. -ος, neut.), as βάθ-ος (401 c), *depth*, stem βαθν- (βαθύ-s, *deep*).

409. *Diminutives* are formed from substantive-stems by the suffix:—

-ιο- (nom. -ιο-ν, neut.), as παιδ-ιο-ν, *little child*, stem παιδ- (παῖ-s, *child*).

410. The *place* is expressed by the suffix:—

-τηριο- (nom. -τηριο-ν, neut.), as δικασ-τήριο-ν (401 a),¹ *court-house*, theme δικαδ- (δικάζω, *judge*).

LESSON LVI.

Formation of Words (continued).

Formation of Adjectives.

411. The following are the commonest suffixes forming primitives:—

-υ- (nom. -υ-s, -εια, -υ), as ἡδ-ύ-s, *sweet*, root ἄδ (399), *sweet*.

-εσ- (nom. -ης, -ες) as ψευδ-ής, *false*, theme ψευδ- (ψεύδ-ω, *deceive*).

¹ See p. 150¹.

-μον- (nom. -μων, -μον), as *μνή-μων* (401 e), *mindful*, theme *μνα-* (*μνή-σκω*, *remind*).

412. The idea of *belonging* or *pertaining to* is expressed in denominatives by the suffix :—

-ιο- (nom. -ιος, -ιά, -ιον, or -ιος, -ιον), as *πολέμ-ιος* (401 c), *hostile*, stem *πολεμο-* (*πόλεμος*, *war*).

413. The idea of *pertaining*, often with the notion of *fitness* or *ability*, is expressed by the suffixes :—

-ικο- (nom. -ικος, -ικη, -ικον), as *πολεμ-ικός* (401 c), *skilled in war*, stem *πολεμο-* (*πόλεμος*, *war*); *γραφ-ικός*, *able to write*, root *γραφ* (*γράφ-ω*, *write*).

-τικο- (nom. -τικός, -τική, -τικον), as *βουλευ-τικός*, *able to advise*, theme *βουλεν-* (*βουλεύ-ω*, *advise*).

414. The idea of *material* is expressed by the suffixes :—

-εο- (nom. -εος, -εά, -εον), as *χρῦσ-εος* (401 c), *golden*, stem *χρῦσ-* (*χρῦσ-ός*, *gold*).

-ινο- (nom. -ινος, -ινη, -ινον), as *κριθ-ινος* (401 c), *of barley*, stem *κριθᾱ-* (*κρίθῃ*, *barley*).

415. The idea of *fulness* or *abundance* is expressed by the suffix :—

-εντ- (nom. -εις, -εσσα, -εν), as *χαρί-εις*, *graceful*, stem *χαριτ-*, *χαρι-* (*χάρι-ς*, *grace*).

416. The following suffixes cannot be so distinctly classified as those given above :—

-ο- (nom. -ος, -ᾱ or -η, -ον, or -ος, -ον), as *λοιπ-ός* (399), *remaining*, root *λιπ*, *leave*.

-ιμο- (nom. -ιμος, etc.), as *ἄλκ-ιμος* (401 c), *valiant*, stem *αλκᾱ-* (*ἄλκή*, *prowess*).

-σιμο- (nom. -σιμος, etc.), as *χρή-σιμος* (401 e), *useful*, theme *χρη-* (*χρᾶ-ομαι*, *use*).

-νο- (nom. -νος, etc.), as *δει-νός*, *fearful*, root *δει* (*δεῖδω*, *fear*).

-φο- (nom. -φος, etc.), as *φοβ-ός* (401 d), *frightful*, stem *φοβο-* (*φόβος*, *fear*).

-λο- (nom. -λος, etc.), as *δει-λός*, *timid*, root *δει*, *fear*.

Denominative Verbs (397).

417. The most important endings, as seen in the present indicative, are the following :—

-α-ω, as *τιμᾶ-ω*, *honour*, stem *τιμᾱ-* (*τιμή*, *honour*); *αἰτιδ-ομαι*, *accuse*, stem *αἰτιᾱ-* (*αἰτία*, *blame*).

-ε-ω, as φοβέ-ω, *frighten*, stem φοβο- (φόβο-s, *fear*); κρατέ-ω, *be master of*, stem κρατεσ- (κράτος, *power*).

-ο-ω, as δουλό-ω, *enslave*, stem δουλο- (δοῦλο-s, *slave*); ἐλευθερό-ω, *free*, stem ελευθερο- (ἐλεύθερο-s, *free*).

-ευ-ω, as βασιλεύ-ω, *be king*, stem βασιλευ- (βασιλεύ-s, *king*); βουλεύ-ω, *plan*, stem βουλᾶ- (βουλή, *plan*).

-αἰω (for -αδ'-ιω), as ἀναγκάζω, *compel*, stem αναγκᾶ- (ἀνάγκη, *necessity*); ἐργάζομαι, *work*, stem εργο- (ἐργο-ν, *work*).

-ιζω (for -ιδ'-ιω), as περσίζω, *speak Persian*, stem Περσᾶ- (Πέρση-s, *Persian*); ἐλπίζω, *hope*, stem ἐλπίδ- (ἐλπί-s, *hope*).

-αινω (for -αν'-ιω), as σημαίνω, *signify*, stemηματ- (σήμα, *sign*); χαλεπαίνω, *be angry*, stem χαλεπο- (χαλεπό-s, *severe*).

-ύνω (for -υν'-ιω), as ἡδύνω, *sweeten*, stem ἡδυ- (ἡδύ-s, *sweet*); λαμπρύνω, *brighten*, stem λαμπρο- (λαμπρό-s, *bright*).

a. Denominative verbs are formed from the stems of a great variety of nouns. The endings here given displace, by the rule, the last vowel or diphthong, or vowel and consonant, of the stem to which they are added. But they are sometimes added to a stem without change.

Compound Words. — I. Form.

418. When a noun stands as the first part of a compound word, only its stem is used, as κακό-νοος, *evil-minded*.

419. In the case just mentioned, the following changes of stem may occur:—

a. In stems of the A-declension, α may change to ο, as λυρο-ποιός, *lyre-maker* (λύρᾱ, *lyre*, stem λυρᾶ-, and ποιέω, *make*).

b. Stems of the vowel-declension may drop the final vowel before a following vowel, as κωμ-άρχης, *village-chief* (κώμη, *village*, stem κωμᾶ-, and ἄρχω, *rule*); στρατ-ηγός, *general* (στρατός, *army*, stem στρατο-, and ἄγος, *leader*).

c. Stems of the consonant-declension generally add ο before a consonant, as ἀνδριαντ-ο-ποιός, *image-maker* (ἀνδριός, *image*, stem ανδριαντ-, and ποιέω, *make*).

d. But stems in -σ- may change to ο-stems, as σκευο-φόρος, *baggage-carrier* (σκεῦος, *baggage*, stem σκευεσ-, and φέρω, *carry*).

420. An adverb may be the first part of a compound word, as εὖ-νοος, *well-disposed*; ἀει-λογία, *continual talking*.

421. A preposition may be the first part of a compound word, as ἐπι-βουλή, *plot*; ἐγ-κρατής, *master of* (ἐν, *in*, and κράτος, *power*).

422. For compound verbs, see 127, 128. Compound verbs, properly so called, can be formed only by prefixing a preposition to a verb. When formed, as denominatives, from the stem of a compound noun, they are called *indirect compounds*, as *στρατηγέω*, be general (*στρατηγός*, general, stem *στρατηγο-*).

423. Compounds of which the first part is a verb are chiefly poetic, but on the stem of such compounds other words are formed which occur in prose, as *πείθ-αρχος* (*πείθ-ομαι*, obey, and *ἄρχος*, leader), obedient to authority; *πειθαρχέω*, obey.

a. The first part is either the theme of the verb (sometimes with a vowel added, sometimes with *-σι-* added, which becomes *-σ-* before a vowel) or the present stem.

424. The following inseparable particles are used only as prefixes:—

a. *ἀ-* negative, originally *ἀνα-*, afterwards *ἀν-* (which is its usual form before vowels, whereas *ἀ-* is used before consonants), with negative force, Lat. *in-*, Eng. *un-*, as *ἄδικος*, unjust; *ἀν-ήκεστος*, incurable.

b. *ἀ-* copulative (older form *ἀ-*), expressing union, Eng. *together*, as *ἄ-λοχος*, bed-fellow (*λέχος*, bed); *ἅ-πᾶς*, all together.

c. *δυσ-*, ill (opposed to *εὖ*, well), as *δύσ-οδος*, hard to pass.

d. *ἡμι-*, half-, Lat. *sēmi-*, as *ἡμι-θεος*, demigod.

425. The last part of a compound is often a word not in use as a separate noun, as *λυρο-ποιός*, lyre-maker (*-ποιος*, maker, is not used separately).

426. The initial vowel of the last part of a compound noun may be lengthened, e.g. *α*, *ε*, or *ο* may respectively become *η* or *ᾱ*, *η*, or *ω*, as *στρατ-ηγός*, general (*ἄγός*, leader); *λοχ-ᾱγός*, captain (*λόχος*, company); *κατ-ήγορος*, accuser (*κατά*, against, and *ἀγορεύω*, speak); *ἐπ-ώνυμος*, named for (*ὄνομα*, name).

427. When a noun stands as the last part of a compound, its final syllable is often changed, as *φιλό-τῆμος*, honour-loving (*τῆμή*); *συν-τράπεζος*, table-companion (*τράπεζα*, table).

Compound Words. — II. Meaning.

In respect to their meaning, compound nouns (substantive and adjective) are of three classes:—

428. *Objective* compounds, one part of which is a substantive and stands to the other part in the relation expressed by an oblique case, as *λυρο-ποιός*, *lyre-maker*, *στρατ-ηγός*, *army-leader*, *στρατό-πεδον*, *camp* ('ground for an army').

429. *Determinative* compounds, in which the first part defines the second in the sense of an adjective or adverb, as *ἀκρό-πολις*, *citadel* (= *ἀκρὰ πόλις*), *ᾄει-λογίᾱ*, *continual talking*.

430. *Possessive* compounds, adjectives in which the first part defines the second (as in determinatives), and the whole describes the possessor, as *ἄργυρό-πους*, *with silver feet*; *κακο-δαίμων*, *evil-fated*.

LESSON LVII.

Word-Grouping.

Review 132-137.

431. The Greek language is very closely connected with *Latin* as a *sister* language. Both belong to the family of languages called Indo-European, and contain many words that had a common origin.

For example, *ἄγω* and *agō* (R. *ag*); *ἀργύριον* and *argentum* (R. *arg*); *ῥαπίζω* and *rapīō* (R. *rap*); *δῶρον* and *dōnum* (R. *do*), etc.

432. Again, many *English* words are more or less directly *borrowed* from Greek.

For example, **barbarous**; **demon**; **Hellenic**; **metropolis**; **myriad**; **philanthropy**; **phonetic**; **theism**; **zone**, etc., English words obviously connected with Greek words in the preceding lists.

433. Some important English words are not borrowed from Greek, but are nevertheless related to Greek words, since they are derived from the same original source. Such English words are called *cognate*.¹ Their relationship to the Greek words is

¹ *Borrowed* English words have been printed in the vocabularies and occasionally elsewhere in **black-face** letter, *cognate* words, in **small**

CAPITALS. This practice will be continued in the English division of the groups to be given hereafter and in the general vocabulary.

generally obscured by changes in form,¹ and sometimes in meaning. There is generally a corresponding Latin word.

For example, πατήρ, FATHER, *pater*; φέρω, BEAR, *ferō*; καλέω, HAUL, *calō*; γένος (*race*), KIN, *genus*; χήν, GOOSE, *ānser*; μήτηρ, MOTHER, *māter*; δέκα, TEN, *decem*; θύρα, DOOR, *foris*, etc.

We thus discover a second important guiding principle, to be added to the direction given in 137:—

434. *In acquiring a Greek vocabulary, associate with the Greek words that belong together in a group the related Latin and English words.*

The bearing and importance of the directions given in 137 and 434 will be made clearer by an inspection of the following typical group.

Analyze the Greek words in the group, referring to Lessons LV. and LVI., and point out the case-ending (47, 212) or personal-ending (154), the suffix, the stem, and the preceding stem, theme, or root on which it is formed, noting carefully changes of form (399, 400, 401). In denominative verbs (417) it will be sufficient to point out the ending and the preceding stem. In compounds, name first the parts that compose the word.

Many suffixes will occur in the groups in the following Lessons which are not given in Lessons LV. and LVI. The number of suffixes both in Greek and in Latin is very great, and the brief lists in Lessons LV. and LVI. give only the most important. The meaning of suffixes, moreover, sometimes shifts; and the distinction of suffixes as forming primitives or denominatives (397) is often not applicable. The facts, however, stated in Lessons LV. and LVI. generally hold good, and these Lessons exemplify the proper method of analysis.

Simple (396) Greek words printed in black-face letter are generally formed on a stem derived directly from a root or from an ultimate theme. But simple words which are formed on a stem derived from a stem that either appears in some preceding word or may easily be assumed, and *compounds*, are generally printed in light-face letter. This distinction is not made in case of the Latin words.²

¹ The following law holds for mutes: π and φ will generally appear in English respectively as *f* and *b*; κ, γ, and χ, as *h*, *k*, and *g*;

and τ, δ, and θ, as *th*, *t*, and *d*, but there are many exceptions.

² Only the most important Latin words are given. For a more ex-

Compound verbs are omitted, unless important for the development of the group. Many other words are omitted, because their connexion with the group in each case is obvious.

Matters of especial difficulty are explained in the note that follows the group.

435. R. αγ, ag, drive, lead, weigh.

ἀγ-ω, drive, lead, bring, carry, weigh; **ἀγ-ών**, -ών-ος, δ, a bringing together, esp. to witness a contest, hence, contest, games; **ἀγωνίζομαι**, contend; **ἀγ-ρός**, δ, field (place where flocks are driven); **ἀγρ-ιο-s**, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, ranging the fields, wild; **ἀγ-ός**, δ, leader; **στρατ-ηγός**, δ, general; **συ-στράτηγος**, δ (σύν, p. 59⁴), fellow-general; **στρατηγέ-ω**, be general; **στρατηγ-ία**, -ᾱs, generalship; **λοχ-ᾱγός**, δ (λόχο-s, δ, company), captain; **λοχᾱγέ-ω**, be captain; **λοχᾱγ-ία**, -ᾱs, captaincy; **οὐρ-ᾱγός**, δ (οὐρά, -ᾱs, rear), rear-leader; **ἡγέ-ο-μαι**, lead, command, consider, think; **ἡγε-μών**, -όν-ος, δ, leader; **ἡγεμον-ία**, -ᾱs, leadership; **ἡγεμό-συνα**, neut. plur. (p. 59⁴), thank-offerings for safe guidance. — **ἀγωγ-ή**, -ῆs, a carrying away; **ἀπ-αγωγ-ή**, -ῆs, removal; **παρ-αγωγ-ή**, -ῆs, transport; **ἀγωγ-ός**, δ, guide; **δημ-αγωγός**, δ (δημο-s, δ, people), leader of the people; **δημαγωγέ-ω**, play the demagogue; **σιτ-αγωγός**, -όν (σιτο-s, δ, grain), grain-carrying. — **ᾄξ-ων**, -ον-ος, δ, axle; **ἄμα-ξα**, -ης (ἄμα, adv., together), wagon with two connected axles, prop., therefore, four-wheeled wagon; **ἄμαξ-ιτός**, -όν, passable by wagons; **ἄμαξ-ιαῖο-s**, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, big enough to fill a wagon; **ᾄξ-ιο-s**, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, equal in weight, worth, worthy; **ἄξιᾱ**, -ᾱs, value; **ἄξιό-ω**, think worthy; **ἄξιω-μα**, -ατ-ος, τό, dignity; **ἄξιο-στράτηγος**, -ο-ν, worthy to command.

αγ-δ, move, lead, drive; **οἰγδῶ** (co-ig-ō), drive together, part. co-ᾱc-tu-s; **rēm-ex**, -ig-is, m., rower ('oar-driver'); **ἄc-tu-s**, -ūs, m., impulse, act; **ἄg-men**, -in-is, n., train, army on the march; **αγ-er**, -grī, m., field; **αg-ill-s**, -e, adj., easily movable, quick; **αx-i-s**, -is, m., axis.

ACRE, ACORN, AXLE; **agony**, *ant-agonist*, *strat-agem*, *ex-egesis*, *par-agogic*, *dem-agogue*, *ped-agogue*, *syn-agogue*, *axiom*.

NOTE. — **ἡγέ-ο-μαι** shows the same lengthening of the stem **αγο-** that appears in **στρατ-ηγός**, etc. The rough breathing is irregular. — The root appears reduplicated (399) in **ἀγωγ-ή**, etc., and increased (400) in **ᾄξ-ων**, etc. (**αγ+σ=αξ**). So also in **αx-i-s**. — **ᾄξιο-στράτηγος** is a note-worthy formation, as showing the same root in different forms.

tended treatment of these, teachers are referred to the Table of Roots at the end of Lewis's Latin Dictionary for Schools or of his Ele-

mentary Latin Dictionary, and for the history of the English words, to Skeat's Etymological Dictionary of the English Language.

LESSON LVIII.

Present System of Verbs. — Verbs of the First Class.

436. Six tense-systems have now been completely presented for vowel verbs in all of the moods.

Review 252 entire.

437. Three other tense-systems remain, the *second aorist* system, including the second aorist active and middle; the *second perfect* system, including the second perfect and second pluperfect active; and the *second passive* system, including the second aorist and second future passive.

438. The *second* tenses differ from the corresponding *first* tenses in *form*, but have like *meaning*.

439. The verbs that have already occurred have been almost exclusively vowel verbs. In addition to these, a few mute verbs have been used with themes ending in δ (104). In forming the different tense-stems of mute and liquid verbs (254) various euphonic modifications occur.

440. The present system of the vowel verbs so far presented has been formed by adding the variable vowel ω/ϵ (153) as tense-suffix directly to the theme. Verbs that form the present stem in this manner are said to belong to the *Variable Vowel* or *First Class*. This class includes some mute and some liquid verbs.

a. There are six other ways in which the present stem is formed from the theme, giving six other *classes* of verbs.

b. In the previous lessons the verb has been developed by *moods*. Hereafter the development will be by tense-systems, and the conjugation of $\lambda\acute{\upsilon}\omega$, already given, will be repeated.

Review 254 a and b.

441. In some vowel verbs the final vowel of the theme remains short in all of the systems in which the verb occurs. Thus : —

γελῶ, *laugh*,¹ γελάσομαι² ἐγέλασα ἐγελάσθην
 σπῶ, *draw*, ἔσπασα ἔσπακα ἔσπασμαι ἐσπασθην
 τελῶ, *complete*, τελῶσω, τελῶ,³ ἐτέλεσα τετέλεκα τετέλεσμαι ἐτετέλεσθην

a. These verbs add σ to the theme in the perfect and pluperfect middle and passive, and in the first passive system.

b. The same enlargement of the theme may occur in other vowel verbs. Thus:—

κλείω, *shut*, κλείσω ἔκλεισα κέκλειμαι or κέκλεισμαι ἐκλείσθην
 κελεύω, *order*, κελεύσω ἐκέλευσα κεκέλευκα κεκέλευσμαι ἐκεκέλευσθην

442. In other vowel verbs the final vowel of the theme remains short in some of the forms, but is lengthened in the others. Thus:—

δέω, *bind*, δήσω ἔδησα δέδεκα δέδεμαι ἐδέσθην
 θύω, *sacrifice*, θύσω ἔθυσα τέθυκα τέθυμαι ἐτύθην
 λύω, *LOOSE*, λύσω ἔλυσα λέλυκα λέλυμαι ἐλύθην
 αἰνέω, *praise*,⁴ αἰνέσω ἤνεσα ἤνεκα ἤνημαι ἤνέθην
 καλέω, *call*, καλῶ⁵ ἐκάλεσα ἐκέκληκα⁵ ἐκέκλημαι ἐκλήθην

Review the present, future, and first aorist systems of λύω in 672–674.⁶

Read again 148.

No special vocabularies will be given hereafter. For information in regard to the forms of words, their etymology, and their meanings, consult the general vocabulary at the end of the book. But do not do this until the sentence has been read aloud once or twice *through to the end*, according to the directions in 140. Endeavour to ascertain the meaning of new words by analysis, determining their parts, if they are compound, their stems, and their roots, and comparing them with any word or words of like derivation that may have previously occurred. If this fails, endeavour to infer their meaning from the context.⁷ In all cases of doubt, the general vocabulary should be finally consulted.

¹ It will be remembered that many verbs are *defective* (253 a).

² In many verbs the fut. act. is lacking, the fut. mid. being used instead.

³ Some verbs in -εω drop σ in the fut. and contract. Thus τελέσω, τελέω, τελῶ. The fut. has thus the same form as the present.

⁴ Used mostly in compounds, esp. ἐπ-αινέω, *bestow praise on, applaud*.

⁵ The theme καλε- appears as κλη- in the last three principal parts.

⁶ In each system, give first the forms of the active in each mood, *passing down the column*, then of the middle and passive, or of the middle.

⁷ Assistance in determining the meaning of new words in this Lesson and in the two Lessons that follow will be given in the notes.

443.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ξενίᾱς τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσσε. 2. θύσομεν δὲ βούς. 3. καλῆσᾱς παρεκελεύετο τοῖς Ἑλλησι¹ πορεύεσθαι. 4. Κύρος δὲ συγκαλέσᾱς² τοὺς στρατιωτᾱς λέγει ὧδε. 5. τῶν δὲ συνόντων³ πάντων ἂν κατεγέλᾱ. 6. καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς παρεκάλεσεν εἶσω. 7. τοὺς ἵππους ἔδησαν. 8. τῶν δ' ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν πολλοὶ οὐ διετέλεσαν⁴ τὴν ὁδόν. 9. καὶ πλησίον ἐστὶν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα⁵ καταλύσομεν.⁶ 10. ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ. 11. καὶ καλεσάμενος τοὺς στρατηγούς λέγει ὧδε. 12. τοὺς κακούργους⁷ καὶ ἀδίκους οὐκ εἰᾱ⁸ καταγελᾶν, ἀλλ' ἐτίμωρεῖτο. 13. καὶ δεῖται Ἀριστίππου μὴ καταλύσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιωτᾱς. 14. νῦν δὲ καὶ ἐπαινῶ σε ἐπὶ τοῖς λόγοις. 15. ἀλλὰ κλείσαντες τὰς πύλᾱς οὔτε εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἐδέχοντο⁹ τοὺς στρατιωτᾱς οὔτε ἔξω ἀγορᾶν ἔπεμπον. 16. ἦν δὲ ὑμεῖς τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλῆτε, ἀκολουθήσουσιν ὑμῖν. 17. Φαλῖνος δὲ ἐγέλασε καὶ εἶπεν,¹⁰ Ἀλλὰ λέγεις, ὦ νεανίσκε,¹¹ οὐκ ἀχάριστα.¹² 18. ἡμεῖς ἐνὶ κῶμην βασιλεῖᾱ ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ καὶ καταγελάσαντες ἀπήλθομεν.¹³ 19. ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἀπέσπασεν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας. 20. τὸν μὲν καλῶς ποιοῦντα ἐπαινοῦμεν, τὸν δ' ἀδικοῦντα οὐκ ἐπαινοῦμεν.

II. 1. He drew his¹⁴ sword. 2. And they bound the guide. 3. You will applaud me. 4. But his¹⁵ father called Cyrus.

¹ For the case, cf. 256, I. 13.

² Before a palatal (114), *ν* becomes *γ* nasal (p. 2³). For the force of the prep. in composition, cf. *σύμπᾱς* (264).

³ *σύντων* is gen. plur. of the participle *ὄν*. *συνόντων* is, therefore, the gen. plur. of the compound verb *σύν-εἰμι*, and *οἱ συνόντες* must mean *those who are with one* (370), *one's associates*. For the case, cf. 308, I. 4.

⁴ For the force of the prep. in composition, cf. *διαπράζω*.

⁵ *where*.

⁶ Note the two parts of the word. So arise the meanings, 1) *unyoke* the baggage-cattle, *i.e.* *halt*, and 2) *make peace*, in sentence 13 below.

⁷ *κακός* and *ἔργον*. Cf. *σύν-εργος* (285).

⁸ See p. 83⁸.

⁹ The meaning of *δέχομαι* can be inferred from the context.

¹⁰ *εἶπον*, *said*, a second aor.

¹¹ Cf. *νεανίσκος* with *νεανίᾱς*.

¹² *ἀ-χάριστος*, *-ον*, cf. *χάρις*, *ἀχαρίστως*.

¹³ *ἦλθον*, *went*, a second aor.

¹⁴ See 197.

¹⁵ See p. 23⁸.

5. The army halted for¹ breakfast. 6. We shall call the soldiers together there. 7. And he ordered the exiles to take the field with Clearchus. 8. And they completed their journey and halted. 9. The other soldiers applauded Clearchus. 10. Xenophon will intercept the cavalry. 11. This man will laugh at his opponents. 12. When he had offered sacrifice, he called the soldiers together.

From this point groups of related words are substituted for the special vocabularies. Make a careful study of these groups, analyzing the words according to the principles stated in Lesson LVII. Then commit all the Greek words to memory.

444. R. τι, pay.

τι-ω, pay, value, honour; τι-ν-ω, pay for, mid. make pay for (197 a), punish; ἀπο-τίν-ω, pay back, mid. make pay back, punish; τι-μή, ἥς, value, worth, price, honour, esteem; ἄ-τιμο-s, -ο-ν, without honour, dishonoured; ἀτιμάζω, dishonour; ἐν-τιμο-s, -ο-ν, in honour, honoured; ἐντιμως, adv., in honour; φιλό-τιμο-s, -ο-ν (φίλο-s, loving, dear), loving honour, ambitious, emulous; φιλοτιμέ-ο-μαι, be ambitious or jealous; τιμ-ιο-s, -ᾶ, -ον, valuable, honoured; τιμά-ω, value, esteem, honour; τιμωρό-ς, -ό-ν, watching over or upholding honour, avenging; τιμωρ-ιά, -ᾶς, help, vengeance; τιμωρέ-ω, help, avenge, mid. avenge oneself on, take vengeance on.

τιμο-cracy.

NOTE.—The meaning of the root, pay, branches in two directions: 1) set a price on, value, honour; 2) pay a price for, pay a penalty.—τιμωρό-s is for τιμᾶ-φορο-s,² the stem φορο- carrying the idea of watchful. Cf. δρᾶ-ω, see.

LESSON LIX.

Comparison of Adjectives.

445. There are three degrees of comparison of adjectives in Greek, as in Latin and in English.

¹ πρὸς, with acc.

² The oldest Greek alphabet had a letter Ϝ, called digamma, δίγαμμα (double gamma), from its form,

equal to Latin u consonantal, English w. This letter was lost, but traces of it appear in many Greek words.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
δίκαιος (δικαιο-), <i>just</i> ,	δικαιό-τερος	δικαιό-τατος
ισχυρός (ισχυρο-), <i>strong</i> ,	ισχυρό-τερος	ισχυρό-τατος
πιστός (πιστο-), <i>faithful</i> ,	πιστό-τερος	πιστό-τατος
πολέμιος (πολεμιο-), <i>hostile</i> ,	πολεμιώ-τερος	πολεμιώ-τατος
ἀσφαλής (ασφαλεσ-), <i>secure</i> ,	ἀσφαλέσ-τερος	ἀσφαλέσ-τατος

446. The comparative is generally formed, as above, by adding -τερος, -τερᾶ, -τερον (stem -τερο-), and the superlative by adding -τατος, -τατῇ, -τατον (stem -τατο-), to the masculine stem of the positive.

a. Adjectives in -ος keep the stem unchanged in the comparative and superlative when the penult is long or the vowel of the penult is followed by two consonants. Otherwise the final vowel of the stem is lengthened to -ω.

b. The comparative and superlative in -τερος and -τατος are declined like adjectives of the vowel-declension (144).

447. Some adjectives take the irregular endings -εστερος, -εστατος.

a. Stems in -ον-. Thus εὐδαίμων (ευδαιμον-), *fortunate*, εὐδαιμον-έστερος, εὐδαιμον-έστατος.

b. Some contract adjectives in (-οος) -ους. Thus (εὖνοος) εὖνους (ευνοο-), εἰνούστερος, εἰνούστατος (by contraction for εἰνοέστερος, εἰνοέστατος).

448. A less common ending of the comparative is -ίων, -ιον (stem -ιον-), of the superlative -ιστος, -ιστῇ, -ιστον (stem -ιστο-).

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
ἡδύς (stem ἡδυ-), <i>pleasant</i> ,	ἡδ-ίων	ἡδ-ιστος
ταχύς (stem ταχυ-), <i>swift</i> ,	θάττων (for ταχ-ίων) ¹	τάχ-ιστος
κακός (stem κακο-), <i>bad</i> ,	κακ-ίων	κάκ-ιστος
αἰσχρός (stem αἰσχρο-), <i>shameful</i> ,	αἰσχ-ίων	αἰσχ-ιστος

a. These endings are added to the masculine stem of the positive denuded of its suffix. Adjectives thus compared generally end in -υς or -πος. These syllables disappear in the comparative and superlative.

¹ When, for any reason, the rough sound is lost at the end of a root which begins with τ and ends with

φ or χ, it appears at the beginning. This is called *transfer of aspiration*.

449. Comparatives in *-ίων* are declined like *εὐδαίμων* (338), but in some of the cases shorter forms may occur.

PARADIGM.

S. N. G. D. A. V.	M. and F.		N.
	<i>ἡδίων</i>		<i>ἡδίων</i>
		<i>ἡδίων-ος</i>	
		<i>ἡδίων-ι</i>	
	<i>ἡδίων-α, ἡδίω</i>		<i>ἡδίων</i>
D. N. A. V. G. D.		<i>ἡδίων-ε</i>	
		<i>ἡδιόν-οιν</i>	
P. N. V. G. D. A.	<i>ἡδίων-ες, ἡδίους</i>		<i>ἡδίων-α, ἡδίω</i>
		<i>ἡδιόν-ων</i>	
		<i>ἡδίουςι</i>	
	<i>ἡδίων-ας, ἡδίους</i>		<i>ἡδίων-α, ἡδίω</i>

450. The Comparative Degree.

Examine the following: —

οὗτοι κακίονές εἰσι τῶν ἄλλων, these are greater cowards than the others.

ἐπορεύοντο μακροτέρᾱν ὁδόν, they proceeded by a longer road.

451. Rule of Syntax. — Adjectives in the comparative degree take the genitive. The genitive is sometimes not expressed, but merely implied.

452. The Superlative Degree.

Examine the following: —

πέμπει τῶν πελταστῶν τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους, he sends the strongest of the light infantry.

ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν, he sends her back by the quickest route.
πολεμιώτατος ἦν βασιλεὺς τοῖς Ἑλλήσι, the king was very hostile to the Greeks.

453. Rule of Syntax. — Adjectives in the superlative degree may be followed by the partitive genitive. The genitive is

sometimes implied. The superlative may express simply a *very high degree* of the quality. In this sense it never has the article.

454.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. βασιλεῖ πιστότατοί εἰσιν. 2. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ χαλεπώτατος ἐχθρὸς τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐστίν. 3. τούτους ἔφασαν οἱ στρατευσάμενοι πολεμικωτάτους εἶναι. 4. παρὴν ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς εὐδαιμονεστάτοις τῶν φίλων. 5. τὰ δὲ κρέα τούτων τῶν ὀρνίθων ἡδιστα ἦν. 6. οὐπω δὴ πολλοῦ χρόνου¹ ἡδέονος οἴνου² γέγευμαι. 7. οὗτος τάχιστος θάνατός ἐστιν. 8. μὴ κακίους ὦμεν τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. 9. τὸ³ δὲ ἄλλους παρεῖναι καὶ τοῖς κακίοσι θάρρος⁴ ἐμποιεῖ.⁵ 10. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν. 11. οὗτοί εἰσι κάκιστοί τε καὶ αἰσχιστοὶ ἄνδρες καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων. 12. καὶ παραπέμπων τῶν πελταστῶν τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους κελεύει ἐρωτῆσαι τί ἐστι τὸ κωλύον. 13. πάντες οὗτοι οἱ βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων. 14. Κῦρος οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν, ἀνὴρ ὢν βασιλικώτατός τε καὶ ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος. 15. Σεύθης ἰκανώτατος ἔσται ὑμᾶς καὶ εὖ καὶ κακῶς ποιεῖν. 16. οἱ μὲν ἀγαθοὶ εὐδαιμονεστατοὶ ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ κακοὶ δοῦλοι⁶ τούτων εἶναι ἡξιοῦντο. 17. ἴσως οὖν ἀσφαλέστερον ἔσται ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι πλαίσιον ποιησαμένους⁷ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, ἵνα τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ⁸ ᾦ.

II. 1. This road is narrower. 2. All were most faithful to the king. 3. Basest of men, why do you do this? 4. Now we will proceed by a longer road. 5. The cavalrymen were

¹ Cf. 308, I. 15.

² Cf. 208, I. 7.

³ The inf., as a neuter verbal subst., may take the art.

⁴ θάρρος, -εος (316). Determine the meaning by comparison with θαρρέω, θαρραλέως.

⁵ ἐν and ποιέω (p. 45⁹). For the case of κακίοσι, see p. 31⁸.

⁶ δοῦλος, δ. For the meaning, cf. δουλεύω.

⁷ A modifier of the subj. of πορεύεσθαι, ἡμᾶς understood.

⁸ I.e. in greater security.

more eager. 6. He has the most valiant of the soldiers. 7. The citizens will be more courageous. 8. They called forth the most faithful of the men. 9. The satrap was a very unjust man. 10. These will be better disposed to us than the others. 11. Of all the Persians Cyrus was the ablest to benefit¹ his friends. 12. He was led² into the tent of a man who was³ very faithful to Cyrus.

455. R. μακ (399), *mac*, be great, have power.

μακ-ρό-ς, -ά, -όν, long; μάκ-αρ, -αρ-ος, powerful, rich, blessed; μακαρίζω, account happy; μακαρισ-τό-ς,⁴ -ή, -όν, accounted happy, enviable; μήκ-ος (399), -εος, τό, length; μήκ-ιστο-ς, -η, -ον, sup., longest. — μηχαν-ανή, -ής, means for doing, device; μηχανά-ο-μαι, devise; ἀ-μήχανο-ς, -ον, without means, impracticable. — μέγ-α-ς (stem μεγα- and μεγα-λο-), great; μέγ-αλως, adv., greatly; μεγαλο-πρεπής, -ές (πρέπω, befit), befitting a great man, magnificent; μεγαλο-πρεπῶς, adv., magnificently; μίξων, -ον (for μεγ-ίων), comp., greater; μέγ-ιστο-ς, -η, -ον, sup., greatest; μέγε-θος, -εος, τό, greatness.

māc-tu-s, adj., glorified, worshipped; māc-tō, magnify, glorify; māg-nu-s, adj., great; māior (for mag-ior), greater; māximu-s (for mag-simu-s), greatest; mag-is, adv. (for mag-ius), more; mag-ister, -tri, m., master.

MAKE, MAY, MIGHT, MUCH, MORE, MOST, MANY, MAIN (strength), MAID; macro-cosm, mechanic, o-mega, mega-therium, megalosaurus.

LESSON LX.

Future and First Aorist Systems of Mute-Verbs. — Verbs of the Third Class.

456. Verbs whose themes end in a mute are called *mute verbs* (254).

457. A labial mute (π, β, φ) at the end of the theme unites with σ of the tense-suffix (-σ/ε in the future, -σα- in the first aorist) and forms ψ (215 a). Thus: —

πέμπω (theme πεμπ-), send, πέμψω, ἐπέμψα; τρίβω (τρίβ-, τριβ-), rub, τρίψω, ἔτριψα; γράφω (γραφ-), write, γράψω, ἔγραψα.

¹ Cf. 305, I. 13.

² See 227 a.

³ See 369.

⁴ Formed on the theme μακαριδ- of μακαρίζω. See p. 150¹.

458. A palatal mute (κ, γ, χ) with σ forms ξ (215 b). Thus: —

λέγω (λεγ-), *gather*,¹ *speech*, λέξω, ἐλέξα; διώκω (διωκ-), *pursue*, διώξω, ἐδίωξα; ἀρχω (αρχ-), *begin, rule*, ἀρξω, ἤρξα.

459. A lingual mute (τ, δ, θ) before σ is dropped (231). Thus: —

σπεύδω (σπευδ-), *hasten*, σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα; πέρθω (περθ-), *destroy*, πέρσω, ἐπέρσα.

All of the verbs cited above belong to the *first class* (440).

Conjugate the fut. and first aor. systems of any one of these verbs.

460. Some *labial* mute verbs form the present stem by adding -τ^ο/ε. to the theme.

	THEME.	PRES. STEM.	FUT.	FIRST AOR.
κλέπτω, <i>steal</i> ,	κλεπ-	κλεπτο/ε.	κλέψω	ἔκλεψα
κόπτω, <i>cut</i> ,	κοπ-	κοπτο/ε.	κόψω	ἔκοψα
σκέπτομαι, <i>vie</i> ,	σκεπ-	σκεπτο/ε.	σκέψομαι	ἔσκεψάμην
βλάπτω, <i>injure</i> ,	βλαβ-	βλαπτο/ε.	βλάψω	ἔβλαψα
καλύπτω, <i>cover</i> ,	καλυβ-	καλυπτο/ε.	καλύψω	ἔκάλυψα
θάπτω, <i>bury</i> ,	ταφ-	θαπτο/ε.	θάψω	ἔθαψα
κρύπτω, <i>hide</i> ,	κρύφ-	κρυπτο/ε.	κρύψω	ἔκρυψα
ρίπτω, <i>throw</i> ,	ρίφ-	ρίπτο/ε.	ρίψω	ἔριψα ²

a. The final labial of the theme becomes coördinate (114 a), β and φ changing to π before τ of the tense-suffix -το/ε., as βλάπ-τω for βλαβ-τω, καλύπ-τω for καλυβ-τω, θάπ-τω for ταφ-τω,³ κρίπ-τω for κρυβ-τω, ρίπ-τω for ρίφ-τω.

461. These verbs belong to the *Tau* or *Third Class*.

462.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἤρξατο⁴ τὸ στράτευμα πορεύεσθαι. 2. τοὺς ἵππους πάντας ἐκλέξομεν. 3. οἱ δὲ διώξαντες ταχὺ⁵ ἐπαύοντο. 4. ἔπεμψέ με Ἀριαῖος, πιστὸς ὢν Κύρῳ καὶ ὑμῖν εὖνους. 5. τοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας ἐκέλευον θάψαι. 6. ἥλιον δὲ νεφέλῃ ἐκάλυψεν. 7. τοὺς τοὺς ἄνδρας φησὶ κλέψαι⁶ τὰ χρή-

¹ In the sense of *gather*, used by Attic writers only in compounds, as ἐκ-λέγω, *pick out, select*.

² Initial ρ is doubled when, by inflexion or composition, a simple vowel is brought before it.

³ Transfer of aspiration. See p. 162¹.

⁴ See 198.

⁵ Neut. of the adj. used adverbially.

⁶ Cf. 356, I. 2.

ματα. 8. οἱ Ἕλληνες ταῖς μαχαίραις¹ ἔκοψαν τὰ γέρρα. 9. τὰ δὲ ἄλλα εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν ῥίψωμεν. 10. Κῦρος ἔσπευσε πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ διέτρίψεν.² 11. συλλέξας³ στράτευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. 12. οὗτοι οὐ βλάβουσιν ἡμᾶς πορευομένους. 13. τὰ χρήματα, ὧ νεανίσκε, μὴ κλέψης.⁴ 14. καὶ οὐκ ἔστι⁵ πορεύεσθαι, εἰ μὴ τούτους ἀποκόψομεν.⁶ 15. διακόψαι δὲ οὐ ῥάδιον⁷ ἔσται τοὺς λόχους. 16. ἡ χιὼν ἀπέκρυψε καὶ τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 17. ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος ἔδεισε μὴ βασιλεὺς κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. 18. ἀλλὰ διατρίψω, ἵνα φοβῶνται οἱ ἄγγελοι μὴ οὐ⁸ τὰς σπονδὰς ποιησώμεθα. 19. πέμψας τὸν ἑρμηνέα παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγούς ἐκέλευσε πορεύεσθαι. 20. καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ πέμψαι κελεύουσι φυλακὴν. 21. ἐδίωκε μὲν Ξενοφῶν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, τοὺς δὲ πολέμους οὐκ ἔβλαψεν. 22. ἔδεισαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μὴ προσάγοιεν πρὸς τὸ κέρας καὶ αὐτοὺς κατακόψειαν. 23. σκέψασθε εἰ τοῦτο πεποιήκασιν οἱ βάρβαροι. 24. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ⁹ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει κωμήτας¹⁰ σκεφομένους¹¹ πῶς ἔχουσιν οἱ τελευταῖοι.¹²

II. 1. You stole the horses. 2. Cyrus cut down¹³ the park. 3. They throw stones into the river. 4. He wrote a letter to¹⁴ the king. 5. I will not pursue these men. 6. We will bury the (two) men. 7. He will make haste to proceed to Greece. 8. Cyrus sent jars of wine to his friends. 9. He said that the

¹ Cf. 175, I. 11.

² δια-τρίβω, sc. χρόνον. So *tempus terō* in Lat.

³ συλ-λέγω for συν-λεγω. Before λ, μ, or ρ, ν becomes λ, μ, or ρ.

⁴ See 327.

⁵ See 188 c.

⁶ For the force of the prep. in composition, cf. ἀπο-σπάω, ἀπο-κλείω, etc.

⁷ ῥάδιο-ς, -ᾶ, -ο-ν. For the meaning of this adj., cf. the adv. ῥαδίως (309).

⁸ See 280.

⁹ Sc. τῷ χρόνῳ.

¹⁰ κωμή-τη-ς (404), cf. κώμη.

¹¹ See 379, and cf. the fifth example in 378.

¹² τελευτα-ῖο-ς, -ᾶ, -ο-ν, from the stem of the subst. τελευτή. For the meaning, cf. τέλος (318), τελευτά-ω (257).

¹³ ἐκ-κόπτω.

¹⁴ παρὰ with acc.

boy hid¹ this. 10. He orders them to find out² what the hindrance³ is. 11. To beat off⁴ the enemy was a necessity. 12. The army will slaughter⁵ the oxen and asses. 13. He collected an army by means of⁶ the money.

463. R. αρχ, be first.

ἀρχ-ω, be first, — in point of time, *begin*, in point of station, *rule*; part. as subst., **ἀρχων**, -οντ-ος, δ, ruler; **ὑπ-ἀρχ-ω**, be a foundation or beginning; **ἀρχ-ῆ**, -ῆς, beginning, rule; **ἀρχα-ῖο-s**, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, from the beginning, ancient, old; **ἀρχ-ικó-s**, -ῆ, -ό-ν, fit for rule; **ἀρχ-ό-s**, δ, leader; **ὑπ-αρχο-s**, δ, subordinate commander, lieutenant; **ἄν-αρχο-s**, -ο-ν, without leaders; **ἀναρχ-ιά**, -ᾱς, lack of leaders, anarchy; **ἵππ-αρχο-s**, δ (ἵππο-s, δ, ἥ, horse), commander of the horse; **μόν-αρχο-s**, δ (μόνο-s, alone), one who rules alone; **μοναρχ-ιά**, -ᾱς, monarchy; **ναύ-αρχο-s**, δ (ναῦ-s, ἡ, ship), admiral; **ναυαρχέ-ω**, be admiral; **πείθ-αρχο-s**, -ο-ν (πείθ-ο-μαι, obey), obedient to authority; **πειθαρχέ-ω**, obey; **πολυ-αρχ-ιά**, -ᾱς (πολύ-s, much, many), government of many; **φρουρ-αρχο-s**, δ (φρουρό-s, δ, garrison-soldier), commander of a garrison; **κωμ-ἀρχη-s**, -ου (κώμ-η, village), village-chief.

archaic, archæo-logy, archives, arch-angel, arch-bishop, archiepiscopal, arche-type, an-archy, hier-archy, tetr-archy, etc.

LESSON LXI.

Future and First Aorist Systems of Mute Verbs (continued). — Mute Verbs of the Fourth Class.

464. Many palatal mute verbs form the present stem by adding -ι°/ε to the theme. κ or χ unites with the ι of this present tense-suffix, forming with it ττ. γ unites with the ι, forming generally ττ, sometimes ζ. Thus:—

	THEME.	PRES. STEM.	FUT.	FIRST AOR.
κηρύττω, proclaim,	κηρύκ-	κηρύττ°/ε.	κηρύξω	ἐκήρῦξα
φυλάττω, guard,	φυλακ-	φυλαττ°/ε.	φυλάξω	ἐφύλαξα
ταράττω, disturb,	ταραχ-	ταραττ°/ε.	ταράξω	ἐτάραξα
ἀλλάττω, change,	ἀλλαγ-	ἀλλαττ°/ε.	ἀλλάξω	ἥλλαξα
πράττω, do,	πρᾶγ-	πρᾶττ°/ε.	πράξω	ἔπραξα
τάττω, arrange,	ταγ-	ταττ°/ε.	τάξω	ἔταξα
ἀλαλάζω, raise the war-cry,	αλαλαγ-	αλαλαζ°/ε.	ἀλαλάξομαι ⁷	ἠλάλαξα

¹ Cf. 356, I. 2.

² σκέπτεμαι.

³ Cf. 373, I. 6.

⁴ ἀπο-κόπτω.

⁵ κόπτω.

⁶ ἀπό.

⁷ See p. 159².

465. Many *lingual* mute verbs with themes ending in δ form the present stem by adding, as above, $-i^\circ/\epsilon$ to the theme. δ unites with the i , forming with it ζ . Thus:—

	THEME.	PRES. STEM.	FUT.	FIRST AOR.
$\alpha\theta\rho\acute{o}\iota\zeta\omega$, collect,	$\alpha\theta\rho\iota\delta$ -	$\alpha\theta\rho\iota\zeta^\circ/\epsilon$ -	$\alpha\theta\rho\acute{o}\iota\sigma\omega$	$\eta\theta\rho\iota\sigma\alpha$
$\epsilon\rho\gamma\acute{\alpha}\zeta\omicron\mu\alpha\iota$, work,	$\epsilon\rho\gamma\alpha\delta$ -	$\epsilon\rho\gamma\alpha\zeta^\circ/\epsilon$ -	$\epsilon\rho\gamma\acute{\alpha}\sigma\omicron\mu\alpha\iota$	$\epsilon\iota\rho\gamma\alpha\sigma\acute{\alpha}\mu\eta\nu^1$
$\theta\alpha\upsilon\mu\acute{\alpha}\zeta\omega$, admire,	$\theta\alpha\upsilon\mu\alpha\delta$ -	$\theta\alpha\upsilon\mu\alpha\zeta^\circ/\epsilon$ -	$\theta\alpha\upsilon\mu\acute{\alpha}\sigma\omega$	$\epsilon\theta\alpha\acute{\upsilon}\mu\alpha\sigma\alpha$
$\nu\omicron\mu\acute{\iota}\zeta\omega$, think,	$\nu\omicron\mu\iota\delta$ -	$\nu\omicron\mu\iota\zeta^\circ/\epsilon$ -	$\nu\omicron\mu\acute{\iota}\omega^2$	$\epsilon\nu\acute{o}\mu\iota\sigma\alpha$

a. Some of these verbs with themes in δ have been introduced in the previous lessons.

466. The verbs described in 464, 465 belong to the *Iota* or *Fourth Class*.

467.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. τῶν δὲ σκευῶν τὰ περιττὰ ἀπαλλάξωμεν. 2. ἐκέρῳ-ξαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ τοὺς στρατιώτῃς οὕτω ποιεῖν. 3. συνέλεξε τὸ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.³ 4. ἀγαθὸν τι⁴ ὑμῖν παρὰ βασιλέως διαπράξομαι. 5. καὶ ἔταξε Πίγρητα συνεκβιβάζειν τὰς ἀμάξῃς. 6. Κύρος νομιεῖ ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἡδικῆσθαι.⁵ 7. βασιλεὺς δὲ τὰ ἄλλα διαρπάσει. 8. ταῦτα δεῖ παρασκευάσασθαι. 9. Μένωνι δὲ δῶρα Κύρος ἐλέγετο πέμψαι⁶ μεγαλοπρεπῶς. 10. τὸ δὲ ἔξω⁶ τεῖχος βασιλέως φυλακὴ φυλάξει. 11. τίνι⁷ ἂν θεῶν θύων⁸ καὶ εὐχόμενος⁸ καλῶς πράξῃς σωθῇν; 12. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς στρατηγούς συντάξαι τοὺς Ἑλληνας. 13. ἡλάλαξαν οἱ Ἑλληνες πελτασταί. 14. ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς, ἂν ἐμοὶ τάλαντον μισθὸν πορίσητε. 15. ὁ δ' Ὀρόντῃς, νομίσῃς ἐτοίμους εἶναι⁵ τοὺς ἱππέας, γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέᾳ. 16. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἐγὼ βιασαίμην⁹ ὑμᾶς σὺν ἐμοὶ ἐπακολου-

¹ See p. 83⁸.

² Verbs in $-i\zeta\omega$ with themes in $-i\delta$ - make their fut. in $-i\epsilon\omega$ instead of $-i\sigma\omega$, and contract. So $\nu\omicron\mu\iota$ -έω, $\nu\omicron\mu\iota\omega$. This is called the *Attic Future*.

³ See p. 71².

⁴ Cf. 343, I. 17.

⁵ See 354.

⁶ Cf. 228, I. 3.

⁷ Dat. sing. masc. of the interrogative τίς. Cf. 308, I. 2.

⁸ See p. 104¹⁰ and 379.

⁹ See p. 104¹⁴.

θεῖν; 17. κελεύει δὲ αὐτὸν τῷ στρατηγῷ συμπέμψαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος ἀνδρας. 18. ἀντιταξάμενοι τούτοις¹ ἐνικᾶτε σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. 19. ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων συλλέξας στράτευμα ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί. 20. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος διεπράξατο πέντε μὲν στρατηγούς παρῆναι, εἴκοσι δὲ λοχαγούς. 21. ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς συσκευασαμένους καὶ ἐξοπλισαμένους πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. 22. νῦν ἡ εὐκλεῶς τελευτήσομεν ἢ καλὸν ἔργον ἐργασόμεθα τοὺς Ἕλληνας σώσαντες.

II. 1. We will guard the acropolis. 2. And after this they raised the war-cry. 3. Let us plunder the city and the palace. 4. He sent heralds to arrange² a truce. 5. Cyrus will pursue them with triremes.³ 6. He took his post behind the soldiers. 7. But this disturbed Clearchus exceedingly. 8. For I thought you were⁴ both friends and allies. 9. Those with⁵ Xenophon packed up their baggage⁶ and proceeded. 10. For if we shall delay, the enemy will be more courageous. 11. He made proclamation to the Greeks that they were to pack up their baggage.⁷ 12. These, then, were the exploits of the Greeks⁸ in their march inland with Cyrus.

468. R. **Εργ**, work.

ἐργ-ο-ν, τό, work, deed; **ἀργ-ός-ς, -όν** (contracted from **ἀ-εργ-ός-ς**), without work, idle; **εὖ-εργέ-τη-ς, -ου**, well-doer, benefactor; **εὐεργετέ-ω**, do a kindness; **εὐεργε-σίᾳ, -ās**, kindness; **κακοῦργ-ο-ς, ὁ** (contracted from **κακό-εργ-ο-ς, κακό-ς**, bad), wrong-doer; **κακοῦργέ-ω**, do harm to; **συν-εργ-ός-ς, -όν**, working with; **ἐργάζο-μαι**, do work, labour; **παν-ούργ-ο-ς, -ον** (for **παν-ε-οργ-ο-ς, πᾶς**, all), that will do anything, villainous; **πανουργ-ία, -ās**, knavishness; **ὑπ-οург-ός-ς, -όν**, serviceable, conducive to.

WORK, WRIGHT, WROUGHT; **en-ergy, organ, ge-orgic, chir-urgeon, s-urgeon, lit-urgy, metall-urgy**.

NOTE. — For the digamma in the root, see p. 161². In **πανούργος** and **ὑποουργός**, an **ε** is prefixed to the root.

¹ See p. 83¹⁰ and cf. 274, I. 4.

² to arrange, **περί** with the gen.

³ Cf. 308, I. 17.

⁴ The original thought was, *They are, etc.* Cf. I. 6 above.

⁵ Those with, **οἱ ἀμφί** with the acc.

⁶ Use the aor. participle.

⁷ that they were, etc. Use the infin.

⁸ Say, *This, then* (**ταῦτα δὲ**), the Greeks did, etc.

LESSON LXII.

Irregular Comparison of Adjectives.

469. The following are the most important cases of irregular comparison : —

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
1. ἀγαθός, <i>good</i> , ¹	ἀμείνων	ἄριστος
	βελτίων	βέλτιστος
	κρείττων (for κρετ-ίων)	κράτιστος
	λῶν	λῶστος
2. κακός, ² <i>bad</i> ,	χείρων	χείριστος
	ἥττων (for ἡκ-ίων)	ἥκιστα ³
3. καλός, <i>beautiful</i> ,	καλλίων	κάλλιστος
4. μέγας, <i>great</i> ,	μείζων (for μεγ-ίων)	μέγιστος
5. μικρός, ⁴ <i>small</i> ,	μείων	
6. ὀλίγος, <i>little</i> , plur. <i>few</i> ,	ἐλάττων (for ελαχ-ίων)	ἐλάχιστος
7. πολὺς, <i>much</i> , plur. <i>many</i> ,	πλείων or πλέων	πλείστος
8. ῥαδῖος, <i>easy</i> ,	ῥάων	ῥᾶστος

470.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ὥστε ἄδειπνοι ἦσαν οἱ πλείστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
 2. μέγιστον, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔχετε καιρόν. 3. οὐχ ἡμῶν βελτίους εἰσὶν οἱ Μῦσοί. 4. Ἀρίσταρχος δὲ ἱππέας οὐκ ἐλάττους τετρακοσίων εἶχεν. 5. ἔχομεν τὰ τῶν ἡττόνων χρήματα.
 6. καὶ ἐπειράτο συνεργὸς τοῖς φίλοις κράτιστος εἶναι.
 7. λῶν καὶ ἀμεινόν ἐστι στρατεύεσθαι ἢ ἀπαλλάττεσθαι.
 8. οὗτοι ἀξιούσι τῶν λοχαγῶν μὴ χείρους εἶναι. 9. τὰ δὲ τῶν φίλων ῥᾶστόν ἐστιν ἀφύλακτα διαρπάσαι. 10. πολλῶ⁵

¹ For the distinctions of meaning among different comparative and superlative forms of the same positive, see the general vocabulary.

² κακός has also regular forms. See 448.

³ A neut. plur. used as an adv.

⁴ Also compared regularly, μικρότερος, μικρότατος.

⁵ The dat. is used with comparatives to denote the degree of difference. So here, *greater by much*, i.e. *much greater*.

μείζων ἦν ἡ βοή. 11. πειράσσονται καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν τὰ βέλτιστα¹ συμβουλευσαι. 12. βέλτιον εἶναι ἔφη ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. 13. ἔχομεν δὲ καὶ ψυχὰς σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμείνονας τῶν βαρβάρων. 14. τοιγαροῦν κράτιστοι δὴ ὑπηρεται παντὸς ἔργου Κύρῳ ἦσαν. 15. ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο δὲ ἐκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλήλων παρασάγγην καὶ μείον. 16. ἦσαν δ' οἱ ταύτῃ ἵπποι μείονες μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν,² θῦμοειδέστεροι δὲ πολὺ.³ 17. οὐ νομίζω ἀνδρὶ κάλλιον εἶναι κτῆμα οὐδὲ λαμπρότερον ἀρετῆς καὶ δικαιοσύνης καὶ γενναιότητος. 18. στρατιῶται πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ. 19. φίλους δὲ καλῶς κεκοσμημένους μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ ἐνόμιζεν. 20. ἦσαν Κλεάρχῳ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι ἵππεῖς πλείους ἢ τετταράκοντα, τούτων δὲ οἱ πλείστοι Θράκες. 21. ταῦτα ἀπαλλάξωμεν, ἵνα ὡς πλείστοι⁴ μὲν ἡμῶν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ᾧσιν, ὡς ἐλάχιστοι δὲ σκευοφορῶσι. 22. οὐποτε γὰρ μείον ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ Βάρβαροι τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἐξήκοντα σταδίων.

II. 1. These are the⁵ bravest of the captains. 2. There are many Persians nobler than Ariaeus. 3. The barbarians were very expert bowmen. 4. For it is much⁶ easier to withdraw. 5. What do you think to be fairest and fittest? 6. We should be more serviceable,⁷ if we should have our arms. 7. There were very many wild asses in the plain. 8. The freedom of the cities is the⁵ greatest proof of this. 9. It is best for us, Chirisophus, to proceed at once to the height. 10. They were not less⁸ than ten thousand stades distant from Greece. 11. But I think you are better and braver than many barbarians. 12. Xenophon thought that thus the honour would be greater. 13. For all the sons of the noblest Persians are educated at the king's court.

¹ See p. 122¹.

² *Sc. ἵππων.*

³ See p. 179¹.

⁴ *quam plurimi.* ὡς or ὅτι may be prefixed to the superlative to strengthen it.

⁵ Omit.

⁶ *Cf. I. 16 above.*

⁷ *worth more* (see p. 91²).

⁸ *Cf. I. 22 above.*

471. R. *κρα, cer, do, make.*

αὐτο-κρά-τωρ, -ορ-ος, δ, ἡ (αὐτός, self), being one's own master; κράτ-ος, -ε-ος, τό (κρα + τ), strength, might; κρατέ-ω, be strong, be master; κρείττων, -ον (for κρετ-ίων), comp., stronger, better; κράτ-ιστο-ς, -η, -ο-ν, sup., strongest, best; ἐγ-κρατής, -ές, possessed of power; ἐπι-κρατής, -ές, master of; ἐπικράτε-ια, -ās, mastery; παγ-κράτ-ιο-ν, τό (πᾶς, all), complete contest, the pancratiūm.

Cer-ēs, -er-is, f., Ceres ('goddess of creation'); cor-p-us, -or-is, n., body; cre-ō, produce, create; crē-sc-ō, come into being; in-crē-mentu-m, -ī, n., growth.

HARD, *auto-crat, aristo-cracy, demo-cracy, demo-crat, etc.*

LESSON LXIII.

Future System of Liquid Verbs. — Liquid and Vowel Verbs of the Fourth Class.

472. Verbs whose themes end in a liquid are called *liquid verbs*.

473. The future of liquid verbs is formed by adding the tense-suffix *-ε°/ε* instead of *-σ°/ε*. (159) to the theme; *ε* is contracted with the following vowel, as in the present of *φιλέω* (245). Thus:—

μένω (theme *μεν-*), *remain*, fut. *μενῶ, μενεῖς, μενεῖ, etc.*; *νέμω* (theme *νεμ-*), *distribute*, fut. *νεμῶ, νεμεῖς, νεμεῖ, etc.*

These two verbs belong to the First Class.

474. Many liquid verbs belong to the Fourth Class (466).

475. *λ* of the theme unites with *ι* of the present tense-suffix *-ι°/ε*, forming with it *λλ*. Thus:—

	THEME.	PRES. STEM.	FUTURE.
<i>ἀγγέλλω, announce,</i>	<i>αγγελ-</i>	<i>αγγελλ°/ε-</i>	<i>ἀγγελῶ</i>
<i>βάλλω, throw,</i>	<i>βαλ-</i>	<i>βαλλ°/ε-</i>	<i>βαλῶ</i>
<i>στέλλω, send,</i>	<i>στελ-</i>	<i>στελλ°/ε-</i>	<i>στελῶ</i>

476. When the theme ends in *ν* or *ρ*, *ι* is transferred and unites with the vowel of the theme to form a diphthong. Thus:—

	THEME.	PRES. STEM.	FUTURE.
κτείνω, <i>kill</i> ,	κτεν-	κτείν ^ο /ε-	κτενῶ
περαίνω, <i>accomplish</i> ,	περαν-	περαίν ^ο /ε-	περανῶ
σημαίνω, <i>show by a sign</i> ,	σημαν-	σημαιν ^ο /ε-	σημανῶ
τείνω, <i>stretch</i> ,	τεν-	τείν ^ο /ε-	τενῶ
φαίνω, <i>show</i> ,	φαν-	φαιν ^ο /ε-	φανῶ
φθείρω, <i>destroy</i> ,	φθερ-	φθειρ ^ο /ε-	φθερῶ
χαλεπαίνω, <i>be angry</i> ,	χαλεπαν-	χαλεπαιν ^ο /ε-	χαλεπανῶ

477. But if the vowel of the theme is *ι* or *υ* it becomes long when *ι* of the suffix *-ι^ο/ε-* is transferred. Thus:—

	THEME.	PRES. STEM.	FUTURE.
κλίνω, <i>cause to lean</i> ,	κλιν-	κλίν ^ο /ε-	κλινῶ
κρίνω, <i>distinguish</i> ,	κριν-	κρίν ^ο /ε-	κρινῶ
αἰσχύνω, <i>shame</i> ,	αἰσχυν-	αἰσχύν ^ο /ε-	αἰσχυνῶ

478. To the Fourth Class belong not only mute (466) and liquid (474) verbs, but also two verbs with themes in *-αν-*.

	THEME.	PRES. STEM.	FUTURE.
καίω, <i>burn</i> ,	καυ-	καί ^ο /ε- (for καυ-ι ^ο /ε-)	καύσω
κλαίω, <i>weep</i> ,	κλαυ-	κλαί ^ο /ε- (for κλαυ-ι ^ο /ε-)	κλαύσομαι or κλαυσούμαι ¹

a. *υ* is dropped between the two vowels. Attic prose uses κᾶω instead of καίω, κλάω instead of κλαίω.

Conjugate the future system of φαίνω in 678².

Conjugate also the future system of any other of the liquid verbs given above.

479. EXERCISES.

I. 1. τὴν ἀξίαν ἐκάστω νεμοῦμεν. 2. ἐνταῦθα μενῶ ἡμέρᾱς ἐπτά. 3. παραγγελεῖ ὑπομένειν. 4. πότερον ταῦτα ἀπαγγελῶ ἢ μενεῖτε; 5. ὃ τι³ δὲ ποιήσῃ, οὐ διασημανεῖ.

¹ Some verbs have, in addition to or instead of a fut. in *-σομαι*, one in *-σέομαι*, contracted *-σοῦμαι*, formed with the tense-suffix *-σε^ο/ε-*. This formation is found only in the fut. mid., and only when it has an active

meaning. It is called the *Doric Future*.

² Follow the direction given on p. 159⁶.

³ What, neut. sing. acc. of *ὅστις*. See p. 122³.

6. ταῦτα δὲ ἀγγελοῦσι πρὸς τὸν στρατηγόν. 7. τούτους ἀναστελοῦσιν οἱ τοξόται καὶ πελτασταί. 8. τί οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κίρῳ; 9. ὁ δὲ Φαλίνος εἶπε,¹ Ταῦτα ἀπαγγελοῦμεν. 10. αἰσχυνούμεθα² καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους ταῦτα ποιεῖν. 11. πάλιν ἠρώτησε, Σπονδᾶς ἢ πόλεμον ἀπαγγελῶ; 12. τοὺς μὲν³ αὐτῶν ἀποκτενεῖ, τοὺς δ' ³ ἐκβαλεῖ. 13. ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ σάλπιγγι⁴ σημανεῖ. 14. περανῶ τὰ δέοντα.⁵ 15. Τισσαφέρνης καύσει τὰς κώμας. 16. κρινεῖς δ' αὐτὸν φιλομαθέστατον εἶναι. 17. τοῖς ἵπποις ἐμβαλεῖτε τοῦτον τὸν χιλόν. 18. οὐ μέντοι ταχύ γε ἀπαγγελῶ, ἀλλὰ διατρίψω. 19. πολλοὺς τῶν ἀρπαζόντων οὕτως ἀποκτενεῖτε. 20. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται χαλεπανοῦσι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς.⁶ 21. τενοῦσιν ἄνω πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. 22. διαφθεροῦσι τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς. 23. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται αὐτὸν τε βαλοῦσι καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια. 24. οὗτος γὰρ καὶ τὴν πατρίδα οὕτω καταισχυνεῖ καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα. 25. Κῦρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέμπει σημανοῦντα⁷ ὃ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν οὔτε αὐτὸς⁸ φαίνεται.⁹

II. 1. I shall answer you. 2. I will report this to the soldiers. 3. They will remain there seven days. 4. All will weep. 5. And he will burn down the palace. 6. He will kill all. 7. I shall lay the country waste. 8. He will put his brother to death. 9. They say the enemy will give way. 10. The gods will show us the way. 11. You will send back the messengers. 12. And on account of this I will not wait for you. 13. He says that he will answer the soldiers. 14. I will give the signal to the Greeks with the trumpet. 15. I will give orders to all to use their slings and bows.¹⁰

¹ Cf. 443, I. 17.

² Used in the mid. as a pass. deponent (255 b), *feel ashamed before*, with direct obj. in acc.

³ Cf. 328, I. 17.

⁴ See p. 47⁵.

⁵ See 371.

⁶ Dat. of indirect obj. See p. 84¹.

⁷ Circumstantial partic. expressing purpose (379).

⁸ Cf. 308, I. 4.

⁹ In the mid. and pass., *show oneself, be shown, i.e. appear*.

¹⁰ and to use their bows (τοξεύω).

480. R. βαλ, throw.

βάλλω (for βαλ-ω), throw, throw at, hit; δια-βάλλω, throw across at with words, slander; βάλ-ος, -ε-ος, τό, thing thrown, missile; βολ-ή, -ης, a throw; ἀνα-βολή, -ης, that which is thrown up, earthwork; δια-βολή, -ης, slander; εἰς-βολή, -ης, invasion, entrance, pass; ἐμ-βολή, -ης, invasion; προ-βολή, -ης, a throwing forward; προσ-βολή, -ης, assault, charge; συμ-βολή, -ης, a hurtling together, encounter; ὑπερ-βολή, -ης, a throwing over, crossing; πετρο-βολ-ία, -ās (πέτρο-ς, δ, stone), stone-throwing; ἀκρο-βολίζο-μαι (ἄκρος, topmost, outermost), throw from a height or distance; ἀκροβόλι-σι-ς, -ε-ως, ἡ, throwing from a distance, skirmish.

em-blem, pro-blem, dia-bolic, de-vil, para-ble, sym-bol.

LESSON LXIV.

First Aorist System of Liquid Verbs.

481. The first aorist of liquid verbs rejects σ of the tense-suffix -σα- (165) and lengthens the theme-vowel in compensation, α to η (but to ā after ι or ρ), ε to ει, ι to ī, υ to ū. Thus:—

περαίνω (περαν-), accomplish, aor. σημαίνω (σημαν-), show by a sign, aor. ἐπέρᾱνα;

φαίνω (φαν-), show, aor. ἔφηναι; χαλεπαίνω (χαλεπαν-), be angry, aor. ἐχαλέπηνα.

ἀγγέλλω (αγγελ-), announce, aor. κτείνω (κτεν-), kill, aor. ἔκτεινα;

ἡγγείλα;

μένω (μεν-), remain, aor. ἔμεινα; νέμω (νεμ-), distribute, aor. ἐνείμα;

στέλλω (στελ-), send, aor. ἔστειλα; τείνω (τεν-), stretch, aor. ἔτεινα;

φθείρω (φθερ-), destroy, aor. ἔφθειρα.

κλίνω (κλιν-), cause to lean, aor. κρίνω (κριν-), distinguish, aor.

ἔκλῖνα;

ἐκρίνα.

αἰσχύνω (αισχυν-), shame, aor. ἤσυχῶνα.

a. βάλλω (475) forms a second aor. (437). This will be explained later.

b. The aor. of κάω (478) is ἔκαυσα; of κλάω, ἔκλαυσα.

Conjugate the first aorist system of φαίνω in 679.

Conjugate also the first aorist system of any other of the liquid verbs given above.

482.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. διὸ ἔμειναν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 2. βασιλεῖ πρώτος ἤγγειλα ταῦτα. 3. ῥαδίως ταῦτα πάντα ἐπεράναμεν. 4. διέφθειραν γὰρ τοὺς στρατιώτας. 5. καὶ τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἐκέλευσε μείναι. 6. σὺ δὲ πρῶτος ἀπόφηναι¹ γνώμην. 7. στρατιώτας ἔστειλε τὸν χόρτον καύσοντας. 8. καὶ θαμινὰ παρήγγειλεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας ὑπομένειν. 9. ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἐστείλατο ἐπὶ πόλεμον. 10. ἐὰν δὲ σὺ μὴν² τῷ κέρατι, συσκευάζεσθε. 11. κατακαύσωμεν τὰς ἀμάξας ἃς ἔχομεν. 12. καὶ εἰ παραγγείλειαν, τὸ στράτευμα πλησιάζει ἄν. 13. ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς. 14. ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται τά τε παρὰ βασιλέως³ τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἀπαγγεῖλαι καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ. 15. Κύρος δ' ἀπεκρίνατο, Ἀκούω Ἀμβροκόμην ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι.⁴ 16. καὶ Κύρος ἀποκτείνει λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ⁵ χειρὶ τὸν ἄρχοντα. 17. Κλέαρχος κρίνας ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος στρατιώτην πληγὰς ἐμβάλλει. 18. τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε ὅ τι⁶ κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε. 19. καὶ ὅτῳ⁷ δοκεῖ τοῦτ', ἔφη, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα· καὶ ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. 20. εὐθὺς οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν αὐτοὺς ἐκέλευεν εὐχεσθαι τοῖς φηῖν θεοῖς τά τε ὀνειράτα καὶ τὸν πόρον καὶ⁸ τὰ λοιπὰ ἀγαθὰ ἐπιτελέσαι.⁹

II. 1. He accomplished this easily. 2. The soldiers remained there five days. 3. He reported the decision to his friends. 4. They did not wait for the hoplites. 5. The Greeks made answer to this. 6. You disgraced your ancestors. 7. The

¹ See 197. If this were the first aor. inf. act., and not the imperative mid., the accent would be on the penult (345 c), i.e. the form would be properispomenon (35).

² Sc. ὁ σαλπικτής.

³ See p. 83⁹.

⁴ See 354.

⁵ of himself, gen. sing. masc. of the reflexive pron. Cf. 373, I. 8.

⁶ whatever. Cf. 479, I. 5.

⁷ to whomever, dat. sing. masc. of ὅστις. Cf. 336, I. 24.

⁸ also.

⁹ Dependent on εὐχεσθαι. See also 441 and 345 c.

barbarians are said to have given way at once. 8. Cyrus and the army remained there twenty days. 9. The generals reported this to Cyrus. 10. Cyrus put a Persian man to death. 11. Hereon the trumpeter gave the signal. 12. Abrocomas at that time burned the boats. 13. You corrupted our generals and captains. 14. Equip yourselves for war immediately.

483. R. φα, fa, shine, show.

φημί, *show by words, say*; φάσκω, *say, allege*; φάσις, -εως, ἡ, *assertion*; πρόφασις, -εως, ἡ, *allegation, pretext*; προφασίζομαι, *set up as a pretext*; ἀπροφάσις-τος, -ου, *not offering excuses*; ἀπροφασίστως, *adv., without offering excuses, without evasion*; φωνή, -ῆς, *sound, voice, language*. — φαίνω (φα + ν), *cause to shine, bring to light, show*; φανερός, -ά, -όν, *in plain sight, clear*; φανερώς, *adv., evidently*; ἀφανής, -ές, *invisible, hidden*; ἀφανίζω, *make hidden, blot out*; διαφανής, -ές, *seen through, transparent*; διαφανώς, *adv., clearly, distinctly*; ἐμφανής, -ές, *in plain sight, visible*; ἐμφανώς, *adv., visibly*; καταφανής, -ές, *in sight*; περιφανής, -ές, *visible from every point*; περιφανώς, *adv., manifestly, notably*; φάος, -εος, τό (φα + φ), *light*; φῶς, φωτός, τό (φω + τ), *light*.

ἰᾱ-ρί, *say*; ἰᾱ-τ-ε-ο-ν, *confess*; ἰν-φί-τι-αι, -ᾱrum, *f., denial*; ἰᾱ-bula, -ae, *f., story*; ἰᾱ-μα, -ae, *f., report*; ἰᾱς, *n., divine law*.

BAN, BANNS; *eu-phemism, pro-phesy, pro-phet, phase, em-phasis, phenomenon, dia-phanous, epi-phany, hiero-phant, phantasm, phosphorus, photo-graphy*.

NOTE. — For φημί, see 348. φάος, is for φαφ-ος.

LESSON LXV.

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

484. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives and end in -ως.

Examine the following: —

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	GEN. PLUR.	ADVERB.
δίκαιος, <i>just</i> ,	δικαιο-	δικαίων	δικαίως
κακός, <i>bad</i> ,	κακο-	κακῶν	κακῶς
εὐδαίμων, <i>fortunate</i> ,	ευδαιμον-	εὐδαιμόνων	εὐδαιμόνως
ἀσφαλής, <i>secure</i> ,	ασφαλεσ-	ἀσφαλῶν	ἀσφαλῶς
ἡδύς, <i>pleasant</i> ,	ἡδυ-	ἡδέων	ἡδέως

a. Observe that adverbs formed from adjectives of the vowel-declension add -ς to the stem, the last vowel of which is lengthened, and have the accent of the gen. plur. neut.

b. Observe that adverbs formed from adjectives of the consonant-declension add -ως to the stem, which takes the same form as before -ων in the gen. plur. neut. The adverb is contracted when the gen. plur. is contracted and has its accent.

Examine the following: —

ἀμεινον ἂν πολεμοῖμεν ἔχοντες τὰ ὄπλα, *we should fight better, if we had our arms.*

κράτιστα μάχονται, *they fight very bravely.*

c. Observe that the acc. neut. of the comparative and superlative of the adj. is used for the comparative and superlative of the adverb, in the sing. for the comparative, in the plur. for the superlative.

485.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. στερρῶς πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν ἀπειχόμεθα. 2. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες βαρέως ταῦτ' ἤκουσαν. 3. εὐδαιμονέστερον τῶν ἁλλῶν¹ διῆγον. 4. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἰσχυρῶς κατέτεινεν. 5. τούτους κακῶς ποιεῖ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσῦλᾷ. 6. ἡ δὲ τύχη ἐστρατήγησε κάλλιον. 7. οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν ἱππέων ταχὺ² ἐπαύοντο. 8. κακῶς γὰρ τὰ ἡμέτερα ἔχει. 9. εἰ ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ μάχεσθαι, ὥς³ κράτιστα μαχώμεθα. 10. ἔλεγον δὲ τῷ βασιλεῖ ὅτι δικαίως⁴ ἄν μοι⁵ χαρίζοιτο. 11. χάριν σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ σοὶ ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως. 12. Μένων δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ἐπεθύμει πλουτεῖν ἰσχυρῶς. 13. τί⁶ ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικούμενος κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν; 14. οὔτε κινδυνεύσαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες τῶν ἁλλων πλέον τιμήσεσθε⁷ στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. 15. οἱ δ' Ἕλληνες ἀσφαλῶς ἐπορεύοντο τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας. 16. καὶ βοᾷ καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύ-

¹ Adverbs in the comp. degree, like adjectives (451), may take the gen.

² The neut. acc. of the positive of an adj., either sing. or plur., may be used as an adv. Cf. 247, I. 16, 284, I. 18, 470, I. 16.

³ Cf. 470, I. 21.

⁴ See p. 104¹⁰.

⁵ Cf. 256, I. 18.

⁶ See p. 50¹. The acc. is cognate (p. 122¹) with ἀδικούμενος.

⁷ Fut. mid. in pass. sense.

ματι πολλῶ ἐγγύς ἐστιν. 17. ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἥδιον καὶ προθυμότερον συνεπορεύοντο. 18. ὥστε καὶ ἡδέως ἐπόνουν καὶ θαρραλέως ἐκτῶντο, καὶ τὰ κτήματα ἤκιστα Κύρον¹ ἔκρυπτον. 19. ἔνθα δὲ τέτταρές εἰσι διώρυχες τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς. 20. μακρότερον γὰρ οἱ Ῥόδιοι τῶν τε Περσῶν ἐσφενδόνων καὶ τῶν πλείστων τοξοτῶν. 21. τοῦτο δὴ δεῖ λέγειν, πῶς ἂν πορευοίμεθα τε ὥς ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ εἰ μάχεσθαι δέοι, ὥς κράτιστα μαχοίμεθα.

II. 1. They were greatly deceived. 2. He sent gifts in a princely manner. 3. Most gladly would I hear² the name. 4. For they were well enough armed.³ 5. We withdrew with great difficulty. 6. If we must proceed, let us proceed with all possible speed. 7. The Persians were paying less attention to the Greeks. 8. How shall we remain here in the greatest safety? 9. And they are justly laying plans against us. 10. And they were exceedingly angry with Clearchus. 11. He always inflicted punishment with severity. 12. Why should we do damage to the king's territory? 13. They did not undergo greater hardships⁴ than the rest of the soldiers.

486. R. 1 δακ, दाο, show, teach.

δι-δαχ-ή, -ῆς, teaching, instruction; **δι-δά-σκ-ω**, fut. διδάξω, teach; **διδάσκ-αλο-ς**, ὁ, teacher. — **δικ-η**, -ης, way pointed out, custom, right, justice; **ἄ-δικο-ς**, -ο-ν, unjust; **ἀδίκως**, adv., unjustly; **ἀδικέ-ω**, be unjust; **ἀδικ-ία**, -ᾱς, injustice; **δίκ-α-ιο-ς**, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, right, lawful; **δικαίως**, adv., with justice; **δικαιο-τή-ς**, -ητ-ος, ἡ, justice; **δικαιο-σύνη**, -ης, justice; **δικάζω**, give judgment; **δικασ-τή-ς**, -οῦ, one who gives judgment, dicast. — **δείκ-νῦ-μι**, fut. δείξω, show, point out; **δείγ-μα**, -ατ-ος, τό, something to show with, sample.

doc-e-ō, teach; **di-sc-ō**, learn; **in-dex**, -ic-is, m. and f., one who points out; **iū-dex**, -ic-is, m. and f., judge, juror; **causi-dic-u-s**, -ī, m., pleader, advocate; **dic-ō**, dedicate; **dic-ō**, say, speak.

TEACH, TOKEN; **didactic**, **syn-dic**, **para-digm**.

NOTE. — **δι-δά-σκ-ω** is for **δι-δαχ-σκ-ω**, theme **διδαχ-**. The theme of **δείκ-νῦ-μι** is **δεικ-**. The forms of these verbs will be explained later.

¹ Verbs signifying to conceal, like those signifying to ask, demand (p. 100²), may take two object accs.

² See p. 104¹⁴.

³ Use the perf. pass. partic.

⁴ toil more.

LESSON LXVI.

Review of Groups. — Reading Lesson.

Review the groups of related words in 435, 444, 455, 463, 468, 471, 480, 483, 486.

Review 140, 142.

Read and translate again 394.

Read and translate the following passage: —

487. Κῦρος.

VI. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Κιλικιᾶς καὶ τῆς Συρίᾳς ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων· ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρᾳς πέντε· καὶ Κῦρος μεταπεμφόμενος τοὺς στρατηγούς τῶν Ἑλλήνων λέγει ὅτι
 5 ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσται πρὸς βασιλεῆν μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ ἀναπεῖθαι ἐπεσθαι. οἱ δὲ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς πάσαι ταῦτα κρύπτειν, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν
 10 πορεύεσθαι ἔαν μὴ Κῦρος αὐτοῖς χρήματα ὑπισχνῇται. ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ ἀπήγγελλον. ὁ δ' ὑπισχνεῖται ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστῳ πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς. τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπέισθη. Μένων δέ, πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται, πότερον ἔψονται
 15 Κύρῳ ἢ οὐ, συνέλεξε τὸ αὐτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε. Ἄνδρες, ἔάν μοι πεισθῇτε, οὔτε κινδυνεύσαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον τίμησεσθε στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι; νῦν δεῖται Κῦρος ἐπεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπὶ βασιλεῆν·
 20 ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι πορεύεσθαι πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρῳ. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα πείθονται καὶ διαβαίνουσι τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κῦρος δὲ αὐτοῖς πέμ-

ψᾶς Γλοῦν εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ.
 25 ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμέ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει, ἥ μηκέτι
 με Κῦρον νομίζετε. οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγά-
 λαις ὄντες ἠῦχοντο αὐτὸν εὐτυχῆσαι, Μένωνι δὲ καὶ δῶρα
 ἐλέγετο πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας διέ-
 βαινε· συνείπετο δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα αὐτῷ ἅπαν.

NOTES.

9. αὐτοὺς παλαι ταῦτα κρύπτειν: the soldiers said, *πάλαι ταῦτα κρύπτετε, you have long been concealing this.* See 354. — οὐκ ἔφασαν . . . ὑπισχνῆ-
 ται: the soldiers said, *οὐ πορευσόμεθα, ἐὰν μὴ Κῦρος ἡμῖν χρήματα ὑπισχνῆται, unless Cyrus promises us, etc.* — 13. ἐπεισθη: first aor. pass. of πείθω, *per-*
suade. So below *ἐάν μοι πεισθῇτε, if you will obey me,* first aor. pass. in
 the sense of the mid., *persuade oneself, obey.* — πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι, *before it*
was manifest. After an affirmative sentence, *πρὶν, before, before that,* takes
 the infin. — 15. οὗ: the proclitic οὐ (37) takes the acute accent at the end
 of a sent. — 20. χρῆναι: pres. inf. of the impers. verb *χρή, it is needful,*
one must. ὑμᾶς is the subj. of *πορεύεσθαι.* — 25. ἐμοὶ μελήσει, *I shall see to*
it, third pers. sing. fut. indic. of the impers. verb μέλει, it is a care. —
 29. συνείπετο: see p. 83*.

Translate the following passage into Greek: —

488. Proceeding through Syria the Greeks arrive at the sources of the river Dardas. Here was the palace of the ruler of Syria, and a very large and beautiful park, with trees of every description. Cyrus cut the park down and burned the palace. He marched thence three stages, fifteen parasangs, to the river Euphrates. Here was situated a large and prosperous city named Thapsacus. There they remained five days; for the soldiers suspected that they were proceeding against the king. And when their generals brought back word from Cyrus that their expedition would be to Babylon, they were angry, and said they had been deceived, and refused to proceed unless Cyrus promised them money in addition to their pay. He made this promise gladly, and all crossed the river. Thence he marched nine stages, fifty parasangs, through Syria; and they arrived at the river Araxes. They remained here three days, and collected supplies.

LESSON LXVII.

Second Aorist System. — Verbs of the Second Class.

Review 437, 438.

489. Few verbs have both the first and second form of the same tense. When this happens, the two forms often differ in meaning.

490. The stem of the *second aorist* system is formed by adding the variable vowel α/ϵ (153) to the theme. As a secondary tense the second aorist has augment in the indicative. It has the inflexion of the present system (672), being inflected in the indicative like the imperfect and in the other moods like the present.

Conjugate the second aorist system of *λείπω* in 680.

a. Note the exceptions to the principle of recessive accent (32), *λιποῦ*, *λιπεῖν*, *λιπέσθαι*, *λιπών*.

Conjugate also the second aorist system of any other of the verbs given below.

491. The following verbs of the first and the fourth classes form second aorists : —

	THEME.	FUTURE.	2D AOR. STEM.	2D AOR.
<i>ἄγω</i> , <i>lead</i> ,	αγ-	ἔξω	αγαγ ^ο /ε-	ἤγαγον
<i>γίγνομαι</i> , <i>become</i> ,	γεν-	γενήσομαι	γεν ^ο /ε-	ἐγενόμην
<i>ἔχω</i> , <i>have</i> , <i>hold</i> ,	σεχ-	ἔξω and σχήσω	σχ ^ο /ε-	ἔσχον
<i>πίπτω</i> , <i>fall</i> ,	πετ-	πεσοῦμαι	πεσ ^ο /ε-	ἔπεσον
<i>βάλλω</i> , <i>throw</i> ,	βαλ-	βαλῶ	βαλ ^ο /ε-	ἔβαλον
<i>κράζω</i> , <i>cry out</i> ,	κραγ-		κραγ ^ο /ε-	ἔκραγον

a. The theme is *reduplicated* in *ἤγαγον* (αγ-αγ-).

b. The pres. has reduplication (the first letter of the theme being repeated with ι) and the theme-vowel is dropped in *γίγνομαι* (for γι-γεν-ο-μαι). In the fut. the theme assumes ε (γενε-).

c. The theme-vowel is dropped in *ἔσχον* (for ε-σεχ-ον). *ἔξω* is for σεξω, and in *σχήσω* the theme σεχ- becomes σχε-.

d. *πίπτω* (for *πι-πετ-ω*) is formed like *γίγνομαι*. *ἔπεσον* is for an original *ἔπετον* (found also in Doric). For *πεσοῦμαι* (for *πετ-σεομαι*), see p. 174¹.

492. Some verbs with short themes ending in a mute or *ν* form the present stem by adding the variable vowel *-ο/ε* to the theme and lengthening its short vowel (*α* to *η*, *ι* to *ει*, *υ* to *ευ*).

Thus:—

	THEME.	PRES. STEM.	FUT.	AOR.
<i>τήκω</i> , melt;	<i>τακ-</i>	<i>τηκ^ο/ε-</i>	<i>τήξω</i>	<i>ἔτηξα</i>
<i>λείπω</i> , leave,	<i>λιπ-</i>	<i>λειπ^ο/ε-</i>	<i>λείψω</i>	<i>ἔλιπον</i>
<i>πείθω</i> , persuade,	<i>πιθ-</i>	<i>πειθ^ο/ε-</i>	<i>πείσω</i>	<i>ἔπεισα</i>
<i>φεύγω</i> , flee,	<i>φυγ-</i>	<i>φευγ^ο/ε-</i>	<i>φεύξομαι</i> OR <i>φευξοῦμαι</i> (p. 174 ¹)	<i>ἔφυγον</i>
<i>θέω</i> , run,	<i>θυ-</i>	<i>θε^ο/ε-</i> (for <i>θευ^ο/ε-</i>)	<i>θεύσομαι</i>	
<i>πλέω</i> , sail,	<i>πλυ-</i>	<i>πλε^ο/ε-</i> (for <i>πλευ^ο/ε-</i>)	<i>πλεύσομαι</i> OR <i>πλευσοῦμαι</i>	<i>ἔπλευσα</i>
<i>ρέω</i> , flow,	<i>ρυ-</i>	<i>ρε^ο/ε-</i> (for <i>ρευ^ο/ε-</i>)	<i>ρεύσομαι</i>	

a. *υ* is dropped between two vowels.

b. The lengthened form of the theme is kept in the fut. and first aor.

493. These verbs belong to the *Strong-Vowel* or *Second Class*.

494.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *ποῖ φυγόντες σωθησόμεθα*; 2. *δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς*. 3. *τὴν χιόνα τήκει ὁ ἥλιος*. 4. *καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὀπλίται μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι*. 5. *ἐξ ἀπροσδοκήτου¹ γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐνέπεσε τὸ Ἑλληνικόν*. 6. *καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν*; 7. *ἔφυγον γοῦν πρὸς ἐκείνους καταλιπόντες ἡμᾶς*. 8. *καὶ τὰ πλείστου² ἄξια³ ἔχοντες ἀπέπλευσαν*. 9. *ταῦτα λέξῃς ἔπεισε τοὺς ἄνδρας*. 10. *ἔνθα αἱ διώρυχές εἰσιν, ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ ρέουσαι*. 11. *καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νικᾷ τοὺς βαρβάρους*. 12. *ἔφασαν καὶ ἐμβαλεῖν⁴ ποτε εἰς*

¹ *Sc.* *τρόπον*.

² *Cf.* 274, I. 15.

³ *Cf.* 380, I. 2.

⁴ Aor. See 354.

αὐτοὺς βασιλικὴν στρατιάν. 13. ἀλλὰ πολλὰς προφάσεις Κῦρος εἶχεν, ἵνα ὑμᾶς ἐνθάδε ἀναγάγοι. 14. ἐκλιπόντες τὰς οἰκίᾱς ἔφυγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. 15. ὁ γὰρ Τισσαφέρνης ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ οὐκ ἔφυγεν. 16. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὁ σῖτος ἐπέλιπεν. 17. οἱ πελτασταὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων δρόμῳ¹ ἔθεον πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους. 18. τὰς δὲ τάξεις εἰς τὰ πλάγια παραγαγὼν ἐμβαλεῖν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν. 19. τοὺς Μῦσοὺς σὺν τῇ παρούσῃ δυνάμει ταπεινοὺς ὑμῖν παράσχοιμι ἄν. 20. οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὀπλιτᾶς, ἀλλ' ἀνακραγόντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 21. Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ὁ ὑπασπιστὴς ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀπέλιπεν. 22. ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν² εἰς τὴν πατρῴαν οἰκίαν. 23. καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγούς ἐκέλευσεν ὀπλιτᾶς ἀγαγεῖν· οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν ἀγαγόντες ὡς³ τρισχιλίους ὀπλιτᾶς. 24. καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἁρμαμάξης, καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς⁴ καταλιπόντες τὰ ὄνια ἔφυγον.

II. 1. For Cyrus became my⁵ friend.⁶ 2. And provisions failed. 3. He fled with all his host. 4. He led a multitude of men against you. 5. When they heard⁷ this, they were persuaded. 6. Within the night⁸ fear fell also on the Greeks. 7. Thereupon truly a great tumult arose. 8. But all left⁷ the road and fled. 9. This he did that he might inspire all men with fear.⁹ 10. He led the Greeks into the country of the barbarians and fled. 11. The inhabitants¹⁰ abandoned this city. 12. But I fear that he will lead us into the country of the barbarians. 13. But Menon had the left wing of the Greek (force). 14. They raised a shout and struck their shields against their spears.

¹ Cf. 228, I. 14.

² His thought was, σκηπτὸς πέσεν (354). δοκέω is here used personally, a thunder-bolt seemed to him, etc.

³ Cf. 361, I. 9.

⁴ See p. 83⁹.

⁵ to me.

⁶ ξένος.

⁷ Aor. partic.

⁸ Cf. 308, I. 15.

⁹ inspire (παρέχω) fear in all men (simple dat.).

¹⁰ See 371.

495. R. **πιθ**, **fid**, *bind*.

πιθ-ω (theme **πιθ-**), *bind to oneself, persuade, mid., let oneself be bound, obey*; verbal **πεισ-τέω-ν**, *one must obey*; **ἀ-πειθ-ής, -ές**, *disobedient*; **ἀπειθέ-ω**, *disobey*; **πειθ-αρχο-ς, -ο-ν** (R. **αρχ**, 483), *obedient*; **πειθαρχέ-ω**, *obey authority, defer to*; **πισ-τό-ς, -ή, -ό-ν**, *that does obey, trusty, faithful*; **πιστό-τη-ς, -ητ-ος, ή**, *faithfulness*; **ἀ-πιστο-ς, -ο-ν**, *not to be trusted, faithless*; **ἀπιστέ-ω**, *distrust, suspect*; **ἀπιστ-ία, -ās**, *suspicion*; **πισ-τι-ς, -ε-ως, ή**, *trust, confidence*; **πιστεύ-ω**, *have confidence in, believe*.

fid-ē-s, *f., trust, faith*; **fid-u-s**, *adj., trusty*; **fid-ō**, *trust*; **foed-u-s, -er-is**, *n., league*.

BIND, BOND, BAND, BUNDLE, BODY, BED.

LESSON LXVIII.

Numerals.

496. The cardinals, ordinals, and numeral adverbs which occur are the following:—

	CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	ADVERB.
1	εἷς, μία, ἓν, <i>one</i>	πρῶτος, <i>first</i>	ἅπαξ, <i>once</i>
2	δύο, <i>two</i>	δεύτερος, <i>second</i>	δῖς, <i>twice</i>
3	τρεις, τρία	τρίτος	τρίς
4	τέτταρες, τέτταρα	τέταρτος	τετράκις
5	πέντε	πέμπτος	πεντάκις
6	ἕξ	ἕκτος	ἑξάκις
7	ἐπτά	ἑβδομος	ἐπτάκις
8	ὀκτώ	ὀγδοος	ὀκτάκις
9	ἐννέα	ἐνατος	ἐνάκις
10	δέκα	δέκατος	δεκάκις
11	ἐνδεκα	ἐνδέκατος	ἐνδεκάκις
12	δωδεκα	δωδέκατος	δωδεκάκις
13	τρισκαίδεκα	τρίτος καὶ δέκατος	
14	τετταρισκαίδεκα	τέταρτος καὶ δέκατος	
15	πεντεκαίδεκα	πέμπτος καὶ δέκατος	
16	ἑκκαίδεκα	ἕκτος καὶ δέκατος	
17	ἐπτακαίδεκα	ἑβδομος καὶ δέκατος	
18	ὀκτωκαίδεκα	ὀγδοος καὶ δέκατος	
19	ἐννεακαίδεκα	ἐνατος καὶ δέκατος	

20	εἴκοσι(ν)	εἰκοστός	εἰκοσάκις
30	τριάκοντα	τριάκοστός	τριάκοντάκις
40	τετταράκοντα	τετταρακοστός	τετταρακοντάκις
50	πεντήκοντα	πεντηκοστός	πεντηκοντάκις
60	ἑξήκοντα	ἑξηκοστός	ἑξηκοντάκις
70	ἑβδομήκοντα	ἑβδομηκοστός	ἑβδομηκοντάκις
80	ὀγδοήκοντα	ὀγδοηκοστός	ὀγδοηκοντάκις
90	ἐνενήκοντα	ἐννηκοστός	ἐννηκοντάκις
100	ἑκατόν	ἑκατοστός	ἑκατοντάκις
200	διᾱκόσιοι, -αι, -α	διᾱκοσιοστός	διᾱκοσιάκις
300	τριάκόσιοι, -αι, -α	τριάκοσιοστός	
400	τετρακόσιοι, -αι, -α	τετρακοσιοστός	
500	πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α	πεντακοσιοστός	
600	ἑξακόσιοι, -αι, -α	ἑξακοσιοστός	
700	ἑπτακόσιοι, -αι, -α	ἑπτακοσιοστός	
800	ὀκτακόσιοι, -αι, -α	ὀκτακοσιοστός	
900	ἐνακόσιοι, -αι, -α	ἐνακοσιοστός	
1,000	χίλιοι, -αι, -α	χιλιοστός	χιλιάκις
2,000	δισχίλιοι, -αι, -α	δισχilioστός	
3,000	τρισχίλιοι, -αι, -α	τρισχιλιοστός	
10,000	μύριοι, -αι, -α	μυριοστός	μυριάκις

a. In compound numbers such as 21, 22, *etc.*, the numbers can be connected by *καί* in either way, but if *καί* is omitted, the larger number comes first, as in English. Thus, *εἰς καὶ εἴκοσι* or *εἴκοσι καὶ εἰς*, but without *καί* always *εἴκοσιν εἰς*, *etc.*

497. The first four cardinal numbers are thus declined : —

PARADIGMS.

	SINGULAR.	DUAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
N.	εἷς μία ἓν	N. A. δύο	τρεῖς τρία	τέτταρες τέτταρα
G.	ένός μιᾶς ένός	G. D. δυοῖν	τριῶν	τεττάρων
D.	ένί μίᾳ ένί		τρισί	τέτταρσι
A.	ένα μιαν έν		τρεῖς τρία	τέτταρας τέτταρα

- a. With a plural substantive δύο is often used indeclinably.
- b. The cardinal numbers from 5 to 100 inclusive are indeclinable. The higher cardinal numbers in -ιοι and all ordinals are declined like adjectives of the vowel-declension.
- c. The compounds οὐδείς (οὐδέ and εἰς), μηδείς (μηδέ and εἰς), none, no, nobody, nothing, are declined like εἰς, as οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν; οὐδενός, οὐδεμῆς, οὐδενός, etc. They are found also in the plural, οὐδένες, οὐδεμῆαι, οὐδένα, etc.

498.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος¹ γίνονται παῖδες δύο. 2. ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι ἑκατὸν ὀπλίται. 3. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι φιλικὸν οὐδὲν ἐποίουν. 4. ἦν γὰρ ἄπαξ δύο ἡ τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν² ἀπόσχωμεν, οὐκέτι οἱ πολέμιοι ἡμῖν ἐπακολουθήσουσιν. 5. ἡ τοῦ παντὸς ἀρχὴ Χειρισόφω³ ἐνταῦθα κατελύθη ἡμέρᾳ⁴ ἕκτη ἡ ἐβδόμη. 6. ὑπάρχει γὰρ νῦν ἡμῖν οὐδὲν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. 7. τοῦ δὲ Μαρσίου τὸ εὖρὸς ἐστὶν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν.⁵ 8. καὶ τὸν πρῶτον μέντοι βοηθήσαντα πολλοῖς⁶ μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν. 9. καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ὠφέιλετο μισθὸς πλεόν⁷ ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν. 10. Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεῖς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον⁸ ἐπιβουλεύεις μοι; 11. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρισκαίδεκα παρασάγγας ἐνενήκοντα, τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων. 12. ἐγένοντο μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ⁹ τοὺς ὀγδοήκοντα, ὁ δὲ λόχος ἕκαστος σχεδὸν εἰς¹⁰ τοὺς ἑκατόν. 13. ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρᾳ ἦν ὀγδόη, τοὺς οἰκέτας καταλείπει τῷ κωμάρχη πλὴν τοῦ υἱοῦ. 14. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι

¹ Gen. of the source after γίνονται, are born.

² Cf. 219, I. 6.

³ Cf. 129, I. 5.

⁴ See p. 45⁴.

⁵ Predicate gen. of measure. Cf. 319, I. 18.

⁶ in the eyes of many. The dat. may denote the person in whose view something is true.

⁷ Used indeclinably for πλεόνων.

⁸ the third time, acc. neut. of the adj. with the article, used adverbially.

⁹ about, governing the following acc. The whole phrase qualifies λόχοι. In such phrases the numeral often takes the article in Greek.

¹⁰ to the number of.

μῦριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα διακόσια· ἄλλοι¹ δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἵππεις, ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης ἦρχεν. 15. καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν· τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα. 16. καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρᾷκας ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότας Κρήτας διακοσίους. 17. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας δέκα καὶ ἐξέτασις ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ἐγίγνετο καὶ ἀριθμός, καὶ ἐγένοντο ὀκτακισχίλιοι καὶ ἑξακόσιοι.

II. 1. The army asked Cyrus for four months' pay. 2. But on the fourth day they fled to the stronghold. 3. He had more than forty cavalry men in his force. 4. But Chiriso-phus also, a Lacedaemonian, was then on board the ships with seven hundred heavy-armed men. 5. He marched thence three stages, fifteen parasangs, to the river Euphrates, which is² four stades in width. 6. He marched thence two stages, ten parasangs, to an inhabited city. There he remained three days. 7. He marched thence through Phrygia one stage, eight parasangs, to Colossae, a prosperous and large city. 8. But of these nine hundred thousand³ were present in the battle, and one hundred and fifty scythe-bearing chariots.

499. δύο, two.

δύο (for δύο), two; σύν-δυο, two by two; δώ-δεκα (δέκα, ten), twelve; δεύ-τερο-s, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, second; δι-ά, prep., orig. between, asunder, then through; δι-χα, adv., in two parts; διχάζω, divide in two; δι-s, adv., twice, in composition also δι-; δις-χίλιοι, -αι, -α (χίλιοι, thousand), two thousand; δι-μοιρίᾱ, -ᾱs (μοῖρα, -ᾱs, lot, portion), double share; δι-πηχυ-s, -υ (πῆχυ-s, -εωs, ὁ, cubit), of two cubits; δι-πλεθρο-s, -ο-ν (πλέθρον, τό, plethrum), of two plethra; δι-πλόο-s, -η, -ο-ν (R. πλα in πίμπλημι, fill), filled twice, two-fold, double; δι-πλάσιο-s, -ᾱ, -ο-ν (R. πλα in πίμπλημι, fill), two-fold; δι-φο-s, ὁ (φέρω, bear), that which holds two, chariot-board; ἐνδίφρο-ιο-s, -ο-ν, on the same seat with one; διᾱ-κόσιοι, -αι, -α (ἐκατόν, hundred), two hundred.

¹ besides.

² being.

³ ninety myriads.

LESSON LXIX.

First Perfect System.

Review the first perfect system of λύω in 675.

500. The first perfect and first pluperfect are found in *vowel* verbs, in many *lingual mute* verbs, in many *liquid* verbs.

501. For modifications of the theme in vowel verbs, see 254 a and b, 441, 442.

502. A lingual mute is dropped before -κα. Thus : —

ἀρπάζω (ἀρπαδ-), *plunder*, ἡρπακα; νομίζω (νομιδ-), *think*, νενόμικα; πορίζω (ποριδ-), *furnish*, πεπόρικα.

503. Verbs of the second class (492, 493) have the strong form of the theme. Thus : —

πείθω (πιθ-), *persuade*, πέπεικα; πλέω (πλυ-), *sail*, πέπλευκα.

504. Some liquid themes suffer no change before the tense suffix. Thus : —

ἀγγέλλω (αγγελ-), *announce*, ἡγγέλκα.

505. Monosyllabic liquid themes change ε to α. Thus : —

στέλλω (στελ-), *send*, ἔσταλκα; φθείρω (φθερ-), *destroy*, ἔφθαρκα.

506. ν is dropped in a few liquid themes; if not dropped it is changed to γ nasal. Thus : —

κρίνω (κριν-), *distinguish*, κέκρικα; τείνω (τεν-), *stretch*, τέτακα (505); φαίνω (φαν-), *show*, πέφαγκα.

507. Some liquid themes suffer transposition and become vowel themes. Thus : —

βάλλω (βαλ-), *throw*, βέβληκα.

508.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. παρ' ἡμῶν δὲ ἀπήγγελλε τάδε. 2. τὸ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπεπείκειν. 3. οὗτοι δὲ τὰ πλοῖα ἔχοντες ἀπεπεπλεύκεσαν. 4. ὁ ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα¹ μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα

¹ Neut. pl. acc. of τοιοῦτος.

δὲ λέγει. 5. ἄρ' ¹ αὐτὸν κεκέλευκας σῖγην κατακρητύττειν ; 6. ὁκτὼ γὰρ ἡμέρας μαχόμενοι διετετελέκειτε. 7. τοὺς γὰρ ἵππους δεδέκαμεν. 8. ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπήνεκα. 9. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι τὸ στρατόπεδον διηρπάκεσαν. 10. τὰ σκευοφόρα σεσώκαμεν. 11. τὸν παράδεισον Κῦρος κατακέκαυκεν. 12. οἱ θεοὶ ἡμῖν πεφάγκᾱσι τὴν ὁδόν. 13. ὁ δὲ πάλιν ἠρώτηκε, Σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον ἀπαγγελῶ ; 14. ἀπηγγέλκαμεν τοίνυν αὐτῷ ὅτι μάχης ² δεῖ πρῶτον. 15. καὶ ἐκεκρίκει ὀρθῶς τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὖνους. 16. ἔφη δ' αὐτὸ ³ τὸ ἔργον αὐτοῖς μεμαρτυρηκέναι. ⁴ 17. μάχεσθαι φησι τὴν βασιλείαν πεπεικέναι τὸν ἄνδρα. 18. ἤκοντες αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπηγγέλκᾱσι περὶ τῆς βασιλέως στρατιᾶς. 19. Τισσαφέρνῃς διεβεβλήκει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν. 20. πέπεικε τοὺς ἄρχοντας καὶ ἐκπέπλευκεν ὡς ⁵ πολεμήσων τοῖς Θραξίν. 21. εἰ τὰς σπονδὰς λελύκᾱσιν οἱ βάρβαροι, ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν μαχοῦνται ⁶ οἱ θεοί. 22. ἀπέσταλκα τοὺς ἀγγέλους καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς ὀπλίτας διακοσίους. 23. ἐπεὶ δὲ τετελεύτηκεν ὁ Κῦρος, ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαίφ ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμέν τε βασιλεῖα καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἡμῖν μάχεται.

II. 1. His ⁷ wife has persuaded him. 2. But Clearchus has strongly insisted. 3. He has provided the army with supplies. ⁸ 4. They had corrupted the heavy-armed troops. 5. The Greeks have laid waste the country of the barbarians. 6. We had thought the bowmen ⁹ were ¹⁰ ready. 7. He has not withdrawn the right wing from the river. 8. We had repulsed the bowmen and peltasts. 9. I have judged these men ⁹ to be in the wrong. ¹⁰ 10. He was alleging that he had been a slave at

¹ *ἄρα*, equivalent to the Lat. interrogative enclitic particle *-ne*.

² Cf. 308, I. 2. *δεῖ* is impersonal, *there is need*.

³ *itself*, Lat. *ipsum*, to be taken with the following subst. Cf. 247, I. 16.

⁴ See 354.

⁵ With *πολεμήσων*, as if intend-

ing to war, with the avowed intention of warring.

⁶ Future of *μάχομαι*, formed like that of *τελέω*. See p. 159, 3.

⁷ Use the article (p. 23⁸).

⁸ Rephrase the sent., *furnished supplies to the army*, using both a direct and indirect object.

⁹ See 350.

¹⁰ See 354.

Athens. 11. I had passed the order along to all to arm themselves. 12. But the rest of the soldiers have thrown stones¹ at the man. 13. We had made an invasion into the country of the Carduchi through the mountains.

509. R. *νομ, nem, allot.*

νόμ-ω, distribute, portion out, pasture; *νόμ-ο-ς*, δ, that which has been allotted, custom, law; *νόμ-ιμο-ς, -η, -ο-ν*, customary, lawful; *ἀγορᾶ-νόμο-ς*, δ (*ἀγείρω*, collect, *ἀγορά*, meeting-place), one who makes rules for the market, market-master; *ἄ-νομο-ς, -ο-ν*, without law, lawless; *ἀνομ-ία, -ās*, lawlessness; *αὐτό-νομο-ς, -ο-ν* (*αὐτός*, self), under one's own laws, independent; *οἰκο-νόμο-ς*, δ (*οἶκος*, house, home), one who controls a household, housekeeper; *νομίζω*, regard as a custom, believe, think; *νομ-ή, -ῆς*, distribution, esp. of food, pasturage, hence, herd; *προ-νομή, -ῆς*, a going forth for food, foraging.

nem-us, -or-is, n., woodland; **num-e-ru-s, -ī**, m., number.

NIMBLE, NUMB; nemesis, anti-nomian, astro-nomy, auto-nomy, economy, nomad, numismatic.

LESSON LXX.

Personal and Intensive Pronouns.

510. The personal pronouns are *ἐγώ*, I, *σύ*, thou, and *οὐ* (genitive), of him, of her, of it. The pronoun *αὐτός*, self (Lat. *ipse*), is properly intensive.

511.

PARADIGMS.

S. N.	ἐγώ	σύ		αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
G.	ἐμοῦ, μου	σου	οὐ	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
D.	ἐμοί, μοί	σοί	οἱ	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
A.	ἐμέ, μέ	σέ	ἔ	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
D. N. A.	νός	σφώ		αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
G. D.	νῶν	σφῶν		αὐτοῖν	αὐταῖν	αὐτοῖν
P. N.	ἡμεῖς	ὑμεῖς	σφεῖς	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
G.	ἡμῶν	ὑμῶν	σφῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
D.	ἡμῖν	ὑμῖν	σφίσι	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
A.	ἡμᾶς	ὑμᾶς	σφᾶς	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

¹ Rephrase the sent., have thrown at the man with stones, and see p. 47^b.

512. The following forms of the personal pronouns are enclitic (38): — μου, μοί, μέ; σου, σοί, σέ; οὔ, οἷ, ἔ.

Review 186, 187.

Examine the following: —

οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοί, *this man made war on me.*

ἐμοὶ οὐ σοὶ τοῦτο ἀρέσκει, *this pleases me, not you.*

ἐπὶ σοὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ ἄνδρες, *the men came into your power.*

513. If the pronoun is emphatic (187 b), and in general after prepositions, the enclitic forms of the pronoun retain their accent, and in the first person the longer forms ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί, ἐμέ, are then used.

Examine the following: —

τὰ δὲ σκευὴ ἀπαλλάξωμεν, *let us abandon the baggage.*

σύ τε γὰρ Ἕλλην εἶ καὶ ἡμεῖς, *for you are a Greek and so are we Greeks.*

514. Rule of Syntax. — The nominative forms of the personal pronouns are omitted unless *emphatic*. If *emphatic*, they are expressed.

Examine the following: —

φοβοῦνται μὴ οἱ βάρβαροι σφίσιν ἐπακολουθῶσι, *they fear that the barbarians will follow them.*

αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησεν, *he made him satrap.*

515. Rule of Syntax. — The forms οἷ, οἷ, ἔ, etc., of the pronoun of the third person are generally indirect reflexives in Attic prose, *i.e.* they are used in a dependent clause to refer to the subject of the principle verb. To supply the place of a pronoun of the third person the *oblique* cases of αὐτός are used.

Examine the following: —

ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ χωρίῳ μένει, *he remains in the same place.*

ὥς αὐτὸς σὺν ὁμολογείς, διήρπαξες τὴν χώραν, *you plundered the country, as you yourself confess.*

αἱ πέτραι καθήκουσιν ἐπ' αὐτὸν τὸν ποταμόν, *the crags reach down to the very river.*

516. Rule of Syntax. — αὐτός preceded by the article means *the same*. It may be, in all of its cases, an intensive pronoun, *self, very* (Lat. *ipse*). When intensive, if the substantive to which it belongs has the article, αὐτός must take the predicate position (56 Rem.).

517.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς τοὺς δαρείκους ἐδαπάνων. 2. ὁ αὐτὸς στόλος ἐστὶν ὑμῖν τε καὶ ἡμῖν. 3. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι φίλους. 4. ὑμεῖς τὴν ἡμετέρᾳν χώρᾳ κακῶς ἐποιεῖτε. 5. ἡμᾶς δ' ἀποπέμπουσιν. 6. θαυμαστή ἐστὶν ἡ ἀρετὴ σου.¹ 7. Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ἦν αὐτῷ. 8. καὶ μετὰ τὴν μάχην ταῦτα² ἡγγελον. 9. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος ἐγένετο. 10. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρᾳ εἶναι³ ἡμῖν καθεύδειν. 11. ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς⁴ οὐκ ἔγωγε⁵ αὐτοὺς διώξω. 12. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν αὐτὸν κελεύει οἱ συμπέμψαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος ἄνδρας. 13. τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων ὀπλίτας ἀναβαίνει τριακοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν Παρράσιον. 14. καὶ αὕτη αὐτῷ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν⁶ στράτευμα. 15. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ αὐτὸν ἐρωτῶσι τί σφίσιν ἔσται ἔαν κρατήσωσιν. 16. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους. 17. ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς δεῖν⁷ πορεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν. 18. ὥστε ἔγωγε οὐδένα κρίνω ὑπὸ πλειόνων πεφιλῆσθαι.⁷ 19. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι⁸ Μαρσύαν, νικήσας⁹ ἐρίζοντά¹⁰ οἱ

¹ A dependent gen. of the personal pron. always has the predicate position (56 Rem.).

² By *crasis* (p. 55⁴) for τὰ αὐτά.

³ *It seems to me not to be*. δοκέω in the sense of *seem* takes the inf. in indir. discourse (354).

⁴ The acc. follows the intensive particle *μὰ*, *by*, in oaths. The oath introduced by *μὰ* is negative.

⁵ Lat. *equidem*.

⁶ Inf. with the art. used as a subst. in the gen., dependent on πρόφασις.

⁷ See 354.

⁸ ἐκδέρω, *flay*, aor. inf. See 481.

⁹ Sc. αὐτόν, *him* (i.e. Marsyas), with which ἐρίζοντα agrees.

¹⁰ For the accent, see 186 b.

περὶ σοφίᾳς. 20. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ¹ οὐκ ἐθέλετε πείθεσθαι οὐδὲ ἔπασθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἔψομαι.

II. 1. I myself summoned you. 2. He has been wronged by us.² 3. But their³ general spoke to them as follows. 4. They conduct him to the same general. 5. This man, fellow-soldiers, is a friend of mine.⁴ 6. He feared that his brother would plot against him.⁵ 7. But Menon and those with⁶ him had the left (wing). 8. You are plotting against me and the army with me. 9. He was himself designing to slander me to you. 10. But if I conquer, my friends will be in honour. 11. But since they were in difficulties, they consulted with you. 12. He accuses the commanders, that he may himself escape. 13. On the same day the generals themselves proceeded with the cavalry through the plain to the river Euphrates.

518. αὐτός, *self, same*.

αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό, *self, same*, in derivatives and compounds, *self, same, very*; αὐτοῦ, adv., *in the very place, here, there*; αὐτόθεν, adv., *from the very spot, hence, thence*; αὐτόθι, adv., *in this or that very place*; αὐτόσε, adv., *to the place itself, thither*; αὐτως, adv., *in the very manner*; ὡς-αὐτως (ὥς, *thus*), *in this same way, likewise, just so*; αὐθήμερον (ἡμέρᾱ, *day*), adv., *on the same day*; αὐθ-αἶρετο-ς, -ο-ν (αἰρέω, *take*), *self-appointed*; αὐτοκείμενο-ς, -ο-ν (κελεύω, *direct*), *self-directed, of one's own accord*; αὐτοκράτωρ, -ορ-ος, ὁ, ἡ (R. **κρα**, 471), *being one's own master, absolute*; αὐτόματο-ς, -η, -ο-ν (Epic pf. μέ-μα-α, *think upon, desire*), *self-impelled, spontaneous*; αὐτόμολο-ς, ὁ (βλώσκω, *go*, R. **μολ**), *deserter*; αὐτομολέ-ω, *desert*; αὐτόνομο-ς, -ο-ν (R. **νομ**, 509), *under one's own laws, independent*; ἐ-αυτοῦ, contr. αὐτοῦ, etc. (οὗ, *of him*), *reflexive pron., of himself, etc.*; ἐμ-αυτοῦ, etc., *reflexive pron., of myself, etc.*; σε-αυτοῦ, contr. σαυτοῦ, etc., *reflexive pron., of yourself, etc.*

auth-entic, auto-biography, auto-crat, auto-graph, auto-maton, auto-nomous, aut-opsy, t-auto-logy.

¹ The dat. of the indirect obj. (p. 25²) follows πείθεσθαι, *obey*, although the corresponding English verb is transitive.

² See 224.

³ Cf. 508, II. 1.

⁴ Cf. I. 7 above.

⁵ See 515.

⁶ *those with, οἱ σὺν*, with dat. Cf. 467, II. 9.

LESSON LXXI.

Second Perfect System.

Review 437, 438, 489.

519. The stem of the *second perfect* system is formed by adding the tense-suffix -α- (plup. -ει-) to the reduplicated theme, as γράφω, *write*, theme γραφ-, second perfect γέγραφα. It has the inflexion of the first perfect system.

Conjugate the second perfect system of λείπω (521 c) in 681.

a. Note the exceptions to the principle of recessive accent (32), λελοιπέναι, λελοιπώς.

Conjugate also the second perfect system of any other of the verbs given below.

520. The second perfect rarely occurs in vowel verbs.

521. The following changes of the vowel of the theme occur:—

a. ε becomes ο.

b. α is sometimes lengthened to ᾱ or η.

c. Verbs of the second class (492, 493) have the strong form of the theme, but with α for ε.

522. Some verbs aspirate a final labial or palatal mute of the theme, changing π or β to φ and κ or γ to χ.

523. The changes just named are illustrated in the following verbs, which are arranged according to classes:—

ἄγω (αγ-), *lead*, ἦχα;

πέμπω (πεμπ-), *send*, πέπομφα;

τρίβω (τριβ-, τριβ-), *rub*, τέτριφα.

διώκω (διωκ-), *pursue*, δεδίωχα;

τρέπω (τρεπ-), *turn*, τέτροφα;

λείπω (λιπ-), *leave*, λέλοιπα;

φεύγω (φυγ-), *flee*, πέφευγα.

τήκω (τακ-), *melt*, τέτηκα¹;

¹ Used intrans., *have melted*, *am melted*.

βλάπτω (βλαβ-), *injure*, βέβλαφα ; κλέπτω (κλέπ-), *steal*, κέκλοφα ;
 κόπτω (κοπ-), *cut*, κέκοφα ; ῥίπτω (ρίφ-, ριφ-), *throw*, ἔρριφα.
 κτείνω (κτεν-), *kill*, ἔκτονα ; τάττω (ταγ-), *arrange*, τέταχα ;
 φαίνω (φαν-), *show*, πέφηνα.¹

524.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. καὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτονε βασιλεύς. 2. τὰ δ' ἄλλα εἰς τὸ πῦρ ἔρριψαμεν. 3. ἐλελοίπει Σύνενοις τὰ ἄκρα. 4. ἀπαγγέλλει ὅτι πεφευγᾶσιν οἱ πολέμοι. 5. φυγῇ ἔφη αὐτοὺς λελοιπέναι τὸ χωρίον. 6. πολλὰς βίβλους γέγραφεν οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ. 7. ἐν δὲ τῇ πολεμίᾳ² διατέτριφεν ἡμέρας πολλὰς. 8. λάθρα δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπεπόμφει Κύρῳ ἄγγελον. 9. τοὺς δὲ βαρβάρους ἱππεῆς ἐδεδιώχεσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες. 10. τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἤχειν εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους. 11. ταῦτα δὲ τὰ θηρία οἱ ἱππεῖς δεδιώχασιν. 12. ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κέκλοφας τὸν ἵππον. 13. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐκεκόφεσαν τὰς πύλας. 14. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐδεδιώχεσαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας. 15. ταύτας τὰς κώμας Τισσαφέρνης διαρπάσαι³ τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἐπιτέτροφε πλὴν ἀνδραπόδων. 16. τοὺς πεζοὺς ἐπὶ ταῖς ὄχθαις παρατέταχεν ἄνω τῶν ἱππέων.⁴ 17. πεπόμφασί με ἄνδρες πιστοὶ ὄντες Κίρῳ καὶ ὑμῖν εὖνοι. 18. τοῖς οὖν θεοῖς χάρις ἔστω ὅτι ἡμᾶς οὐ βεβλάφασιν οἱ πολέμοι. 19. μέλαν ἦν τὸ χωρίον διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι⁵ αὐτόθι τὴν χιόνα. 20. ταύτην τὴν χώρην ἐπετετρόφει διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὡς πολεμίαν οὖσαν. 21. Κύρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέπομφε σημανοῦντα⁶ ὃ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν οὔτε αὐτὸς πέφηνεν. 22. εἰκαζον τὴν χιόνα τετηκέναι· καὶ ἐτετήκει διὰ κρήνην ἥ πλησίον ἦν ἀτμίζουσα ἐν νάπη.

¹ Used intrans., *have appeared*, whereas πέφαγκα (506) is trans., *have shown*. See 489.

² Sc. χώρῃ.

³ The infin. here expresses *purpose*.

⁴ Cf. 111, I. 12.

⁵ The infin. with the art. is here used as a subst. in the acc. Cf. 517, I. 14.

⁶ The fut. partic. here expresses *purpose*. See 379.

II. 1. The enemy have not escaped. 2. You have slain my brother. 3. He has sent gifts to Menon in a princely manner. 4. But Chirisophus has not pursued the cavalry. 5. But the barbarians had left the place. 6. But the satrap has written a letter to the king. 7. He said that he had sent¹ a guide to the army. 8. We had pursued the barbarian (troops) with Cyrus. 9. He has put six thousand horsemen to flight. 10. He says that the guide has stolen the money. 11. We have sent the interpreter to the general of the Greeks. 12. The generals of the Greeks have brought three thousand heavy-armed men.

525. R. *φύγ*, *fug*, *bend*, *flee*.

φεύγ-ω, *flee*, *be banished*; *φύγ-ή*, *-ῆς*, *flight*, *banishment*; *φύγ-ά-ς*, *-δός*, *δ*, *one who has fled*, *exile*, *refugee*.

fug-a, *-ae*, *f.*, *flight*; *fug-i-δ*, *flee*; *fugi-t-Ιου-ς*, *adj.*, *fugitive*.

BOW (*bend*), *BOW* (*the weapon*), *BIGHT*, *BOUT*, *BUXOM*.

LESSON LXXII.

Reflexive, Reciprocal, and Possessive Pronouns.

526. The *reflexive* pronouns are *ἐμαυτοῦ*, *ἐμαυτῆς*, *of myself*; *σεαυτοῦ*, *σεαυτῆς* (contracted *σαυτοῦ*, *σαυτῆς*), *of yourself*, *ἐαυτοῦ*, *ἐαυτῆς*, *ἐαυτοῦ* (contracted *αὐτοῦ*, *αὐτῆς*, *αὐτοῦ*), *of himself, herself, itself*.

527.

PARADIGM.

S. G.	ἐμαυτοῦ, -ῆς	σεαυτοῦ, -ῆς	ἐαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ
D.	ἐμαυτῷ, -ῇ	σεαυτῷ, -ῇ	ἐαυτῷ, -ῇ, -ῳ
A.	ἐμαυτόν, -ήν	σεαυτόν, -ήν	ἐαυτόν, -ήν, -ό
P. G.	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, -ῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν, -ῶν	ἐαυτῶν, -ῶν, -ῶν
D.	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς	ἐαυτοῖς, -αῖς, -οῖς
A.	ἡμᾶς αὐτούς, -άς	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς, -άς	ἐαυτούς, -άς, -ά

¹ The speaker said, *πέπομφα*. See 354.

a. The reflexive pronouns are formed from the stems of the personal pronouns (511) compounded with αὐτός. But in the plural of the first and second persons the forms are not compounded, but both of the pronouns are inflected. In the plural of the third person also, separate forms sometimes occur, σφῶν αὐτῶν, σφίσιν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς, σφᾶς αὐτούς, -άς, for ἐαντῶν, etc.

Examine the following:—

ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν ἐαυτοῦ σκηνήν, *he rides away to his own quarters.*
 παραγγέλλει Κῦρος Ἀριστίππῳ ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἐαυτὸν τοὺς στρατιώ-
 τας, *Cyrus orders Aristippus to send the soldiers to him.*

528. Rule of Syntax.—The reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand. But in a dependent clause they sometimes refer to the subject of the principal clause. They are then called *indirect* reflexives. See 515.

529. The *reciprocal* pronoun is ἀλλήλων, *of one another, of each other.* It occurs only in the oblique cases of the dual and plural.

530.

PARADIGM.

	DUAL			PLURAL		
G.	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλαιν	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων
D.	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλαιν	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλοισ	ἀλλήλαις	ἀλλήλοισ
A.	ἀλλήλω	ἀλλήλᾱ	ἀλλήλω	ἀλλήλοϋς	ἀλλήλᾱς	ἀλλήλα

531. The *possessive* pronouns are ἐμός, *my, mine*, σός, *your, ἡμέτερος, our, ὑμέτερος, your.* They are inflected like adjectives of the vowel-declension (144).

a. These pronouns are formed from the stems of the personal pronouns (511).

b. To express the simple idea of *his, her, its, their*, the genitive of αὐτός (515) is used in Attic prose, in the predicate position.¹

¹ Cf. 517, I. 13.

c. In like manner the genitives of the personal pronouns (especially in the singular) are sometimes used, in the predicate position, instead of the possessives *ἐμός, σός, ἡμέτερος, ὑμέτερος*.¹

d. The article is often used where in English we use an unemphatic possessive pronoun.²

532.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. πληγὰς ἐνέτεινον ἀλλήλοις. 2. ἐπὶ τὴν ἑμαυτοῦ³ ἀρχὴν πορεύσομαι αὐτός. 3. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα καὶ φύλακας περὶ αὐτήν. 4. Κῦρος δὲ μετεπέμπετο τὸν Σύννεσιν πρὸς αὐτόν. 5. μὴ ἀμελῶμεν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν.⁴ 6. αὐτὸν ἀποκτείνει αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρί. 7. ταῦτα τὰ χωρία πάντα σατραπεύουσιν οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ⁵ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι. 8. ἔφη δὲ τοὺς "Ελληνας νικᾶν τὸ καθ' αὐτούς.⁶ 9. ὁ ἐμὸς ἔρως τούτου⁷ αἰτιός ἐστιν. 10. ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἔπεσθαι. 11. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς στρατηγούς συντάξαι ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ.⁸ 12. τούτου γὰρ ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἐκέλευσεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί. 13. καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατιώταις ὁ αὐτὸς φόβος παρέσται. 14. πολλῶν ἂν ἐλπίδων⁹ ἑμαυτὸν στερήσαιμι, εἰ σέ τι¹⁰ κακὸν ἐπιχειρήσαιμι ποιεῖν. 15. καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην τὴν φάλαγγα ἀπ' ἀλλήλων. 16. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Σύννεσις ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλά. 17. ἀλλὰ σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις καὶ περὶ τῶν ὑμετέρων ἀγαθῶν μαχούμεθα.¹¹ 18. ἐνταῦθα διέσχον ἀλλήλων¹² βασιλεὺς τε καὶ οἱ "Ελληνες ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια. 19. ἣν δ' ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν, ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους τούτων¹³ ἐγκρατεῖς ποιῆσαι. 20. σὺ δὲ νῦν τὴν τε Κύρου δύναμιν καὶ χώρῃν ἔχεις καὶ τὴν σεαυτοῦ ἀρχὴν σφῶεις.

¹ Cf. 517, I. 6. ² Cf. 99, I. 7.

³ Genitives of reflexive pronouns take the *attributive* position.

⁴ See p. 63³.

⁵ The possessive pronouns take the art. when a particular person or thing is referred to.

⁶ Sc. *στράτευμα* (p. 83⁹), and see p. 23¹.

⁷ Construe with *αἰτιός*.

⁸ Cf. 373, I. 8. ⁹ Cf. 308, I. 11.

¹⁰ Cf. 281, I. 1, and see 186 c.

¹¹ Cf. 508, I. 21.

¹² Gen. of separation. See p. 60².

¹³ Cf. 343, I. 11.

II. 1. You have your own force. 2. They carried on war with one another.¹ 3. He gets his own soldiers together. 4. They feared that you would neglect yourselves. 5. They proceeded to their own country. 6. It is time for us to deliberate in our own behalf.² 7. Cyrus and the king became hostile to one another. 8. Your valour would be superior to the king's troops.³ 9. My⁴ father commanded this (man) to send the servants to him. 10. And they made a great⁵ uproar, calling one another. 11. If we should war with one another, the king would destroy us.

533. ἄλλος, *other*.

ἄλλο-s, -η, -ο, *other, another*; ἄλλᾰ, conj. (neut. plur. with changed accent), *but* ('in another way'); ἄλλῃ, adv., *in another way, elsewhere*; ἄλλως, adv., *in another way, otherwise*; ἄλλο-σε, adv., *to another place*; ἄλλο-τε, adv., *at another time*; ἄλλο-θεν, adv., *from another place*; ἄλλο-ῖο-s, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, *of another kind*; ἄλληλ-ων (reduplicated stem ἀλλ-ηλο-), *of one another*; παρ-άλληλο-s, -ο-ν, *beside one another, parallel*; ἀλλάττω (theme ἀλλαγ-), *make other, alter*; ἀλλό-τριο-s, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, *another's, strange, foreign*.

ἄλι-u-s, adj., *other*; **ἄλι-bι**, adv., *elsewhere*; **ἄλι-quis**, pron. indef., *somebody*; **ἄλι-ἑνω-s**, adj., *another's, strange, foreign*; **ἄλ-τεr**, adj., *the other*; **ἄδ-υλτεr**, adj., *adulterous*; **ἄλτεr-νω-s**, adj., *one after the other, in turn*.

ELSE; **ἄλλο-pathy**, **ἄλλ-egory**, **παρ-ἄλλεl**, **παρ-ἄλλαx**.

LESSON LXXIII.

Perfect Middle System of Vowel Verbs.

Review the perfect middle system of λύω in 676.

Review 254 a b, 441 with a b, 442.

534. Vowel verbs which add σ to the theme in the perfect and pluperfect middle and passive (441 a b) drop this σ before endings which begin with σ.

¹ Use the simple dat. (p. 83¹⁰).

² *in behalf of ourselves*, ὑπέρ with gen.

³ Use δύναμις, and see p. 90⁷.

⁴ Cf. I. 7 above.

⁵ See p. 142⁷.

Conjugate the perfect and pluperfect mid. and pass. of *τελέω* in 682.

Review 207. Compound forms are used when the tense stem ends in a consonant, since here the regular forms in *-νται*, *-ντο* could not be pronounced.

535. In the future perfect, the final vowel of the reduplicated theme is always long before the tense-suffix *-σ^ο/ε^ι*, even if short in the perfect middle (441, 442). Thus:—

δέω, *bind*, pf. mid. *δέδεε-μαι*, but fut. pf. *δεδή-σομαι*; *λύω*, *loose*, pf. mid. *λέλυ-μαι*, but fut. pf. *λελύ-σομαι*.

536.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. *τούτους δ' ἔφη ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων ἐστρατοπεδεῦσθαι*. 2. *χρήματα πολλὰ κέκτησθε*. 3. *οὕτω γὰρ διέσπαστο τὰ στρατεύματα*. 4. *ἡμεῖς Βυζαντίου¹ ἀποκεκλεισόμεθα*. 5. *ὑπὸ τοῦ ληστοῦ δεδῆσεται ὁ ἀνὴρ*. 6. *περὶ τούτων σὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ βεβούλευνται*. 7. *καὶ νῦν τέθυμαι περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου*. 8. *ἐβεβούλευτο Κῦρος πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοίτο*. 9. *ἐγγὺς που ἐστρατοπέδευτο βασιλεύς*. 10. *κατέσπασμαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου*. 11. *οὐδὲν ἐτετέλεστο οὔτε² ἐμοὶ³ οὔτε² ἄλλῳ οὐδενί²*. 12. *ὑποδεδεμένοι ἐκοιμῶντο οἱ στρατιῶται*. 13. *οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν ἱππέων ταχὺ πεπαύσονται*. 14. *πολλάκις γὰρ νύκτωρ πορευόμενος ἀπέσπασμαι ἀπὸ τῶν πεζῶν*. 15. *καὶ αἱ πύλαι ἐκέκλειντο καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν ὄπλα ἐφαίνετο*. 16. *ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς Λακωνικὸς Κλεώνυμος τετόξευται διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος*. 17. *καὶ οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὶ κεκελευσμένοι εἰσὶν ὀπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν*. 18. *παρακεκελεύσμεθα τοῖς Ἑλλησὶ τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβάρων ἀνέχεσθαι*. 19. *οἱ γὰρ Κρήτες βραχύτερα τῶν Περσῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ ἅμα ψιλοὶ ὄντες εἴσω*

¹ The gen. depends on the preposition *ἀπό* in composition with the verb. See p. 107⁴.

² When a negative is followed by a compound negative, or by several compound negatives, in the same clause, the negation is strengthened.

This idiom is not allowed in English, in which all the negatives except the first must be rendered affirmatively. So here, *either . . . or . . . anybody*.

³ Dat. of the indirect obj. after *τελέω* in the sense of *pay*.

τῶν ὀπλιτῶν κατεκέκλειντο. 20. παύσαντες τὴν φάλαγγα λόχους ὀρθίους ποιήσωμεν· ἡ γὰρ φάλαγξ διέσπασται.

II. 1. I had been shot through my corslet. 2. The forces had been separated. 3. We had deliberated in our own behalf. 4. He says that the Greeks have encamped in the villages. 5. All had urged Cyrus not to fight. 6. He said that he possessed many houses. 7. The Greeks and Ariaeus have encamped near one another. 8. In this way the cavalry along the river will have been shut off. 9. The enemy have been shut up again within the citadel. 10. Cyrus had taken the field against Artaxerxes, his brother. 11. On this account¹ we have resolved to do damage to the king's territory. 12. I am of the opinion that nobody has been loved² by a greater number.³

537. R. 1 *ov*, *rush*.

ῥέ-ω, *rush, rage*; **ῥυ-μός-ς**, *ὁ, the animating principle in man, heart, wrath*; **ῥυμό-ο-μαι**, *be angry*; **ῥυμο-ειδής, -ές** (*εἶδος, τό, look, shape*), *high-spirited*; **ἄ-ῥυμο-ς, -ο-ν**, *without heart, dispirited*; **ἄῥύμως**, *adv., faintheartedly*; **ἄῥυμ-ιά, -ās**, *faintheartedness*; **ἄῥυμέ-ω**, *be despondent*; **ἐν-ῥυμέ-ο-μαι**, *lay to heart, consider*; **ἐνθύμη-μα, -ατ-ος, τό**, *thought, idea*; **ἐπι-ῥυμέ-ω**, *have one's heart on, desire*; **ἐπιῥυμ-ιά, -ās**, *desire, longing*; **εὐ-ῥυμο-ς, -ο-ν**, *of good heart, cheerful*; **εὐῥυμέ-ο-μαι**, *be cheerful*; **πρό-ῥυμο-ς, -ο-ν**, *with mind intent, ready, willing*; **προθύμως**, *adv., willingly*; **ἀ-πρόθύμο-ς, -ο-ν**, *not eager*; **προῦμ-ιά, -ās**, *readiness, eagerness*; **προῦμέ-ο-μαι**, *be eager*; **ῥά-ῥυμο-ς, -ο-ν** (**ῥά-διο-ς, easy**), *with mind at ease, indifferent, lazy*; **ῥαῥυμ-ιά, -ās**, *laziness*; **ῥαῥυμέ-ω**, *live in idleness*.

538. R. 2 *ov*, *fu*, *smoke, sacrifice*.

θύ-ω, *offer, sacrifice*; **θυ-τήρ, -ῆρ-ος, ὁ**, *sacrificer*; **θυ-σιᾶ, -ās**, *sacrifice*; **θύ-μα, -ατ-ος, τό**, *victim, sacrifice*; **θυ-μ-έλη, -ης**, *place for sacrifice, altar*; **θυμ-ιά-ω**, *burn incense*; **θυμιά-μα, -ατ-ος, τό**, *incense*; **θυ-ώδης, -ες** (**ὄζω, smell**), *sweet-smelling*; **θύ-μο-ν, τό**, *thyme*.

fū-mu-s, -ī, m., *smoke*; **fū-n-us, -er-is, n.**, *funeral rites*; **fū-li-gō, -in-is, f.**, *soot*; **fi-mu-s, -ī, m.**, *filth*; **foe-du-s** (for *foui-du-s*), *adj., filthy*.

DUST; **thyme**.

¹ on account of this, ἔνεκα with gen.

² See 354.

³ by more (persons).

LESSON LXXIV.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

539. The principal *demonstrative* pronouns are οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this*, ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, *this*, and ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο, *that*.

Review 172.

a. ὅδε is inflected like the article (88) with the enclitic demonstrative suffix -δε added to the forms.

b. ἐκεῖνος is inflected like αὐτός (511).

Review 173, 174. The rule in 174 applies also to ὅδε and ἐκεῖνος.

Examine the following: —

Κῦρος βουλευέται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλὰ βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκείνου, *Cyrus plans that he may never in future be in the power of his brother, but may be king in his stead.*
καὶ τοὺς σὺν Κῦρῳ βαρβάρους ἐδίωξα σὺν τοῖσδε τοῖς παροῦσι νῦν μετ' ἐμοῦ, *I pursued the barbarian troops of Cyrus with the aid of these who are now here with me.*

540. Rule of Syntax. — ἐκεῖνος, *that* (yonder), is used of something *remote*, ὅδε, *this* (here), of something *near* or *present*.

Examine the following: —

οὐδένα κρίνω ὑπὸ πλειόνων πεφιλησθαι· τεκμήριον δὲ τοῦτου καὶ τόδε, *I am of the opinion that nobody has ever been loved by a greater number. The proof of this is the following.*

541. Rule of Syntax. — οὗτος is used in referring back to an object already mentioned; ὅδε, in referring forward to an object about to be mentioned.

542. Besides the above, there occur frequently in Attic prose the demonstratives of *quality*, τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτον, and τοιόσδε, τοιάδε, τοιόνδε, *such*, and of *quantity*, τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτον, and τοσόςδε, τοσῆδε, τοσόνδε, *so much, so many*.

a. The distinction in 541 is true also for *τοιούτος* (used in referring back) and *τοιόσδε* (used in referring forward), but not for *τοσοῦτος* and *τοσόσδε*.

543.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. καὶ ἐποιοῦν οὕτως οὗτοι. 2. εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιαῶδε.¹ 3. τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα¹ βουλευόνται. 4. καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα. 5. καὶ Κῦρος αὐτὸς παρήνει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς,² θαρρύνων τοιαῶδε. 6. οὗτος δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς κελεύει ἡμᾶς πορεύεσθαι. 7. ταῦτα εἶπε Κλέαρχος· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἷ³ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπήνεσαν. 8. Κλέαρχος δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν, Ἄλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ σὺ λέγεις· παρ' ἡμῶν δὲ ἀπάγγελλε τάδε. 9. μετὰ ταῦτα συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς ἔλεξε τοιαῶδε. 10. οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἔτι στρατιῶται ἐσμεν, ἐπεὶ γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκεῖνος ἔτι ἡμῖν μισθοδότης.⁴ 11. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον. 12. ἡμεῖς τοσοῖδε⁵ ὄντες ἐνικῶμεν βασιλέᾳ ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ. 13. πολλάκις δὲ χήνας ἡμιβρώτους ἔπεμπε καὶ ἄρτων ἡμίσεα καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα. 14. Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιωτᾶς ἐβιάζετο⁶ πορεύεσθαι· οἱ δὲ αὐτόν τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου. 15. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Σύνενοι μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, Κῦρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ τῆμα. 16. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος συλλέξας στρατεύμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον· καὶ αὕτη αὐτῇ ἄλλῃ πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στρατεύμα. 17. πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν, Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει· ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπόφηναι⁷ τὴν γνώμην. Κλέαρ-

¹ See p. 122¹.² See p. 84¹.³ Cf. 228, I. 4.⁴ *Ἔστιν* from the preceding ἔσμεν.⁵ The context shows that the meaning here is, *so few*.⁶ Impf. of attempted action, *was trying to force*.⁷ Cf. 482, I. 6.

χος δὲ εἶπε τάδε· Συμβουλευώ ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐκποδὼν ποιῆσθαι ὡς τάχιστα.¹

II. 1. You yourselves did² this. 2. These men lived in idleness. 3. Hereupon Xenophon spoke as follows. 4. These³ remained, but the rest proceeded. 5. But another contingent was collected for him in the following manner.⁴ 6. He counselled the Greeks, when they consulted him,⁵ as follows. 7. Tissaphernes spoke first,⁶ by means of an interpreter, in the following terms.⁷ 8. But Menon collected his own division apart from the rest, and spoke as follows. 9. But after this, when he had brought his own soldiers together,⁸ he thus addressed (them). 10. He wishes to expel the Pisidians from the territory; and against these he collects both his⁸ barbarian and his Greek (force).

544. πᾶς, all.

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (stem παντ-), *all*; πάντ-η, adv., *in every way*; πάντως, adv., *anyhow*; παντα-χῆ, παντα-χοῖ, adv., *everywhere*; πάντο-θεν, adv., *from every side*; πάντο-σε, adv., *in every direction*; παντο-θαπό-ς, -ή, -όν, *of every sort, manifold*; παντο-ῖο-ς, -ᾶ, -ο-ν, *of all sorts*; παντά-πᾶσι(ν), adv., *altogether, entirely*; πάν-υ, adv., *altogether, very*; παγ-κράτιο-ν, τό (R. κρα, 471), *all-round contest, pancratiūm*; παγ-χάλεπο-ς, -ο-ν (χαλεπό-ς, *hard*), *very hard*; παγχαλέπω-ς, adv., *very hardly*; παμ-πληθής, -ές (πλήθος, *τό, number*), *in full numbers, multitudinous*; πᾶμ-πολυ-ς, -πόλλη, -πολυ (πολύς, *much, many*), *very numerous*; παμ-πόνηρο-ς, -ο-ν (πονηρός, *bad*), *wholly bad*; παν-οἵργο-ς, -ο-ν (R. Feργ, 468), *that will do anything, villainous*; πανουργ-ία, -ᾶς, *knavishness*; παν-τελής, -ές (τέλος, *τό, end*), *all-complete, perfect*; παντελῶς, adv., *perfectly, wholly, utterly*; ᾗ-πᾶς, ᾗ-πᾶσα, ᾗ-παν, *all together*; σύμ-πᾶς, -ᾶσα, -αν, *all taken collectively, all together*.

dia-pason, pan-acea, pan-demonium, pan-oply, pan-orama, pan-theism, pan-theon, panto-mime.

¹ Cf. 485, I. 9.

² Use the middle.

³ See p. 27^b.

⁴ Cf. 228, I. 13.

⁵ See 379.

⁶ Cf. I. 17 above.

⁷ Cf. I. 2 above.

⁸ See 531 d.

LESSON LXXV.

Review of Groups. — Reading Lesson.

Review the groups of related words in 495, 499, 509, 518, 525, 533, 537, 538, 544.

Review 140, 142.

Read and translate again 487.

Read and translate the following passage:—

545. Κῦρος.

VII. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συριᾶς καὶ τῆς Ἀραβίᾳς, τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλᾳς. ἐντεῦθεν πορευομένοις αὐτοῖς ἐφαίνετο ἵχνη ὡς δισχιλίων ἵππων. οὗτοι προκατέκᾳον καὶ χιλὼν
 5 καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο χρήσιμον ἦν. Ὀρόντᾳς δὲ Πέρσης ἀνὴρ, γένει προσήκων βασιλεῖ, ἐπιβουλεύει Κῦρῳ, καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσας. οὗτος Κῦρον ἱππέας χιλίους αἰτεῖ, ὑπισχνούμενος τοὺς πολεμίους κωλύσειν τοῦ κάειν τὸν χιλὼν. ὁ δ' ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων. ὁ δ' Ὀρόντᾳς, νομίσας ἐτοίμους εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἱππέας, γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέᾳ λέγων ὅτι ἤξει
 10 ἔχων ἱππέας πολλούς. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἔδωκε πιστῷ ἀνδρὶ, ὡς ᾤετο· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν Κῦρῳ ἔδωκε. συλλαμβάνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Ὀρόντᾳν, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν
 15 αὐτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσας τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἐπτά, καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγούς ἐκέλευεν ὀπλιτᾶς ἀγαγεῖν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὀπλιτᾶς. Κλέαρχον δὲ καὶ εἴσω παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον. ὁ δὲ ὕστερον ἐξήγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρί-
 20 σιν τοῦ Ὀρόντου ὡς ἐγένετο. ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον λέξαι τάδε.

Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευόμενος, ὃ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο πράξω περὶ Ὀρόντου. τοῦτον γὰρ ὁ

ἐμὸς πατήρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ δὲ ταχθεῖς,
 25 ὥς ἔφη αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν
 ἐμοὶ ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἀκρόπολιν, ἐγὼ αὐτὸν προσπο-
 λεμῶν ἐποίησα τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι, καὶ
 δεξιὰν ἔλαβον καὶ ἔδωκα.

NOTES.

4. οὗτοι: to be referred to the *ἱππεῖς* (the enemy's cavalry) implied in *ἵππων*. — 5. *εἰ τι ἄλλο*, if anything else, i.e. whatever else. — 6. *γένει*, in race, a dat. of respect. — *καὶ πρόσθεν*, previously also. — 8. *τοῦ κείν*: infin. with the art. used as a subst. For the case, cf. 274, I. 4. — 13. *ᾤετο*: impf. of *οἶμαι*, think. — *λαβών*: second aor. act. partic. of *λαμβάνω*. — 20. *Κῦρον λέγει*: Clearchus said, *Κῦρος ἔλεξε*. See 354. — 22. *ὃ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι*: the relative clause is repeated in the following *τοῦτο*, whatever is right, etc., this I may do, etc. — 23. *πράξω*: aor. subjv. For the mood, see 278. — 24. *εἶναι*: the infin. expresses purpose. — *ταχθεῖς*: first aor. pass. partic. of *τάττω*. — 27. *τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου*: cf. *τοῦ κείν* in l. 8. — 28. *ἔλαβον*: cf. *λαβών* in l. 13.

Translate the following passage into Greek:—

546. He marches thence through Arabia. In this region the land was a level plain, full of wild creatures of all sorts, wild asses, ostriches and gazelles. The horsemen sometimes chased these wild animals. The asses it was not easy to catch; for they ran much more swiftly than the horses. The flesh of those that were captured was like deer-meat, but more tender. An ostrich nobody caught, and those of the horsemen that had given chase quickly gave up; for the creature easily escaped, using both its feet and its wings. Proceeding through this land they arrive at the river Mascas, of a plethrum in width. Here there was a great uninhabited city, the name of which was Corsote. They remained here three days, and procured supplies. Thence Cyrus marched thirteen stages through a desert, ninety parasangs, with the river Euphrates on his right. But across the Euphrates, before the army reached Pylae, there was a large and prosperous city, Charmande by name. From this the soldiers purchased their provisions, crossing over on rafts.

LESSON LXXVI.

Perfect Middle System of Mute Verbs.

Conjugate the perfect middle system of *λείπω*, *ἄγω*, and *πείθω* in 683–685.

547. The concurrence of consonants in the stem and endings gives occasion to many euphonic changes. These take place according to the following principles:—

548. A *labial* mute before μ changes to μ ; with σ forms ψ (215 a); before a lingual is made co-ordinate (114 a).

a. When $\mu\mu$ would thus result, one μ is dropped, as *πέμπω*, *send*, pf. *πέπεμμαι* (for *πεπεμπ-μαι*). See 205.

549. σ between two consonants is dropped.

550. A *palatal* mute before μ remains or becomes γ ; with σ forms ξ (215 b); before a lingual is made co-ordinate (114 a).

a. When $\gamma\gamma$ would thus result, one γ is dropped, as *ἐλέγχω*, *confute*, pf. *ἐλήλεγμαi*¹ (for *εληλεγχ-μαι*).

551. A lingual mute before μ becomes σ ; before σ is dropped (231); before another lingual becomes σ .

552. Verbs of the second class (492, 493) have the strong form of the theme in the perfect middle system. Thus:—

λείπω (*λιπ-*), *leave*, *λέλειμμαι*; *πείθω* (*πιθ-*), *persuade*, *πέπεισμαι*.

a. Three verbs of the first class, *στρέφω*, *turn*, *twist*, *τρέπω*, *turn*, *divert*, and *τρέφω*, *support*, change ϵ to α in the perfect middle, *ἔστραμμαι*, *τέτραμμαι*, and *τέθραμμαι*.

553.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *τεθαμμένοι ἦσαν οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων νεκροί.* 2. *οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐγγύς τέ² εἰσι καὶ παρατεταγμένοι.* 3. *πόσοι τῶν*

¹ Some verbs beginning with α , ϵ , or σ , followed by a single consonant, form their reduplication by prefixing the first two letters of the

theme and lengthening its initial vowel. This is called the *Attic Reduplication*.

² See 186 c.

στρατιωτῶν ὑπολελειμμένοι εἰσίν; 4. σφενδόνη καλὴ τῷ στρατηγῷ πέπλεκται. 5. τέταχθε κατὰ φάλαγγα. 6. κατακεκόφονται ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικῶν. 7. τούτῳ ἐπετέτακτο ταῦτα πράττειν.¹ 8. τούτους ὡς εὖ ὠπλισμένους ἐφοβεῖτο. 9. ἐπέπεμψο, ὦ Λύκιε, τῷ Κλεάρχῳ² ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον. 10. ἦκται τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεύς ἐστιν. 11. πάνν ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καταλείφονται. 12. τῷ δὲ ἀνδρὶ³ τούτῳ ἡδέως πέπεισμαι. 13. ποῖ ποτε τετραμμένοι εἰσίν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ τί ἐν νῷ ἔχουσιν; 14. οὗτος δὲ ἐτέτακτο ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοῦ ἵππικου⁴ ἄρχων. 15. καὶ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἀμαξῶν ἦκτο καὶ ὑποζυγίων. 16. ἔσκεμμαι εἰ⁵ κρεῖττόν ἐστι Τισσαφέρην ἡγεμόνα ἔχειν. 17. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς πόλεως τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἡγεμὼν ἐπέπεμπτο, ὅπως διὰ τῆς πολεμίας χώρᾱς ἄγοι αὐτούς. 18. συνηκολούθουν δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν τεθωράκισμένοι εἰς⁶ τριακοσίους. 19. ἤλανεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος στρατιώτᾱς, ὥστ' ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλήχθαι⁷ καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα. 20. εἶχον δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκᾶ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινίκους καὶ κνημίδας καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένᾱς. 21. ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς κώμης γήλοφός ἐστιν ἐφ' οὗ⁸ ἀνεστραμμένοι εἰσίν οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέᾱ. 22. νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε κατακεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ⁹ ὕστερον. 23. ἡ δὲ διὰ τῶν ὁρέων ὁδὸς καὶ πρὸς ἄρκτον τετραμμένη εἰς Καρδούχους ἄγει. 24. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγᾱς τρεῖς συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι.

¹ Subj. of ἐπετέτακτο, the execution of this. See 352.

² by Clearchus, dat. of the agent with ἐπέπεμψο. See 224.

³ Cf. 517, I. 20.

⁴ Depends on ἄρχων, which is an appositive to οὗτος, as commander of the horse.

⁵ Cf. 247, I. 4.

⁶ Cf. 498, I. 12.

⁷ The infin. after ὥστε, so that, so as, expresses a result. The perf. infin. is here simply more emphatic than the present would be, were thoroughly frightened.

⁸ Gen. sing. masc. of the rel. ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, on which, etc.

⁹ The adv. implies comparison (later than) and takes the gen. See p. 179¹.

II. 1. The fellow has been led to Clearchus. 2. For on the previous¹ day² messengers had been sent. 3. The army will have been cut to pieces. 4. They had been left behind alone. 5. But we had obeyed Xenophon. 6. We have obeyed our commanders in all particulars.³ 7. The letter will have been written. 8. He said the soldiers had made⁴ slings for themselves. 9. They have been cut off from the hill. 10. These had been drawn up in line on the banks of the river. 11. The horses and the beasts of burden had been led through the snow. 12. A messenger has been sent to bid⁵ them remain at the river. 13. But Cyrus and his cavalry had been armed with corselets. 14. No friend will have been left to us, but even those who before were⁶ friends will be hostile to us.

554. R. **τακ**, *tec*, *beget*, *hit*, *prepare*.

τέκ-vo-v, τό, *child*; **τέκ-μαρ**, τό, *fixed goal, mark, sign, proof*; **τεκμαίρομαι** (for **τεκμαρ-ιο-μαι**), *settle by a mark, infer*; **τεκμήρ-ιο-v**, τό, *sign, proof*; **τέχ-νη**, -ης, *workmanship, art, ways and means*; **τεχν-ικó-s**, -ή, -όν, *artistic, artful*; **τεχνικῶς**, adv., *artfully*; **τεχνάζω**, *use art, employ cunning*. — **τάττω**, (for **τακ-ιω**), *arrange, form*; **τακ-τό-s**, -ή, -όν, *arranged, set in order*; **ἀ-τακτο-s**, -ο-v, *in disorder, undisciplined*; **ἀτακτέ-ω**, *be disorderly*; **εὐ-τακτο-s**, -ο-v, *well arranged, well disciplined*; **εὐτάκτως**, adv., *with good discipline*; **τάξι-s**, -ε-ως, ἡ, *arrangement, rank*; **ἀ-ταξία**, -ās, *disorder, insubordination*; **εὐ-ταξία**, -ās, *discipline*; **πρὸς-τάξι-s**, -ε-ως, ἡ, *order of battle*; **ταξι-αρχο-s**, ὁ (R. **αρχ**, 463), *commander of a τάξις, taxiarch*. — **τεύχ-ω**, *make ready, make*; **τεύχ-os**, -ε-ος, τό, *tool, jar, chest*; **τυ-γ-χ-άν-ω**, *hit, hit upon, reach, get*; **τύχ-η**, -ης, *that which touches man, luck, fortune*; **εὐ-τυχ-ία**, -ās, *good fortune, success*; **εὐ-τυχ-ής**, -ές, *well off, lucky*; **εὐτυχέ-ω**, *be well off*; **εὐτύχη-μα**, -ατ-os, τό, *piece of good fortune, success*. — **τόξ-ο-v**, τό (**τοκ** + **σ**), *bow*; **τοξ-ικó-s**, -ή, -όν, *belonging to the bow*; **τοξό-τη-s**, -ου, *bowman*; **τοξεύ-ω**, *shoot with a bow*; **τόξευ-μα**, -ατ-os, τό, *arrow*.

τίg-nu-m, -ῖ, *n., building stuff*; **tex-ō**, *weave*; **tē-la**, -ae, *f., web*; **sub-tī-li-s**, *adj., woven fine*; **sub-tē-men**, -in-is, *n., woof*; **tē-lu-m**, -ῖ, *n., missile*.

¹ πρόσθεν. See p. 231.

² Dat. of the time when. See

p. 454.

³ Simply πάντα. See p. 1158.

⁴ He said, *The soldiers have made*

slings for themselves (use **πλέκω**).

See 354.

⁵ See 379.

⁶ *those who were*, οἱ ὄντες. See

371.

THING, *hus-TINGS*; *tactics*, *taxi-dermy*, *syn-tax*, *archi-tect*, *technical*, *penta-teuch*, *toxico-logy*, *in-toxic-ate*.

NOTE. — The root shows the forms *τεκ*, *τακ*, *τυχ*, *τοκ* (300).

LESSON LXXVII.

Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns.

555. The principal *interrogative* pronoun is *τίς*, *τίς*, *τί*, *who?* *which?* *what?* This always has the acute accent on the first syllable.

556. The *indefinite* pronoun is *τις*, *τις*, *τι*, *some*, *any* (Lat. *aliquis*), or, used substantively, *somebody*, *anything* (Lat. *quidam*). This pronoun is enclitic.

557.

PARADIGMS.

	INTERROGATIVE		INDEFINITE	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
S. N.	τίς	τί	τις	τι
G.	τίνος, τοῦ		τινός, τοῦ	
D.	τίνι, τῇ		τινί, τῇ	
A.	τίνα	τί	τινά	τι
D. N. A. V.	τίνε		τινέ	
G. D.	τίνοι		τινοί	
P. N.	τίνες	τίνα	τινές	τινά
G.	τίνων		τινῶν	
D.	τίσι		τισί	
A.	τίνας	τίνα	τινάς	τινά

Review 186, 187.

Examine the following: —

τί βούλεσθε; *what do you want?*

ἔρωτᾷ τί βουλόμεθα, *he asks what we want.*

558. Rule of Syntax. — The interrogative *τίς* is used both in direct and in indirect questions.

559. Besides the interrogative *τίς*, there occur frequently the interrogatives of *quality*, *ποῖος*, *ποῖᾶ*, *ποῖον*, of *what sort?* (Lat. *quālis*), and of *quantity*, *πόσος*, *πόση*, *πόσον*, *how much?* (Lat. *quantus*). See 542.

a. The principle in 558 applies also to *ποῖος* and *πόσος*.

560.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. *τίς τοῦτο λέγει*; 2. *τοῦτο λέγει τις*. 3. *λέγουσι δέ τινες τάδε*. 4. *ποῖᾶ ἐστὶν ἡ ἀπορίᾶ ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης μένειν*¹; 5. *τί οὖν κελεύω ὑμᾶς ποιῆσαι*; 6. *Τί οὖν ταῦτά ἐστιν*; ἔφη ὁ Φαλῖνος. 7. *ὥστε νικῶντες τίνα ἂν ἀποκτείναιμεν*; 8. *καὶ ἐρωτᾷ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα πόσον χρῦσιον ἔχει*. 9. *ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος*. 10. *ἀπὸ ποίου ἂν*² *τάχους φεύγων*³ *τις ἀποφύγοι*; 11. *ἐρωτῶμεν*⁴ *ἐκείνον τί*⁵ *βούλεται ἡμῖν*⁶ *χρῆσθαι*.⁷ 12. *τίς παραγγέλλει καὶ τί ἐστὶ τὸ σύνθημα*; 13. *τί*⁸ *δεῖ βασιλεῆᾶ αἰτεῖν ἡμᾶς τὰ ὄπλα*; 14. *συμβεβουλεύμεθά σοι τί χρῆ ποιεῖν*. 15. *ἐὰν νικῶσι, τί δεῖ αὐτοὺς λῦειν τὴν γέφυραν*; 16. *ἐν ποίοις πράγμασιν ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες*; 17. *Κῦρον ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως*. 18. *Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσην καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων δυνάστην*. 19. *ἐνθα δὴ μέρος τι τῆς τῶν Περσῶν εὐταξίᾳς ἦν θεάσασθαι*. 20. *τί κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν*⁹ *κελεύειν Κῦρον προκαταλαμβάνειν*; 21. *ποῖα δυνάμει συμμάχῳ χρησάμενοι*³ *μᾶλλον ἂν κολάσασθε τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους τῆς νῦν σὺν ἐμοὶ οὐσης*.¹⁰ 22. *ἐρωτᾷ τὸν ἄγγελον πόση τίς*¹¹ *ἐστὶ χώρᾳ ἡ ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος καὶ τῆς διώρυχος*.

¹ The infin. is dependent on the verbal subst. *ἀπορίᾶ*, *difficulty in remaining*.

² With *ἀποφύγοι*. See 300.

³ See p. 104¹⁰.

⁴ See 271.

⁵ Cognate acc. (p. 122¹) with *χρῆσθαι*.

⁶ Cf. 361, I. 13.

⁷ The irregularly contracted form of *χράεσθαι*. Cf. ζῆν, 380, I. 14.

⁸ Cf. 167, I. 10.

⁹ See p. 25⁴.

¹⁰ Sc. *δυνάμεις*, and see p. 179¹.

¹¹ See 186 c. *τις* is here equivalent to the art., *how great a land*.

II. 1. What does he say to this? 2. Why do we remain? 3. Let us inquire who said this. 4. Somebody was near with a great force. 5. Of what sort were the men in this land? 6. What will the rest of the soldiers do? 7. What shall we have, if we conquer? 8. And he asks what the disturbance is? 9. What opinion have you about the march? 10. How many soldiers have you in your division? 11. Who ordered the generals to bring heavy-armed men? 12. And for what reason should you abandon the servants? 13. He will ask how many days I stayed in Byzantium. 14. How many did the companies of the heavy-armed men amount to?

561. R. *περ, per, press through.*

πέρω (for *περ-ω*), *pierce*; *περ-όνη, -ης*, *tongue of a brooch, pin*; *περ-οιά-ω*, *pierce*; *δι-αμ-περ-ές*, *adv., through and through*; *περ-ά-ω*, *pass through, cross*; *πέρα, -ās* (for *περ-ια*), *trial, proof ('probing')*; *πειρά-ο-μαι*, *try, attempt*; *ἄ-πειρο-ς, -ο-ν*, *not having tried, without experience, unskilled*; *ἐμ-πειρο-ς, -ο-ν*, *acquainted with*; *ἐμπείρως*, *adv., by experience*; *πόρ-ο-ς, δ*, *means of passing, ford, means, way*; *ἐμ-πορο-ς, δ*, *one who travels, merchant*; *ἐμπόρι-ο-ν, τό*, *trading-place, market*; *ὁδοί-πορο-ς, -ο-ν* (*ὁδός*, *way, road*), *going by land*; *ὁδοιπορέ-ω*, *go by land*; *ἀντί-πορο-ς, -ο-ν*, *on the other side of the way, opposite*; *ἄ-πορο-ς, -ο-ν*, *without ways and means*; *ἀπορέ-ω*, *be without ways and means, be perplexed*; *ἀπορ-ία, -ās*, *lack of means, embarrassment*; *βου-πόρο-ς, -ο-ν* (*βούς*, *ox, cow*), *ox-piercing*; *δύσ-πορο-ς, -ο-ν*, *hard to travel*; *δυσπορ-ία, -ās*, *difficulty of passing*; *εὐ-πορο-ς, -ο-ν*, *easy to travel through*; *εὐπορ-ία, -ās*, *facility of obtaining*; *ναυσί-πορο-ς, -ο-ν* (*ναῦς*, *ship*), *that can be traversed in ships, navigable*; *πορεύ-ω*, *make a way for, make go*; *πορευ-τός-ς, -ή, -όν*, *passable*; *δυσ-πόρευτο-ς, -ο-ν*, *hard to get through*; *πορευ-τέος-ς, -α, -ο-ν*, *that must be traversed*; *πορε-ία, -ās*, *a going, journey, march*; *πορίζω*, *cause to go, carry, bring, supply*; *πέρ-α, adv., through, beyond*; *πέρῃ-ν* (*prop. acc.*), *on the further side*; *ἀντι-πέρᾱν* *or* *ἀντι-πέρās*, *κατ-αντιπέρᾱν* *or* *κατ-αντιπέρās*, *adv., over against*; *περ-ί-ο-ς, -α, -ο-ν*, *on the other side, opposite*; *περαΐδ-ω*, *carry to the other side, transport*; *περαίνω* (for *περαν-ω*), *bring to the other side, bring to an end, accomplish.*

peri-tu-s, *adj., experienced*; *peri-culu-m, -ī, n.*, *trial, risk, danger*; *por-ta, -ae, f.*, *gate*; *por-tu-s, -ūs, m.*, *harbour*; *porti-cu-s, -ūs, f.*, *covered walk*; *par-θ, make ready*; *pār, adj., equal*; *peren-diē, adv., on the day after to-morrow.*

FARE, FAR, FERRY, FRITH, FEAR, FRESH, FRISK; *em-pirical, pirate, pore, em-porium.*

LESSON LXXVIII.

Perfect Middle System of Liquid Verbs.

562. Liquid verbs suffer in the main the same changes in the perfect middle system as in the first perfect system (504–507). But if *ν* is not dropped (506), it is changed to *σ* before *μ*. Thus:—

ἀγγέλλω (αγγελ-), *announce*, ἡγγελμαι. See 504.

σπείρω (σπερ-), *sow*, ἔσπαρμαι; στέλλω (στελ-), *send*, ἔσταλμαι; φθείρω (φθερ-), *destroy*, ἔφθαρμαι. See 505.

κρίνω (κριν-), *distinguish*, κέκριμαι; τείνω (τεν-), *stretch*, τέταμαι (505); φαίνω (φαν-), *show*, πέφασμαι. See 506.

βάλλω (βαλ-), *throw*, βέβλημαι. See 507.

Learn the paradigms of στέλλω and φαίνω in 686, 687.

Observe that *σ* between two consonants is dropped (549).

563.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. θαυμάζω ὅτι οὐδαμοῦ Κῦρος πέφανται. 2. ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους ναῦς ἀπέσταλτο. 3. καὶ καπνὸς ἐπέφαντο ἐν κώμαις οὐ πρόσω. 4. ἡμεῖς δὲ ταῦτα¹ πάλιν ἀποκεκρίμεθα. 5. ἡγεμὼν οὐδεὶς ἡμῖν ἐπέφαντο. 6. καὶ ἐρωτᾶ εἰ² ἤδη ἀποκέκρινται.³ 7. φανερά δὲ οὐδεμία πέφανται ἐπιβουλή. 8. πρὸς ταῦτα ἀποκέκρινται οἱ Ἑλληνες. 9. κέκριται ὡς ἀδικῶν ὁ τὸ στράτευμα ἀπολιπών.⁴ 10. παρήγγελτο δὲ τοῖς ἱππεῦσι θαρροῦσι⁵ διώκειν.⁶ 11. συνήθροικε τῶν διασπαρμένων τοὺς πλείστους. 12. Κλέαρχος δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἡγείτο κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα, οἱ δ' εἶποντο. 13. περὶ σωτηρίας ἡμῖν θῶμόνοις οἰωνὸς τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ σωτῆρος πέφανται. 14. ἀπεσταλμένοι εἰσὶν οἱ ἄγγελοι καὶ σὺν αὐ-

¹ Cf. 517, I. 8, and see p. 122¹.

² Cf. 553, I. 16.

³ When in the pf. mid. system a liquid verb drops the final *ν* of its theme, it is inflected like a vowel

verb. So here ἀποκέκρινται, and not ἀποκεκριμένοι εἰσίν.

⁴ See 371.

⁵ The partic. expresses manner (379). ⁶ Cf. 553, I. 7.

τοῖς Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λάκων. 15. ἡμᾶς ὑπάγεται μένειν διὰ τὸ διεσπάρθαι¹ αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα. 16. καὶ τὸ βασιλείον σημείον ἦν ἄेतός τις χρυσοῦς ἐπὶ ξύλου ἀνατεταμένος. 17. ἐλείποντο δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ διεφθαρμένοι ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνης τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς.² 18. ἐπιστέλλουσι δὲ ταῦτα καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὥς³ διαβέβληται καὶ φυλάττεσθαι δεῖ.

II. 1. Tracks of horses have appeared. 2. Boats had been despatched to the army. 3. But the cavalry have been dispersed. 4. The army has been corrupted. 5. None have appeared able to aid us. 6. But orders had been given⁴ the peltasts to follow. 7. The left wing had already been scattered. 8. For Tissaphernes and all his army had already appeared. 9. But this had been announced to the king. 10. And this has been reported to Xenophon and to his troops. 11. We have been traduced by those who were⁵ formerly our friends. 12. I have answered with moderation, in order that he may not be angry with us.

564. R. ακ, ac, sharp, pointed, swift.

ἄκ-ων, -οντ-ος, δ, javelin, dart; ἀκόντ-ιο-ν, τό, javelin, dart; ἀκοντίζω, hurl the javelin; ἀκόντι-σι-ς, -ε-ως, ἡ, javelin-throwing; ἀκοντισ-τή-ς, -οῦ, javelin-thrower; ἄκ-μή, -ῆς, point, edge, highest point; ἀκμή-ν, adv. (acc. of ἀκμή), on the point, just; ἀκμάζω, be at the highest point; αἰχμή, -ῆς (for ακ-μη), spear-point; αἰχμ-άλωτο-ς, -ο-ν (ἀλίσκομαι, be taken), captured by the spear; ἄκ-ρο-ς, -ᾶ, -ο-ν, at the point, highest; ἄκρο-ν, τό, height; ἀκρο-βολίζο-μαι (R. βαλ, 480), throw from a distance or height; ἀκροβόλι-σι-ς, -ε-ως, ἡ, skirmish; ἀκρό-πολι-ς, -ε-ως, ἡ (πόλις, city), upper city, citadel; ἀκρ-ωνυχίᾱ, -ᾶς (ὄνυξ, nail), nail-tip, spur, crest; ἄκρᾱ, -ᾶς, height, citadel. — ὠκ-ύ-ς, -εῖα, -ύ, swift. — ἵππο-ς, δ, ἡ (stem ικ-φο), horse ('the swift one'); ἵππ-αρχο-ς, δ (R. αρχ, 463), cavalry commander; ἱππό-δρομο-ς, δ (δρόμος, a running), race-course; φίλ-ιππο-ς, -ο-ν (φίλος, fond), fond of

¹ See p. 164³.

² The const. in the act. is διαφθεῖρειν τινὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς, to blind ('destroy') one's eyes. In the pass. the dat. of the person (τινὶ) becomes

the subj., διαφθίρεται τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς, he has his eyes blinded.

³ that.

⁴ Cf. I. 10 above.

⁵ Cf. 553, II. 14, and see 224.

horses; ἵππ-ικός, -ή, -όν, of a horse or of cavalry; ἵππάζο-μαι, drive or ride a horse; ἵππα-σίᾱ, -ās, a riding; ἵππ-εύ-ς, -έως, δ, horseman; ἵππεύ-ω, ride; ἵππεῖᾱ, -ās (for ἵππεῖ-ια), cavalry; τέθρ-ἵππο-ν, τό (τέτταρες, four), team of four horses abreast, chariot and four. — ὀξύ-ς, -είᾱ, -ύ (οκ + σ = οξ), sharp, sour; ὀξύ-ος, -ε-ος, τό, sour wine.

αἰ-ῖδ-ς, -εῖ, f., sharp edge or point; αἰ-ς, -ūs, f., needle; αἰ-δ, sharpen; ἀκ-ερ, adj., sharp, pungent; ὀκ-ῖορ, adj., swifter; ἐκ-υ-ς, -ῖ, m., horse.

EDGE, EGG ('egg on'); acme, acro-bat, acro-polis, acro-stic, etc.

LESSON LXXIX.

Relative Pronouns.

565. The relative pronouns are ὅς, ἣ, ὅ, who, which, and ὅστις, ἣτις, ὅ τι, whoever, whichever. The latter is called the indefinite relative.

566.

PARADIGM.

S. N.	ὅς	ἣ	ὅ	D. N. A.	ὃ	ᾧ	ᾧ	P. N.	οἷ	αἷ	ᾧ
G.	οὗ	ἣς	οὗ	G. D.	οῖν	οῖν	οῖν	G.	ᾧν	ᾧν	ᾧν
D.	ᾧ	ἣί	ᾧ					D.	οῖς	αῖς	οῖς
A.	ὃν	ἣν	ὃ					A.	οὖς	ᾧς	ᾧ

567.

PARADIGM.

S. N.	ὅστις	ἣτις	ὅ τι
G.	οὗτινος, ὅτου	ἣστινος	οὗτινος, ὅτου
D.	ᾧτινι, ὅτῳ	ἣτινι	ᾧτινι, ὅτῳ
A.	ὃντινα	ἣντινα	ὅ τι
D. N. A.	ᾧτινε	ᾧτινε	ᾧτινε
G. D.	οἷντινοι	οἷντινοι	οἷντινοι
P. N.	οἷτινες	αἷτινες	ᾧτινα, ᾧττα
G.	ᾧντινων, ὅτων	ᾧντινων	ᾧντινων, ὅτων
D.	οἷσσι, ὅτοις	αἷσσι	οἷσσι, ὅτοις
A.	οὖστινας	ᾧστινας	ᾧτινα, ᾧττα

a. ὅστις is compounded of the simple relative ὅς and the indefinite τις, each part being separately declined.

b. ὃ τι is so written to distinguish it from ὅτι, *that, because*.

Examine the following: —

λύσομεν τὰς ἀμάξας ἃς ἔχομεν, *we will destroy the wagons which we have*.

ὑμεῖς δέ, οἱ ταῦτα ἐποιεῖτε, ἀποκρίνασθε, *do you, who managed this, make answer*.

ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖτε, ὅστις ὑμᾶς ἀπάξει, *ask for a guide to conduct you (who will conduct you)*.

568. Rule of Syntax. — The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, and follows its person; but the case of the relative is determined by the construction of the clause in which it stands.

Examine the following: —

ἔχουσι δὲ ἃ βούλονται, *they have what they want (i.e. ταῦτα ἃ βούλονται)*.

οὐκ ἀπεκρύπτετο ἣν εἶχε γνώμην, *he did not conceal his opinion (i.e. τὴν γνώμην ἣν εἶχε)*.

569. Rule of Syntax. — The antecedent of the relative may be omitted, when it is implied in the context. Sometimes it is incorporated into the relative clause.

Examine the following: —

ἔρωτᾷ ὃ τι βουλόμεθα, *he asks what we want*.

ἡμῖν δὲ λέγετε ὃ τι ἔλεγεν, *tell us what he said*.

570. Rule of Syntax. — The indefinite relative ὅστις is often used to introduce an indirect question. See 558.

571. Besides the above, there occur frequently in Attic prose the relatives of *quality*, οἷος, οἷᾶ, οἷον, and ὁποῖος, ὁποῖᾶ, ὁποῖον, *of which kind, (such) as* (Lat. *quālis*), answering to the demonstrative τοιοῦτος (542), and of *quantity*, ὅσος, ὅση, ὅσον, and ὁπόσος, ὁπόση, ὁπόσον, *how much, how many, (as much or as many) as* (Lat. *quantus*), answering to τοσοῦτος (542). For the corresponding interrogatives, see 559.

a. The rules in 568, 569, and 570, apply also to οἷος, ὁποῖος, ὅσος, ὁπόσος, but in indirect questions οἷος and ὅσος may be used as well as the general or indefinite relatives ὁποῖος and ὁπόσος.

572.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. σὺ οὖν συμβούλευσον ἡμῖν ὃ τι σοι δοκεῖ ἄριστον εἶναι. 2. εἰάν καλῶς καταπράξωσιν ἐφ' ἃ στρατεύομαι, αὐτοὺς κατάξω οἰκαδε. 3. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασιλεία ἦν καὶ παράδεισος μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκείνος ἐθήρευν ἀπὸ ἵππου. 4. ἐνταῦθα καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἔχοντι ἦκειν ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα. 5. ὥρᾳ ἐστὶν ἡμῖν βουλεύεσθαι ὃ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. 6. ὑμῖν λέξω οἷός ἐστιν ὁ περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας σωτηριᾶς ἀγὼν οὗτος. 7. ὁποίοις δὲ λόγοις Κλέαρχος ἔπεισε Κύρον ἄλλη γέγραπται. 8. καὶ Ξενία ἄγειν παρήγγειλε τοὺς ἄνδρας πλὴν ὁπόσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν.¹ 9. τίς οὕτω μαίνεται ὅστις οὐ βούλεται σοι φίλος εἶναι; 10. λέξουσιν δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ οἷᾱ ἐστὶν ἡ ἀπορίᾱ ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης μένειν.¹ 11. Μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ Ὀρόντᾳ, ἔστιν ὃ τι σε ἠδίκησα²; 12. Κλέαρχος μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα δεῖ τὸν ἄρχοντα,³ οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἄπειροι ἦσαν. 13. δηλώσουσιν οἷους νομίζουσιν εἶναι τοὺς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους. 14. καὶ ἀρχικὸς ἐλέγετο εἶναι Κλέαρχος ὥς δυνατὸν⁴ ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου τρόπου οἶον κἀκεῖνος εἶχε· χαλεπὸς γὰρ ἦν. 15. ὅσων δὲ δὴ καὶ οἷων ἂν ἐλπίδων ἐμαντὸν στερήσαιμι, εἰ σέ τι κακὸν ἐπιχειρήσαιμι ποιεῖν, ταῦτα⁵ λέξω. 16. διαθεώμεθα ὅσῃν μὲν χώρᾳ καὶ οἷᾳ ἔχουσιν, ὅσους δὲ θεράποντας, ὅσα δὲ κτήνη, χρῦσόν δέ, ἐσθῆτα δέ.

¹ The inf. may depend on adjectives or substantives, especially on those which denote ability or fitness or the contrary. Cf. 560, I. 4.

² Is there any wrong that I have done you? For the accent of ἔστιν,

see 188 a. ὃ τι is a cognate acc. Cf. 485, I. 13.

³ Sc. φρονεῖν, subj. of δεῖ (352).

⁴ (so far) as (it was) possible.

⁵ ταῦτα repeats the preceding indirect question.

II. 1. Xenophon asks what we are doing. 2. And with her he sent soldiers whom Menon had. 3. And they ask him how large the army is. 4. But I will tell how many and what sort of ships he has. 5. But tell us what you were doing. 6. He orders the general to bring whatever force he has. 7. It is time to say what you think to be best. 8. Ask what he says to this. 9. There, alongside the road, was a spring at¹ which Midas is said to have caught² the satyr. 10. And to him Cyrus sent gifts that are regarded precious at court.³ 11. Here was a very large and beautiful park that had⁴ (in it) all that⁵ the seasons produce.

573. πρό, pro, before.

πρό, prep., *before, in front of, in behalf of*; **φρουρό-ς**, δ (for **προ-φορ-ο-ς**, cf. **δράω**, *watch over, see*), *one who watches in defence of, guard*; **φρουρέ-ω**, *watch, guard*; **φρούρ-αρχο-ς**, δ (R. **αρχ**, 463), *commander of a watch*; **φρούρ-ιο-ν**, τό, *guarded post, garrison*; **πρό-τερο-ς**, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, comp., *former, previous*; **προτερα-ῖο-ς**, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, *on the preceding day*; **πρ-ὲν** (for **προ-ῖον**), conj., *before, until*; **πρό-σω**, by metathesis and assimilation **πρόρ-ω**, adv., *forwards, in advance, far off*; **πρῶτ**, contr. **πρῶ**, adv., *early*; **πρῶ-το-ς**, -η, -ο-ν, *first*; **πρωτεύ-ω**, *be first*; **πρᾶν-ής**, -ές (for **πρα-φα-ν-ης**), *bent forward, headlong*; **πρῶ-ρα**, -ᾱς, *prows*; **πρῶρ-εῦ-ς**, -έ-ως, δ, *man at the bow, lookout*.

πρῶ, prep., *before*; **prae**, prep., *before*; **pr-ior**, adj., *former*; **prī-cu-s**, adj., *of old*; **prī-tīnu-s**, adj., *primitive*; **prī-mu-s**, adj., *first*; **por-rō**, adv., *forward*; **prō-nu-s**, adj., *bent forward*; **prī-uu-s**, adj., *individual, peculiar*.

FOR, FORE.

LESSON LXXX.

First Passive System.

Review the first passive system of λύω in 677.

574. For modifications of the theme in vowel verbs, see 254 a b, 441 with a b, and 442.

¹ ἐπὶ with dat.

² Aor. inf. Cf. 356, I. 2.

³ παρὰ βασιλεῖ.

⁴ Partic. of ἔχω.

⁵ πάντα ὅσα.

575. Before -θε- a labial or palatal mute becomes or remains co-ordinate (114 a), a lingual mute becomes σ. Thus:—

κρύπτω (κρυφ-), *hide*, ἐκρύφθην; πέμπω (πεμπ-), *send*, ἐπέμφθην; τρέπω (τρεπ-), *turn*, ἐτρέφθην; ῥίπτω (ρίφ-, ριφ-), *throw*, ἐρρίφθην.

ἄγω (αγ-), *lead*, ἤχθην; ἐλέγχω (ελεγχ-), *convict*, ἠλέγχθην; λέγω (λεγ-), *say*, ἐλέχθην; πράττω (πᾶγ-), *do*, ἐπράχθην; ταραττω (ταραχ-), *disturb*, ἐταράχθην; τάττω (ταγ-), *arrange*, ἐτάχθην.

ἀναγκάζω (αναγκαδ-), *compel*, ἠναγκάσθην; βιάζομαι (βιαδ-), *force*, ἐβιάσθην; ἡδομαι (ἡδ-), *be glad*, ἡσθην; νομίζω (νομιδ-), *think*, ἐνομίσθην; πορίζω (ποριδ-), *furnish*, ἐπορίσθην.

576. Verbs of the second class (492, 493) have the strong form of the theme. Thus:—

λείπω (λιπ-), *leave*, ἐλείφθην; πείθω (πιθ-), *persuade*, ἐπείσθην.

577. Liquid verbs suffer in the main the same changes in the first passive system as in the first perfect system (504–507). Thus:—

ἄγγέλλω (αγγελ-), *announce*, ἠγγέλθην; τείνω (τεν-), *stretch*, ἐτάθην; κρίνω (κριν-), *distinguish*, ἐκρίθην; βάλλω (βαλ-), *throw*, ἐβλήθην.

578. If ν is not dropped, it remains unchanged. Thus:—

αἰσχύνω (αισχυν-), *shame*, ἤσχύνθην; περαίνω (περαν-), *accomplish*, ἐπεράνθην; φαίνω (φαν-), *show*, ἐφάνθην; χαλεπαίνω (χαλεπαν-), *be angry*, ἐχαλεπάνθην.

579.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. τούτοις¹ ἦσθη Κῦρος. 2. ἐπορεύθημεν πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν. 3. ὀλίγοι ἄμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν. 4. καὶ πεισθέντες εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο. 5. ἀπεκρύφθησαν καὶ οἱ ἄνθρωποι καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τῷ καπνῷ.² 6. οὕτω γὰρ ἤκιστα διασπασθήσεται τὰ στρατεύματα. 7. ἡγεμόνες δὲ ἄριστοι Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἐνομίσθησαν εἶναι. 8. ἐν ᾧ³ δὲ ὀπλίζοντο, ἦκου οἱ προπεμφθέντες⁴ σκοποί. 9. ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς Κερασουν-

¹ The dat. is used to denote the cause, especially with verbs of feeling.

² See p. 47⁵.

³ ἐν ᾧ (sc. χρόνῳ), while.

⁴ See 369.

τίων¹ θάψαι αὐτοὺς ἐδεήθημεν. 10. χρή, ἂν ἐλεγχθῶσι, τούτους τιμωρηθῆναι. 11. ἄρ' ἡσθήσεται βασιλεύς, ἂν οἴκαδε πορευώμεθα ; 12. βασιλεὺς δὲ ἐπείσθη τε καὶ τοὺς σατράπῃς μετεπέμψατο πρὸς αὐτόν. 13. καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ ἐπράχθη, ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν λόγῳ δεηλῶται. 14. ὁμολογήθη Κύρος πρὸς πάντων κράτιστος δὴ γίγνεσθαι θεραπεύειν² τοὺς φίλους. 15. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ, καὶ Χειρίσοφος αὐτῷ ἐχαλεπάνθη, ὅτι οὐκ εἰς κώμᾳς ἦγαγεν. 16. καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες πολλοὺς τῶν ἀρπαζόντων ἀπέκτειναν οἱ Ἕλληνες. 17. συνταξάμενοι ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίᾳς οὐ μείον ἢ πέντε παρασάγγας. 18. τοιγαροῦν κράτιστοι δὴ ὑπηρεταὶ παντὸς ἔργου Κύρῳ ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι.³ 19. οὐδ' ὥς Κύρος ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλ' ἐπεμελείτο ὃ τι ποιήσει βασιλεύς. 20. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ὥς νόμος⁴ αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην, οὕτω ταχθῆναι· ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων.

II. 1. I was compelled to pursue. 2. And corselets will be furnished them. 3. But the soldiers were sent to⁵ the king. 4. The Greek cavalry were routed. 5. And Clearchus was excessively troubled. 6. But the baggage was thrown into the river. 7. How should we best make an advance? 8. They advanced four stages in this manner.⁶ 9. We felt ashamed before both gods and men⁷ to abandon them. 10. The soldiers were drawn up⁸ and forced to proceed. 11. But the commanders were persuaded by the general to send the captives away. 12. But the enemy fled in fear⁹ that they would be shut off. 13. If these should be worsted, nobody would be left. 14. And he enjoins on these to send him¹⁰ the money, if he himself safely escapes.

¹ Cf. 356, I. 11.

² Cf. 572, I. 8.

³ See 354.

⁴ Sc. ἐστίν.

⁵ ὥς with acc.

⁶ Dat. of τρόπος. Cf. 305, I. 16.

⁷ Cf. 479, I. 10.

⁸ Aor. partic.

⁹ Aor. partic. of δειδω. See 379.

¹⁰ See 528.

580. R. **σπα, spa**, draw, stretch.

σπά-ω, draw; **ἀ-σπάζο-μαι**, draw to oneself, embrace; **στά-δ-ιο-ν**, τό (for **σπα-δ-ιο-ν**), extended space, stadium; **σπά-ν-ι-ς**, -ε-ως, ἡ, scarceness, lack ('straining'); **σπάν-ιο-ς**, -ᾱ, -ο-ν, scanty; **σπανίζω**, lack, need; **πέν-ο-μαι** (for **σπεν-ο-μαι**), strain or exert oneself, toil, be poor; **πεν-ιά**, -ᾱς, poverty; **πέν-η-ς**, -ητ-ος, ὁ, day-labourer, poor man; **πείνα**, -ης (for **πεν-ια**), hunger, famine; **πεινά-ω**, be hungry; **πόν-ο-ς**, ὁ, labour; **ἐπί-πονο-ς**, -ο-ν, laborious, painful; **πονέ-ω**, work hard; **πονη-ρό-ς**, -ᾱ, -ό-ν, troublesome, bad; **πονηρῶς**, adv., with difficulty; **παμ-πόνηρο-ς**, -ο-ν (**πᾶς**, 544), wholly bad; **πά-σχ-ω** (for **πα-θ-σκ-ω**), be drawn tight, experience, suffer; **πάθ-ος**, -ε-ος, τό, experience, accident; **ἀ-παθής**, -ές, without experience of, free from; **ἡδυ-παθής**, -ές (ἡδύς, pleasant), experiencing pleasure; **ἡδυπαθέ-ω**, live pleasantly, be luxurious; **πάθη-μα**, -ατ-ος, τό, anything that is experienced, misfortune.

spa-t-iu-m, -ī, n., space, room; **pa-ti-o-r**, bear, suffer; **spē-s**, speī, f., hope; **prō-spe-r-u-s**, adj., according to hope, favourable; **pēn-ūr-ia**, -ae, f., destitution; **pann-u-s**, -ī, m., piece of cloth; **pal-la**, -ae, f., mantle.

SPAN, SPIN, SPINDLE, SPIDER, SPEED, SPADE, **spasm**, **pathos**, **allopathy**, **homoeo-pathy**, **anti-pathy**, **a-pathy**, **sym-pathy**.

LESSON LXXXI.

Verbal Adjectives.

581. Verbal adjectives are derived from the themes of verbs and are generally equivalent to passive participles in meaning. Their stems are formed by adding the suffixes **-το** and **-τεο** to the theme. Thus **λυ-τό-ς**, **λυ-τή**, **λυ-τό-ν**, loosed, capable of being loosed, **λυ-τέο-ς**, **λυ-τέᾱ**, **λυ-τέο-ν**, to be loosed.

582. The theme has the same form as in the first aorist passive, but a final rough mute is made smooth before **-τος** and **-τεος**, i.e. it becomes co-ordinate (114 a). Thus:—

ποιέω, do, first aor. pass. **ἐποίηθην**, verbal **ποιητός**; **πορεύομαι**, advance, **ἐπορεύθην**, **πορευτός**; **πέμπω**, send, **ἐπέμφθην**, **πεμπτός**; **θαυμάζω**, wonder at, **ἐθαυμάσθην**, **θαυμαστός**; **πείθω**, persuade, mid. obey, **ἐπεισθην**, **πειστός**; **διώκω**, pursue, **ἐδιώχθην**, **διωκτός**; **ἀλλάττω**, change, **ἠλλάχθην**, **ἀλλακτός**; **λέγω**, say, **ἐλέχθην**, **λεκτός**; **ὀρύττω**, dig, **ὠρύχθην**, **ὀρυκτός**.

Examine the following:—

ἄλλαι νῆες μεταπεμπταί εἰσίν, other ships must be sent for.

ὠφελγητᾱ σοι ἡ πόλις ἐστίν, the city must be succoured by you.

583. Rule of Syntax. — The verbal in *-τεος*, when used in the personal construction, is always passive in sense, and expresses *necessity*, like the Latin participle in *-dus*. The *agent* is expressed by the dative.

Examine the following: —

τὴν πορείαν ὑμῖν πεζῇ ποιητέον, *you must make the journey on foot.*
ταῦτα ἡμῖν ποιητέον ἐστίν, *we must do this.*

πειστέον ἐστὶ τῷ στρατηγῷ ὑμῖν, *you must obey your general.*

584. Rule of Syntax. — The verbal in *-τεος*, when used in the impersonal construction (which is the more common), is in the nominative singular neuter, with *ἐστί* expressed or understood. It is practically active in sense, and like its verb may have an object. The *agent* is expressed by the dative.

585.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ὡς¹ βασιλεῆ σοι πορευτέον² τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν.
2. δῆλόν ἐστιν ὅτι ὑπόπεμπτos ἦν ὁ ἀνὴρ. 3. ἐπεὶ δὲ πλοῖα ἱκανὰ οὐκ ἦν, τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐδόκει ἀποπορευτέον εἶναι³ πεζῇ. 4. ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὴν πορείαν πεζῇ ποιητέον· οὐ γάρ ἐστι πλοῖα. 5. πορευτέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταθμοὺς ὡς⁴ μακροτάτους. 6. διασκηνητέον τοῖς στρατιώταις εἰς τὰς κώμας εἰς στέγας. 7. σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχομεν. 8. ἡμῖν δὲ πάντα ποιητέα ὡς μήποτ' ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις⁵ γενώμεθα. 9. παρὴν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, μετὰπεμπτos ὑπὸ Κύρου. 10. ἔτι δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν ἀπαλλακτέον, πλὴν ὅσα πολέμου ἔνεκεν ἢ σίτων ἢ ποτῶν ἔχομεν. 11. ἐγὼ δὲ ὑμῶν τοὺς οἴκαδε βουλομένους ἀποπορεύεσθαι τοῖς οἴκοι⁶

¹ Cf. 391, I. 11.

² The copula *ἐστί* is frequently omitted, especially with verbals in *-τεος* (584).

³ Inf. in indirect discourse (354) after *ἐδόκει*, it seemed to the sol-

diers, etc., i.e. they thought. Cf. 517, I. 10.

⁴ Cf. 470, I. 21.

⁵ Cf. 189, I. 9.

⁶ Cf. 498, I. 8. For the accent, see 28.

ζηλωτοὺς ποιήσω. 12. σκεπτόον δέ, ὧ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ὅπως πλοῖα ἱκανὰ ἡμῖν ἔσται. 13. οὐκ ἂν εἶη θαυμαστὸν εἰ κυκλωθείη τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας. 14. ὅμως δὲ λεκτέον ἐμοὶ τὸ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ὄνομα. 15. τοσαῦτα δὲ ὄρη ὑμῖν ἐστι πορευτέα, ἃ ἡμῖν ἔξεστιν ἄπορα ὑμῖν παρέχειν. 16. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Ξενοφῶν παρῆν σὺν τοῖς πελτασταῖς, ἐνταῦθα δὴ λέγει Χειρίσοφος· Εἰς καλὸν¹ ἦκετε· ἐπὶ γὰρ τὸ ὄρος πορευτέον. 17. αἱ δ' οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι· αἱ δὲ εἰσοδοὶ τοῖς μὲν ὑποζυγίοις ὀρυκταί, οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος.

II. 1. The boys must obey their teacher. 2. On the following day the generals thought that they must advance. 3. We must not lose courage. 4. This it seems to me must be considered. 5. For there are many² (reasons) why³ I must not do this. 6. Nevertheless this² must be said, for I am acquainted with the country. 7. Now⁴ the generals thought that they ought to advance through the mountains. 8. Xenophon thought that pursuit was necessary. 9. Every measure must be taken⁵ that we may not fall into his hands.⁶ 10. It would not be surprising if Cyrus should think that he must be rid of the beasts of burden. 11. Chirisophus says that the generals ought to consider what the hindrance⁷ is.

586. R. δοκ, dec, beseem.

δοκ-έω, seem, seem best, think; δόγ-μα, -ατ-ος, τό, that which seems to one, principle; δόξα, -ης (for δοκ-σα), opinion, renown; ξυ-δοξο-ς, -ο-ν, in renown; δοξάζω, think, believe; δόκ-ιμο-ς, -ο-ν, approved; δοκιμάζω, test, examine; δοκιμα-σία, -ās, test, examination.

dec-et, impers., it is seemly, it behooves; dec-us, -or-is, n., grace, glory; dec-or, -ōr-is, m., comeliness; decōr-u-s, adj., seemly; dīg-nu-s, adj., worthy.

dogma, doxo-logy, hetero-dox, ortho-dox, para-dox.

¹ in the nick of time. Sc. χρόνον.

² Use the neut. plur.

³ δι' α.

⁴ δᾶ.

⁵ Every measure must be taken, i.e. we must do everything.

⁶ Cf. I. 8 above.

⁷ Cf. 373, I. 6.

LESSON LXXXII.

Second Passive System.

. Review 437, 438, 489.

587. The stem of the *second aorist passive* is formed by adding the tense-suffix ϵ - to the theme. This suffix is lengthened to η - throughout the indicative, and in the other moods before a single consonant in the ending. As a secondary tense the second aorist passive has augment in the indicative. It has the inflexion of the first aorist passive.

588. The *second future passive* adds σ^o/ϵ - to the stem of the second aorist passive, with the tense-suffix ϵ - lengthened to η -. It has the inflexion of the first future passive.

Conjugate the second passive system of $\sigma\tau\acute{\epsilon}\lambda\lambda\omega$ in 688.

a. An ϵ in the theme generally becomes α .

Conjugate also the second passive system of any of the verbs given below.

589. The following verbs of the first four classes occur in the second passive system.

$\gamma\rho\acute{\alpha}\phi\omega$ ($\gamma\rho\alpha\phi$ -), *write*, $\epsilon\gamma\rho\acute{\alpha}\phi\eta\nu$;

$\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\omega$ ($\lambda\epsilon\gamma$ -), *gather*,¹ $\epsilon\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\eta\nu$;

$\sigma\rho\acute{\epsilon}\phi\omega$ ($\sigma\rho\acute{\epsilon}\phi$ -), *turn, twist*, $\epsilon\sigma\rho\acute{\alpha}\phi\eta\nu$;

$\tau\rho\acute{\iota}\beta\omega$ ($\tau\rho\acute{\iota}\beta$ -, $\tau\rho\acute{\iota}\beta$ -), *rub*, $\epsilon\tau\rho\acute{\iota}\beta\eta\nu$.

$\tau\acute{\eta}\kappa\omega$ ($\tau\alpha\kappa$ -), *melt*, $\epsilon\tau\acute{\alpha}\kappa\eta\nu$.

$\beta\lambda\acute{\alpha}\pi\tau\omega$ ($\beta\lambda\alpha\beta$ -), *injure*, $\epsilon\beta\lambda\acute{\alpha}\beta\eta\nu$;

$\kappa\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\pi\tau\omega$ ($\kappa\lambda\epsilon\pi$ -), *steal*, $\epsilon\kappa\lambda\acute{\alpha}\pi\eta\nu$;

$\rho\acute{\iota}\pi\tau\omega$ ($\rho\acute{\iota}\phi$ -, $\rho\acute{\iota}\phi$ -) *throw*, $\epsilon\rho\rho\acute{\iota}\phi\eta\nu$;⁴

$\delta\acute{\epsilon}\rho\omega$ ($\delta\epsilon\rho$ -), *flay*, $\epsilon\delta\acute{\alpha}\rho\eta\nu$;

$\pi\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\kappa\omega$ ($\pi\lambda\epsilon\kappa$ -), *weave*, $\epsilon\pi\lambda\acute{\alpha}\kappa\eta\nu$;

$\tau\rho\acute{\epsilon}\pi\omega$ ($\tau\rho\epsilon\pi$ -), *turn, bend*, $\epsilon\tau\rho\acute{\alpha}\pi\eta\nu$;²

$\theta\acute{\alpha}\pi\tau\omega$ ³ ($\tau\alpha\phi$ -), *bury*, $\epsilon\tau\acute{\alpha}\phi\eta\nu$;

$\kappa\acute{o}\pi\tau\omega$ ($\kappa\omicron\pi$ -), *cut*, $\epsilon\kappa\acute{o}\pi\eta\nu$;

$\sigma\kappa\acute{\alpha}\pi\tau\omega$ ($\sigma\kappa\alpha\phi$ -), *dig*, $\epsilon\sigma\kappa\acute{\alpha}\phi\eta\nu$.

¹ $\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\omega$ in the sense of *gather, count*, is used only in compounds in Attic prose. In the sense of *say* ('tell off' one's words, *tell*) it has the first aor. pass.

² Usually in the sense of the mid., *turn oneself, turn*, with intrans. meaning.

³ See p. 166³.

⁴ See p. 166².

ἀλλάττω (αλλαγ-), *change*, ἡλλάγην; πλῆττω (πληγ-), *smite*, ἐπλήγην;¹
 σπείρω (σπερ-), *sow*, ἐσπάρην; σφάλλω (σφαλ-), *trip up*, ἐσφάλην;
 σφάττω (σφαγ-), *slay*, ἐσφάγην; φαίνω (φαν-), *show*, ἐφάνην;²
 φθείρω (φθερ-), *destroy*, ἐφθάρην.

590.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ὁ Γλοῦς αὐτοῖς ἐπεφάνη μετ' ἄλλων. 2. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες στραφέντες εἰς μάχην παρεσκευάζοντο. 3. καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατεκόπησάν τινες ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 4. εἰ πορευθεῖη ἐπὶ τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς, ἐκπλαγεῖεν ἄν. 5. ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς κόμης γήλοφος ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ ἀνестράφησαν οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέᾱ. 6. ἐπλήγη ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως. 7. Ὅμως δὲ καὶ λέξον, ἔφη, ἐκ τίνος³ ἐπλήγης. 8. οὐκ ἂν εἴη θαυμαστὸν εἰ διακοπεῖη ἡμῶν ἢ φάλαγξ. 9. ἐφάνη κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη λευκή. 10. ἂν δέ τι⁴ σφαλῇ, οὐ σπανίσει τῶν βοηθησόντων.⁵ 11. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία οὐκ ἐφάνησαν οἱ πολέμιοι, οὐδὲ τῇ τρίτῃ. 12. οὐ πολλῶ⁶ δὲ ὕστερον οἱ λοχαγοὶ κατακοπήσονται. 13. ἐπιβουλεύει Κύρῳ, καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσῃς καταλλαγεῖς δέ. 14. καὶ ἐβουλευόμεθα σὺν τούτοις ὅπως ἂν ταφείησαν⁷ οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων νεκροί. 15. ἐνταῦθα οἱ πελτασταὶ ἐδίωκον μέχρι τὸ δεξιὸν αὐτὸν διεσπάρη. 16. πρὶν γὰρ δὴ καταλῦσαι⁸ τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἄριστον, βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη. 17. ὥς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διεσπάρησαν καὶ οἱ Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν⁹ ὁρμήσαντες. 18. εἰ μέντοι πλείους συλλεγεῖεν, κινδυνεύσειεν ἂν διαφθαρῆναι πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος. 19. πολλὰ δὲ πρόβατα καὶ αἵγες καὶ βόες

¹ In compounds, the form of the second aor. is ἐπλάγην, as ἐκπλήττω, *strike out of one's senses*, *astound*, second aor. ἐξεπλάγην.

² In the sense of the mid., *show oneself*, *appear*, whereas the first aor. pass. (578) has its regular pass. force, *be shown*.

³ in consequence of what, i.e. why.

⁴ Cognate acc. with σφαλῇ. Cf. 485, I. 13.

⁵ Cf. 308, I. 2.

⁶ Cf. 470, I. 10.

⁷ The direct form of the question was, πῶς ἂν ταφείησαν. See p. 104¹⁴.

⁸ Cf. 487, line 13, and note.

⁹ Cf. 563, I. 15.

καὶ ὄντοι ἀπεδάρησαν. 20. ἡνίκα δ' ἦν δεῖλη, ἐξαπίνης οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπεφάνησαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ.

II. 1. And those outside¹ were cut down. 2. If they should be reconciled, the war would come to an end. 3. Mithridates again appeared with a thousand horsemen. 4. You were not hurt at all.² 5. How³ he persuaded Cyrus will be described elsewhere. 6. The barbarians turned⁴ and fled. 7. And the snow had melted⁵ on account of the spring. 8. In the afternoon⁶ a cloud of dust was seen. 9. The soldiers came together⁴ and deliberated. 10. Show yourselves⁵ the bravest of the captains. 11. They said that the companies had been cut down⁷ by the Cilicians. 12. If the army should be scattered, it would be destroyed by the enemy.⁸

591. R. λεγ, leg, gather.

λέγ-ω, gather, count, tell, say; **λεκ-τό-ς**, -ή, -όν, selected; **ἀπό-λεκτο-ς**, -ον, selected, picked; **ἐπί-λεκτο-ς**, -ον, selected; **λεκ-τέο-ς**, -α, -ον, to be said; **λόγ-ο-ς**, ό, word, saying, reason; **ἀπο-λογέ-ο-μαι**, say in defence; **σπουδαιο-λογέ-ω** (**σπουδαίω-ς**, serious), carry on an earnest conversation; **δμό-λογο-ς**, -ον (δμός, one and the same), saying the same, agreeing; **δμολογέ-ω**, agree, confess; **δμολογουμένως**, adv., avowedly, by common consent; **σύλ-λογο-ς**, ό, a gathering, meeting; **συλ-λογ-ή**, -ής, a gathering, levy; **λογίζο-μαι**, take into account, consider; **ἀ-λόγιστο-ς**, -ον, not considering, foolish.

leg-ō, collect, read; **leg-ión**, -όν-is, f., body of soldiers, legion; **leg-ū-men**, -in-is, n., pulse; **supel-lex**, -lecti-li-s, f., furniture; **ē-legā-n-s**, adj., accustomed to select, fastidious, choice; **lig-nu-m**, -ī, n., gathered wood, fire wood.

RAKE, RECKON; **dia-lect**, **lexicon**, **ana-logy**, **apo-logy**, **bio-logy**, **chrono-logy**, **philo-logy**, **apo-logue**, **cata-logue**, **dia-logue**, **epi-logue**, **homo-logous**, **log-arithm**, **logic**, **syl-logism**.

¹ Cf. 256, I. 13.

² οὐδέν, cognate acc. For the negatives, cf. 536, I. 11.

³ By what arguments.

⁴ Use the aor. partic.

⁵ Use the aor. pass.

⁶ Cf. I. 20 above.

⁷ They said, κατεκόπησαν. See 354.

⁸ See 223.

LESSON LXXXIII.

Review of Groups.—Reading Lesson.

Review the groups of related words in 554, 561, 564, 573, 580, 586, 591.

Review 140, 142.

Read and translate again 545.

Read and translate the following passage:—

592.

Kṛros.

VIII. Μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὦ Ὀρόντᾱ, τί σε ἠδίκησα; ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδέν. πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτᾱ, Οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὥς αὐτὸς σὺ ὁμολογεῖς οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικούμενος, κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώρᾱν; ἔφη ὁ
 5 Ὀρόντᾱς. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἐπὶ τῷ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος βωμῷ πείσᾱς ἐμὲ πιστὰ πάλιν ἔδωκās μοι καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; καὶ ταῦθ' ὡμολόγει ὁ Ὀρόντᾱς. Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεῖς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον ἐπιβουλεύεις μοι; ἐπεὶ δ' εἶπεν ὁ Ὀρόντᾱς ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθεῖς, ἠρώ-
 10 τησεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτόν, Ὀμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος γεγενῆσθαι; Ὀμολογῶ, ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντᾱς, ἀνάγκη γάρ ἐστιν. ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος, Ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιο τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός; ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο, Οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί
 15 γ' ἂν ποτε ἔτι δόξαιμι.

πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν, Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει. ὕμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπόφηναι τὴν γνώμην. Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε. Συμβουλευῶ ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐκποδῶν
 20 ποιεῖσθαι ὥς τάχιστα, ὥς μηκέτι δέῃ τοῦτον φυλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ σχολή; ἡμῖν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιεῖν. ταῦτα δ' ἔλεγον καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι. μετὰ ταῦτα ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τὸν Ὀρόντᾱν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἅπαντες. εἶτα δὲ ἐξήγον αὐτὸν

οἱ τεταγμένοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνὴν εἰσή-
 25 χθη τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν Κύρου σκηπτούχων, μετὰ ταῦτα
 οὔτε ζῶντα Ὀρόνταν οὔτε τεθνηκότα οὐδεὶς εἶδε πώποτε.
 τάφος δὲ οὐδεὶς πώποτε αὐτοῦ ἐφάνη.

NOTES.

1. τί: cognate acc. — 2. **ὅτι οὐδέν**: sc. ἡδίκησε from the preceding question. Orontas said, *Οὐδὲν ἡδίκησας, you did me no wrong.* Like τί above, οὐδέν is a cognate acc. — 4. **ἀδικούμενος**: the participle expresses *concession* (379). — **ἔφη**, said "Yes." — 7. **καὶ ταῦτα**, *this also*. — 9. **ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθεὶς**: sc. ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ from the preceding question, and compare **ὅτι οὐδέν** above. — 14. **οὐδέ**, *not even*. — **σοί γε**: the enclitic **γε** emphasizes **σοί**. — 20. **δέη**: for the mood, see 278. So **ῃ** following. — 22. **τῆς ζώνης**, *by the girdle*, gen. of the part laid hold of. — 23. **ἐπὶ θανάτῳ**, *for death*, i.e. *as a sign that he was condemned*. — 26. **τεθνηκότα**: perf. partic. of **θνήσκω**, *die*. — **οὐδεὶς**: see p. 202². — **εἶδε**: third sing. of the second aor. indic. **εἶδον**, *saw*.

Translate the following passage into Greek: —

593. There was in the army a certain Orontas, a Persian, who had already twice warred against Cyrus, but had been reconciled. First, at the orders of the king, he warred with him, holding the acropolis in Sardis; and afterwards he brought the Mysians together and ravaged his territory. Now he plotted against him the third time. Cyrus gave him 1,000 horse, and bade him check the enemy who were burning the forage before them. Orontas, thinking everything is ready for himself, writes a letter to Artaxerxes, saying that he will desert. By chance Cyrus got possession of this letter and arrested Orontas, and summoning some of the Persians and the Greek generals brought him to trial. He at once confessed that he had wronged Cyrus. On this Cyrus asked him, "Are you willing then again to become my friend?" He answered, "Not even if I should become (so), Cyrus, should I ever again seem to you (to be that)." Then those present expressed each his opinion, and all advised Cyrus to put the man out of the way, as a traitor. After that he was led into the tent of Artapates, and nobody ever again saw him alive.

LESSON LXXXIV.

Verbs of the Variable Vowel or First Class.

594. The present stems of verbs are formed from their themes in seven different ways. We therefore distinguish seven *classes* of verbs.

595. Variable Vowel or First Class.—Verbs of the First Class form the present stem by adding the variable vowel *-ο/-ε* to the theme. See 440.

596. This is the most numerous of all the classes. The most of the verbs in this class are *regular*, *i.e.* they present no peculiarities of formation, but they may at the same time be *defective*, *i.e.* they may lack some of the principal parts. See 253 a.

Review 254 with a b, 255 with a b.

597. Give the principal parts of the following vowel verbs of the First Class, all of which are regular and complete:—

βουλεύω, *plan*; θεραπεύω, *serve*; θηρεύω, *hunt*; κινδυνεύω, *run a risk, dare*; παιδεύω, *educate*; παύω, *make cease*; κωλύω, *hinder*.

άπατάω, *deceive*; έάω,¹ *permit*; έρωτάω, *ask a question*; τολμάω, *venture*.

αίτέω, *ask for*; άκολουθέω, *follow*; ζητέω,² *seek*; κατηγορέω,³ *accuse*; κινέω, *move*; λυπέω, *grieve*; νοτέω, *observe*; πολεμέω, *fight*; πονέω, *toil*; στερέω,² *rob*; τιμωρέω, *help, avenge*; χωρέω, *withdraw*; ώφελέω, *help*.

άξιόω, *think fit*; ζημιόω,² *fine, punish*.

598. The following are *middle deponents* (255 a):—

δωρέομαι, <i>present,</i>	δωρήσομαι,	έδωρησάμην,	δεδώρημαι.
θεάομαι, <i>gaze at, behold,</i>	θεάσομαι,	έθεασάμην,	τεθέαμαι.
κτηάομαι, <i>acquire, get,</i>	κτηήσομαι,	έκτησάμην,	κέκτημαι. ⁴

¹ See p. 83⁸. So έάω, έάσω, έιάσα, έϊάκα, έϊάμαι, έϊάθην.

² See 121.

³ Augmented and reduplicated as if a compound verb. See 128.

⁴ An exception to 121.

599. The following are *passive* deponents (255 b):—

ἀμυλλάσμαι, <i>contend</i> ,	ἀμυλλήσομαι,	ἡμιλλῶμαι,	ἡμιλλήθην.
ἐνθυμέομαι, <i>reflect</i> ,	ἐνθυμήσομαι,	ἐντεθύμημαι,	ἐντεθυμήθην.
ἡττάομαι, <i>be inferior</i> ,	ἡττήσομαι,	ἡττημαι,	ἡττήθην.

Review 441 with a b, 442.

600. There are some mute verbs of the First Class which present no peculiarities of formation, *i.e.* are regular. Thus:—

1. ἀρχω, <i>be first, begin, rule</i> , mid. <i>begin</i> ,			
ἄρξω	ἦρξα	ἦργμαι	ἦρχθην
2. βρέχω, <i>wet</i> , pass. <i>get wet</i> ,			
	ἔβρεξα	βέβρεγμαι	ἐβρέχθην
3. ἐλέγχω, <i>examine, convict, confute</i> ,			
ἐλέγξω	ἤλεγξα	ἐλήλεγμαι ¹	ἠλέγχθην
4. λέγω, <i>say, speak, tell, relate</i> ,			
λέξω	ἔλεξα	ἔλεγμαι ²	ἐλέχθην
5. σπεύδω, <i>hasten</i> ,			
σπεύσω	ἔσπευσα		
6. δέχομαι, <i>receive</i> ,			
δέξομαι	ἐδεξάμην	δέδεγμαι	ἐδέχθην ³
7. εὔχομαι, <i>pray</i> ,			
εὔξομαι	εὔξαμην ⁴		
8. φθέγγομαι, <i>make a sound, shout</i> ,			
φθέγξομαι	ἐφθεγξάμην	ἔφθεγμαι ⁵	

601.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι οὐδαμοῦ⁶ ἐφθέγγατο. 2. τὰ δένδρα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔκοπτον, σπεύδοντες ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου ὡς τάχιστα πορευθῆναι. 3. ἦν⁷ δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ

¹ See p. 209¹ and 550 a.

² But the compound διαλέγομαι, *converse*, has the perf. διείλεγμαι. See p. 235⁴.

³ With *passive* meaning, *was received*.

⁴ In some verbs which begin with *ευ* the augment may be omitted. See 76 end.

⁵ See 550 a.

⁶ Cf. 536, I. 11.

⁷ With several subjects connected by *and*, the verb is regularly in the plur. But it may agree with one of these subjects, generally the nearest or most important, and be understood with the rest.

Μίλητον στρατευομένων. 4. καὶ συνεκάλεσεν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν τῶν ἀρίστων Περσῶν ἑπτὰ καὶ Κλέαρχον. 5. ἀλλ' εὖ γε λέγεις, ὦ νεανίσκε, καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα. 6. ἐκτήσατο ἱκανὰ ὥστε καὶ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ οἰκείους ὠφελῆσαι.¹ 7. Ξενοφῶν δὲ τοῖς στρατιώταις παρεκελεύετο· Ἄνδρες, νῦν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα νομίζετε ἀμιλλᾶσθαι. 8. Πρόξενον καλέσας ἐρωτᾷ εἰ πάντες ἐπορεύθησαν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 9. καὶ Σεύθῃ ἐδωρήσατο φιάλην τε ἀργυρᾶν καὶ τάπιδά ἀξίαν δέκα μῶν.² 10. θεάσασθε οἷα ἡ κατάστασις ἡμῖν ἔσται τῆς στρατιᾶς. 11. κτήσομαι ἐκ τούτων ὄνομα μέγα καὶ δύναμιν μεγάλην καὶ χρήματα πολλά. 12. τῶν μὲν γὰρ νικῶντων τὸ ἄρχειν,³ τῶν δὲ ἡττωμένων τὸ δουλεύειν ἔστιν. 13. ἀγορᾶν δὲ παρῆχον τῷ στρατεύματι, καὶ ἐδέξαντο τοὺς Ἑλληνας. 14. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὴν θυσίαν ἦν εὗξαντο παρεσκευάζοντο. 15. ἦν δὲ Λακεδαιμονίους τε τοὺς παρόντας τῆς ἐξαπάτης⁴ τιμωρησώμεθα⁵ καὶ τὴν πόλιν διαρπάσωμεν, ἐνθὺμείσθε ἃ ἔσται ἐντεῦθεν. 16. καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν Ξενοφῶντα ἡτιῶντο, ὅτι ἐδίωκεν ἀπὸ τῆς φύλαγος καὶ αὐτίς τε ἐκινδύνευε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲν⁶ ἔβλαπτεν.

II. 1. But Clearchus hastened all the more.⁷ 2. Cyrus took care of his friends. 3. He received the gifts with pleasure. 4. Another presented a horse to Seuthes. 5. And the enemy began to use their bows. 6. The soldiers being in high⁸ hopes prayed that Cyrus might have success.⁹ 7. Reflect that we are now in great difficulties. 8. The enemy were contending for the height. 9. Nobody got wet to¹⁰ the knee. 10. Let him say what the soldiers¹¹ shall have. 11. They were urgent to

¹ Cf. 553, I. 19.

² Cf. 274, I. 15.

³ Cf. 454, I. 9.

⁴ Cf. 311, I. 10.

⁵ The mid. of *τιμωρέω* means *take vengeance on, punish*.

⁶ See p. 122 1.

⁷ *much* (πολύ) *more*.

⁸ Use *μέγας*.

⁹ Use the aor. inf.

¹⁰ *πρός* with acc.

¹¹ Cf. 92, I. 10.

proceed to Greece with all speed.¹ 12. If they are convicted, they shall be punished² as³ being ill-disposed to the Greeks.

602. R. 2 δακ, *dac*, *take*.

δακ-τ-υλο-ς, δ (*formed on a stem δακ-το-*), *that which grasps, finger, toe*; δακτύλ-ιο-ς, δ, *finger-ring*; δέχ-ο-μαι, Ionic δέκ-ο-μαι, *take, receive*; δοκ-ό-ς, δ, *sustaining beam, joist*; δωρο-δόκο-ς, -ο-ν (δῶρον, *gift*), *taking presents or bribes*; δωροδοκέ-ω, *take bribes*; δοχ-ή-, -ῆς, *receptacle*; διδοχο-ς, δ, *one who takes in turn, successor*. — δεξι-ό-ς, -ᾶ, -ό-ν (δεκ + σ), *on the right hand, right* (since the *right* hand was oftenest used in *taking*); δεξιά-, -ās (sc. χεῖρ), *right hand*; δεξιό-ο-μαι, *take by the right hand, welcome*; ὑπερ-δέξιο-ς, -ᾶ, -ο-ν, *above on the right, above*.

dig-itu-s, -ī, *m.*, *finger*; *dex-ter*, *adj.*, *on the right, handy, skilful*.

TOE, TONGS; *dactyl*, *date* (*the fruit*), *pan-dect*, *dock-yard*, *synecdoche*.

LESSON LXXXV.

Verbs of the First Class (continued).

603. In stating the principal parts of a verb (253) the second tenses, if they occur, are given either in place of the corresponding first tenses, or in addition to them if both occur.⁴

604. Some verbs of the First Class, chiefly mute verbs, form second tenses. Thus:—

1. ἄγω, <i>lead, bring</i> ,				
ἄξω	ἤγαγον ⁵	ἦχα	ἦγμαι	ἦχθην
2. ἀκούω, <i>hear</i> ,				
ἀκούσομαι ⁶	ἤκουσα	ἀκήκοα ⁷		ἠκούσθην ⁸
3. γράφω, <i>write</i> ,				
γράψω	ἔγραψα	γέγραφα	γέγραμμαι	ἐγράφη

¹ Cf. I. 2 above.

² Use τιμωρέω.

³ ὡς.

⁴ The meanings and principal parts of all the verbs that follow should be committed to memory.

⁵ See 491 a.

⁶ See p. 159².

⁷ See p. 209¹. The full form would be ακηκουα, but υ is dropped between two vowels. See 492 a.

⁸ See 441 b.

4. διώκω, <i>pursue, give chase,</i>				
διώξω	έδιώξα	δεδίωχα		έδιώχθην
5. έπομαι, <i>follow, accompany,</i>				
έψομαι	έσπόμην ¹			
6. έχω, <i>have, hold,</i>				
έξω and σχίσω ²	έσχον	έσχηκα	έσχημαι	
7. λέγω, ³ <i>gather,</i>				
	έλεξα	έλοχα ⁴	έλεγμαι	έλέγην and έλέχθην
8. οίγω, ⁵ <i>open,</i>				
οίξω	έφξα ⁶	έφγα and έφχα	έφγμαι	έφχθην
9. πέμπω, <i>send,</i>				
πέμψω	έπεμψα	πέπομφα	πέπεμμαι	έπέμφθην
10. στρέφω, <i>turn, twist,</i>				
στρέψω	έστρεψα	έστροφα	έστραμμαι ⁷	έστράφην and έστρέφθην ⁸
11. τρέπω, <i>turn, bend, divert,</i>				
τρέψω	έτρεψα and έτραπον ⁹	τέτροφα	τέτραμμαι ⁷	έτράπην ¹⁰ and έτρέφθην
12. τρέφω, <i>nourish, support,</i>				
θρέψω ¹¹	έθρεψα		τέθραμμαι ⁷	έτράφην and έθρέφθην ⁸
13. τρίβω, ¹² <i>rub,</i>				
τρίψω	έτριψα	τέτριφα	τέτριμμαι	έτριβην and έτρίφθην ¹³

¹ The root of the word is *σεπ*. *έπομαι* is for *σεπομαι*; *έσπόμην* for *εσεπομην*, the rough breathing coming in irregularly from the present. For the imperf. *είπόμην*, see p. 83⁸.

² See 491 c.

³ Used only in compounds in Attic.

⁴ In some verbs whose theme begins with a liquid the reduplication is irregularly *ει-*.

⁵ Used only in compounds in Attic prose, *άνοίγω*, being the common form.

⁶ *οίγω* irregularly has both the syllabic and the temporal augment (76). The reduplication assumes the same form (122).

⁷ See 552 a.

⁸ Rare in Attic prose.

⁹ Used in Attic prose only in the mid., in the intrans. sense, *turn oneself, turn*.

¹⁰ See p. 226².

¹¹ See p. 162¹.

¹² The theme is *τριβ-* in some of the tenses, in others *τριβ-*.

¹³ Less frequent than *έτριβην*.

605. Some verbs of the First Class add ϵ to the theme in some of the tenses. Thus:—

1. βούλομαι, <i>wish, will,</i>				
βουλήσομαι			βεβούλημαι	ἐβουλήθην
2. δέω, <i>need, mid. need, desire, request,</i>				
δεήσω	ἐδέησα	δεδέηκα	δεδέημαι	ἐδεήθην
3. δοκέω, <i>seem, seem best, think,</i>				
δόξω	ἔδοξα		δέδογμαι	ἐδόχθην
4. ἐθέλω, <i>wish, desire,</i>				
ἐθελήσω	ἠθέλησα	ἠθέληκα		
5. μάχομαι, <i>fight,</i>				
μαχοῦμαι ¹	ἔμαχασάμην		μεμάχημαι	
6. μένω, <i>remain,</i>				
μενῶ	ἔμεινα	μεμύνηκα		
7. νέμω, <i>distribute,</i>				
νεμῶ	ἔνειμα	νενέμηκα	νενέμημαι	ἐνεμήθην
8. οἶομαι, <i>think, believe,</i>				
οἰήσομαι				φήτηθην
9. ὠθέω, <i>push,</i>				
ῶσω	ἔωσα ²		ῶσμαι	ἔώσθην

606. Two important verbs of the First Class reduplicate the theme in the present by prefixing the initial consonant with ι . Thus:—

1. γίγνομαι, ³ <i>become,</i>				
γενήσομαι	ἐγενόμην	γέγονα	γενήνμαι	
2. πίπτω, ⁴ <i>fall,</i>				
πισοῦμαι	ἔπισον	πέπτωκα		

607.**EXERCISES.**

- I. 1. ἀκούσᾱς ταῦτα ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο.⁵
 2. Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἐβούλετο κοινῇ μετ' αὐτῶν τὴν πορείαν ποιεῖσθαι, νομίζων οὕτως ἀσφαλέστερον εἶναι.⁶ 3. ταῦτ'

¹ See p. 191^a.² ὠθέω takes the syllabic augment. See p. 83^b.³ See 491 b.⁴ See 491 d. In πέπτωκα the theme πετ- (πετ-) has the form πτο-.⁵ I.e. came to his senses.⁶ See 354.

ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατιῶται ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυρῶς τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. 4. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, ἔδοξε κατὰ τὰς κώμας ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι¹ τὰς τάξεις σκηνοῦν. 5. καὶ γὰρ² δέ, εἰ ἡμεῖς ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, ἔπεςθαι ὑμῖν βούλομαι. 6. ὁ δὲ Σιλᾶνός δέδοικε μὴ γένηται³ ταῦτα καὶ καταμείνῃ ἡ στρατιὰ. 7. ἐφείποντο δὲ τῶν πολεμίων συνειλεγμένοι τινές. 8. κατασχίσομεν τὰς πύλας, εἰ μὴ ἐκόντες ἀνοίξετε. 9. ἐγὼ δ' ἐξετράφημ ὀρφανὸς παρὰ Μηδόκῳ τῷ νῦν βασιλεῖ. 10. ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι τοὺς ἐπομένους πολεμίους φοβήσai. 11. ἐπίστευον μὲν Κύρῳ αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι, ἐπίστευον δ' οἱ ἄνδρες. 12. ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ ῥαθυμίᾳ ἐτράπετο, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων συλλέξας στρατεύμα ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί. 13. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται συλλεγόντες βουλευόνται εἰ κατὰ γῆν χρὴ πορευθῆναι. 14. σὺ οὖν πρὸς θεῶν συμβούλευσον ἡμῖν ὃ τι σοι δοκεῖ κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον εἶναι. 15. καὶ γὰρ δὴ ἔως πόλεμος ἦν τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, παρέμενεν. 16. ἦν γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἔπεςθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι. 17. διαπέμπων ἐκέλευε τοὺς φίλους τοῖς τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα ἄγουσιν⁴ ἵπποις ἐμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χιλόν. 18. καὶ ἔδει τοὺς ἱππεῆς ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ τοὺς ἵππους ἀναστρέψαντας πάλιν ἄνω πρὸς τὸν βωμόν ἄγειν. 19. ἀκούσας ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, ὠθεῖται⁵ Σωτηρίδαν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως.

II. 1. Cyrus thinks Abrocomas will do⁶ this. 2. And he endeavoured to restore the exiles.⁷ 3. Proxenus arrived⁸ with fifteen hundred hoplites. 4. The other (things) he has divided up among the generals and captains. 5. Many days were wasted here. 6. Well,⁹ if you like, stay in command of¹¹ the army. 7. It seemed best, therefore, to Clearchus to meet

¹ See 354.

² *I.e.* καὶ ἐγώ. See p. 55⁴.

³ *Cf.* 281, I. 1.

⁴ See 369.

⁵ Middle. See 197.

⁶ See 354, 350.

⁷ *those that had been exiled* (371).
Use the perf.

⁸ *Cf.* 454, I. 4.

⁹ See p. 25².

¹⁰ ἀλλὰ.

¹¹ *in command of*, ἐπὶ with dat.

Tissaphernes. 8. The Greeks pursued with might and main.¹ 9. To me, then, it did not seem best to bring the soldiers together. 10. They encamped each time a parasang² apart.³ 11. But the soldiers did not open the gates. 12. And he inscribed upon⁴ the offering both his own name and that of Proxenus. 13. But they were supported by the cattle which they had.

608. R. **σεχ**, *hold, have.*

ἔχ-ω (for **σεχ-ω**), *have, hold*; **ἵ-συχ-ω** (for **σι-σεχ-ω**), *hold, hold fast*; **ὑπ-ισχ-νέ-ο-μαι**, *hold oneself under, engage, promise*; **πλεον-έκ-τη-ς, -ου** (**πλέων**, *more*), *one who has or claims more than he ought*; **πλεονεκτέ-ω**, *claim too large a part, get the better*; **ἔχ-υπό-ς, -ᾶ, -ό-ν**, *tenable, strong*; **ἐν-έχυρο-ν, τό**, *that which holds one fast, pledge*; **ὄχ-ῆ, -ῆς**, *that which supports, nourishment*; **εὐ-ωχέ-ω**, *nourish well, entertain*; **εὐωχ-ιά, -ᾶς**, *feast*; **ὄχ-υπό-ς, -ᾶ, -ό-ν**, *tenable, strong*; **ἡνι-οχο-ς, ὁ** (**ἡνία**, *reins*), *one who holds the reins, driver*; **σκηπτοῦχο-ς, ὁ** (**σκηπτο-ν, σκῆπ-τρο-ν**, *staff, sceptre*), *sceptre-bearer*; **ὑπ-οχο-ς, -ο-ν**, *under control, subject to*; **σχε-δόν**, *adv., holding on, nearly*; **σχέ-τλ-ιο-ς, -ᾶ, -ο-ν**, *holding out, unflinching, cruel*; **σχῆ-μα, -ατ-ος, τό**, *way of holding oneself, form*; **σχο-λή, -ῆς**, *a holding up, leisure*; **σχολα-ῖο-ς, -ᾶ, -ο-ν**, *leisurely, slow*; **σχολαίως**, *adv., slowly*; **σχολάζω**, *be at leisure*; **ἄ-σχολο-ς, -ο-ν**, *without leisure, busy*; **ἄσχολ-ιά, -ᾶς**, *lack of leisure, business.*

SAIL; *ep-och, eun-uch, hectic, hector, scheme, school, scholastic, scholiast.*

LESSON LXXXVI.

Verbs of the Strong-Vowel or Second Class.

Review 492, 493, 503, 521 c, 552, 576.

609. The following verbs of the Second Class have themes ending in a mute:—

1. **λείπω** (**λιπ-**), *leave,*

λείψω

ἔλιπον

ἔλοιπα

λείψαι

ἐλείφθην

¹ *with might and main, κατά κράτος.*

² *Cf. 373, I. 11.*

³ *being distant from (ἀπέχω) one another.*

⁴ *ἐπί with dat.*

2. πείθω (πιθ-), <i>persuade</i> , mid. <i>obey</i> ,				
πείσω	ἔπεισα	πέπεικα and πέποιθα ¹	πέπεισμαι	ἐπείσθην
3. τήκω (τακ-), <i>melt</i> ,				
τήξω	ἔτηξα	τέτηκα ²		ἐτάκην and ἐτήχθην ³
4. φείδομαι (φιδ-), <i>spare</i> ,				
φείσομαι	ἔφεισάμην			
5. φεύγω (φυγ-), <i>flee</i> ,				
φεύξομαι and φευξοῦμαι ⁴	ἔφυγον	πέφευγα		

610. The following verbs of the Second Class have themes ending in *υ*:—

1. θέω (θυ-), <i>run</i> ,				
θεύσομαι ⁵				
2. νέω (νυ-), <i>swim</i> ,				
νευσοῦμαι ⁴	ἔνευσα	νένευκα		
3. πλέω (πλυ-), <i>sail</i> ,				
πλεύσομαι and πλευσοῦμαι ⁴	ἔπλευσα	πέπλευκα	πέπλευσμαι ⁶	
4. πνέω (πνυ-), <i>breathe</i> ,				
πνευσοῦμαι ⁴	ἔπνευσα	πέπνευκα		
5. ῥέω (ρυ-), <i>flow</i> ,				
ρεύσομαι ⁶		ἔρρῡκα ⁷		ἔρρῡην ⁸
6. χέω (χυ-), <i>pour</i> ,				
χέω ⁹	ἔχεα	κέχυκα ¹⁰	κέχυμαι	ἐχύθην

¹ Intrans., with the force of a pres., *trust*.

² See p. 196¹.

³ Rare in Attic prose.

⁴ See p. 174¹ and p. 159².

⁵ See p. 159².

⁶ See 441 b.

⁷ The short form of the theme is used against the rule (503), but is increased by *ε*, as in some verbs of the first class (605).

⁸ Used in the act. sense, *flowed*.

⁹ For *χευσω*. *σ* is irregularly dropped, and *υ* is then omitted between the two vowels (492 a). The fut., therefore, has the same form as the pres. In the same manner the aor. *ἔχεα* stands for *εχευσα*.

¹⁰ In the last three principal parts the short form of the theme is used against the rule (503, 552, 576).

611.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἀλλ' ἔφευγον διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸν σταθμὸν ἔνθεν ὥρμηντο. 2. καὶ πλοῖα πλεί ἐν ταύταις ταῖς διώρυξι σῖταγωγὰ. 3. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄβατα ἦν τὰ χωρία, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἵππον ἔσπενδε πεζῇ. 4. οὐδὲ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐδίωκον, ὑποφειδόμενοι. 5. οἱ δ' Ἕλληνες στρέψαντες ἔφευγον διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὅτι τάχιστα. 6. καὶ πάνυ ἄκράτος ἔσται ὁ οἶνος, ἔὰν μή τις ὕδωρ ἐπιχέῃ.¹ 7. διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας οὖν ἀνάγκας ὑπελείποντό τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν. 8. ὑμῖν² δὲ ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ εἰς λοχᾶγίᾱς. 9. αὐτοὶ δὲ λιπόντες τὰς τάξεις προθέοντες¹ ἀρπάζειν ἤθελον. 10. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρξαντο ἀποχωρεῖν, ἐπεξέθεον ἔνδοθεν πολλοὶ γέρρα καὶ λόγχᾱς ἔχοντες. 11. οἱ δὲ πολέμοιοι ἀντιπαραθέοντες οἱ μὲν³ ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιόν, οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον, διεσπάρσθησαν. 12. ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἐκλιπόντες οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες φευξοῦνται εἰς χωρίον ὄχυρόν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. 13. ἂν δὲ πλέητε,¹ ἔστιν⁴ ἐνθένδε εἰς Σινώπην παραπλευσαι. 14. εὐθύς οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν αὐτὸς τε ἔσπενδε καὶ τοῖς νεανίσκοις⁵ ἐγχεῖν οἶνον ἐκέλευεν. 15. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν διαπλεύσας ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα. 16. ἀλλ' ἔάν που οἱ πολέμοιοι καταλίπωσιν αὐτοῖς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐνταῦθα πορευσόμεθα. 17. μόνοι δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν, οὐδὲ⁶ ἰππέᾱ οὐδένα⁶ σύμμαχον ἔχοντες. 18. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμῖν πράγματα παρεῖχον, ἐνηδρεύσαμεν, ὅπερ⁷ ἡμᾶς καὶ ἀναπνεῦσαι ἐποίησεν. 19. ἔχοντες τὰ ἐγχειρίδια γυμνοὶ ὡς νευσόμενοι⁸ τὸν ποταμὸν διεβαίνομεν.

II. 1. The barbarians will abandon the hill without fighting. 2. The horsemen ran down into the plain. 3. But Aristonymus will run past them. 4. Many of the barbarians have

¹ See p. 107².² Cf. 256, I. 4.³ Cf. 328, I. 17. οἱ μὲν and οἱ δέ are in apposition with πολέμοιοι.⁴ See 188 a.⁵ Cf. 106, I. 10. The subj. of ἐγχεῖν, αὐτοῖς, is to be supplied.⁶ Cf. 536, I. 11.⁷ which, i.e. the making of an ambush.⁸ See 379.

escaped from the neighbouring villages. 5. The horsemen have abandoned the hill. 6. Many forsook him. 7. Through the middle of the city flowed a river, Cydnus by name. 8. Anaxibius sailed round to the acropolis. 9. Xenias and Pasion have deserted us. 10. The third day's march proved hard, and a north wind blew in their faces. 11. They will abandon¹ their houses and will flee with (their) wives and children to the mountains.

612. R. γεν, gen, beget.

γί-γν-ο-μαι (for γι-γεν-ο-μαι), *be born, become*; γέν-να, -ης, *descent*; γεννα-ῖο-ς, -ᾶ, -ο-ν, *befitting one's birth, noble*; γενναῖο-τη-ς, -ητ-ος, ἡ, *nobility*; γέν-ος, -ε-ος, τό, *family, race*; συγ-γενής, -ές, *of the same race*; συγγένε-ια, -ᾶς, *kinship*; γενε-ά, -ᾶς, *birth*; γόν-ο-ς, ὁ, *that which is begotten, offspring*; ἐκ-γονο-ς, -ο-ν, *born of*; πρό-γονο-ς, ὁ, *forefather*; γον-εὺ-ς, -έ-ως, ὁ, *begetter, plur. parents*; γυν-ή, γυν-αικ-ός, ἡ, *woman* (originally 'mother').

γῆ-γν-ῶ, *produce, bear*; γεν-ιῡ-ς, -ῖ, *m., tutelary deity*; in-gen-uu-ς, *adj., freeborn, noble*; γέν-ς, gen-ti-ς, *f., race, nation*; γεν-ε-ι, -ε-ρι, *m., son-in-law*; γεν-υς, -ε-ρις, *n., birth, origin, kind*; γνᾶ-σc-o-r, nᾶ-sc-o-r, *be born*; nᾶ-tūra, -ae, *f., birth, nature*.

CHICK, CHILD, CHIT, COLT, KID, KITH, KIN, KIND, KING; *endo-gen, hydro-gen, genesis, hetero-geneous, genea-logy, cosmo-gony, theogony, miso-gynist*.

LESSON LXXXVII.

Verbs of the Tau or Third Class.

Review 460, 461.

613. The following are important verbs of the Third Class:—

1. ἀπτω (ἄφ-), <i>fasten, kindle, mid. touch,</i>			
ἄψω	ἴψα	ἴμμαι	ἴφθην
2. βάπτω (βαφ-), <i>dip, dip in,</i>			
βάψω	ἔβαψα	βέβαμμαι	ἐβάφην
3. βλάπτω (βλαβ-), <i>injure,</i>			
βλάψω	ἔβλαψα	βέβλαμμαι	ἐβλάφθην and ἐβλάβην

¹ Use the aor. partic.

4. θάπτω (ταφ-), ¹ bury,				
θάψω	ἔθαψα		τάθαμαι	ἐτάφη
5. καλύπτω (καλυβ-), cover,				
καλύψω	ἐκάλυψα		κεκάλυμμαι	ἐκαλύφθην
6. κλέπτω (κλεπ-), steal,				
κλέψω	ἔκλεψα	κέκλοφα	κέκλεμμαι	ἐκλάπη
7. κόπτω (κοπ-), cut,				
κόψω	ἔκοψα	έέκοφα	έέκομμαι	έέκόπη
8. κρύπτω (κρυφ-), hide,				
κρύψω	ἔκρυψα		κέκρυμμαι	ἐκρύφθην
9. ῥίπτω (ρίφ-), ² throw,				
ῥίψω	ἔρριψα	ἔρριφα	ἔρριμμαι	ἔρριφθην and ἔρριφήν
10. σκάπτω (σκαφ-), dig,				
σκάψω	ἔσκαψα	ἔσκαφα	ἔσκαμμαι	ἔσκάφη
11. σκέπτομαι (σκεπ-), view, consider,				
σκέψομαι	ἔσκεψάμην		ἔσκεμμαι	

614.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνέλεξαν ξύλα ἱκανά, ἐνήψαν. 2. οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες ἔβαψαν ξίφος, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι λόγχην. 3. ἀνεπαύοντο ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος οἱ στρατιῶται ἐγκεκαλυμμένοι. 4. ἥλιον δὲ νεφέλη προκαλύψασα ἠφάνισε, μέχρι ἐξέλιπον τὴν πόλιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι. 5. ἀλλ' ἐπειράτο χρῆσθαι τοῖς τῶν ἀποκρυπτομένων³ χρήμασιν. 6. ἐνταῦθ' ἐπιπίπτει χιὼν ἄπλετος, ὥστε ἀπέκρυψε καὶ τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 7. ἀλλ' ἐποιοῦντο γεφύρας ἐκ τῶν φοινίκων οἱ ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξέκοπτον. 8. αἱ γὰρ γυναῖκες, ῥίπτουσαι κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν τὰ παιδιά, εἶτα καὶ ἑαυτὰς ἐπικατέρριπτον, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ὡσαύτως. 9. ἐξαπίνης γὰρ ἀνέλαμψεν οἰκίᾳ ἐνημμένη τῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ.⁴ 10. ὑμᾶς γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἀκούω τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους⁵ εὐθὺς ἐκ παίδων⁶

¹ See p. 166³.² The theme is lengthened to ρίφ- in all of the systems except the second pass. Cf. τρίζω, 604, 13.³ Middle (197).⁴ Sc. οἰκιῶν.⁵ In apposition (p. 25³) with ὑμᾶς.⁶ from boyhood.

κλέπτειν¹ μελετᾶν.² 11. καὶ τῶν νεκρῶν τοὺς πλείστους ἔνθαπερ ἔπεσον ἐκάστους ἔθαψαν. 12. σκέψασθε δ' εἰ οὐ τοῦτο καὶ μωρότατόν ἐστιν. 13. καὶ γὰρ ὑμᾶς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους³ ἀκούω δεινούς εἶναι² κλέπτειν⁴ τὰ δημόσια. 14. ἄγετε δὴ πρὸς θεῶν τὰ ἐμὰ⁵ σκέψασθε ὡς ἔχει.⁶ 15. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει τῶν ἐκ τῆς κώμης,⁷ σκεψομένους πῶς ἔχουσιν οἱ τελευταῖοι. 16. τὰ δὲ γέρρα οἱ Ἑλλήνες ταῖς μαχαίραις κόπτοντες ἀχρεῖα ἐποιοῦν. 17. καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμενος τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος. 18. εἰ γὰρ τινα ἀλλήλοις μάχην συνάψετε, νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε κατακεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ ὕστερον. 19. ἦν οἷν αὐτῶν ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες πέπᾶνται σφενδόνᾳς, ἴσως τινὲς φανοῦνται ἱκανοὶ ἡμᾶς ὠφελεῖν.

II. 1. But the soldiers will slaughter the oxen. 2. I will consider what we must answer. 3. The Greeks had cut down all the trees. 4. He purposed to bury the dead. 5. The water did not touch the hay.⁸ 6. He gave orders to set on fire the houses on the left also. 7. But he himself stole the property that we earned by hard work. 8. They told us what had happened,⁹ and bade (us) bury the dead. 9. We must¹⁰ either beat off the enemy or be separated¹¹ from the other Greeks. 10. For they hurled great timbers from above, so that it was difficult to remain. 11. After the (exchange of) pledges, straightway the Macrones helped in cutting down the trees. 12. They kept throwing¹² stones into the river, but¹³ did the Greeks no¹⁴ harm.

¹ See 355.

² See 354.

³ Cf. 10 above.

⁴ Cf. 572, I. 8.

⁵ Cf. 482, I. 14.

⁶ how (i.e. in what state) they are. Cf. 305, I. 2.

⁷ Sc. τινάς.

⁸ Verbs signifying to touch are followed by the gen.

⁹ what had happened, τὰ γενόμενα.

¹⁰ Use ἀνάγκη.

¹¹ Use the pf. infin., and cf. 553, I. 19.

¹² kept throwing, use the impf., to express continuance, and cf. I. 3 above.

¹³ Use οὐδέ.

¹⁴ Cf. 601, I. 16.

615. R. βολ, uol, *will, wish.*

βουλ-ο-μαι, *will, wish*; βουλ-ή, -ῆς, *will, plan, consultation*; ἐπι-βουλή, -ῆς, *a planning against, plot*; συμ-βουλή, -ῆς, *a planning together, advice*; σύμ-βουλ-ο-ς, ὁ, *adviser*; βουλεύ-ω, *plan*; βελ-τ-ίων, -ον, gen. -ον-ος (stem βελ-το-), comp., *better* ('more desired'); βέλ-τ-ιστο-ς, -η, -ο-ν, sup., *best*.

uol-ō, *will, wish*; uol-un-tā-s, -ātis, f., *will, choice*; nōlō (nōn uolō), *be unwilling*; mālō (magis uolō), *prefer*.

WILL, WELL, WEAL, WEALTH, WILD.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

Verbs of the Iota or Fourth Class.

Review 464, 465, 466, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478.

616. The verbs of this class are very numerous.

617. The following verbs have themes ending in a palatal:—

1. ἀλλάττω (αλλαγ-), <i>change</i> ,				
ἀλλάξω	ἡλλαξα	ἡλλαχα	ἡλλαγμαι	ἡλλάχθην and ἡλλάγην
2. κηρύττω (κηρύκ-), <i>proclaim</i> ,				
κηρύξω	ἐκήρῡξα	κεκήρῡχα	κεκήρῡγμαι	ἐκηρύχθην
3. κράζω (κραγ-), <i>cry out</i> ,				
	ἔκραγον	κέκρᾱγα ¹		
4. ὀρύττω (ορυχ-), <i>dig</i> ,				
ὀρύξω	ᾠρυξα	ὀρώρυχα ²	ὀρώρυγμαι	ὀρύχθην
5. πλήττω (πληγ-), <i>smite</i> ,				
πλήξω	ἔπληξα	πέπληγα	πέπληγμαι	ἐπλήγην ³
6. πράττω (πᾱγ-), <i>do, act</i> ,				
πράξω	ἔπᾱξα	πέπᾱγα ⁴ and πέπᾱχα	πέπᾱγμαι	ἐπᾱχθην
7. ταραττω (ταριχ-), <i>disturb</i> ,				
ταράξω	ἐτάραξα		τετάραγμαι	ἐταράχθην
8. τάττω (ταγ-), <i>arrange</i> ,				
τάξω	ἔταξα	τέταχα	τέταγμαι	ἐτάχθην
9. φυλάττω (φυλακ-), <i>guard</i> ,				
φυλάξω	ἐφύλαξα	πεφύλαχα	πεφύλαγμαι	ἐφυλάχθην

¹ With the force of the present.

² See p. 209¹.

³ See p. 227¹.

⁴ Generally intrans., *have fared*.

618. The following verbs have themes ending in a lingual:—

1. ἀθροίζω (αθροιδ-), <i>collect</i> ,				
ἀθροίσω	ἔθροισα	ἤθροικα	ἤθροισμαι	ἤθροίσθην
2. ἀρπάζω (ἀρπαδ-), <i>plunder</i> ,				
ἀρπάσσω	ἤρπασα	ἤρπακα	ἤρπασμαι	ἤρπάσθην
3. βιάζομαι (βιαδ-), <i>force</i> ,				
βιάσσομαι	ἐβιασάμην		βεβίασμαι	
4. ἐργάζομαι (εργαδ-), <i>work</i> ,				
ἐργάσομαι	ἐργασάμην ¹		ἐργασμαι	
5. θαυμάζω (θαυμαδ-), <i>admire</i> ,				
θαυμάσομαι ²	ἐθαύμασα	τεθαύμακα		ἐθαυμάσθην
6. νομίζω (νομιδ-), <i>think</i> ,				
νομιῶ ³	ἐνόμισα	νενόμικα	νενόμισμαι	ἐνομίσθην
7. πορίζω (ποριδ-), <i>furnish</i> ,				
ποριῶ ³	ἐπόρισα	πεπόρικα	πεπόρισμαι	ἐπορίσθην
8. σφίζω ⁴ (σωδ-), <i>save</i> ,				
σώσω	ἔσωσα	σέσωκα	σέσωμαι ⁵ and σέσωσμαι	ἔσώσθην

619. The following verbs have themes ending in a liquid:—

1. ἀγγέλλω (αγγελ-), <i>announce</i> ,				
ἀγγελῶ	ἤγγειλα	ἤγγελκα	ἤγγελμαι	ἤγγελθην
2. αἰσχύνω (αισχυν-), <i>shame</i> ,				
αἰσχυνῶ	ἤσχυνα			ἤσχύνθην
3. βάλλω (βαλ-), <i>throw</i> ,				
βαλῶ	ἔβαλον	βέβληκα	βέβλημαι	ἐβλήθην
4. κλίνω (κλιν-), <i>cause to lean, bend</i> ,				
κλινῶ	ἔκλινα		κέκλιμαι	ἐκλίθην and ἐκλίνην
5. κρίνω (κριν-), <i>distinguish</i> ,				
κρινῶ	ἔκρινα	κέκρικα	κέκριμαι	ἐκρίθην
6. κτείνω (κτεν-), <i>kill</i> ,				
κτενῶ	ἔκτεινα	ἔκτονα		

¹ See p. 83⁸.

² See p. 159².

³ See p. 169².

⁴ See p. 24⁴.

⁵ σέσωμαι and ἐσώσθην are formed on a theme σω-.

7. **περαίνω** (περαν-), *accomplish*,
 περανῶ ἐπεράνα πετέρασμαι ἐπεράνθην
8. **σημαίνω** (σημαν-), *show by a sign*,
 σημανῶ ἐσημήνα σεσημάσμαι ἐσημάνθην
9. **στάλλω** (στελ-), *put in order, equip, send*,
 στελῶ ἔσταλα ἔσταλκα ἔσταλμαι ἔσταλην
10. **τείνω** (τει-), *stretch*,
 τενῶ ἔτεινα τέτακα τέταμαι ἐτάθην
11. **φαίνω** (φαν-), *show*,
 φανῶ ἔφηνα πέφαγκα and πέφασμαι ἐφάνθην and
 πέφηναι¹ ἐφάνην²
12. **φθείρω** (φθερ-), *destroy*,
 φθερῶ ἔφθειρα ἔφθαρκα ἔφθαρμαι ἐφθάρην
13. **χαλεπαίνω** (χαλεπαν-), *be angry*,
 χαλεπανῶ ἐχαλέπηνα ἐχαλεπάνθην³

620. The following verbs have themes ending in a vowel:—

1. **κάω** (καν-), *burn*,
 καύσω ἔκαυσα κέκαυκα κέκαυμαι ἐκαύθην
2. **κλάω** (κλαν-), *weep*,
 κλαύσομαι and κλανσοῦμαι

621.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἀνερπάκαμεν. 2. κλάειν ἐπειρώμεθά σε ποιεῖν. 3. ταῦτα λέξας ἀπέστειλε τοὺς ἀγγέλους καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον τὸν Λάκωνα. 4. ἀπηγγέλκασιν Ἀριαίῳ ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμεν. 5. ἀλλ' ἤσχυνετο⁴ μᾶλλον τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς ἢ οἱ ἀρχόμενοι⁵ ἐκείνων. 6. προσεβάλομεν πρὸς τὸν λόφον ὀρθίοις τοῖς λόχοις, οὐ κύκλῳ. 7. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτου τοῦ ὅρους οἱ Κόλχοι παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν· καὶ οἱ Ἑλλήνες ἀντιπαρετάξαντο κατὰ φάλαγγα. 8. φυλάττει⁶ δὲ σὺ ὥς

¹ See p. 197¹.

² See p. 227².

³ In the sense of the active.

⁴ Cf. 479, I. 10.

⁵ Equivalent to οἱ στρατιῶται. See 371.

⁶ Mid., *be on one's guard against*, with acc.

πολεμίους ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἀντιφυλαττόμεθα. 9. ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσιν. 10. ἥ τε σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγατο, καὶ ἀλαλάξαντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 11. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι πυρὰ πολλὰ ἑκάον κύκλῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ὀρέων. 12. ὁ δὲ κατέφυγεν εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα, καὶ εὐθύς παρήγγειλεν εἰς τὰ ὄπλα. 13. Ἄλλ', ἔφη, ὑμεῖς, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε ὃ τι κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε. 14. ὥς οὖν ἠθροίσθη Κύρῳ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ὅτε ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἀρταξέρξην ἐστρατεύετο καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ ἐπράχθη, ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται. 15. ὁ δὲ ἐχαλέπαινεν ὅτι πρῶως ἔλεγε τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος. 16. ὦ ἄνδρες, ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα διασωθῆναι πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πεζῇ. 17. Κλέαρχος δὲ Τολμίδην Ἡλεῖον ἐκέλευσε σιγὴν κατακρηῦσαι. 18. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑπερέβαλλον τὰ ὄρη, οἱ πελτασταὶ οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὀπλίτας, ἀλλ' ἀνακραγόντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 19. ὥς οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων τῶν κακῶν ἠδέως ἐκοιμήθησαν. 20. ἐνίστε δὲ καὶ ξυλιζόμενοι καὶ χόρτον καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα συλλέγοντες πληγὰς ἐνέτεινον ἀλλήλοις.

II. 1. They attempted to dig through the tower. 2. You accomplished what¹ you wished. 3. The king believes that he is victorious,² since he has killed Cyrus. 4. We overpowered the enemy. 5. Clearchus was exceedingly disturbed when he heard³ this. 6. They corrupted one captain at least, Nicarchus an Arcadian. 7. And they burnt the wagons and the tents. 8. The enemy were signalling to one another. 9. The Greeks all ran to their arms in great consternation.⁴ 10. The generals do not try to furnish us provision-money. 11. Those who are by⁵ cry out that⁶ the man is alive. 12. But the enemy, fearing that they would be cut off, pushed on to the mountain.

¹ See 569.

² See 354.

³ when he heard, cf. I. 3 above.

⁴ Use the pf. pass. partic. of ἐκπλήττω.

⁵ See 371.

⁶ ὅτι.

622. R. *καλ*, *cal*, *call*.

καλ-έ-ω, *call*; *κλη-σι-ς*, *-ε-ως*, *ή*, *a calling*; *εκ-κλη-σία*, *-ās*, *duly summoned assembly*; *ἐκκλησιάζω*, *hold an assembly*. — *κήρυ-ξ*, *-ῡκ-ος*, *δ* (formed on a stem *κηρυ-*), *herald, crier*; *κηρύττω*, *be a herald, proclaim*; *ἀ-κήρυκ-το-ς*, *-ο-ν*, *unproclaimed*; *κηρύκ-ειο-ς*, *-ο-ν*, *of a herald*; *κηρύκειο-ν*, *τό*, *herald's staff*. — *κράζω* (for *κρα-γ-ιω*), *cry out, call aloud*; *κραυγ-ή*, *-ής*, *outcry*.

cal-δ, *call together*; *Kale-ndae*, *-ārum*, *f.*, *day of proclamation, Calends*; *con-cil-iu-m*, *-ī*, *n.*, *meeting*; *nōmen-clā-tor*, *-ōr-is*, *m.*, *one who calls by name*; *clā-mō*, *cry out*; *clā-ru-s*, *adj.*, *clear*; *clas-si-s*, *-is*, *f.*, *class*.

HALE, HAUL, HAL-yard; *ec-clesiastic*.

LESSON LXXXIX.

Verbs of the Nasal or Fifth Class.

623. Some verbs form the present stem by adding a suffix containing *ν* to the theme. These verbs belong to the *Nasal* or *Fifth* Class.

624. This suffix may be *-ν^ο/ε*. Thus:—

1. δάκνω (δακ-), ¹ <i>bite</i> ,				
δηξομαι ²	ἔδακον	δέδηγμαι	ἔδηχθην	
2. ἐλαύνω ³ (ελα-), <i>drive, set in motion, intrans. ride, drive, march</i> ,				
ἐλῶ ⁴	ἤλασα	ἐλήλακα ⁵	ἐλήλαμαι	ἤλάθην
3. κάμνω (καμ-), <i>labour, be sick or weary</i> ,				
καμουμαι ²	ἔκαμον	κέκμηκα ⁶		
4. πίνω (πι-), <i>drink</i> ,				
πίομαι ⁷	ἔπιον	πέπωκα ⁸	πέπομαι	ἐπόθην

¹ Some verbs of this class lengthen a short vowel in the theme, on the principle of verbs of the second class (492, 493). in other systems than the pres. and second aor.

² See p. 159².

³ ἐλαύνω is probably for ελα-νυ-ω, by transposition of *ν* and *υ*.

⁴ Formed similarly to the fut. of *τελέω* (p. 159³). Thus ἐλάσω, ἐλάω, ἐλῶ.

⁵ See p. 209¹.

⁶ See 507.

⁷ *σ* is dropped. Cf. the fut. of *χέω* (610, 6). See also p. 159².

⁸ The last three principal parts are formed on a theme *πο-*, as if there were a pres. *πωω* (cf. Lat. *potō*). The quantity of the final vowel of the themes (*πι-*, *πο-*) of this verb is variable.

5. τέμνω (τεμ-), *cut*,
 τεμᾶ ἔτεμον and τέμμηκα¹ τέμμημαι ἐτέμην²
 ἔταμον

6. τίνω (τι-), *pay back, expiate, mid. make pay, punish*,
 τίσω³ ἔτισα τέτικα τέτισμαι⁴ ἐτίσθην

625. The suffix may be -αν^ο/ε.. Thus:—

1. αἰσθάνομαι (αισθ-), *perceive*,
 αἰσθήσομαι⁵ ᾔσθόμην ᾔσθημαι
2. ἀμαρτάνω (ἀμαρτ-), *miss, err, do wrong*,
 ἀμαρτήσομαι⁵ ἤμαρτον ἡμάρτηκα ἡμάρτημαι ἡμαρτήθην
3. ἀπ-εχθάνομαι (εχθ-), *be hated or hateful, incur hatred*,
 ἀπ-εχθήσομαι⁵ ἀπ-ηχθόμην ἀπ-ήχθημαι

626. Some verbs which add the suffix -αν^ο/ε. insert a nasal within the theme. Thus:—

1. λαγχάνω (λαχ-),⁶ *obtain by lot, get, obtain*,
 λήξομαι ἔλαχον ἐλήχα⁷ ἐληγμαι ἐλήχθην
2. λαμβάνω (λαβ-),⁶ *take*,
 λήψομαι ἔλαβον ἐλήφα⁷ ἐλημμαι ἐλήφθην
3. λανθάνω (λαθ-),⁶ *escape the notice of, mid. forget*,
 λήσω ἔλαθον ἐλήθα ἐλησμαι
4. μανθάνω (μαθ-), *learn*,
 μαθήσομαι⁵ ἔμαθον μεμάθηκα
5. πυνθάνομαι (πυθ-), *inquire, learn by inquiry*,
 πεύσομαι⁸ ἐπυθόμην πέπυσμαι
6. τυγχάνω (τυχ-), *hit, attain, intrans. happen*,
 τεύξομαι⁸ ἔτυχον τετύχηκα⁹ and
 τέτευχα⁸

a. The nasal is inserted within the theme when the vowel of the theme is short and is followed by a single consonant. The inserted nasal is μ before a labial, γ before a palatal, and ν before a lingual.

¹ See 507.

² See 577.

³ See 442.

⁴ See 441 b.

⁵ The theme assumes ϵ , as in some verbs of the first class (605),

in all the systems which occur except the pres. and second aor.

⁶ See p. 248¹. ⁷ See p. 235⁴.

⁸ The theme is lengthened as in verbs of the second class (492, 493).

⁹ The theme assumes ϵ .

627. The suffix may be -νε°/ε.. Thus:—

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. ἰκνέομαι (ικ-) come, | |
| ἵζομαι | ἱκόμεν ¹ ἵγμαι ¹ |
| 2. ὑπ-ισχνέομαι (σεχ-), ² hold oneself under, promise, | |
| υπο-σχήσομαι ὑπ-ισχύομαι | ὑπ-ίσχημαι |

There are other important verbs of this class which will be considered later.

628.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἐγὼ δὲ χαλεπῶς κάμνω, τὴν ἀσπίδα ἔχων. 2. οἱ γὰρ ἰατροὶ κάουσι καὶ τέμνουσιν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ. 3. οὗτος δὲ τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν³ ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοῦ ἱππικοῦ ἄρχων. 4. ἡμῖν ἔξεστι τὰ ὄρη προκαταλαβοῦσιν ἄπορα ὑμῖν παρέχειν. 5. ἀποτεμὼν τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ κεφαλὴν καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ἀνεσταύρωσεν. 6. ὑπὸ γὰρ ἱππου οὐδεὶς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ οὔτ' ἐδήχθη οὔτ' ἐλακτίσθη. 7. ἀλλὰ τούτους μὲν οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτίσσονται· ἡμᾶς δὲ δεῖ μήποτε ἐξαπατηθῆναι ἔτι ὑπὸ τούτων. 8. καὶ ἐφοβέιτο τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι⁴ τοῖς στρατιώταις. 9. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ διαλαχόντες τὰς κώμας ἐπορεύοντο ἕκαστοι τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες. 10. οὗτοι εἰς Σάρδεις ἀφίκοντο. 11. ταύτην δὲ τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς ἐποίει, ἐπειδὴ ἐπυνθάνετο Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα.⁵ 12. ἐτύγχανον³ λέγων ὅτι πολλαὶ καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες ἡμῖν εἰσι σωτηρίᾱς. 13. καὶ περὶ τούτων ὑπέσχετό μοι βουλευέσθαι.⁶ 14. ἀλλ' εἰκαζον ἢ διώκοντα⁷ οἴχεσθαι ἢ καταληψόμενόν τι προεληλακέ-

¹ The ι is due to the augment (76).

² ισχ of the pres. stem is for ισχ and that for σι-σεχ, the reduplicated (606) theme of ἔχω (604, 6).

³ With λανθάνω and τυγχάνω, an accompanying partic. contains the leading idea of the expression, and is usually translated by a finite verb in English, but sometimes by an infin. or adv. So here, *had been posted as it happened*, lit. *happened to have been posted*.

⁴ See p. 164³.

⁵ Many verbs take the partic. in indirect discourse instead of the infin. (354). The rule for the tenses of the infin. holds good for those of the partic. also.

⁶ Verbs meaning to *promise* may take the infin. in indirect discourse, like verbs of saying or thinking (354).

⁷ Sc. αὐτόν as subj. of οἴχεσθαι and προεληλακέαι. For the construction of the infinitives, see 354.

ναι.¹ 15. ἡσπάζοντο πρῶτον ἀλλήλους καὶ κατὰ τὸν Θράκιον νόμον κέρατα οἴνου προύπινον.¹ 16. ἔνθα πολλήν μὲν σωφροσύνην καταμάθοι ἂν τις, αἰσχροὺς δ' οὐδὲν ἀκούσαι ἔστιν.² 17. ἦν τι³ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἀμαρτάνωσι, περὶ τὰς ἑαυτῶν ψυχὰς καὶ σώματα ἀμαρτήσονται. 18. καὶ προελαύνοντες ἐλάβανον αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ λόφῳ γενόμενοι⁴ ἔνθα ἐπολιορκοῦντο οἱ Ἕλληνες. 19. δέδοικα γὰρ μή, ἂν ἅπαξ μάθωμεν ἀργοὶ ζῆν, ἐπιλαθόμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ.⁵

II. 1. I got a little⁶ sleep. 2. A division of the hoplites happened to accompany⁷ him. 3. And they will arrive at their tents about supper-time. 4. I learn that⁸ the mountain is not impassable. 5. The king did not perceive the design against himself. 6. He marched through this plain four stages. 7. The envoys rode away when they had heard⁹ this. 8. He himself rode up⁹ and asked, Why do you summon (me)? 9. There Cyrus's head and right hand are cut off. 10. I have promised you ten talents. 11. When he had ridden past¹⁰ all, he ordered them to present arms. 12. When the general had learnt¹⁰ this by inquiry, he took⁹ the cavalry and rode forward.

629. R. πο, πο, drink.

πό-το-s, δ, a drinking, drinking-party; **πο-τό-v**, τό, that which is drunk, drink; **πό-σι-s**, -ε-ως, ἡ, a drinking, drink; **συμ-πόσι-ο-v**, τό, drinking-party, symposium; **συμποσί-αρχο-s**, δ (R. **αρχ**, 463), president of a drinking-party; **φαρμακο-ποσ-ιά**, -ās (φάρμακο-v, drug, poison), a taking of physic or poison; **πο-τήρ**, -ήρ-ος, δ, drinking-vessel; **ποτήρ-ιο-v**, τό, cup; **πῶ-μα**, -ατ-ος, τό, drink; **ἐκ-πῶμα**, -ατ-ος, τό, drinking-cup; **πί-v-ω**, drink.

pō-tu-s, adj., drunk; **pōtō**, drink; **pō-culu-m**, -ī, n., cup; **im-bu-ō**, moisten ('cause to drink'); **bi-bō**, drink.

sym-posium.

¹ In compound verbs whose first part is **πρό**, the preposition always retains its final vowel. See 127 and p. 84⁸. But the vowel may be contracted with a following **ε** into **ου**.

² See 188 a.

³ make any mistake. Cf. 560, I. 11.

⁴ See p. 250³. So here, got upon the hill before they were aware of it.

⁵ The gen. follows verbs signifying to remember and to forget. See p. 63³.

⁶ a little (**μικρόν**) of sleep. See p. 47².

⁷ Cf. I. 12 above.

⁸ ὅτι.

⁹ Use the aor. partic. (379).

¹⁰ Use the aor. indic. after **επειδή**.

LESSON XC.

Review of Groups. — Reading Lesson.

Review the groups of related words in 602, 608, 612, 615, 622, 629.
Review 140, 142.

Read and translate again 592.

Read and translate the following passage: —

630.

Κῦρος.

ΙΧ. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνιάς σταθμούς τέτταρας παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα, καὶ ἐπιτυγχάνει τάφρῳ ὀρυκτῇ βαθείᾳ. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ ταύτῃ οὐκ ἐκώλῃε βασιλεὺς τὸ Κῦρου στράτευμα διαβαίνειν, ᾤετο Κῦρος οὐ
5 μαχεῖσθαι βασιλεῶ· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύετο ἡμελη-
μένως μᾶλλον.

τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τοῦ ἄρματος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο, ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ. καὶ ἤδη πλησίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα ἔμελλε καταλύειν, ἡνίκα Πατηγύας ἀνὴρ
10 Πέρσης προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος, καὶ εὐθὺς πᾶσι βοᾷ καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευ-
ασμένος. ἔνθα δὲ πολὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο· αὐτίκα γὰρ
ἰδόκουσι οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πάντες δὲ ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπι-
15 πεσεῖσθαι. Κῦρος δὲ καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρματος πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι. ἔνθα δὲ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ συνετάττοντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, Μένων δὲ τὸ εὐώνυμον.

20 καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ οὐπω καταφανεῖς ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι· ἡνίκα δὲ δεῖλῃ ἐγίγνετο, ἐφάνη κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλῃ λευκῇ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον

ἐγίνοντο οἱ πολέμιοι, τάχα δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις ἤστραπτε
καὶ αἱ λόγχαι καὶ αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίνοντο. καὶ
25 ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ καὶ
ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόᾳ, "Ἄγε τὸ
στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασι-
λεύς ἐστι· κἂν τοῦτ', ἔφη, νικῶμεν, πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποιήται.
ὁ δὲ Κλεάρχος οὐκ ἠθέλεν ἀποσπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
30 τὸ δεξιὸν κέρασ, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθεῖη ἐκατέρωθεν.

NOTES.

4. οὐ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλιά: Cyrus's thought was οὐ μαχεῖται (fut.) βασι-
λεύς. See 354. ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι in line 14 is in parallel construction. — 14. καὶ
πάντες δέ, and all too (καί), i.e. Persians as well as Greeks. — 23. χαλκός
τις ἤστραπτε, here and there (τις) their bronze armour began to flash.

Translate the following passage into Greek:—

631. Cyrus marched thence through Babylonia, with the river Euphrates on his right. About midnight on the third day's march he held a review of the Greeks and barbarians in the plain. There the number of the Greeks under arms was found to be 10,400 heavy-armed men and 2500 peltasts, and of the barbarians, 100,000 and 20 chariots. After the review, Cyrus called the Greek generals and captains together at day-break and consulted with them how he should make the fight. Thence he proceeded one day's march, three parasangs, with his entire force, both Greek and barbarian, in battle array. For he thought that the enemy would give battle immediately. But the king did not fight on this day, nor on the next. But about the time of full market on the third day, a certain Persian rides into their midst at full speed and cries out that the enemy are at hand in great numbers. When Cyrus heard this, he leapt from his chariot and at once put on his cuirass and took his javelins into his hands. And all the rest also armed themselves and fell into battle line as quickly as possible.

LESSON XCI.

Regular Verbs in -MI, τίθημι.

632. Some verbs form the present and second aorist systems by adding the personal endings directly to the theme, omitting the variable vowel (except in the subjunctive). In these verbs, therefore, the present and second aorist stems are the simple theme, which is, however, often reduplicated with *α* in the present system.

a. Compare the following forms of τίθημι (θε-), *place, put*, with those of λύω (λυ-), *loose* (156, 157, 158) : —

		SING.	DUAL.	PLUR.	SING.	DUAL.	PLUR.
Pres.	1	τί-θη-μι		τί-θε-μεν	λύω		λύο-μεν
Ind.	2	τί-θη-ς	τί-θε-τον	τί-θε-τε	λύεις	λύε-τον	λύε-τε
Act.	3	τί-θη-σι	τί-θε-τον	τι-θέ-ασι	λύει	λύε-τον	λύουσι

633. Such verbs are called *Verbs in -μι*, because they retain the personal ending -μι in the first person singular of the present indicative active.

634. Verbs like λύω, on the other hand, are called *Verbs in -ω*. See 158 a.

635. The following peculiarities of inflexion of verbs in -μι are to be noted¹ : —

a. The endings -μι, -ς, -σι (156) are used in the sing. of the pres. indic. act., and its third pers. plur. ends in -ασι.

b. The third pers. plur. of the secondary tenses in the act. has -σαν (163).

c. The mid. endings -σαι and -σο (199) retain σ in the pres. and impf. indic. σο retains σ in the pres. inv. also (331).

¹ Section 635 is to be used for reference.

d. The ending -θι (322) is sometimes retained in the second aor. inv. act.

e. The infin. act. has the ending -ναι (345 a).

f. Participles with stems in -οντ- (364 a) have the nom. sing. masc. in -ους.

g. The subjv. has the long variable vowel, as in verbs in -ω (268 a, 276 b), but this contracts with a final ε, ο, or α of the theme.

h. The opt. has the mood-suffix -ι- or -ιη- (297 a, 307 b), but the latter only before act. endings. The mood-suffix is added directly to the theme, if the theme ends in ε, ο, or α, and contracts with it. In these forms the accent cannot pass back of the mood-suffix.

i. In the pres. and impf. indic. act., the final vowel of the theme is lengthened in the sing.

j. In some verbs the final vowel of the theme is lengthened in the second aor. indic. and inv. act., in all forms where the final vowel comes before a single consonant in the ending or where the ending is lacking.

Commit to memory the present and second aorist systems of τίθημι (θε-), *place, put*, in 689, 693.

Review the endings and suffixes given in 156, 163, 199, 322, 331, 345 a, 364 a, 375 b.

636. In explanation of the forms in the paradigms, see 635 a b c e g h i. But note the following:—

a. In the impf. indic. act., ἐτίθεις, ἐτίθει (instead of ετιθης, ετιθη) are formed as if from a contract verb in -εω (τιθεω for τίθημι). Cf. ἐφίλεις, ἐφίλει (245).

b. For the contract forms of the subjv., see 241 b d.

c. In the pres. inv. act., τίθει (instead of τιθεθι) is formed as if from a contract verb in -εω. Cf. φίλει (335).

d. The act. participles τιθείς (for τιθεντς) and θείς (for θεντς) are inflected like λυθείς (376).

e. The sing. of the second aor. indic. act. is lacking. It is supplied by the first aor. forms ἔθηκα, ἔθηκας, ἔθηκε, formed with the tense-suffix -κα- for -σα- (165).

f. In the second aor. inv. act., θές is irregular (for θεθι).

g. In the second aor. infin. act., θεῖναι (for θε-εναι) is formed with the ending -εναι.

637.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἐπιθήσεται ἡμῖν. 2. καὶ κελεύουσι φυλάττεσθαι, μὴ ὑμῖν ἐπιθῶνται τῆς νυκτὸς¹ οἱ βάρβαροι. 3. τὴν δίκην χρήζω ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ. 4. τούτους δὲ ἐκέλευε θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκηνὴν. 5. ἐνταῦθα ἀνετίθεσαν βακτηρίᾱς καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα γέρρα. 6. παρὰ τοὺς θεοὺς ἡμεῖς τὴν φιλιᾶν συνθέμενοι κατεθέμεθα. 7. καὶ οἰκίαν οὐδεμίαν ἔλιπεν, ὅπως φόβον ἐνθείη τοῖς ἄλλοις. 8. οὐκέτι ἐπετίθεντο οἱ πολέμιοι τοῖς Ἑλλησι, δεδοκότες μὴ ἀποτμηθεῖσαν. 9. καὶ ἐν τάξει θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἀνέμενον οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί. 10. τοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευσε μέναι, τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα θέντας. 11. τοὺς γὰρ κύνας τοὺς χαλεποὺς τὰς ἡμέρας διδῆασιν.² 12. τὰς δὲ βαλάνους τῶν φοινίκων ξηραίνοντες τραγήματα ἀπετίθεσαν. 13. τοῖς τελευταίοις ἐπέθεντο, καὶ ἀπέκτεινάν τινας. 14. ταῦτα συνθέμενοι ἡρίστων οἱ Ἕλληνες. 15. ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ᾤθησαν ἔμπροσθεν ἄλλους ἐπιτίθεσθαι³ πολεμίους. 16. καὶ παυσάμενοι ἀμφοτέροι κατὰ χώρων ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα. 17. καὶ συντιθέμεθα τὴν νύκτα,⁴ ἣν λάβωμεν τὸ ἄκρον, τὸ χωρίον φυλάττειν. 18. ἅμα δὲ ὀρθρῶ παρήγγειλεν ὁ Κλεάρχος εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὄπλα τίθεσθαι τοὺς Ἑλλήνας. 19. πάντας οὕτω διατιθεῖς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι⁵ ἢ βασιλεῖ.

II. 1. The hoplites grounded arms. 2. They feared that the Greeks would attack them during the night. 3. He will inflict punishment on them. 4. We will attack the enemy's cavalry. 5. We ordered arms near the general's tent. 6. They grounded arms beside the river. 7. I fear that he may take⁶ me and inflict punishment on (me). 8. They set before them,

¹ Cf. 308, I. 15.

² From διδημι, a collateral form of δέω, bind.

³ See 354.

⁴ Construe with φυλάττειν, and cf. 11 above.

⁵ Cf. 553, I. 19.

⁶ Use the aor. partic.

on the same table, meats of all kinds. 9. The army will attack the enemy vigorously. 10. They grounded arms¹ and rested. 11. Put² the baggage on the beasts of burden. 12. And when they had made this³ agreement, they proceeded to the ford of the river.

638. *θε, da, fa, place, put, make.*

τί-θη-μι, place, put, do; ἐπι-τίθημι, lay upon, mid. attack; ἐπιθε-σι-ς, -ε-ως, ἡ, a setting on, attack; εὐ-επιθε-το-ς, -ο-ν, easily attacked or assailable; ἀγων-ο-θέ-τη-ς, -ου (R. αγ, 435), judge of a contest; θέ-μι-ς, -ιτ-ος, ἡ, that which is laid down, law, right; θε-σ-μό-ς, ὁ, law, ordinance; παρα-κατα-θή-κη, -ης, that which is put down beside one, deposit; ἀνά-θη-μα, -ατ-ος, τό, thing set up, votive offering; σύν-θη-μα, -ατ-ος, τό, thing agreed upon, agreement, watchword; θη-σ-αυρό-ς, ὁ, something put away, treasure.

-dō, only in compounds, as ab-dō, put away, crē-dō, put faith in, believe, per-dō, make away with, destroy; fa-c-i-ō, make, do; fi-ō, be done, become; pro-fic-i-sc-o-r, set oneself forward, set out; fac-in-us, -or-is, n., deed, misdeed; fac-ili-s, adj., easy to do.

DO, DEED, DEEM, DOOM, king-DOM; thesis, anti-thesis, paren-thesis, syn-thesis, theme, ana-thema, thesaurus, treasure.

LESSON XCII.

Regular Verbs in -MI, δίδωμι.

Review 632, 633, 634.

Commit to memory the present and second aorist systems of δίδωμι (δο-), give, in 690, 694.

Review the endings and suffixes given in 156, 163, 199, 322, 331, 345 a, 364 a, 375 b.

639. In explanation of the forms in the paradigms, see 635 a b c e f g h i. But note the following:—

a. In the impf. indic. act., ἐδίδουν, ἐδίδους, ἐδίδον (instead of ἐδιδων, ἐδιδως, ἐδιδω) are formed as if from a contract verb in -ow (διδω for δίδωμι). Cf. ἐδήλουν, ἐδήλους, ἐδήλου (245).

b. For the contract forms of the subjv., see 241 d.

c. In the pres. inv. act., δίδου (instead of διδοθι) is formed as if from a contract verb in -ow. Cf. δήλου (335).

¹ Use the aor. partic.

² Use the mid.

³ Cf. I. 14 above.

d. The act. participles διδούς (for διδοντς) and δούς (for δοντς) are inflected like λύων (262), except in the nom. sing. masc.

e. The sing. of the second aor. indic. act. is lacking. It is supplied by the first aor. forms ἔδωκα, ἔδωκας, ἔδωκε, formed with the tense-suffix -κα- for -σα- (165).

f. In the second aor. imv. act., δός is irregular (for δοθι).

g. In the second aor. infin. act., δοῦναι (for δο-εναι) is formed with the ending -εναι.

640.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. δίδωσι δὲ αὐτῷ Κύρος μῦρίους δαρείκους. 2. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδίδου λέγειν τῷ βουλομένῳ. 3. ἐνταῦθα δὲ μενούσιν, ἂν μὴ αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῶτε. 4. ἡρώτων ἐκείνοι εἰ δοῖεν¹ ἂν τούτων τὰ πιστά. 5. καὶ δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν πιστὰ ἐθέλομεν. 6. δέδοικα μὴ ἐκδῶτέ με. 7. παραδόντες² δ' ἂν τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τῶν σωμάτων³ στερηθείμεν. 8. οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι πρεσβύτερος ἔσομαι, ἂν τήμερον προδῶ ἑμαυτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις. 9. ταῦτα καὶ σέσωσται δι' ὑμᾶς τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ παραδίδωμι αὐτὰ ἐγὼ ὑμῖν, ὑμεῖς δὲ διαθέμενοι διάδοτε τῇ στρατιᾷ. 10. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, καὶ δεξιὰς δόντες καὶ λαβόντες, ἀπήλανον. 11. τῇ γὰρ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων τὰ ὄπλα παραδίδοναι ἐκέλευεν. 12. ἡσχύνθημεν⁴ καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους προδοῦναι αὐτόν. 13. ἀνάγκη⁵ δὴ μοι ὑμᾶς προδόντα⁶ τῇ Κύρου φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι. 14. ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρᾳ ἦν ὁγδόη, τὸν ἡγεμόνα παραδίδωσι Χειρισόφῳ. 15. ὁμως δὲ Κλέαρχος τοσοῦτον λέγει, ὅτι οὐ τῶν νικῶντων⁷ ἐστὶ τὰ ὄπλα παραδίδοναι. 16. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρί, ὡς ᾤετο. 17. ὥστε λαβόντες τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπέδωσαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα. 18. τοὺς ἀσθενούντας τούτοις παρέδωσαν κομίζειν⁸ ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 19. οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς⁹ τοῦ Κύρου τρόπον ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι.

¹ See p. 104¹⁴.

² Cf. 560, I. 10.

³ Cf. 532, I. 14.

⁴ Cf. 479, I. 10.

⁵ See p. 224².

⁶ In agreement with μέ to be supplied as subj. of χρῆσθαι, not with μοί expressed.

⁷ Cf. 361, I. 5. ⁸ Cf. 524, I. 15.

⁹ from, i.e. consistent with.

II. 1. And they gave the village-chief (liberty¹) to take this. 2. And he did not give them pay. 3. They bound the guide and gave (him) over to them. 4. They gave the Greeks a barbarian spear. 5. And when the sacrifice had been made,² they gave over the hides to the Spartan. 6. They say that it is time to pass along the watchword. 7. She was said to have given³ much money to Cyrus. 8. He took the letter and gave it to Cyrus. 9. He handed the son of the village-chief over to Episthenes to guard.⁴ 10. These things he was distributing among his friends. 11. I advise you to give up your arms. 12. Cyrus provided wagons full of flour and wine, that he might distribute them to the Greeks.

641. R. *δο, da, do, give.*

δί-δω-μι, give; προ-δίδω-μι, give over, surrender, betray; προδο-της-s, -ov, betrayer, traitor; μισθο-δο-της-s, -ov (μισθός-s, wages), one who pays wages; μισθοδοτέ-ω, pay wages, employ; μισθοδο-σία, -ās, giving of pay; δώ-ρο-ν, τό, present, gift; δωρέ-ο-μαι, give a present; δωρο-δόκος, -ο-ν (R. 2 δακ, 602), taking presents or bribes; δωροδοκέ-ω, take bribes. — δά-ν-ος, -ε-ος, τό (δα + ν), money lent; δανείζω, lend money, mid. have money lent to one, borrow.

δό, da-re, give; δός-s, δό-τι-s, f., dowry; δό-νυ-μ, -ι, n., gift.

dose, anec-dote, anti-dote.

LESSON XCIII.

Verbs of the Inceptive or Sixth Class.

642. Some verbs form the present stem by adding the tense-suffix *-σκ°/ε* or *-ισκ°/ε* to the theme. These verbs belong to the *Inceptive* or *Sixth* Class. A final vowel in the theme is generally lengthened. Some verbs of this class reduplicate the present stem by prefixing the initial consonant of the theme with *ι*. Some form second aorists after the analogy of verbs in *-μι*. Thus:—

¹ Cf. I. 2 above.

² Use the aor. after *ἐπειδή*.

³ Use the aor. infin.

⁴ Cf. I. 18 above.

1. αἰσκόμαι (άλ-),¹ *be captured*,
αἰσσομαι αἶλων² and αἶλωκα and
ἦλων ἦλωκα
2. γινώσκω (γνο-), *perceive, know*,
γινώσομαι ἔγνων³ ἔγνωκα ἔγνωσμαι⁴ ἔγνωσθην⁴
3. διδάσκω⁵ (διδαχ-), *teach*,
διδάξω ἐδίδαξα δεδίδαχα δεδίδαγμαι ἐδίδαχθην
4. εὐρίσκω (εύρ-), *find, discover*,
εὐρήσω⁶ ἤυρον ἤύρηκα ἤύρημαι ἤύρεθην
5. θνήσκω⁷ (θαν-), *die, be slain*,
θανοῦμαι ἔθανον τέθνηκα⁸
6. μμνήσκω⁷ (μνα-), *remind, mid. remember, mention*,
μνήσω ἔμνησα μέμνημαι⁹ ἐμνήσθην⁴
7. πάσχω¹⁰ (παθ-), *experience, suffer*
πίσσομαι¹¹ ἔπαθον πέπονθα
8. τιτρώσκω (τρο-), *wound*,
τρώσω ἔτρωσα τέτρωμαι ἐτρώθην

a. Verbs of this class are called *inceptive* from their ending -σκω, although few of them have any inceptive meaning.

643.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. ἀναγνούς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνακοινοῦνται Σωκράτει.¹²
2. καὶ ἵπποι ἤλωσαν εἰς¹³ εἴκοσι, καὶ ἡ σκηνὴ ἐάλω. 3. καὶ
τούτῳ ἀπεθανέτην. 4. σύ γε οὔτε γινώσκεις οὔτε μέμνησαι.

¹ The theme άλ- has the form αλο- in all systems except the present.

² See p. 83^b. The α of the theme, moreover, is lengthened to ᾱ in the indic. Observe that both ἐάλων and ἦλων are of the -μι form, being inflected like the second aor. of δίδωμι.

³ Second aor. of the -μι form.

⁴ See 441 b.

⁵ For διδαχ-σκω, χ being dropped before σκ.

⁶ The theme assumes ε, as in some verbs of the first class (605), in all the systems except the present and second aor.

⁷ As in the case of σφίζω (618, 8), the iota-subscript occurs only in the present system.

⁸ See 507.

⁹ With pres. force, *remember*, Lat. *meminī*. The aor. pass. ἐμνήσθην has the force of the mid.

¹⁰ For παθ-σκω, θ being dropped before σκ. Cf. διδάσκω above.

¹¹ For πένθ-σομαι (233), the theme assuming the form πενθ- (for πανθ-) by the insertion of the nasal, as in some verbs of the fifth class (626 a).

¹² Cf. 328, I. 14.

¹³ Cf. 498, I. 12.

5. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, ἄξιοί εἰσι τὰ ἔσχατα παθεῖν¹; 6. Κλέαρχος, ὃ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθνηκεν. 7. καὶ πολλοὺς ἐτίτρωσκον καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν Ἑλλήνων γυμνήτων.² 8. τῶν πελταστῶν τις ἀνὴρ Ἀθήνησι φάσκει δεδουλευκέναι. 9. πάντες οἱ φίλοι καὶ συντράπεζοι ἀπέθανον μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κίρου. 10. Ξενοφῶντος³ δὲ κατηγόρησάν τινες φάσκοντες παῖεσθαι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ. 11. καὶ εὐθὺς ἔγνωσαν πάντες ὅτι ἐγγύς που ἐστρατοπεδεύετο βασιλεύς. 12. εἰ δέ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον,⁴ τολμάτω καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης διδάσκειν. 13. ἔνθα δὴ ἀπεκρίνατο Κλεάνωρ ὅτι πρόσθεν ἂν ἀποθάνοιεν ἢ τὰ ὅπλα παραδοίεν. 14. οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς⁵ οὐδέν. 15. μετὰ δὲ τὸν τῶν ἄλλων θάνατον στρατηγῶν τιμωρηθεὶς ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἀπέθανεν. 16. καὶ παῖει βασιλεῖα κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος. 17. ἐκ τούτου πειράται Μιθριδάτης διδάσκειν ὡς ἄπορόν ἐστι σωθῆναι. 18. καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἐαλωκότας ἤλεγχον τὴν κύκλῳ πᾶσαν χώρην. 19. ἀλλὰ πολλὰς προφάσεις Κῦρος εὔρισκεν, ἵνα ὑμᾶς τε ἀπαρασκεύους λάβοι καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε ἀναγάγοι. 20. ἐάν τις ἀλῶ ἔνδον τῶν στρατιωτῶν, τιμωρηθήσεται.

II. 1. But the soldiers knew this. 2. And thus the city was taken. 3. Necessity taught them to camp. 4. He soon found him more friendly to Cyrus than to himself. 5. These say that Cyrus is dead. 6. Lead, too, was found in the villages. 7. When⁶ he died, he was nearly thirty years old.⁷ 8. Ctesias states how many were killed of those about the king. 9. They said that not even this (man) suffered any hurt.⁸ 10. I wish to show⁹ you that you wrongfully¹⁰ mistrust us. 11. They proceeded with the captured man (as) guide.

¹ Cf. 579, I. 14.

² Cf. 336, I. 15.

³ Cf. 308, I. 4.

⁴ See p. 224².

⁵ Cf. 536, I. 11.

⁶ Use *ἔτε*.

⁷ of about (*ὥς*) thirty years.

⁸ Cf. I. 14 above.

⁹ Use *διδάσκω*.

¹⁰ not rightly.

644. R. γνῶ, gna, gno, know.

γν-γνέ-σκ-ω, know, think; γνέ-μη, -ης, thought, opinion; γνέ-μων, -ον-ος, one that knows; ἀ-γνώμων, -ον, gen. -ον-ος, without knowledge, senseless; ἀγνομο-σύνη, -ης, ignorance; ὄ-νο-μα, -ατ-ος, τό (for ο-γνο-μα, with prothetic ο-), that by which one is known, name; ὀνομάζω, call by name; ὀνομασ-τί, adv., by name; ἀν-ώνυμ-ο-ς, -ο-ν, without name, nameless; εὐ-ώνυμ-ο-ς, -ο-ν, of good name or omen; νό-ο-ς, contr. νοῦς, δ (for γνο-φο-ς), power of thought, mind; νοέ-ω, observe, think out; ἀ-νόη-το-ς, -ο-ν, not understanding, foolish; ἀ-γνο-ια, -ās, ignorance; ἀγνοέ-ω, not know, not recognize; ἀμφι-γνοέ-ω, think on both sides, be in doubt; εὐ-νοο-ς, -οο-ν, kindly disposed; εὐνοια, -ās, good-will; εὐνο-ϊκός, -ή, -ό-ν, well-disposed; εὐνοϊκώς, adv., with good-will or affection; κακό-νοο-ς, -οο-ν (κακός, bad), ill-disposed; κακό-νο-ια, -ās, ill-will; διὰ-νοια, -ās, way of thinking, purpose; ἐν-νοια, -ās, thought, inspiration; πρό-νοια, -ās, forethought.

gnā-ru-s, adj., knowing, skilled; nār-r-ō, make known, tell; nā-uu-s (gnā-uu-s), adj., diligent; nō-sc-ō, learn; nō-bili-s, adj., well-known; nō-men, -inis, n., name; I-gnōrō, not know; no-ta, -ae, f., mark, sign.

CAN, CUNNING, KEN, KEEN, KNOW, NAME, un-couth; dia-gnosis, gnome, gnostic, a-gnostic, physio-gnomy, onomato-poeia, an-onymous, met-onymy, patr-onymic, pseud-onym, syn-onym.

LESSON XCIV.

Regular Verbs in -MI, ἴστημι. — Verbs of the Theme or Seventh Class.

Review 632, 633, 634.

Commit to memory the present and second aorist systems of ἴστημι (στα-), set, make stand, in 691, 695.

Review the endings and suffixes given in 156, 163, 199, 322, 331, 345 a, 364 a, 375 b.

645. In explanation of the forms in the paradigms, see 635 a b c d e g h i j. But note the following:—

a. ἴστημι is for σι-στη-μι, the rough breathing representing the σ of the reduplicating syllable.

b. In the pres. indic. act., ἵστασι arises from ἵστα-ᾶσι by contraction.

c. In the impf. indic., ἴ is due to the augment (76).

d. The contract forms of the subjv. arise as if from a stem in ε (ἵστε, στε, for ἵστα-, στα-), and the contracted syllables are therefore identical with those of τίθημι.

e. In the pres. inv. act., ἴστη (instead of ἴστα-θι) omits -θι and lengthens the vowel of the stem.

f. The act. participles ἰστάς (for ἰσταντς) and στάς (for σταντς) are inflected like λύσας (364).

g. The second aor. middle of ἴστημι is lacking. But the second aor. mid. of other -μι verbs with themes in α occurs. See 647, 8.

646. Some verbs of the classes previously introduced have second aorists of the -μι form, on the analogy of ἴστημι. Thus :—

1. βαίνω (βα-),¹ go,
βήσομαι ἔβην βέβηκα βέβαμαι² ἔβασην
2. διδράσκω (δρα-),³ run,
δράσομαι⁴ ἔδρᾱν δέδρακα
3. φθάνω (φθα-),⁵ get the start of, anticipate,
φθήσομαι and ἔφθην and
φθάσω⁶ ἔφθασα

647. Verbs that form the present and second aorist systems by adding the personal endings directly to the theme (632) belong to the *Theme* or *Seventh Class*. The tense stems of these verbs, other than the present and the second aorist, are formed like those of verbs in -ω. Thus :—

1. τίθην (θε-), put, set, place,
θήσω ἔθηκα⁷ τέθεικα⁸ τέθειμαι ἐτέθην⁹
2. δίδωμι (δο-), give,
δώσω ἔδωκα¹⁰ δέδωκα δέδομαι² ἔδόθην
3. ἀγαμαι (αγα-), admire,
ἡγάσασθην¹¹

¹ βαίνω belongs both to the fifth class (623) and to the fourth class (619), but the liquid form of the theme is found only in the present system.

² See 442.

³ See 642.

⁴ See 254 b.

⁵ See 628.

⁶ This form is rare.

⁷ See 636 e.

⁸ The vowel of the theme is ir-

regularly (254 b) lengthened to ει in the first pf. and pf. mid. systems.

⁹ For ἐτέθην, to avoid the occurrence of the rough mute at the beginning of successive syllables. See also 442.

¹⁰ See 639 e.

¹¹ ἀγαμαι is properly a pass. dependent (255 b), but the aor. mid. ἡγασάμην sometimes occurs. See also 441 and 441 b.

ἄκρῳ γενόμενοι¹ τοὺς πολεμίους. 10. ἀλλὰ τὰ ὄρη ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐκρέματο. 11. ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τοῦτό γε ἐπίστασθε. 12. Κῦρος δέ, ψιλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν, εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο. 13. αἰὲ ἔγωγε ἡγάμην τὴν σὴν φύσιν. 14. ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται ἐσταλμένος² ἐπὶ πόλεμον ὥς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα. 15. ἀλλ' εὖ ἐπιστάσθων ὅτι οὐκ ἀποδεδράκῃσιν. 16. ἐβουλεύοντο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα διαβαίεν. 17. καὶ οὔτε ἀνελεῖσθαι οὔτε θάψαι αὐτῶ ἐδυνάμεθα. 18. ἐκ δὲ τούτου καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες πῦρ ἑκάον καὶ ἐχρήοντο. 19. ὁ δὲ ἐμπιμπλᾷς ἀπάντων τὴν γνώμην ἀπέπεμπεν. 20. ἐπέστη ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις.

II. 1. And accordingly Cyrus went up on the mountains. 2. Chirisophus, the Lacedaemonian, rose and spoke as follows. 3. He halted the soldiers. 4. He advanced, halting now and then. 5. They kept filling the leathern bags with grass.³ 6. He mounted his horse and rode away. 7. They set the houses on fire. 8. He was not able to sleep. 9. You must cross the river. 10. He collected an army that he might be able to defeat the king. 11. And they raised them up. 12. But at that time these cities had revolted to Cyrus.

649. R. στα, sta, set, stand.

ἵστημι, set, make stand; στάσις, -εως, ἡ, a standing, band, faction; ἐπί-στασις, -εως, ἡ, a stopping, halt; κατά-στασις, -εως, ἡ, an establishing, state, condition; στασιάζω, stand against, form a faction, revolt; ἀντι-στασιάζω, form a faction against; ἀντιστασιώτης, -ου, one of the opposite faction; ἐπι-στάτης, -ου, one who stands over or has charge of; ἐπιστατέω, exercise command; προ-στάτης, -ου, one who stands before, leader; προ-στατέω, be leader or manager of; προστατεύω, be at the head, take charge; στέαρ, -ατος, τό, stiff fat, suet; ἱστός, ὁ (for σι-στος), mast; ἱστ-ιον, τό, sail; σταυρός, ὁ, stake, palisade; σταυρόω, fence with pales; σταύρωμα, -ατος, τό, stockade; σταθμός, ὁ, standing-place, stall, station, stage.

¹ With φθάνω, as with λανθάνω and τυγχάνω (p. 250³), the accompanying partic. contains the leading idea of the expression. Cf. 628, I. 18.

² equipped.

³ Verbs signifying to fill take the acc. of the thing filled and the gen. of the material.

σι-σθ, set, make stand; **στα-τῡ-s**, adj., fixed; **στα-τι-m**, adv., on the spot, immediately; **στα-τι-θ**, -ῶn-is, f., a standing; **στα-βῡlu-m**, -ῖ, n., stall; **ἰn-σtau-r-θ**, establish; **σθ**, *stā-re*, stand; **στᾶ-men**, -in-is, n., warp, thread.

STAND, STEAD, STEED, STOW; *apo-stasy, apo-state, ec-stasy, histology, hydro-statics, sy-stem, stoic.*

LESSON XCV.

Regular Verbs in -MI, δείκνυμι and ἔδυν. — Verbs of the Nasal or Fifth Class in -νυμι.

Review 632, 633, 634.

Commit to memory the present system of δείκνυμι and the second aorist system of δύω in 692, 696. No second aorist of δείκνυμι occurs.

Review the endings and suffixes given in 156, 163, 199, 322, 331, 345 a, 364 a, 375 b.

650. In explanation of the forms in the paradigms, see 635 a b c d e i j. But note the following:—

a. In the pres. system of δείκνυμι, the personal endings are not added directly to the theme δεικ- (632), but to the theme increased by -νυ-, as explained below (651).

b. The subjv. and opt. are formed as in verbs in -ω. Cf. λύω, λύομαι, and λύοιμι, λυοίμην in 672.

c. In the pres. inv. act., δείκνῦ (instead of δεικνυ-θι) omits -θι and lengthens the final vowel of the stem.

d. The act. participles δεικνύς (for δεικνυντς) and δύς (for δυντς) are inflected δεικνύς, δεικνύσα, δεικνύν, gen. δεικνύντος, δεικνύσης, δεικνύντος, etc. Compare the paradigm of λύσας in 364.

e. The second aorist middle does not occur.

651. Verbs that form the present stem by adding -νυ- to the theme belong to the Nasal or Fifth Class (623). If the theme ends in a vowel, the suffix is -ννυ-. Thus:—

1. δείκνυμι (δεικ-), point out, show,

δείξω

ἔδειξα

δείδειχα

δείδειγμαι

ἔδειχθην

2. ζεύγνυμι (ζυγ-), ¹ join, yoke,			
ζεύξω	ἔζευξα	ἔζευγμαι	ἔζυγην and ἔζεύχθην ²
3. μίγνυμι (μιγ-), ³ mix, mingle,			
μίξω	ἔμιξα	μέμιγμαι	ἐμίχθην and ἐμίγην ²
4. ὀλλύμι ⁴ (ολ-), destroy, lose,			
ὀλώ	ὤλεσα ⁵ and ὤλόμην ⁶	ὤλωκα ⁷	ὤλωλα
5. ὀμνύμι (ομ-), swear,			
ὀμῶμαι ⁸	ὤμοσα ⁹	ὀμώμοκα ⁷	ὀμώμομαι and ὀμώμοσμαι ¹⁰
6. πήγνυμι (παγ-), ¹ fix, freeze,			
	ἔπηξα	πέπηγα ¹¹	ἐπάγην
7. σκεδάννυμι (σκεδα-), scatter,			
σκεδῶ ¹²	ἔσκεδασα ¹³	ἔσκεδασμαι	ἔσκεδάσθην

652. Note also the following verbs of the First Class, which have second aorists of the -μι form : —

1. δύνω, make enter, intrans. enter,			
δύσω	ἔδῡσα ¹⁴ and ἔδῡν	δέδυμαι ¹⁵	ἔδῡθην
2. φύνω, bring forth, bear, produce,			
φύσω	ἔφῡσα and ἔφῡν ¹⁶	πέφυκα ¹⁷	

¹ The theme is lengthened, as in verbs of the second class (492), in other systems than the second pass.

² Rare in Attic prose.

³ The theme is lengthened in other systems than the second pass. Cf. τρέβω of the first class (604, 13), which has the theme lengthened in all of the systems except the second pf. and second pass.

⁴ For ολ-νῦμι, by assimilation.

⁵ The theme assumes ε in the first aor. and first pf. systems, as in some verbs of the first class (605), but without lengthening (441).

⁶ In the mid. and in the second pf., the verb has the intrans. meaning, *perish, be lost*.

⁷ See p. 209¹.

⁸ See p. 159².

⁹ The theme assumes ο in all of the systems except the pres. and fut. (cf. ἀλίσκομαι, 642, 1), but without lengthening (441).

¹⁰ See 441 b.

¹¹ Intrans., *be fixed, be frozen*.

¹² Formed like the fut. of ἐλαύνω (624, 2).

¹³ For the last three principal parts, see 441, 441 a.

¹⁴ The first aor. is trans., the second aor., intrans.

¹⁵ See 442.

¹⁶ Intrans., *was born*.

¹⁷ Intrans., *be born, be by nature*.

653.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. συμμῖγνύασιν ἀλλήλοις, καὶ νικῶσιν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ διώκουσιν. 2. ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἄλλοι ἀνίστανται, ἐπιδεικνύντες ὡς ἔστιν ἡ ἀπορίᾱ. 3. καὶ ἄνεμος ἐναντίος ἔπνει πηγνὺς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 4. ἀποδείκνυνται οἱ μάντις πάντες γνῶμην ὅτι οὐδαμῇ μάχη ἔσται. 5. τοὺς ἄνδρας αὐτοὺς οἷς ὤμνυτε ἀπολωλέκατε. 6. πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώλετο ὑπὸ λιμοῦ. 7. δίκαιον¹ γὰρ ἀπόλλυσθαι τοὺς ἐπιорκοῦντας. 8. καὶ ἀποτεμόντες τὰς κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν, ἐπεδείκνυσαν τοῖς ἑαυτῶν πολεμίοις. 9. τὸ ὕδωρ δ' ἐφέροντο ἐπὶ δεῖπνον ἐπήγγυτο. 10. τούτοις τοῖς δεσμοῖς ἐξεύγνυν τοὺς ἀσκροὺς πρὸς ἀλλήλους. 11. ἔφῤυτε ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ χώρᾳ καὶ ἐτράφητε. 12. τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ συνεπόμενοι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀπώλονται. 13. ὥστε ὥρᾱ¹ καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι τὴν παιδείαν. 14. φιλοτιμότητος δὲ πεφῦκώς² οὐχ ἡττηθήσεται. 15. καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι συμμῖγνύασιν τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον. 16. ταῦτα δ' ὤμνυμεν, σφάξαντες ταῦρον καὶ λύκον καὶ κάπρον καὶ κριόν. 17. καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέκοψάν τινες τῶν ἀποσκεδαννυμένων ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. 18. Κῦρος καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρματος τὸν θώρακα ἐνέδῃ. 19. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι προσομνύασιν καὶ ἡγήσεσθαι³ ἀδόλως.

II. 1. They point out the tracks of the horses to the soldiers. 2. Hereupon he expresses his opinion. 3. They disclosed their plan to the soldiers. 4. He wishes to show his justice. 5. I joined the king in your camp. 6. The wind is freezing the beasts of burden. 7. Let somebody express his opinion. 8. When he heard this, he sank down in⁴ shame. 9. After him another stood up, pointing out the folly of the man. 10. For the seers declare that there will be a battle. 11. The peltasts are straggling from camp.

¹ See p. 224².² Causal. See 379.³ Their oath is, ἡγησόμεθα. See 354.⁴ ὑπό with gen.

654. R. *ζυγ, iug, bind.*

ζυγ-ό-ν, τό, yoke; ὑπο-ζύγ-ιο-ν, τό, beast under the yoke, beast of burden; ζεύγ-νῦ-μι, yoke, join, fasten; ζεύγ-ος, -ε-ος, τό, yoke of oxen, etc., team; ζευγ-ηλά-τη-ς, -ου (ἐλαύνω, drive), one who drives a yoke of oxen, teamster; ζευγηλατέ-ω, drive a yoke of oxen.

iug-u-m, -ī, n., yoke; iū-mentu-m, -ī, n., beast of burden; con-iūnx or con-iux, -iug-is, m. and f., husband, wife; bigae, -ārum, f., span of horses; iūxtā, adv., adjoining, near; iung-ō, join.

Yoke; *sy-zygy.*

LESSON XCVI.

Verbs of the Mixed or Eighth Class.

655. A few verbs form the tense stems of their various systems (see 252, 490, 519, 587, 603) from essentially different themes. Thus:—

1. αἶρω (αἶρε-, ἔλ-), <i>take, seize, mid. take for oneself, choose,</i>				
αἶρήσω	εἶλον ¹	ἤρῃκα	ἤρῃμαι	ἤρῃσθην ²
2. εἶπον (επ-, ερ-), <i>said,</i> ³				
εἶπῶ	εἶπον ⁴	εἶρηκα ⁵	εἶρημαι	εἶρησθην ⁶
3. ἔρχομαι (ερχ-, ἐλυσθ-), <i>go, come,</i>				
	ἤλθον ⁷	ἔλῃλυθα ⁸		
4. ἐσθίω (εσθι-, ἐδ-, ⁹ φαγ-), <i>eat,</i>				
ἐδομαι ¹⁰	ἔφαγον	ἐδήδοκα ⁸	ἐδήδεσμαι ¹¹	ἐδέσθην
5. ὁράω (όρα-, ἰδ-, σπ-), <i>see,</i>				
ὤψομαι	εἶδον ¹²	ὠρᾶκα ¹³ and ὠράκα	ὠρᾶμαι and ὤμμαι	ὤφθην

¹ See p. 83⁸.

² See 442.

³ The pres. and impf. are supplied by λέγω (600, 4), φημί (348), and other verbs.

⁴ For ε-φε-φε-πο-ν. The theme επ- is for an original *φεπ-* (p. 161²). This is reduplicated (cf. 491 a) in forming the tense stem of the second aor. (490), *φε-φε-πο-, ε-ε-πο-*, by contraction *ειπο-*.

⁵ See p. 235⁴. The theme ερ- becomes *ρε-* by shift of the letters in the last three principal parts.

⁶ See p. 166².

⁷ ἤλθον is for *ηλυθον*.

⁸ See p. 209¹.

⁹ The theme *εδ-* assumes also the forms *εδε-* and *εδο-*.

¹⁰ A fut. formed irregularly without *σ*.

¹¹ See 441 a.

¹² For ε-φιδο-ν. The theme *ιδ-* stands for an original *φιδ-*.

¹³ See p. 83⁸. *ὠρᾶκα* and *ὠρᾶμαι* have also the temporal augment. This occurs also in the impf. *ὠρών*.

6. **τρέχω** (τρέχ-, δραμ-), *run*,
δραμοῦμαι **ἔδραμον** **δεδράμηκα**¹ **δεδράμηναι**
7. **φέρω** (φέρ-, οι-, ενεκ-²), *bear, bring, carry*,
οἶσω **ἤνεγκα**³ and **ἐνήνοχα**⁴ **ἐνήνεγμα** **ἤνεγκον**
8. **ἠνέομαι** (ωνε-, πρια-), *buy*,
ἠνήσομαι **ἠπριάμην**⁵ **ἠνήμηναι**⁶ **ἠνήθην**

656. For convenience these verbs may be designated as belonging to the *Mixed* or *Eighth* Class.

657.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. οὐ πολὺν δὲ προεληλύθασιν⁷ οὗτοι. 2. κρέα ἔψοντες ἡσθιον ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν.⁸ 3. εἰ μὴ πριώμεθα, τὰ ἐπιτήδεια οὐχ ἔξομεν. 4. Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε. 5. τούτους δὲ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ λόφου⁹ τί ἐστίν¹⁰ ἀπαγγεῖλαι. 6. τούτους, ἦν πως δυνώμεθα, καὶ ὠμούς δεῖ καταφαγεῖν. 7. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια ὠνεῖσθαι κρεῖττον¹¹ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς. 8. καὶ οἱ ὄνοι προέδραμον. 9. διελθόντες δὲ τρεῖς σταθμοὺς ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸ Μηδία^ς καλούμενον¹² τεῖχος. 10. πολλοὺς δὲ πῦρούς καὶ κριθὰς φέρει τὸ πεδίον. 11. ταύτην δὴ τὴν πάροδον Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρήλθεν. 12. ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χώραν ἀπήλανεν. 13. κρέα οὖν ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο. 14. πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι¹³ ἐλθεῖν. 15. ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὸν ἐγκέφαλον τοῦ φοῖνικος πρῶτον ἔφαγον οἱ στρατιῶται. 16. οὐκ ἀποπεφύγασιν· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε¹⁴ ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον. 17. οἱ δ' ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγόντας πορεύεσθαι. 18. τὰ

¹ The theme assumes ε (cf. 605).

² Sometimes in the form ενεγκ-, with inserted nasal, as in verbs of the fifth class (626 a).

³ A first aor. formed irregularly without σ.

⁴ See p. 209¹.

⁵ A second aor. of the -μι form. See 646.

⁶ See p. 83⁸.

⁷ See p. 251¹.

⁸ Cf. 284, I. 11.

⁹ Cf. 482, I. 14.

¹⁰ The subj. of ἐστίν refers to τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ λόφου.

¹¹ See p. 224².

¹² (so) called.

¹³ He said, βούλομαι. See 354.

¹⁴ Cf. 601, I. 6.

δ' ἄρματα ἐφέροντο δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων. 19. Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς¹ εἴρηκα ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων. 20. δεισᾶς μὴ οὐ πρῶτος παραδράμοι εἰς τὸ χωρίον, χωρεῖ αὐτὸς καὶ παρέρχεται πάντας. 21. καὶ προσελθὼν ἄνθρωπος ἠρώτησε τοὺς προφύλακας ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον ἢ Κλέαρχον. 22. αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ οὔποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς² ὥς ἐγὼ προδοὺς τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλιᾶν εἰλόμην.

II. 1. For they ran much³ faster than the horses.⁴ 2. He captured many of them alive. 3. Many deserted⁵ from the king to Cyrus. 4. And they chose men and sent (them) with Clearchus. 5. But when they had come together,⁶ Clearchus spoke as follows. 6. They ran back to the river. 7. When he had said this,⁷ he dismissed the messengers. 8. He saw the tents where the Cilicians had been on guard.⁸ 9. The Greeks went to their tents with a roar of laughter. 10. But these have eaten a little. 11. And instructions have been given⁹ the cavalry to go in pursuit. 12. He ran forward from the tree two or three strides.¹⁰

658. R. φέρ, fer, bear.

φέρ-ω, bear, bring; **δια-φέρω**, bear apart, differ, part. **διαφέρων**, -ουσα, -ον, *differing*; **διαφερόντως**, adv., *differently from others, peculiarly, surpassingly*; **φορ-ά**, -ās, *a carrying or taking*; **μισθο-φορά**, -ās (**μισθός**-s, *wages*), *wages received, pay*; **φόρ-ο-s**, δ, *what is brought in, tribute*; **φορέ-ω**, *keep bringing, carry habitually, wear*; **γερρο-φόρο-s**, -ο-ν (**γέρρο-ν**, *wicker-shield*), *carrying wicker-shields*; **διά-φορο-s**, -ο-ν, *bearing apart, different*; **δορυ-φόρο-s**, δ (**δόρυ**, *spear*), *one who carries a spear*; **δρεπανη-φόρο-s**, -ο-ν (**δρέπανο-ν**, *scythe*), *scythe-bearing*; **μισθο-φόρο-s**, -ο-ν (**μισθός**-s, *wages*), *receiving pay, mercenary*; **σκευο-φόρο-s**, -ο-ν (**σκεῦος**, *gear*, plur. *baggage*), *baggage-carrying*; **σκευοφορέ-ω**, *carry baggage*; **σύμ-φορο-s**, -ο-ν, *bearing together, i.e. fitting, useful, advantageous*; **ὑδρο-φόρο-s**, -ο-ν (**ὑδωρ**, *water*), *carrying water*; **ὑδροφορέ-ω**, *carry water*; **φόρ-το-s**, δ, *what is carried, load*; **φορτ-λο-ν**, τό, *burden, load*; **φορ-εύ-s**, -έ-ως, δ, *bearer, carrier*; **ἀφορεύ-s**, -έ-ως, δ (for **ἀμφι-φορεύς**, in Homer), *vessel with handles on both sides*;

¹ See 569.

² Cf. 611, I. 17.

³ Cf. 470, I. 16.

⁴ Cf. 485, I. 3.

⁵ Use ἀπέρχομαι.

⁶ Use the aor. indic. after ἐπειδή.

⁷ Cf. I. 12 above.

⁸ Use the impf.

⁹ instructions have been given, εἴρηται.

¹⁰ Cf. 219, I. 6.

δι-φρ-ο-ς, ὁ (δύο, 499), *that which holds two, chariot-board*; ἐν-διφρ-ισ-ς, -ο-ν, *on the same seat with one*; ὁσ-φρ-αίνο-μαι, 2 aor. ὠσ-φρ-ό-μην (stem οσ-φρ-ο- for οδ-φρ-ο-, ὕζω, *smell*, cf. εὐώδης, *fragrant*), *have an odour brought to one, smell*.

fer-ō, *bear*; fer-ti-li-s, *adj., fruitful*; lūci-fer, *adj., light-bringing*; fōr-s, fōr-ti-s, *f., chance*; fōr-t-ūna, -ae, *f., chance*; fūr, fūr-is, *m., thief*.

BEAR, BURDEN, BIER, *wheel-BARROW, BIRTH, BAIRN*; para-phern-alia, *Christo-pher, dia-phoretic, meta-phor, phos-phorus*.

LESSON XCVII.

Second Perfect System without Tense Suffix.

659. A few verbs have second perfects and pluperfects formed without tense suffix, after the analogy of verbs in -μ, the personal endings being added directly to the reduplicated theme. Thus, ἵσταμεν, *we stand*, τεθνᾶσι, *they are dead*.

Commit to memory the second perfect system without tense suffix of ἵσταμεν in 697.

a. The indicative singular is lacking.

b. The participle ἑστώς (for ἑστα-ός) is inflected ἑστώς, ἑστῶσα, ἑστός, gen. ἑστῶτος, ἑστῶσης, ἑστῶτος, *etc.*

660. Other verbs have forms in the second perfect system without suffix. Thus:—

1. βαίνω (βα-), *go* (646, 1), indic. βεβᾶσι, subjv. βεβῶσι, inf. βεβάναι, partic. βεβώς.

2. θνήσκω (θαν-), *die* (642, 5), indic. τέθνατον, τέθναμεν, τεθνᾶσι, ἐτέθνασαν, opt. τεθναίην, inv. τέθναθι, inf. τεθνάναι, partic. τεθνεώς (with ε for α, and uncontracted).

3. δέδια (δι-), *fear*,¹ δέδιμεν, δέδιτε, δεδιᾶσι, ἐδεδειν, ἐδέδισαν, subjv. δεδίη, δεδίωσι, opt. δεδέιη, inv. δεδίθι, inf. δεδιέναι, partic. δεδιώς.

661. Here belongs also the irregular verb in -μι, οἶδα (ιδ-, ειδ-), *know*, a second perfect with present force, formed without reduplication, the plup. (as impf.) being ᾔδη or ᾔδειν, fut. αἶσομαι.

Commit to memory the paradigm of οἶδα in 698.

¹ This second pf. with pres. force is related to δέιδω, *fear*, first aor. ἔδεισα, first pf. δέδοικα (with pres. force).

662.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἔστασαν ἀπορούντες τῷ πράγματι.¹
 2. τεθνεώτας πολλοὺς εὐρήσω. 3. οὐκ ἴστε ὃ τι ποιεῖτε.
 4. ἐδέδισαν τὴν στρατιὰν οἱ τὴν μισθοφορὰν ὑπεσχημέ-
 νοι. 5. καὶ νῦν δύο καλῶ τε καγαθῶ ἄνδρε τέθνατον.
 6. οἱ πολέμοι οὐκ ἴσασι πῶς τὴν ἡμετέραν συμμαχίαν.
 7. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἐφέστασαν ἔξω τῶν δένδρων· οὐ γὰρ ἦν
 ἀσφαλὲς ἐν τοῖς δένδροις ἐστάναι πλείον² ἢ τὸν ἓνα λόχον.
 8. ὁ δὲ τοὺς προδιαβεβώτας λαβὼν ὥχετο. 9. καὶ ταῦτα
 ποιεῖ δεδιὼς μὴ ἀποθάνῃ ὁ ἵππος. 10. εἰ ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμο-
 νίοις γένοιτο οἱ στρατιῶται, παντὸς ἂν προεσταίην³ τοῦ
 στρατεύματος.⁴ 11. ὅπως δὲ εἰδῆτε εἰς οἶον ἔρχεσθε ἀγῶνα,
 ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς εἰδὼς διδάξω. 12. πάρεστι δὲ ὁ σατράπης βουλό-
 μενος εἰδέναι τί πράχθησεται. 13. τῷ δὲ ἀνδρὶ πείσομαι,⁵
 ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι. 14. ἄνδρες στρα-
 τιῶται, τῶν Ἀρκάδων οἱ μὲν τεθνᾶσιν, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐπὶ
 λόφου τινὸς πολιορκοῦνται. 15. καὶ ὡς προθυμοτάτοις οὖσιν
 ὑμῖν χάριν οἶδε Κῦρος. 16. καὶ ζώντάς τινας αὐτῶν προ-
 θυμήθημεν³ λαβεῖν αὐτοῦ τούτου ἔνεκα, ὅπως ἡγεμόσιν⁶
 εἰδόσι τὴν χώρην χρησαίμεθα. 17. ἐλθὼν δ' ἐκεῖνος λέγει
 ὅτι ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν⁷ εἰς χωρίον ὅθεν ὄψονται
 θάλατταν· εἰ δὲ μή, τεθνάναι ἐπηγγείλατο. 18. ὁ δὲ μάντις
 δεδιὼς μὴ γένηται ταῦτα ἐκφέρει εἰς τὸ στρατεύμα τόνδε τὸν
 λόγον. 19. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἦλθεν Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ
 Ἀργεῖος πεφευγώς, καὶ λέγει ὅτι τεθνᾶσιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι.

II. 1. For we know where⁸ they are gone. 2. I wish to
 know how many are dead. 3. He wept a long⁹ time standing.
 4. But he at once drives away those standing round. 5. Cyrus
 kept finding¹⁰ many pretexts, as *you* also well know. 6. For

¹ Cf. 579, I. 1.² a greater number, the subj. of
 ἐστάναι.³ See p. 251¹.⁴ See p. 83³.⁵ See 609, 2.⁶ Cf. 611, I. 8.⁷ Cf. 637, I. 2.⁸ ὅπῃ.⁹ Use πολλός. ¹⁰ Cf. 614, II. 12.

know well that I should prefer freedom. 7. Know well that they will follow you and will try to imitate (you). 8. For he knew this. 9. Whether, then, I shall do what is just,¹ I do not know. 10. I am not willing to go, fearing that he may take me and inflict punishment on (me). 11. For you know that Xerxes has the middle of the Persian army. 12. They said that the generals knew this.

663. R. *ἴδω*, *uide*, *see*, *know*.

εἶδ-ο-ν (*ιδ-*), *saw*; *ἴδ-εᾶ*, *-ās*, *look*, *form*; *εἶδ-ος*, *-e-os*, *τό*, *look*, *shape*; *εὖ-ειδής*, *-és*, *good looking*; *θυμο-ειδής*, *-és* (R. 1 *θυ*, 537), *high-spirited*; *μηνο-ειδής*, *-és* (*μήνη*, *moon*), *crescent-shaped*; *σφαιρο-ειδής*, *-és* (*σφαῖρα*, *ball*), *ball-like*, *spherical*; *τιάρο-ειδής*, *-és* (*τιάρᾱ*, *tiara*), *tiara-shaped*; *ἀντρώδης*, *-es* (for *αντρο-ειδης*, *ἄντρο-ν*, *cave*), *cave-like*, *cavernous*; *γε-ώδης*, *-es* (*γῆ*, *earth*), *earthy*, *deep-soiled*; *εἶδ-ωλο-ν*, *τό*, *form*, *likeness*, *image*; *οἶδ-α*, *know*; *ἴσ-τωρ*, *-ορ-ος*, *ὁ*, *one who knows*, *wise man*, *judge*; *ἰστορέ-ω*, *seek to know*, *learn*; *ἰστορ-ιά*, *-ās*, *knowledge got by inquiry*.

uide-e-ō, *see*; *uī-su-s*, *-ūs*, *m.*, *look*, *vision*; *ē-uid-ēn-s*, *adj.*, *looking out*, *obvious*; *prūdēn-s*, *adj.*, *foreseeing*, *prudent*; *uī-tru-m*, *-ī*, *n.*, *glass*; *uīs-ō*, *look at attentively*.

WISE, WISE-acre, WIT, WICKED, WITCH; *idea*, *spher-oid*, *typh-oid*, *idol*, *history*.

LESSON XCVIII.

Irregular Verbs in -MI, φημί, εἰμί, εἶμι.

664. Certain important verbs follow the analogy of regular verbs in -μι in the present and second aorist systems, but are more or less irregular in formation. Some of them lack the second aorist system entirely. In their other systems, so far as these occur, they follow verbs in -ω. Thus: —

1. *φημί* (*φα-*), *say*, fut. *φήσω*, aor. *ἔφησα*. Cf. Lat. *fā-rī*.
2. *εἰμί* (*εσ-*), *be*, fut. *ἔσομαι*.³ Cf. Lat. *es-se*.
3. *εἶμι* (*ι-*), *go*.⁴ Cf. Lat. *ī-re*.

¹ *just* (things).

² See 483.

³ See 269.

⁴ *εἶμι* has the force of a fut., especially in the pres. indic., *am going*, i.e. *shall go*.

Commit to memory the paradigms of φημί,¹ εἰμί, and εἰμι in 699, 700, 701.

Review 348 a, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188.

665.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἄλλ' ἐγὼ φημι ταῦτα φλυαρίᾱς εἶναι.² 2. καὶ λέγεται ὡς καλοὶ πλοῖ εἰσιν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. 3. ἡμεῖς, ἦν σωφρονῶμεν, ἄπιμεν ἐντεῦθεν. 4. φησὶ δέ, ἂν πρὸς ἐκείνον ἴητε, εὖ ποιήσιν³ ὑμᾶς. 5. ἐδόκει Κῦρος εἰς τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἔω ἥξειν βασιλέᾱ. 6. οὕτω γὰρ ἀπιόντες⁴ ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπιοίμεν. 7. παρὰ Κῦρου δούλου ὄντος⁵ οὐδεὶς ἀπῆει πρὸς βασιλέᾱ. 8. κώμᾱς δὲ κατακαύσαντες ἔνθεν ἐξήσαν. 9. ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, θυομένῳ ἰέναι⁶ ἐπὶ βασιλέᾱ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά. 10. ἐνῆν⁷ δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς πρόσθεν φιλιᾱς ὑπομνήματα καὶ πίστεως. 11. ὑμεῖς δὲ οὐκ ἦτε εἰς τὴν χώρᾱν. 12. καὶ οὐδὲν⁸ μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν. 13. τὰ δὲ πλοῖα Ἀβροκόμᾱς προῖων κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα μὴ Κῦρος διαβαίῃ. 14. νῦν μὲν οὖν ἄπιτε, καταλιπόντες τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα· ὕστερον δὲ πάρεστε πρὸς τὴν κρίσιν. 15. τῆς νυκτὸς προελθόντες καταλαμβάνουσι χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον οἱ βάρβαροι, ἢ ἔμελλον οἱ Ἕλληνες παριέναι, ἀκρωνυχίᾱν⁹ ὄρους, ὑφ' ἣν ἡ κατάβασις ἦν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. 16. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβαλλόμενοι τὰ ὅπλα ἐπήσαν. 17. καὶ οὐ φᾶσιν ἰέναι, ἐὰν μὴ τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῶ. 18. ἦν δ' ἀποψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἄπιμεν ἅπαντες. 19. τέλος δὲ εἶπε, Καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν πιστὰ λαβεῖν παρ' ἡμῶν ἢ μὴν φιλιᾱν παρέξειν ὑμῖν

¹ The partic. φᾶς is never used in Attic prose, but instead of this φάσκων occurs.

² See 354.

³ See 354. The unexpressed subj. of the infin. (350) is the same as that of φησὶ. In the phrase πρὸς ἐκείνον, πρὸς means against.

⁴ Cf. 560, I. 10.

⁵ Concessive use of the partic. See 379.

⁶ for going. Construe with οὐκ ἐγίγνετο, and cf. 524, I. 15.

⁷ See p. 83⁷.

⁸ Construe with παθεῖν, and cf. 601, I. 16.

⁹ In apposition (p. 25³) with χωρίον.

τὴν χώραν καὶ ἀδόλως ἀπάξειν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀγορὰν παρέχοντας.¹ 20. οὕτως οἱ δειλοὶ κύνες τοὺς μὲν παριόντας διώκουσιν τε καὶ δάκνουσιν, ἣν δύνωνται, τοὺς δὲ διώκοντας φεύγουσιν.

II. 1. They made the attack with a great shout. 2. He refused to go. 3. Let us go to the men. 4. They denied that there was another road. 5. Let the hoplites be at hand with their arms. 6. They desisted and went to their tents. 7. I say, therefore, that you ought to cross the Euphrates. 8. For what herald will be willing to go? 9. You got² your living by³ robbery, as you yourself said. 10. The enemy advanced slowly. 11. But (while) saying this, he heard a noise⁴ going through the ranks. 12. They went frequently to his headquarters and demanded their pay.

666. R. εσ, es, live, be.

εἰ-μί (for εσ-μι), εἶ (for εσ-ι, in Homer ἐσ-σι), etc., be; part. ὄν, ὄσα, ὄν, gen. ὄντ-ος, etc. (stem οντ-), older form ἐ-ών, etc. (stem ε-οντ- for εσ-οντ-); οὐσ-ιά, -ᾱs (for οντ-ιά), property (that which is), being, existence; ἐξ-ουσία, -ᾱs, possibility, power (cf. ἐξ-εστί, it is free to one, it is allowed); συν-ουσία, -ᾱs, a being together; ἐτ-άξω (from a stem ετ-ο- for σ-ετ-ο-), examine, test (see if a thing is); ἐξ-ετάδω, examine closely, inspect; ἐξέτα-σι-ς, -ε-ως, ἡ, examination, inspection, review; ἔτ-υμο-ς, -ον (ετ-υ- for σ-ετ-υ-), true, actual; ἔτ-οι-μο-ς, -η, -ο-ν or -ο-ς, -ο-ν (ἐτ- for σ-ετ-), real, ready, prepared; ἐτοίμως, adv., readily; εὖς (for εσ-υ-ς), real, true, good; neut. contracted as adv., εὖ, well.

s-u-m (for es-u-m), be, inf. es-se; ab-sēn-s, adj., absent; prae-sēn-s, adj., present; s-ō-n-s, adj., the real one, guilty, criminal; er-u-s, -i, m., master, lord.

AM, ART, IS, ARE, SOOTH, SIN; etymo-logy, eu-logy, ev-angelist.

NOTE. — The group of Greek words is remarkable as showing in nearly all of the words a complete loss of the root. The Latin words all preserve traces of it.

¹ Agrees with ἡμᾶς to be supplied as subj. of παρέξειν and ἀπάξειν.

² Use ἔχω.

³ Use ἀπό.

⁴ See p. 63³.

LESSON XCIX.

Irregular Verbs in -MI (continued), ἔημι, κείμαι, ἦμαι.

667. Other important irregular verbs in -μι (664) are the following:—

1. ἔημι (έ-), *send*,
ἔσω ἦκα¹ εἶκα² εἶμαι εἴθην

2. κείμαι (κει-), *lie, be laid*, fut. κείσομαι.

3. ἦμαι (ἦσ-),³ *sit*, commonly in the compound form κάθημαι in Attic prose.

Commit to memory the paradigms of ἔημι, κείμαι, and κάθημαι in 702, 703, 704.

668.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. ἐπὶ τοῦ ἄρματος καθήμενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο. 2. ὡς εἶδε τὸν στρατηγὸν διελαύνοντα, ἔησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ. 3. τοῖς διαβαίνουσιν⁴ ἐπικείσονται οἱ Καρδοῦχοι ὀπισθεν. 4. τί κατάκειμαι; ἡ δὲ νύξ προβαίνει. 5. ἦν δὲ τὸ τεῖχος ὠκοδομημένον πλίνθοις ὀπταῖς ἐν ἀσφάλτῳ κειμέναις. 6. εὐθὺς ἔεντο ἄνω κατὰ τὴν φανεράν ὁδόν. 7. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι δέισαντες ἦκαν ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνος εἰς τὴν νάπην. 8. οὗτοι δέ, ὅτι οὐκ ἤθελε τοὺς φεύγοντας προέσθαι, ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν. 9. ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἄνω τὰ τοξεύματα ἰέντες μακρὰν.⁵ 10. ἐν μέσῳ γὰρ ἤδη κεῖται ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαθὰ. 11. αἱ δὲ βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων, οἷα ἐν τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἔστιν⁶ ἰδεῖν, τοῖς οἰκέταις⁷ ἀπέκειντο. 12. κράτιστον,⁸ ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν

¹ Compare the first aor. forms of *τίθηναι* and *δίδωμι*, 636 e and 639 e.

² See p. 83⁸.

³ σ of the theme is retained only in the forms *ἕσται*, *ἕστο*, and not always here.

⁴ Cf. 129, I. 10.

⁵ to a great height. Sc. *ὀδόν* and cf. 219, I. 6.

⁶ See 188 a.

⁷ Cf. 106, I. 10.

⁸ See p. 224².

ἔσθαι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. 13. καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πόρρω δοκούμεν μοι Κύρου¹ καθῆσθαι. 14. ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες λοχαγοί, οὔτε καθεύδειν δύναμαι οὔτε κατακεῖσθαι² ἔτι. 15. τούτου ἕνεκα βασιλέᾳ ὑπώπτευν ἐπὶ τὸ πεδίον τὸ ὕδωρ ἀφεικέναι. 16. ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι ἐκάθηντο, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι. 17. ἔνθα δὴ Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχαγὸς ἐκέλευσεν ἀφιέναι³ ἑαυτόν. 18. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν πρὸς τεῖχος ἔρημον μέγα, πρὸς τῇ πόλει κείμενον. 19. πολλοὶ δὲ ἀντιλέγουσιν ὡς οὐκ ἄξιόν ἐστι βασιλεῖ ἀφείναι τοὺς ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν στρατευσαμένους.

II. 1. Straightway they rushed into the boats. 2. And many were lying outstretched. 3. But they let their dogs loose at night.⁴ 4. The snow concealed the arms and the men as they lay asleep.⁵ 5. If you will make known the one who let the ass loose,⁶ you shall receive a reward. 6. But when the trumpet sounded, they charged upon the enemy. 7. They surprised the guards sitting about a fire. 8. He says he will never abandon his friends. 9. But having said, "I see the man," he rushed at him. 10. They let them go when they had served⁷ breakfast to them. 11. The enemy were encamped in⁸ the open road. 12. They were eager to intrust to him money, cities, their own lives.

669. κείμαι, lie.

κεῖ-μαι, lie; κοι-μά-ω, lay to rest; κῶ-μο-ς, δ, banquet (where the guests reclined); κώ-μη, -ης, dwelling-place, village ('resting-place'); κωμ-άρχης, -ου (R. αρχ, 463), village chief; κωμή-της, -ου, villager; κῶ-μα, -ατ-ος, τό, deep sleep.

οἰ-υῖ-ς, -is, m., citizen; tran-qui-llu-ς, adj., quiet; quiē-ς, -ētis, f., a lying still, rest; quiē-sc-ō, keep quiet, rest.

¹ See p. 281.

² The infin. κείσθαι retains its accent in compounds, i.e. the accent is not recessive.

³ Sc. αὐτούς as subj. of ἀφιέναι.

⁴ τὰς νύκτας. Cf. 239, II. 9.

⁵ as they lay asleep, use the partic.

⁶ See 371.

⁷ Use the partic.

⁸ Use ἐπί.

LESSON C.

Review of Groups. — Reading Lesson.

Review the groups of related words in 638, 641, 644, 649, 654, 658, 663, 666, 669.

Review 140, 142.

Read and translate again 630.

Read and translate the following passage : —

670. Κῦρος.

Χ. καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην τῷ
 φάλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἡνίκα ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ Ἕλληνες
 καὶ προήρχοντο ἀντίοι ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. ὥς δ' ἐξε-
 κύμαινέ τι τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς φάλαγγος, τὸ ἐπιλειπόμενον
 5 ἤρξατο δρόμῳ θεῖν· καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγγαντο πάντες οἰόνπερ
 τῷ Ἐυαλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθρον. πρὶν δὲ
 τόξευμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι, ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύ-
 γουσι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον οἱ Ἕλληνες.

Κῦρος δ' ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς
 10 καὶ διώκοντας, ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασι-
 λεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ
 συνεσπειρᾶμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων
 ἱππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελείτο ὃ τι ποιήσει βασιλεὺς. οὗτος
 δὲ μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὁμως ἔξω ἐγένετο τοῦ
 15 Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρατος. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο
 ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν. ἔνθα δὴ
 Κῦρος ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις
 νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψεν.
 ὥς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ Κύρου ἑξακό-
 20 σιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὀρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ'
 αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν. σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὦν καθορᾷ βασι-
 λέᾳ· καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ ἡνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν Τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ,
 ἔτετο ἐπ' αὐτόν καὶ παῖει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τιτρώσκει

διὰ τοῦ θώρακος. παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῶ
 25 ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως· καὶ ἐνταῦθα μαχόμενοι καὶ
 βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου,
 ὅπόσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἀπέθνησκον Κτησιᾶς λέγει·
 παρ' ἐκείνῳ γὰρ ἦν· Κῦρος δὲ αὐτὸς τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτῶ
 οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. οὕτως οὖν
 30 ἐτελεύτησεν ὁ Κῦρος.

NOTES.

3. ἐξεκύμαινέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος, *a part of the phalanx surged forward*.—5. οἷόν περ, *just as*.—6. πρὶν . . . ἐξικνεῖσθαι: cf. 487, line 13, and note.—10. ἡδόμενος, προσκυνούμενος: concessive (379), *although he was pleased, etc.*—12. συνεσπειράμενην: pf. of συ-σπειράομαι.—13. οὗτος δὲ . . . κέρατος: the king's forces in this battle numbered 900,000.—16. ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν, *as if to encircle them*.—22. ἡνέσχετο: double augment, *ánéchō* here taking the augment both before and after the preposition.—24. αὐτόν: i.e. Cyrus.—25. μαχόμενοι . . . ἑκατέρου: the construction begun by these subjects is not finished, but breaks off suddenly in the indirect question ὅπόσοι . . . ἀπέθνησκον. It is partially resumed in the following Κῦρος δὲ . . . αὐτῷ.—29. ἔκειντο, *lay dead*.

Translate the following passage into Greek:—

671. All were armed with cuirasses and helmets except Cyrus, but he took his place in the battle with his head unprotected. It was now afternoon, and the king and his troops were in plain sight. There were 900,000 of these and 150 chariots. On the enemies' left were cavalry in white cuirasses. Tissaphernes was said to be their commander. The barbarian force came on in even line, but the Greek force was still getting into position. But when the Greeks raised the pæan and charged double quick, the barbarians gave way and fled. Thereupon the Greeks pursued with might and main, while Cyrus with his 600 cavalry attacked and routed the enemies' centre, and he himself with his own hand wounded the king. There in the fight Cyrus proved himself a brave man; but at last he was himself slain, and all his table-companions lay dead upon his body. Thus died Cyrus, the son of Darius.

INFLEXION OF VERBS.

Index of Paradigms.

	PAGE
ἄγω :	Perfect Middle System of Palatal Mute Verbs, § 684 . . . 289
δείκνυμι :	Present System, § 692 295
δίδωμι :	Present System, § 690 293
	Second Aorist System, § 694 296
δύω :	Second Aorist System, § 696 297
εἰμί :	Paradigm, § 700 299
εἶμι :	Paradigm, § 701 299
ἔημι :	Paradigm, § 702 300
ἵστημι :	Present System, § 691 294
	Second Aorist System, § 695 297
	Second Perfect System without Suffix, § 697 297
κάθημαι :	Paradigm, § 704 301
κείμει :	Paradigm, § 703 301
λείπω :	Second Aorist System, § 680 287
	Second Perfect System, § 681 287
	Perfect Middle System of Labial Mute Verbs, § 683 . . . 288
λύω :	Present System, § 672 282
	Future System, § 673 283
	First Aorist System, § 674 283
	First Perfect System, § 675 284
	Perfect Middle System, § 676 284, 285
	First Passive System, § 677 285
οἶδα :	Paradigm, § 698 298
πιθω :	Perfect Middle System of Lingual Mute Verbs, § 685 . . . 289
στελλω :	Perfect Middle System of Liquid Verbs, § 686 290
	Second Passive System, § 688 291
τέλειω :	Perfect Middle System of Vowel Verbs with added σ, § 682 . 288
τίθημι :	Present System, § 689 292
	Second Aorist System, § 693 296
φαίνω :	Future System of Liquid Verbs, § 678 286
	First Aorist System of Liquid Verbs, § 679 286
	Perfect Middle System of Liquid Verbs, § 687 290
φημί :	Paradigm, § 699 298

672.

Present System of λύω, loose.

		ACTIVE.		MIDDLE and PASSIVE.	
		Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	λύω	ἔ-λυο-ν	λύο-μαι	ἐ-λυό-μην
	2	λύεις	ἔ-λυε-ς	λύει	ἐ-λύου
	3	λύει	ἔ-λυε	λύε-ται	ἐ-λύε-το
	D. 2	λύε-τον	ἐ-λύε-τον	λύε-σθον	ἐ-λύε-σθον
	3	λύε-τον	ἐ-λύε-την	λύε-σθον	ἐ-λύε-σθην
	P. 1	λύο-μεν	ἐ-λύο-	λυό-μεθα	ἐ-λυό-μεθα
	2	λύε-τε	ἐ-λύε-τε	λύε-σθε	ἐ-λύε-σθε
	3	λύουσι	ἔ-λυο-ν	λύο-νται	ἐ-λύο-ντο
Subjunctive.		Present.		Present.	
	S. 1	λύω		λύω-μαι	
	2	λύῃς		λύῃ	
	3	λύῃ		λύῃ-ται	
	D. 2	λύῃ-τον		λύῃ-σθον	
	3	λύῃ-τον		λύῃ-σθον	
	P. 1	λύω-μεν		λυώ-μεθα	
	2	λύῃ-τε		λύῃ-σθε	
	3	λύωσι		λύω-νται	
Optative.	S. 1	λύοι-μι		λυοί-μην	
	2	λύοι-ς		λύοι-ο	
	3	λύοι		λύοι-το	
	D. 2	λύοι-τον		λύοι-σθον	
	3	λυοί-την		λυοί-σθην	
	P. 1	λύοι-μεν		λυοί-μεθα	
	2	λύοι-τε		λύοι-σθε	
	3	λύοιε-ν		λύοι-ντο	
Imperative.	S. 2	λύε		λύου	
	3	λυέ-τω		λυέ-σθω	
	D. 2	λύε-τον		λύε-σθον	
	3	λυέ-των		λυέ-σθων	
	P. 2	λύε-τε		λύε-σθε	
	3	λυό-ντων		λυέ-σθων	
Infin.		λύειν		λύε-σθαι	
Partic.		λύων, -ουσα, -ον		λυό-μενός, -η, -όν	

675. <i>First Perfect System</i> of λύω.			676. <i>Perfect Middle System</i> of λύω (see next page).		
ACTIVE.			MIDDLE and PASSIVE.		
			Perfect.	Pluperfect.	
Indicative.	S. 1	λέλυκα	ἔ-λελύκει-ν	λέλυ-μαι	ἔ-λελύ-μην
	2	λέλυκα-ς	ἔ-λελύκει-ς	λέλυ-σαι	ἔ-λέλυ-σο
	3	λέλυκε	ἔ-λελύκει	λέλυ-ται	ἔ-λέλυ-το
	D. 2	λελύκα-τον	ἔ-λελύκει-τον	λέλυ-σθον	ἔ-λέλυ-σθον
	3	λελύκα-τον	ἔ-λελυκεί-την	λέλυ-σθον	ἔ-λελύ-σθην
	P. 1	λελύκα-μεν	ἔ-λελύκει-μεν	λελύ-μεθα	ἔ-λελύ-μεθα
	2	λελύκα-τε	ἔ-λελύκει-τε	λέλυ-σθε	ἔ-λέλυ-σθε
	3	λελύκασι	ἔ-λελύκει-σαν	λέλυ-νται	ἔ-λέλυ-ντο
	First Perfect.			Perfect.	
Subjunctive.	S. 1	λελύκω	λελυ-μένος (-η, -ον)	ᾧ	
	2	λελύκης	“	ῆς	
	3	λελύκη	“	ῆ	
	D. 2	λελύκη-τον	λελυ-μένω (-ᾱ, -ω)	ῆτον	
	3	λελύκη-τον	“	ῆτον	
	P. 1	λελύκω-μεν	λελυ-μένοι (-αι, -α)	ᾧμεν	
	2	λελύκη-τε	“	ῆτε	
	3	λελύκωσι	“	ᾧσι	
	Optative.	S. 1	λελύκοι-μι	λελυ-μένος (-η, -ον)	εἶην
2		λελύκοι-ς	“	εἶης	
3		λελύκοι	“	εἶη	
D. 2		λελύκοι-τον	λελυ-μένω (-ᾱ, -ω)	εἶτον or εἶητον	
3		λελυκοί-την	“	εἶτην εἶήτην	
P. 1		λελύκοι-μεν	λελυ-μένοι (-αι, -α)	εἶμεν εἶημεν	
2		λελύκοι-τε	“	εἶτε εἶητε	
3		λελύκοι-ν	“	εἶεν εἶησαν	
Imperative.		S. 2		λέλυ-σο	
	3		λελύ-σθω		
	D. 2		λέλυ-σθον		
	3		λελύ-σθων		
	P. 2		λέλυ-σθε		
	3		λελύ-σθων		
Infin.	λελυκέ-ναι		λελύ-σθαι		
Partic.	λελυκώς, -κυῖα, -κός		λελυ-μένο-ς, -η, -ο-ν		

<i>Perfect Middle System</i> <i>of λύω (continued).</i>		677. <i>First Passive System</i> <i>of λύω.</i>		
		MID. and PASS.	PASSIVE.	
		Future Perfect.	First Aorist.	First Future.
Indicative.	S. 1	λελύσο-μαι	ἐ-λύθη-ν	λυθήσο-μαι
	2	λελύσει	ἐ-λύθη-ς	λυθήσει
	3	λελύσει-ται	ἐ-λύθη	λυθήσει-ται
	D. 2	λελύσει-σθον	ἐ-λύθη-τον	λυθήσει-σθον
	3	λελύσει-σθον	ἐ-λύθη-την	λυθήσει-σθον
	P. 1	λελύσώ-μεθα	ἐ-λύθη-μεν	λυθησώ-μεθα
	2	λελύσει-σθε	ἐ-λύθη-τε	λυθήσει-σθε
	3	λελύσονται	ἐ-λύθη-σαν	λυθήσονται
Subjunctive.	S. 1		λυθῶ	
	2		λυθῆς	
	3		λυθῇ	
	D. 2		λυθῇ-τον	
	3		λυθῇ-τον	
	P. 1		λυθῶ-μεν	
	2		λυθῇ-τε	
	3		λυθῶσι	
Optative.	S. 1	λελύσοι-μην	λυθείη-ν	λυθησοί-μην
	2	λελύσοι-ο	λυθείη-ς	λυθήσοι-ο
	3	λελύσοι-το	λυθείη	λυθήσοι-το
	D. 2	λελύσοι-σθον	λυθεί-τον or λυθείη-τον	λυθήσοι-σθον
	3	λελύσοι-σθην	λυθεί-την λυθείη-την	λυθησοί-σθην
	P. 1	λελύσοι-μεθα	λυθεί-μεν λυθείη-μεν	λυθησοί-μεθα
	2	λελύσοι-σθε	λυθεί-τε λυθείη-τε	λυθήσοι-σθε
	3	λελύσοι-ντο	λυθείε-ν λυθείη-σαν	λυθήσοι-ντο
Imperative.	S. 2		λύθη-τι	
	3		λυθή-τω	
	D. 2		λύθη-τον	
	3		λυθή-των	
	P. 2		λύθη-τε	
	3		λυθέ-ντων	
Infinitive.		λελύσει-σθαι	λυθῆ-ναι	λυθήσει-σθαι
Participle.		λελύσώ-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	λυθείς, -είσα, -έν	λυθησώ-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν

678. <i>Future System of Liquid Verbs : φαίνω (φαν-), show.</i>			679. <i>First Aorist System of Liquid Verbs : φαίνω (φαν-), show.</i>		
		ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.	ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.
		Future.		First Aorist.	
Indicative.	S. 1	φανῶ	φανούμαι	ἔ-φῆνα	ἐ-φῆνά-μην
	2	φανείς	φανεί	ἔ-φῆνα-ς	ἐ-φῆνώ
	3	φανεί	φανεί-ται	ἔ-φῆνε	ἐ-φῆνά-το
	D. 2	φανεί-τον	φανεί-σθον	ἐ-φῆνα-τον	ἐ-φῆνα-σθον
	3	φανεί-τον	φανεί-σθον	ἐ-φῆνά-την	ἐ-φῆνά-σθην
	P. 1	φανού-μεν	φανού-μεθα	ἐ-φῆνα-μεν	ἐ-φῆνά-μεθα
	2	φανεί-τε	φανεί-σθε	ἐ-φῆνα-τε	ἐ-φῆνα-σθε
	3	φανούσι	φανού-νται	ἔ-φῆνα-ν	ἐ-φῆνα-ντο
Subjunctive.	S. 1			φῆνω	φῆνω-μαι
	2			φῆνης	φῆνη
	3			φῆνη	φῆνη-ται
	D. 2			φῆνη-τον	φῆνη-σθον
	3			φῆνη-τον	φῆνη-σθον
	P. 1			φῆνω-μεν	φῆνώ-μεθα
	2			φῆνη-τε	φῆνη-σθε
	3			φῆνωσι	φῆνω-νται
Optative.	S. 1	φανοίη-ν OR φανοί-μι	φανοί-μην	φῆναι-μι	φῆναι-μην
	2	φανοίη-ς φανοί-ς	φανοί-ο	φῆνεια-ς, φῆναι-ς	φῆναι-ο
	3	φανοίη φανοί	φανοί-το	φῆνεις, φῆναι	φῆναι-το
	D. 2	φανοί-τον	φανοί-σθον	φῆναι-τον	φῆναι-σθον
	3	φανοί-την	φανοί-σθην	φῆναι-την	φῆναι-σθην
	P. 1	φανοί-μεν	φανοί-μεθα	φῆναι-μεν	φῆναι-μεθα
	2	φανοί-τε	φανοί-σθε	φῆναι-τε	φῆναι-σθε
	3	φανοίε-ν	φανοί-ντο	φῆνεια-ν, φῆναιε-ν	φῆναι-ντο
Imperative.	S. 2			φῆνον	φῆναι
	3			φῆνά-τω	φῆνά-σθω
	D. 2			φῆνα-τον	φῆνα-σθον
	3			φῆνά-των	φῆνά-σθων
	P. 2			φῆνα-τε	φῆνα-σθε
	3			φῆνά-ντων	φῆνά-σθων
Infin.		φανεῖν	φανεί-σθαι	φῆναι	φῆνα-σθαι
Partic.		φανῶν, -ούσα, -οὖν	φανού-μενο-ς -η, -ο-ν	φῆνᾱς, -ᾱσα, -αν	φῆνά-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν

680.			Second Aorist System of λείπω (λιπ-), leave.		681. Second Perfect System of λείπω (λιπ-), leave.			
			ACTIVE.		ACTIVE.			
			Second Aorist.		Second Perf. Second Plup.			
Indicative.	S.	1	ἔ-λιπο-ν	ἔ-λιπό-μην	λθλοῖπα	ἔ-λελοίπει-ν		
		2	ἔ-λιπε-ς	ἔ-λίπου	λθλοῖπα-ς	ἔ-λελοίπει-ς		
		3	ἔ-λιπε	ἔ-λίπε-το	λθλοῖπε	ἔ-λελοίπει		
	D.	2	ἔ-λίπε-τον	ἔ-λίπε-σθον	λελοίπα-τον	ἔ-λελοίπει-τον		
		3	ἔ-λίπε-την	ἔ-λίπε-σθην	λελοίπα-τον	ἔ-λελοίπει-την		
	P.	1	ἔ-λίπο-μεν	ἔ-λιπό-μεθα	λελοίπα-μεν	ἔ-λελοίπει-μεν		
		2	ἔ-λίπε-τε	ἔ-λίπε-σθε	λελοίπα-τε	ἔ-λελοίπει-τε		
		3	ἔ-λιπο-ν	ἔ-λίπο-ντο	λελοίπασι	ἔ-λελοίπε-σαν		
						Second Perfect.		
Subjunctive.	S.	1	λίπω	λίπω-μαι	λελοίπω			
		2	λίπῃς	λίπη	λελοίπῃς			
		3	λίπῃ	λίπη-ται	λελοίπῃ			
	D.	2	λίπῃ-τον	λίπη-σθον	λελοίπῃ-τον			
		3	λίπῃ-τον	λίπη-σθον	λελοίπῃ-τον			
	P.	1	λίπω-μεν	λιπώ-μεθα	λελοίπω-μεν			
		2	λίπῃ-τε	λίπη-σθε	λελοίπῃ-τε			
		3	λίπωσι	λίπω-νται	λελοίπωσι			
	Optative.	S.	1	λίποι-μι	λιποί-μην	λελοίποι-μι		
2			λίποι-ς	λίποι-ο	λελοίποι-ς			
3			λίποι	λίποι-το	λελοίποι			
D.		2	λίποι-τον	λίποι-σθον	λελοίποι-τον			
		3	λιποί-την	λιποί-σθην	λελοίποι-την			
P.		1	λίποι-μεν	λιποί-μεθα	λελοίποι-μεν			
		2	λίποι-τε	λίποι-σθε	λελοίποι-τε			
		3	λίποιε-ν	λίποι-ντο	λελοίποιε-ν			
Imperative.		S.	2	λίπε	λιπού			
	3		λίπέ-τω	λίπέ-σθω				
	D.	2	λίπε-τον	λίπε-σθον				
		3	λίπέ-των	λίπέ-σθων				
	P.	2	λίπε-τε	λίπε-σθε				
		3	λίπό-ντων	λίπέ-σθων				
Infinitive.			λιπεῖν		λίπέ-σθαι		λελοιπέ-ναι	
Participle.			λιπών, -ούσα, -όν		λιπό-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν		λελοιπώς, -υῖα, -ός	

682. <i>Perfect Middle System of Vowel Verbs with added σ : τελέω (τελε-), complete.</i>			683. <i>Perfect Middle System of Labial Mute Verbs : λείπω (λιπ-), leave.</i>		
MIDDLE and PASSIVE.			MIDDLE and PASSIVE.		
Perfect.			Perfect.		
Pluperfect.			Pluperfect.		
Indicative.	S. 1	τετέλε-σ-μαι	ἐ-τετελέ-σ-μην	λέλειμ-μαι	ἐ-λελείμ-μην
	2	τετέλε-σαι	ἐ-τετέλε-σο	λέλειψαι	ἐ-λέλειψο
	3	τετέλε-σ-ται	ἐ-τετέλε-σ-το	λέλειπ-ται	ἐ-λέλειπ-το
	D. 2	τετέλε-σθον	ἐ-τετέλε-σθον	λέλειφ-θον	ἐ-λέλειφ-θον
	3	τετέλε-σθον	ἐ-τετελέ-σθην	λέλειφ-θον	ἐ-λελείφ-θην
	P. 1	τετελέ-σ-μεθα	ἐ-τετελέ-σ-μεθα	λελείμ-μεθα	ἐ-λελείμ-μεθα
	2	τετέλε-σθε	ἐ-τετέλε-σθε	λέλειφ-θε	ἐ-λέλειφ-θε
	3	τετελε-σ-μένοι εἰσὶ	τετελε-σ-μένοι ἦσαν	λελειμ-μένοι εἰσὶ	λελειμ-μένοι ἦσαν
Subjunctive.	Perfect.		Perfect.		
	S.	τετελε-σ-μένος ᾧ, etc.	λελειμ-μένος ᾧ, etc.		
	D.	τετελε-σ-μένω ᾗτον, etc.	λελειμ-μένω ᾗτον, etc.		
	P.	τετελε-σ-μένοι ᾧμεν, etc.	λελειμ-μένοι ᾧμεν, etc.		
Optative.	S.	τετελε-σ-μένος εἶην, etc.	λελειμ-μένος εἶην, etc.		
	D.	τετελε-σ-μένω εἶτον, etc.	λελειμ-μένω εἶτον, etc.		
	P.	τετελε-σ-μένοι εἶμεν, etc.	λελειμ-μένοι εἶμεν, etc.		
Imperative.	S. 2	τετέλε-σο	λέλειψο		
	3	τετελέ-σθω	λελείφ-θω		
	D. 2	τετέλε-σθον	λέλειφ-θον		
	3	τετελέ-σθων	λελείφ-θων		
	P. 2	τετέλε-σθε	λέλειφ-θε		
	3	τετελέ-σθων	λελείφ-θων		
Infinitive.		τετελέ-σθαι	λελείφ-θαι		
Participle.		τετελε-σ-μένο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	λελειμ-μένο-ς, -η, -ο-ν		
Future Perfect.			Future Perfect.		
Indic.			λελείψο-μαι, etc.		
Opt.			λελειψοί-μην, etc.		
Infinitive.			λελείψε-σθαι		
Participle.			λελειψό-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν		

684. <i>Perfect Middle System of Palatal Mute Verbs: ἔγω (αγ-), lead.</i>			685. <i>Perfect Middle System of Lingual Mute Verbs: πείθω (πιθ-), persuade.</i>		
			MIDDLE and PASSIVE.		
			Perfect.	Pluperfect.	
Indicative.	S. 1	ἦγ-μαι	ἦγ-μην	πέπεισ-μαι	ἐ-πεπεισ-μην
	2	ἦξαι	ἦξο	πέπει-σαι	ἐ-πέπει-σο
	3	ἦκ-ται	ἦκ-το	πέπεισ-ται	ἐ-πέπεισ-το
	D. 2	ἦχ-θον	ἦχ-θον	πέπει-σθον	ἐ-πέπει-σθον
	3	ἦχ-θον	ἦχ-θην	πέπει-σθον	ἐ-πεπει-σθην
	P. 1	ἦγ-μεθα	ἦγ-μεθα	πεπεισ-μεθα	ἐ-πεπεισ-μεθα
	2	ἦχ-θε	ἦχ-θε	πέπει-σθε	ἐ-πέπει-σθε
	3	ἦγ-μένοι εἰσι	ἦγ-μένοι ἦσαν	πεπεισ-μένοι εἰσι	πεπεισ-μένοι ἦσαν
			Perfect.		
Subjunctive.	S.	ἦγ-μένος ᾧ, etc.	πεπεισ-μένος ᾧ, etc.		
	D.	ἦγ-μένω ἦτον, etc.	πεπεισ-μένω ἦτον, etc.		
	P.	ἦγ-μένοι ᾧμεν, etc.	πεπεισ-μένοι ᾧμεν, etc.		
Optative.	S.	ἦγ-μένος εἴην, etc.	πεπεισ-μένος εἴην, etc.		
	D.	ἦγ-μένω εἴτον, etc.	πεπεισ-μένω εἴτον, etc.		
	P.	ἦγ-μένοι εἴμεν, etc.	πεπεισ-μένοι εἴμεν, etc.		
Imperative.	S. 2	ἦξο	πέπει-σο		
	3	ἦχ-θω	πεπει-σθω		
	D. 2	ἦχ-θον	πέπει-σθον		
	3	ἦχ-θων	πεπει-σθων		
	P. 2	ἦχ-θε	πέπει-σθε		
	3	ἦχ-θων	πεπει-σθων		
Infin.		ἦχ-θαι	πεπει-σθαι		
Partic.		ἦγ-μένο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	πεπεισ-μένο-ς -η, -ο-ν		
			Future Perfect.		
Indic. Opt. Infin. Partic.		Lacking.	Lacking.		

686. <i>Perfect Middle System of Liquid Verbs : στέλλω (στελ-), send.</i>		687. <i>Perfect Middle System of Liquid Verbs : φαίνω (φαν-), show.</i>	
		MIDDLE and PASSIVE.	
		Perfect.	Pluperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	ἔσταλ-μαι	ἑστάλ-μην
	2	ἔσταλ-σαι	ἔσταλ-σο
	3	ἔσταλ-ται	ἔσταλ-το
	D. 2	ἔσταλ-θον	ἔσταλ-θον
	3	ἔσταλ-θον	ἑστάλ-θην
	P. 1	ἑστάλ-μεθα	ἑστάλ-μεθα
	2	ἔσταλ-θε	ἔσταλ-θε
	3	ἑσταλ-μένοι εἰσί	ἑσταλ-μένοι ἦσαν
Subjunctive.		Perfect.	
	S.	ἑσταλ-μένος ᾧ, etc.	
	D.	ἑσταλ-μένω ἦτον, etc.	
	P.	ἑσταλ-μένοι ᾧμεν, etc.	
Optative.	S.	ἑσταλ-μένος εἶην, etc.	
	D.	ἑσταλ-μένω εἶτον, etc.	
	P.	ἑσταλ-μένοι εἶμεν, etc.	
Imperative.	S. 2	ἔσταλ-σο	
	3	ἑσταλ-θω	
	D. 2	ἔσταλ-θον	
	3	ἑσταλ-θων	
	P. 2	ἔσταλ-θε	
	3	ἑσταλ-θων	
		Lacking.	
Infin.		ἑστάλ-θαι	
Partic.		ἑσταλ-μένο-ς -η, -ο-ν	
		Future Perfect.	
Indic.		Lacking.	
Opt.			
Infin.			
Partic.			
		Future Perfect.	
		Lacking.	

688.

Second Passive System
of στέλλω (στελ-), send.

		PASSIVE.	
		Second Aorist.	Second Future.
Indicative.	S. 1	ἐ-στάλη-ν	σταλήσο-μαι
	2	ἐ-στάλη-ς	σταλήσει
	3	ἐ-στάλη	σταλήσε-ται
	D. 2	ἐ-στάλη-τον	σταλήσε-σθον
	3	ἐ-σταλή-την	σταλήσε-σθον
	P. 1	ἐ-στάλη-μεν	σταλήσόμεθα
	2	ἐ-στάλη-τε	σταλήσε-σθε
	3	ἐ-στάλη-σαν	σταλήσονται
Subjunctive.	S. 1	σταλῶ	
	2	σταλῆς	
	3	σταλῇ	
	D. 2	σταλῆ-τον	
	3	σταλῇ-τον	
	P. 1	σταλῶ-μεν	
	2	σταλῇ-τε	
	3	σταλῶσι	
Optative.	S. 1	σταλείη-ν	σταλήσοί-μην
	2	σταλείη-ς	σταλήσοι-ο
	3	σταλείη	σταλήσοι-το
	D. 2	σταλεί-τον οἱ σταλείη-τον	σταλήσοι-σθον
	3	σταλεί-την σταλείη-την	σταλήσοι-σθην
	P. 1	σταλεί-μεν σταλείη-μεν	σταλήσοι-μεθα
	2	σταλεί-τε σταλείη-τε	σταλήσοι-σθε
	3	σταλείε-ν σταλείη-σαν	σταλήσοι-ντο
Imperative.	S. 2	στάλη-θι	
	3	σταλή-τω	
	D. 2	στάλη-τον	
	3	σταλή-των	
	P. 2	στάλη-τε	
	3	σταλέ-ντων	
Infin.		σταλή-ναι	σταλήσε-σθαι
Partic.		σταλείς, -είσα, -έν	σταλήσόμενο-ς, -η, -ον

VERBS IN -MI.

689. *Present System of τίθημι (θε-), place, put.*

		ACTIVE.		MIDDLE and PASSIVE.	
		Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	τί-θη-μι	ἐ-τί-θη-ν	τί-θε-μαι	ἐ-τι-θέ-μην
	2	τί-θη-ς	ἐ-τί-θεις	τί-θε-σαι	ἐ-τί-θε-σο
	3	τί-θη-σι	ἐ-τί-θει	τί-θε-ται	ἐ-τί-θε-το
	D. 2	τί-θε-τον	ἐ-τί-θε-τον	τί-θε-σθον	ἐ-τί-θε-σθον
	3	τί-θε-τον	ἐ-τι-θέ-την	τί-θε-σθον	ἐ-τι-θέ-σθην
	P. 1	τί-θε-μεν	ἐ-τί-θε-μεν	τι-θέ-μεθα	ἐ-τι-θέ-μεθα
	2	τί-θε-τε	ἐ-τί-θε-τε	τί-θε-σθε	ἐ-τί-θε-σθε
	3	τι-θέ-ωσι	ἐ-τί-θε-σαν	τί-θε-νται	ἐ-τί-θε-ντο
		Present.		Present.	
Subjunctive.	S. 1	τι-θῶ		τι-θῶ-μαι	
	2	τι-θῆς		τι-θῇ	
	3	τι-θῇ		τι-θῇ-ται	
	D. 2	τι-θῇ-τον		τι-θῇ-σθον	
	3	τι-θῇ-τον		τι-θῇ-σθον	
	P. 1	τι-θῶ-μεν		τι-θῶ-μεθα	
	2	τι-θῇ-τε		τι-θῇ-σθε	
	3	τι-θῶσι		τι-θῶ-νται	
Optative.	S. 1	τι-θείη-ν		τι-θεί-μην	
	2	τι-θείης		τι-θεί-ο	
	3	τι-θείη		τι-θεί-το	
	D. 2	τι-θεί-τον or τι-θείη-τον		τι-θεί-σθον	
	3	τι-θεί-την τι-θείη-την		τι-θεί-σθην	
	P. 1	τι-θεί-μεν τι-θείη-μεν		τι-θεί-μεθα	
	2	τι-θεί-τε τι-θείη-τε		τι-θεί-σθε	
	3	τι-θείε-ν τι-θείη-σαν		τι-θεί-ντο	
Imperative.	S. 2	τί-θει		τί-θε-σο	
	3	τι-θέ-τω		τι-θέ-σθω	
	D. 2	τί-θε-τον		τί-θε-σθον	
	3	τι-θέ-των		τι-θέ-σθων	
	P. 2	τί-θε-τε		τί-θε-σθε	
	3	τι-θέ-ντων		τι-θέ-σθων	
Infin.		τι-θέ-ναι		τι-θε-σθαι	
Partic.		τι-θείς, -είσα, -έν		τι-θέ-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	

VERBS IN -MI.

690.

Present System of διδωμι (δο-), give.

		ACTIVE.		MIDDLE and PASSIVE.	
		Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	δί-δω-μι	ἐ-δί-δουν	δί-δο-μαι	ἐ-δι-δό-μην
	2	δί-δω-ς	ἐ-δί-δους	δί-δο-σαι	ἐ-δί-δο-σο
	3	δί-δω-σι	ἐ-δί-δου	δί-δο-ται	ἐ-δί-δο-το
	D. 2	δί-δο-τον	ἐ-δί-δο-τον	δί-δο-σθον	ἐ-δί-δο-σθον
	3	δί-δο-τον	ἐ-δι-δό-την	δί-δο-σθον	ἐ-δι-δό-σθην
	P. 1	δί-δο-μεν	ἐ-δί-δο-μεν	δι-δό-μεθα	ἐ-δι-δό-αθμε
	2	δί-δο-τε	ἐ-δί-δο-τε	δί-δο-σθε	ἐ-δί-δο-σθε
	3	δι-δό-ασι	ἐ-δί-δο-σαν	δί-δο-νται	ἐ-δί-δο-ντο
Subjunctive.		Present.		Present.	
	S. 1	δι-δῶ		δι-δῶ-μαι	
	2	δι-δῶ-ς		δι-δῶ	
	3	δι-δῶ		δι-δῶ-ται	
	D. 2	δι-δῶ-τον		δι-δῶ-σθον	
	3	δι-δῶ-τον		δι-δῶ-σθον	
	P. 1	δι-δῶ-μεν		δι-δῶ-μεθα	
	2	δι-δῶ-τε		δι-δῶ-σθε	
	3	δι-δῶσι		δι-δῶ-νται	
Optative.	S. 1	δι-δοίη-ν		δι-δοί-μην	
	2	δι-δοίη-ς		δι-δοί-ο	
	3	δι-δοίη		δι-δοί-το	
	D. 2	δι-δοί-τον or δι-δοίη-τον		δι-δοί-σθον	
	3	δι-δοί-την	δι-δοίη-την	δι-δοί-σθην	
	P. 1	δι-δοί-μεν	δι-δοίη-μεν	δι-δοί-μεθα	
	2	δι-δοί-τε	δι-δοίη-τε	δι-δοί-σθε	
	3	δι-δοί-ν	δι-δοίη-σαν	δι-δοί-ντο	
Imperative.	S. 2	δί-δου		δί-δο-σο	
	3	δι-δό-τω		δι-δό-σθω	
	D. 2	δί-δο-τον		δί-δο-σθον	
	3	δι-δό-των		δι-δό-σθων	
	P. 2	δί-δο-τε		δί-δο-σθε	
	3	δι-δό-ντων		δι-δό-σθων	
Infin.		δι-δό-ναι		δί-δο-σθαι	
Partic.		δι-δούς, -ούσα, -όν		δι-δό-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	

VERBS IN -MI.

691. *Present System of ἵστημι (στα-), set, make stand.*

		ACTIVE.		MIDDLE and PASSIVE.	
		Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	ἵστη-μι	ἵστη-ν	ἵστα-μαι	ἵστά-μην
	2	ἵστη-ς	ἵστη-ς	ἵστα-σαι	ἵστα-σο
	3	ἵστη-σι	ἵστη	ἵστα-ται	ἵστα-το
	D. 2	ἵστα-τον	ἵστα-τον	ἵστα-σθον	ἵστα-σθον
	3	ἵστα-τον	ἵστά-την	ἵστα-σθον	ἵστά-σθην
	P. 1	ἵστα-μεν	ἵστα-μεν	ἵστά-μεθα	ἵστά-μεθα
	2	ἵστα-τε	ἵστα-τε	ἵστα-σθε	ἵστα-σθε
	3	ἵστώσι	ἵστα-σαν	ἵστα-νται	ἵστα-ντο
		Present.		Present.	
Subjunctive.	S. 1	ἵστώ		ἵστώ-μαι	
	2	ἵσῃς		ἵσῃ	
	3	ἵσῃ		ἵσῃ-ται	
	D. 2	ἵσῃ-τον		ἵσῃ-σθον	
	3	ἵσῃ-τον		ἵσῃ-σθον	
	P. 1	ἵσώ-μεν		ἵσώ-μεθα	
	2	ἵσῃ-τε		ἵσῃ-σθε	
	3	ἵσώσι		ἵσώ-νται	
Optative.	S. 1	ἵσταί-ν		ἵσταί-μην	
	2	ἵσταί-ς		ἵσταί-ο	
	3	ἵσταί-η		ἵσταί-το	
	D. 2	ἵσταί-τον or ἵσταί-η-τον		ἵσταί-σθον	
	3	ἵσταί-την	ἵσταί-η-την	ἵσταί-σθην	
	P. 1	ἵσταί-μεν	ἵσταί-η-μεν	ἵσταί-μεθα	
	2	ἵσταί-τε	ἵσταί-η-τε	ἵσταί-σθε	
	3	ἵσταί-ν	ἵσταί-η-σαν	ἵσταί-ντο	
Imperative.	S. 2	ἵστη		ἵστα-σο	
	3	ἵστά-τω		ἵστά-σθω	
	D. 2	ἵστα-τον		ἵστα-σθον	
	3	ἵστά-των		ἵστά-σθων	
	P. 2	ἵστα-τε		ἵστα-σθε	
	3	ἵστά-ντων		ἵστά-σθων	
Infinitive.		ἵστά-ναι		ἵστα-σθαι	
Participle.		ἵστάς, -ᾶσα, -άν		ἵστά-μενος, -η, -ον	

VERBS IN -MI.

692.

Present System of δεικνύμι (δεικ-), show.

		ACTIVE.		MIDDLE and PASSIVE.	
		Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	δείκ-νῦ-μι	ἐ-δείκ-νῦ-ν	δείκ-νυ-μαι	ἐ-δείκ-νύ-μην
	2	δείκ-νῦ-ς	ἐ-δείκ-νῦ-ς	δείκ-νυ-σαι	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-σο
	3	δείκ-νῦ-σι	ἐ-δείκ-νῦ	δείκ-νυ-ται	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-το
	D. 2	δείκ-νυ-τον	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-τον	δείκ-νυ-σθον	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-σθον
	3	δείκ-νυ-τον	ἐ-δείκ-νύ-την	δείκ-νυ-σθον	ἐ-δείκ-νύ-σθην
	P. 1	δείκ-νυ-μεν	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-μεν	δείκ-νύ-μεθα	ἐ-δείκ-νύ-μεθα
	2	δείκ-νυ-τε	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-τε	δείκ-νυ-σθε	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-σθε
	3	δείκ-νύ-ᾱσι	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-σαν	δείκ-νυ-νται	ἐ-δείκ-νυ-ντο
Subjunctive.		Present.		Present.	
	S. 1	δεικνύω		δεικνύμαι	
	2	δεικνύῃς		δεικνύῃ	
	3	δεικνύῃ		δεικνύῃται	
	D. 2	δεικνύῃτον		δεικνύῃσθον	
	3	δεικνύῃτον		δεικνύῃσθον	
	P. 1	δεικνύμεν		δεικνύμεθα	
	2	δεικνύῃτε		δεικνύσθε	
	3	δεικνύωσι		δεικνύονται	
Optative.	S. 1	δεικνύοιμι		δεικνυόμην	
	2	δεικνύοις		δεικνύοιο	
	3	δεικνύοι		δεικνύοιτο	
	D. 2	δεικνύοιτον		δεικνύοισθον	
	3	δεικνυοίτην		δεικνυοίστην	
	P. 1	δεικνύοιμεν		δεικνυοίμεθα	
	2	δεικνύοιτε		δεικνύοισθε	
	3	δεικνύοιεν		δεικνύοιντο	
Imperative.	S. 2	δείκ-νῦ		δείκ-νυ-σο	
	3	δείκ-νύ-τω		δείκ-νύ-σθω	
	D. 2	δείκ-νυ-τον		δείκ-νυ-σθον	
	3	δείκ-νύ-των		δείκ-νύ-σθων	
	P. 2	δείκ-νυ-τε		δείκ-νυ-σθε	
	3	δείκ-νύ-ντων		δείκ-νύ-σθων	
Infin.		δείκ-νύ-ναι		δείκ-νυ-σθαι	
Partic.		δείκ-νύς, -ῦσα, -ύν		δείκ-νύ-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	

VERBS IN -MI.

693. <i>Second Aorist System</i> <i>of τίθημι (θε-), place, put.</i>			694. <i>Second Aorist System</i> <i>of δίδωμι (δο-), give.</i>		
		ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.		
		Second Aorist.			
Indicative.	S. 1		ἔ-θε-μην		ἔ-δό-μην
	2	Lacking.	ἔ-θου	Lacking.	ἔ-δου
	3		ἔ-θε-το		ἔ-δο-το
	D. 2	ἔ-θε-τον	ἔ-θε-σθον	ἔ-δο-τον	ἔ-δο-σθον
	3	ἔ-θε-την	ἔ-θε-σθην	ἔ-δο-την	ἔ-δο-σθην
	P. 1	ἔ-θε-μεν	ἔ-θε-μεθα	ἔ-δο-μεν	ἔ-δο-μεθα
	2	ἔ-θε-τε	ἔ-θε-σθε	ἔ-δο-τε	ἔ-δο-σθε
	3	ἔ-θε-σαν	ἔ-θε-ντο	ἔ-δο-σαν	ἔ-δο-ντο
Subjunctive.	S. 1	θῶ	θῶ-μαι	δῶ	δῶ-μαι
	2	θῆς	θῆ	δῶς	δῶ
	3	θῇ	θῇ-ται	δῶ	δῶ-ται
	D. 2	θῇ-τον	θῇ-σθον	δῶ-τον	δῶ-σθον
	3	θῇ-την	θῇ-σθην	δῶ-την	δῶ-σθην
	P. 1	θῶ-μεν	θῶ-μεθα	δῶ-μεν	δῶ-μεθα
	2	θῇ-τε	θῇ-σθε	δῶ-τε	δῶ-σθε
	3	θῶσι	θῶ-νται	δῶσι	δῶ-νται
Optative.	S. 1	θείη-ν	θεί-μην	δοίη-ν	δοί-μην
	2	θείη-ς	θεί-ο	δοίη-ς	δοί-ο
	3	θείη	θεί-το	δοίη	δοί-το
	D. 2	θεί-τον OR δέιη-τον	θεί-σθον	δοί-τον OR δοίη-τον	δοί-σθον
	3	θεί-την δέιη-την	θεί-σθην	δοί-την δοίη-την	δοί-σθην
	P. 1	θεί-μεν δέιη-μεν	θεί-μεθα	δοί-μεν δοίη-μεν	δοί-μεθα
	2	θεί-τε δέιη-τε	θεί-σθε	δοί-τε δοίη-τε	δοί-σθε
	3	θείε-ν δέιη-σαν	θεί-ντο	δοίε-ν δοίη-σαν	δοί-ντο
Imperative.	S. 2	θέ-ς	θοῦ	δό-ς	δοῦ
	3	θέ-τω	θέ-σθω	δό-τω	δό-σθω
	D. 2	θέ-τον	θέ-σθον	δό-τον	δό-σθον
	3	θέ-των	θέ-σθων	δό-των	δό-σθων
	P. 2	θέ-τε	θέ-σθε	δό-τε	δό-σθε
	3	θέ-ντων	θέ-σθων	δό-ντων	δό-σθων
Infin.		θεῖναι	θέ-σθαι	δοῦναι	δό-σθαι
Partic.		θείς, θείσα, θέ-ν	θέ-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν	δούς, δούσα, δό-ν	δό-μενο-ς, -η, -ο-ν

VERBS IN -MI.

695. <i>Second Aorist System</i> <i>of ἵστημι (στα-), set.</i>			696. <i>Second Aor. System</i> <i>of δύνω, enter.</i>		697. <i>Second Perf. System</i> <i>without Suffix</i> <i>of ἵστημι (στα-), set.</i>	
ACTIVE.			ACTIVE.		ACTIVE.	
Second Aor.			Second Aor.		Second Perf.	Second Plup.
Indicative.	S. 1	ἵ-στη-ν, <i>stood</i>	ἵ-δύ-ν		Lacking.	Lacking.
	2	ἵ-στη-ς	ἵ-δύ-ς			
	3	ἵ-στη	ἵ-δύ			
	D. 2	ἵ-στη-τον	ἵ-δύ-τον		ἵ-στα-τον	ἵ-στα-τον
	3	ἵ-στή-την	ἵ-δύ-την		ἵ-στα-τον	ἵ-στά-την
	P. 1	ἵ-στη-μεν	ἵ-δύ-μεν		ἵ-στα-μεν	ἵ-στα-μεν
	2	ἵ-στη-τε	ἵ-δύ-τε		ἵ-στα-τε	ἵ-στα-τε
	3	ἵ-στη-σαν	ἵ-δύ-σαν		ἵ-στάσι	ἵ-στα-σαν
						Second Perfect.
Subjunctive.	S. 1	στώ	δύω		ἵ-στώ	
	2	σῆς	δύης		ἵ-σῆς	
	3	σῆ	δύη		ἵ-σῆ	
	D. 2	σῆ-τον	δύη-τον		ἵ-σῆ-τον	
	3	σῆ-τον	δύη-τον		ἵ-σῆ-τον	
	P. 1	στώ-μεν	δύω-μεν		ἵ-στώ-μεν	
	2	σῆ-τε	δύη-τε		ἵ-σῆ-τε	
	3	σῶσι	δύωσι		ἵ-σῶσι	
	Optative.	S. 1	σταίη-ν	Lacking.		ἵ-σταίη-ν
2		σταίης	ἵ-σταίης			
3		σταίη	ἵ-σταίη			
D. 2		σταί-τον or σταίη-τον	Lacking.		ἵ-σταί-τον or ἵ-σταίη-τον	
3		σταί-την σταίη-την			ἵ-σταί-την ἵ-σταίη-την	
P. 1		σταί-μεν σταίη-μεν			ἵ-σταί-μεν ἵ-σταίη-μεν	
2		σταί-τε σταίη-τε			ἵ-σταί-τε ἵ-σταίη-τε	
3		σταίε-ν σταίη-σαν			ἵ-σταίε-ν ἵ-σταίη-σαν	
Imperative.		S. 2	στή-θι	δύ-θι		ἵ-στα-θι
	3	στή-τω	δύ-τω		ἵ-στά-τω	
	D. 2	στή-τον	δύ-τον		ἵ-στα-τον	
	3	στή-των	δύ-των		ἵ-στά-των	
	P. 2	στή-τε	δύ-τε		ἵ-στα-τε	
	3	στά-ντων	δύ-ντων		ἵ-στά-ντων	
	Infin.	στή-ναι	δύ-ναι		ἵ-στά-ναι	
	Partic.	στάς, στάσα, στά-ν	δύς, δύσα, δύ-ν		ἵ-στάς, ἵ-στάσα, ἵ-στός	

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -MI.

698.		<i>οἶδα (ιδ-), know.</i>		699.		<i>φημί (φα-), say.</i>	
		ACTIVE.		ACTIVE.			
		Second Perf.	Second Pluperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.		
Indicative.	S. 1	οἶδα	ᾔδη or ᾔδην	φημί	ἔφην		
	2	οἶσθα	ᾔδησθα or ᾔδειςθα	φῆς or φῆς	ἔφησθα or ἔφης		
	3	οἶδε	ᾔδει or ᾔδην	φησί	ἔφη		
	D. 2	ἴστων	ᾔστον	φατόν	ἔφατον		
	3	ἴστων	ᾔστην	φατόν	ἔφάτην		
	P. 1	ἴσμεν	ᾔσμεν	φαμέν	ἔφαμεν		
	2	ἴστε	ᾔστε	φατέ	ἔφατε		
	3	ἴσῃσι	ᾔσαν or ᾔδεσαν	φᾶσι	ἔφασαν		
Subjunctive.			Second Perfect.			Present.	
	S. 1	εἰδῶ				φῶ	
	2	εἰδῆς				φῆς	
	3	εἰδῇ				φῇ	
	D. 2	εἰδῆτον				φῆτον	
	3	εἰδῆτον				φῆτον	
	P. 1	εἰδῶμεν				φῶμεν	
	2	εἰδῆτε				φῆτε	
	3	εἰδῶσι				φῶσι	
Optative.	S. 1	εἰδείην				φαίην	
	2	εἰδείης				φαίης	
	3	εἰδείη				φαίη	
	D. 2	εἰδείτον				φαίτον or φαίητον	
	3	εἰδείτην				φαίτην	φαίήτην
	P. 1	εἰδείμεν or εἰδείημεν				φαίμεν	φαίημεν
	2	εἰδείτε	εἰδείητε			φαίτε	φαίητε
	3	εἰδείεν	εἰδείησαν			φαίεν	φαίησαν
Imperative.	S. 2	ἴσθι				φάθι or φάθι	
	3	ἴστω				φάτω	
	D. 2	ἴστων				φάτων	
	3	ἴστων				φάτων	
	P. 2	ἴστε				φάτε	
	3	ἴστων				φάντων	
Infinitive.		εἰδέναι				φάναι	
Participle.		εἰδώς, εἰδυῖα, εἰδός, gen. εἰδότης, etc.					

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -MI.

700.		<i>εἰμί (εσ-), be.</i>		701.		<i>εἶμι (-), go.</i>	
		ACTIVE.		ACTIVE.			
		Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.		
Indicative.	S. 1	εἰμί	ἦ or ἦν	εἶμι	ἦα or ἦεν		
	2	εἶ	ἦσθα	εἶ	ἦεις ἦεισθα		
	3	ἐστί	ἦν	εἶσι	ἦει ἦειν		
	D. 2	ἐστόν	ἦστον or ἦτον	ἔτον	ἦτον		
	3	ἐστόν	ἦστην ἦτην	ἔτον	ἦτην		
	P. 1	ἐσμέν	ἦμεν	ἔμεν	ἦμεν		
	2	ἐστέ	ἦστε ἦτε	ἔτε	ἦτε		
	3	εἰσὶ	ἦσαν	ἔασι	ἦσαν or ἦεσαν		
Subjunctive.			Present.			Present.	
	S. 1	ᾗ				ἔω	
	2	ᾗς				ἔης	
	3	ᾗ				ἔη	
	D. 2	ᾗτον				ἔητον	
	3	ᾗτον				ἔητον	
	P. 1	ᾤμεν				ἔωμεν	
	2	ᾗτε				ἔητε	
	3	ᾤσι				ἔωσι	
Optative.	S. 1	εἴην				λοιμι or λείην	
	2	εἴης				λοις	
	3	εἴη				λοι	
	D. 2	εἴτον or εἴητον				λοιτον	
	3	εἴτην εἴήτην				λοίτην	
	P. 1	εἴμεν εἴημεν				λοιμεν	
	2	εἴτε εἴητε				λοιτε	
	3	εἴεν εἴησαν				λοιεν	
Imperative.	S. 2	ἔσθι				ἔθι	
	3	ἔστω				ἔτω	
	D. 2	ἔστον				ἔτον	
	3	ἔστων				ἔτων	
	P. 2	ἔστε				ἔτε	
	3	ἔστων				λόντων	
Infin.		εἶναι				λέναι	
Partic.		ὢν, οὔσα, ὄν, gen. ὄντος, etc.				λὼν, λούσα, λόν, gen. λόντος, etc.	

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -MI.

702.		ἐμμι (ἐ-), send.					
		ACTIVE.		MID. and PASS.		ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.
		Pres.	Imperf.	Pres.	Imperf.	Second Aorist.	
Indicative.	S. 1	ἐμμι	ἐην	ἐμαι	ἐμην	Lacking.	ἐμην
	2	ἐης	ἐεις	ἐσαι	ἐσο		ἐσο
	3	ἐσι	ἐει	ἐται	ἐτο		ἐτο
	D. 2	ἐτον	ἐτον	ἐσθον	ἐσθον		ἐσθον
	3	ἐτον	ἐτήην	ἐσθον	ἐσθήην		ἐσθήην
	P. 1	ἐμεν	ἐμεν	ἐμεθα	ἐμεθα		ἐμεθα
	2	ἐτε	ἐτε	ἐσθε	ἐσθε		ἐσθε
	3	ἐσι	ἐσαν	ἐνται	ἐντο		ἐντο
		Present.		Present.			
Subjunctive.	S. 1	ἔω		ἐώμαι		ὦ	ὦμαι
	2	ἐης		ἐῖ		ῖς	ῖμαι
	3	ἐη		ἐῖται		ῖ	ῖται
	D. 2	ἐητον		ἐῖσθον		ῖτον	ῖσθον
	3	ἐητον		ἐῖσθον		ῖτον	ῖσθον
	P. 1	ἐωμεν		ἐώμεθα		ὦμεν	ὦμεθα
	2	ἐητε		ἐῖσθε		ῖτε	ῖσθε
	3	ἐωσι		ἐώνται		ὦσι	ὦνται
Optative.	S. 1	ἐέην		ἐέμην		εἶην	εἶμην
	2	ἐέης		ἐείο		εἶς	εἶο
	3	ἐέη		ἐέιτο		εἶη	εἶτο
	D. 2	ἐέιτον, ἐέητον		ἐέισθον		εἶτον, εἶητον	εἶσθον
	3	ἐέιτην, ἐέήτην		ἐέισθην		εἶτην, εἶήτην	εἶσθην
	P. 1	ἐέμεν, ἐέημεν		ἐέιμεθα		εἶμεν, εἶημεν	εἶμεθα
	2	ἐέιτε, ἐέήτε		ἐέισθε		εἶτε, εἶήτε	εἶσθε
	3	ἐέειν, ἐέησαν		ἐέιντο		εἶεν, εἶησαν	εἶντο
Imperative.	S. 2	ἐει		ἐσο		ἔς	οῖ
	3	ἐέτω		ἐσθω		ἔτω	ἔσθω
	D. 2	ἐeton		ἐσθον		ἔτον	ἔσθον
	3	ἐέτων		ἐσθων		ἔτων	ἔσθων
	P. 2	ἐετε		ἐσθε		ἔτε	ἔσθε
	3	ἐόντων		ἐσθων		ἔντων	ἔσθων
	Infin.	ἐέναι		ἐσθαι		εἶναι	
	Partic.	ἐές, ἐέσα, ἐέν		ἐέμενος		εἶς, εἶσα, ἐν	
						ἐέμενος	

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -MI.

703. <i>κείμαι (κει-), lie.</i>		704. <i>κάθ-ημαι (ήσ-), sit down.</i>	
		Present.	Imperfect.
Indicative.	S. 1	κείμαι	έκειμην
	2	κείσαι	έκεισο
	3	κείται	έκειτο
	D. 2	κείσθον	έκεισθον
	3	κείσθον	έκεισθην
	P. 1	κείμεθα	έκειμεθα
	2	κείσθε	έκεισθε
	3	κείνται	έκειντο
		Present.	Imperfect.
Subjunctive.	S. 1	κείωμαι	έκαθήμην or καθήμην
	2	κῆ	έκαθήσο καθήσο
	3	κῆται	έκαθήτο καθήστο
	D. 2	κῆσθον	έκαθήσθον καθήσθον
	3	κῆσθον	έκαθήσθην καθήσθην
	P. 1	κείωμεθα	έκαθήμεθα καθήμεθα
	2	κῆσθε	έκαθήσθε καθήσθε
	3	κῶνται	έκαθήντο καθήντο
		Present.	Imperfect.
Optative.	S. 1	κείοιμην	καθοίμην
	2	κείοιο	καθοίο
	3	κείοιτο	καθοίτο
	D. 2	κείοισθον	καθοίσθον
	3	κείοισθην	καθοίσθην
	P. 1	κείοιμεθα	καθοίμεθε
	2	κείοισθε	καθοίσθε
	3	κείοιντο	καθοίντο
		Present.	Imperfect.
Imperative.	S. 2	κείσο	κάθησο
	3	κείσθω	καθήσθω
	D. 2	κείσθον	κάθησθον
	3	κείσθων	καθήσθων
	P. 2	κείσθε	κάθησθε
	3	κείσθων	καθήσθων
Infinitive.		κείσθαι	καθήσθαι
Participle.		κείμενος	καθήμενος

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

The remainder of this book contains the first eight chapters of Xenophon's *Anabasis*, broken up into twenty reading lessons, and a development, by the inductive method, of the most important principles of Greek syntax, in nineteen additional lessons. The two sets of lessons are arranged alternately.

The notes to the reading lessons aim to give the pupil such assistance as will enable him, with the help of the general vocabulary, to read each lesson intelligently by himself in preparation for the work of the class-room. Generally, notes are not given on such parts of these lessons as have occurred in previous exercises and reading lessons. These parts are considerable, and were an important consideration in determining the length of the reading lessons.

The notes to the reading lessons seldom anticipate principles of syntax, but simply translate the sentences in which new idioms occur. But these sentences are introduced later, in their proper place, in the Greek exercises of the lessons on syntax. Many instances of simple and complex sentences in indirect discourse after *ὅτι* and *ὥς* and of indirect questions occur in particular in the third chapter of the first book of the *Anabasis*. The consideration of the principles which underlie these is deferred until it can be undertaken systematically.

The teacher is advised in the class-room to make these reading lessons the means of thorough drill on all forms, on the use of prepositions, and on such principles of syntax *as have previously been presented*. This drill has purposely not been anticipated in the notes.

Many of the sentences in the Greek exercises on syntax are repeated from previous lessons. In the preparation of his lesson, the pupil should examine these sentences according to the directions given, and then commit to memory the rules which follow.

The teacher is advised in the class-room to have each sentence of the Greek exercises on syntax read and translated *in order*, to have it examined with reference to the important idiom which it illustrates, and then to have the principle stated in the form of a rule.

READING LESSONS.

Introductory.

705. The *Anabasis* of Xenophon tells the story of the expedition of Cyrus the Younger against his brother Artaxerxes, and of the retreat, after the death of Cyrus, of the Ten Thousand Greeks whom he had gathered under his command. The expedition set out from Sardis in the spring of 401 B.C.

Cyrus was the second son of Darius II. In 407 B.C., his father made him, when only seventeen years of age, satrap of Lydia, Phrygia the Greater, and Cappadocia, and military commander of the forces that gathered at Castolus. Active in body, temperate in life, resolute and upright in character, he soon won the respect and confidence of his subjects.

The Persians at this time were bitterly hostile to Athens, their ancient enemy, and Cyrus was eager to aid the Lacedaemonians in their struggle against her. As soon as he arrived at Sardis in the spring of 407 B.C., Lysander, the Spartan admiral, appealed to him for help in putting down their common enemy. The answer of the youthful ruler is memorable. "These are the express orders," he said, "of my father, and I shall fulfil them. I bring with me five hundred talents. If these are insufficient, I will use the private funds which my father has given me. If these fail, I will coin into money the throne on which I sit." The timely aid which he rendered the Lacedaemonians did much to hasten the end of the Peloponnesian War. Cyrus became the warm friend of Lysander; and when in 405 B.C. he was summoned to the bedside of his dying father, he committed to the Spartan admiral the management of his satrapy and its entire revenues.

Here the *Anabasis* begins, and the following Reading Lessons give an account of the ambitious young ruler until his ill-fated death on the battle-field of Cunaxa.

LESSON CI.

Reading Lesson.

706.

ANABASIS I. i. 1-6.

Darius, falling dangerously ill, summons to him his two sons, Artaxerxes and Cyrus (1, 2). On the king's death Artaxerxes succeeds to the throne. He is persuaded by the satrap Tissaphernes that his brother is plotting against him, and has him arrested. Cyrus, saved from death only by his mother's entreaty, returns in disgrace to his province and concert measures against the king (3, 4). He conciliates all who come to him, sees to his own native troops (5), and secretly collects Greek mercenaries. A part of this army he enlists in western Asia Minor, alleging as a reason that the Greek cities which have put themselves under his protection are in danger from the machinations of Tissaphernes (6).

I.

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται παῖδες 1
 δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ
 Κῦρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡσθένει Δαρείος καὶ ὑπώπτει
 τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τῷ παιδε ἀμφοτέρω
 5 παρῆναι. ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγ- 2
 χανε· Κῦρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς
 αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε, καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν

1. Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος: gen. of the *source* (p. 188¹). — γίνονται: historical pres. Cf. μεταπέμπεται, line 6, ἀναβαίνει, l. 9, etc. — 2. πρεσβύτερος . . . Κῦρος, Artaxerxes, (who was) the older, and Cyrus, the younger. Ἀρταξέρξης and Κῦρος are in appos. (p. 25⁸) with παῖδες. — 3. ἡσθένει, was ill. The impf. denotes the continuance of the state. — 4. τῷ παιδε ἀμφοτέρω: acc. dual, subj. of παρῆναι (350). — 5. παρὼν ἐτύγχανε, was, as it happened, (already) there. See p. 250⁸. — 7. ἐποίησε, had made, aor. in a subordinate clause with plup. force. This use of the aor. is especially common after temporal conjunctions like ἐπεὶ, etc. Cf. ἐτελεύτησε, l. 12, κατέστη, l. 13, ἀπῆλθε, l. 18, etc. — καὶ . . . δέ, and also, δέ being the conjunctive word. The word between the two is emphatic. Cyrus was given

ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσα-
 10 φέρνην ὡς φίλον, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων ὀπλί-
 τᾶς ἀνέβη τριακοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξε-
 νίαν Παρράσιον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρείος καὶ 3
 1 κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισ-
 σαφέρνης διαβάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελ-
 15 φὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλευοὶ αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ πείθεται καὶ
 συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ
 ἐξαίτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν
 ἀρχήν. ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτίμα- 4
 σθεὶς, βουλευέται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ
 20 ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλὰ, ἣν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει αὐτ' ἐκείνου.
 Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ,
 φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρτα-
 ξέρξην. ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως 5
 πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο
 25 ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ
 τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο ὡς πολε-

military as well as civil authority by his father. — 10. ὡς φίλον: Tissaphernes was in fact the bitter enemy of Cyrus at this time, and Cyrus probably made him accompany him because he feared to leave him behind. — 11. ἄρχοντα: in appos. with Ξενίαν, which is the second object of ἔχων. — 15. ὡς ἐπιβουλευοὶ αὐτῷ, that he was plotting against him. — 16. ὡς ἀποκτενῶν, as intending to put him to death, with the avowed intention of putting him to death. The fut. partic. expresses purpose (379), and ὡς shows that the purpose was that of Artaxerxes. — 18. ὁ δέ, but he, i.e. Cyrus. — 20. ἣν δύνηται: cf. 648, I. 3. — 21. Κύρῳ: see p. 84¹. — 23. παρὰ βασιλέως, from the presence of the king, used attributively after τῶν, the subst. for persons being omitted. The expression is brief. In full it would be ὅστις δὲ τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ (dat.) ἀφικνεῖτο παρὰ βασιλέως (gen.). Cf. 494, I. 24. — 24. πάντας: plur., because of the distributive force of ὅστις. For the regular agreement, see 568. — 26. βαρβάρων: cf. 305, I. 11.

μὲν τε ἱκανοὶ εἶησαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ.
 τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροιζεν ὥς μάλιστα 6
 ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότα-
 30 τον λάβοι βασιλέᾱ. ὧδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλο-
 γήν. ὁπόσᾱς εἶχε φυλακὰς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι παρήγ-
 γειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις ἐκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας
 Πελοποννησίους ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὥς
 ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ
 35 γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρ-
 χαῖον ἐκ βασιλέως δεδομέναι, τότε δ' ἀφειστήκε-
 σαν πρὸς Κῦρον πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου.

— 28. ὥς . . . ἐπικρυπτόμενος, as secretly as possible, lit. concealing his act (mid., 197) as much as possible (as most he was able). — 29. ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον, as unprepared as possible (p. 172⁴). — 31. φυλακὰς: the antec. is incorporated into the rel. clause (569). If the word stood in the principal clause, we should have τῶν φυλακῶν, depending on φρουράρχοις. — 33. ὥς . . . πόλεσι: on the ground that Tissaphernes was plotting against the cities. When a circumstantial partic. (379) belongs to a subst. that is not connected with the main construction of the sentence, the two stand together in the *genitive absolute*. The corresponding usage in Lat. is the *ablative absolute*. The partic. is here *causal*, and ὥς shows that the reason is that assigned by Cyrus. Without ὥς the reason would be given on the authority of Xenophon, the narrator. — 34. καὶ γάρ, and (the reason was plausible), for, etc., Lat. *etenim*. — 35. ἦσαν . . . τὸ ἀρχαῖον, the cities of Ionia had originally (cf. τὸ τρίτον, 498, I. 10) belonged to Tissaphernes (cf. 361, I. 5). The impf. ἦσαν is used with τὸ ἀρχαῖον of a time prior to the main action. — For the situation of Ionia and of Miletus, one of its chief cities, see the map.

Review 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98 entire.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (ἀντί, 20; ἀπό, 6; εἰς, 8, 13; ἐξ, 36; ἐν, 31; ἐπί, 17, 19; παρά, 23, 26; πρὸς, 14, 24, 37), carefully consulting the General Vocabulary. Note the case which follows the preposition, the meaning of the preposition demanded by the context, and the nature of its relation (98 a) to the rest of the sentence. It is sometimes difficult to state the last briefly. Prepositional phrases are without exception either adjective or adverbial.

LESSONS ON SYNTAX.

Introductory.

707. *Syntax* treats of the correct arrangement (σύνταξις) of words in sentences.

708. Every sentence must contain two parts, a *subject* and a *predicate*. The subject is that of which something is stated. The predicate is that which is stated of the subject.

a. The subject is a substantive or an equivalent expression, with or without modifiers, or a pronoun expressed or understood. The predicate is a finite verb, with or without modifiers, or a finite verb followed by a predicate adjective or substantive.

709. That upon which the action of the verb is exerted is called the *object*. The object may be either *direct* or *indirect*. The direct object is in the accusative; the indirect object is in the dative or genitive.

a. Verbs which may have a direct object are called *transitive*; those which cannot are called *intransitive*.

710. An adjective qualifying a substantive is either *attributive* or *predicate*. An attributive adjective is directly joined with the substantive without the intervention of a verb. A predicate adjective is connected with the substantive through the medium of a copulative verb.

a. The term predicate adjective includes all adjectives and participles that are not attributive.

711. A substantive which forms a part of the predicate and is connected with the subject through the medium of a copulative verb is called a *predicate* substantive.

a. The verbs which serve to connect a predicate adjective or substantive with the subject are the copula εἰμί, *be*, expressed or understood, and similar copulative verbs, such as those signifying to *become*, *be named*, *be chosen*, *be made*, *be thought*, and *appear*.

LESSON CII.

Subject and Predicate. — Apposition. — Adjectives.

712.

EXERCISE.

1. ἐφαίνετο ἰχνη ἀνθρώπων. 2. καὶ ἔχει τὴν Ὀρόντου δύναμιν, τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως θυγατέρα ἔχοντος.¹ 3. ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα πάμπολυ ἐφάνη. 4. τὰ ἄκρα ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἦν. 5. ὅσα δὲ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπαῖξαν μέχρι τῆς μάχης ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.² 6. τῇδε γὰρ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ³ μῦρίους ὄψεσθε ἀνθ' ἐνὸς Κλεάρχους. 7. Κύρος ἐπειράτο κατὰγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας. 8. ἀκούω δὲ κώμᾳ εἶναι καλᾶς οὐ πλέον εἴκοσι σταδίων ἀπεχούσας. 9. Παρύσατις δὲ ἡ μήτηρ ἐφίλει τὸν Κύρον μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην. 10. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει εἰς Κελαινᾶς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. 11. ἀγαθὸς ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐστίν. 12. ἐκήρῳξε⁴ δὲ τοῖς Ἕλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι. 13. καὶ εἶδον τοὺς λόφους ἄσμενοι.⁵ 14. ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν προσβολῇ ὀλίγους ἔχων⁶ ἔπαθεν οὐδέν. 15. τὸ δ' ἀπλοῦν καὶ τὸ ἀληθὲς ἐνόμιζε τὸ αὐτὸ τῷ ἡλιθίῳ⁷ εἶναι. 16. καὶ τὸ βασιλείον σημεῖον ὅρᾳν ἔφασαν, αἰτόν τινα χρῦσούν. 17. πρὸς σκηνὴν ᾗσαν τὴν Ξενοφώντος. 18. παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίους. 19. εἰς Πισιδᾶς ἐβούλετο Κύρος στρατεύεσθαι. 20. διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύας. 21. ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιο τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός ;

¹ τοῦ ἔχοντος, *him who has* (371), in apposition with Ὀρόντου.

² The subj. of δεδήλωται is the indirect question ὅσα . . . μάχης (571 a).

³ Cf. 498, I. 5.

⁴ The verb implies the omitted subj. ὁ κήρυξ.

⁵ *with pleasure*. A predicate adj. is sometimes used in Greek where we should use an adv. or adverbial phrase.

⁶ The partic. is concessive (379).

⁷ *the same as (with) folly*. See p. 115⁴.

Examine in the preceding exercise the subjects of the finite verbs in 1, 3, 4, 5, 7, 9, 11, 19, 20, and note their case.

713. Rule of Syntax. — The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

a. The subject is often not expressed, especially when it is a pronoun. Examine 2, 6, 8, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 21.

Examine the subjects of the infinitives in 7, 8, 12, 15, 16, 18, 19.
Review 350.

Examine the finite verbs and their subjects in each sentence of the above exercise, except 1 and 4, and note their number and person.

714. Rule of Syntax. — A verb agrees with its subject nominative in number and person.

Now examine 1 and 4, and review 90.

Examine the predicate substantives and adjectives and the corresponding subjects in 3, 11, 15, 20, 21, and note their case.

715. Rule of Syntax. — With the copula *εἰμί* and similar verbs, such as those signifying to *become*, *be named*, *be chosen*, *be made*, *be thought*, and *appear*, a predicate substantive or adjective is in the same case as the subject.

Examine the first and second substantives in 9, 10, 16, and Ὁρόντου and τοῦ ἔχοντος in 2, and note their case and their relation to one another.

716. Rule of Syntax. — A substantive annexed to another substantive to describe it, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in case. This is called *apposition*.

Examine the adjectives, the article, the adjective pronouns, the participles, and the substantives (or pronouns) which these qualify, in 3, 4, 6, 8, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 16, 18, 21, and note their gender, number, and case.

717. Rule of Syntax. — Adjectives agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case. This rule applies also to the article and to adjective pronouns and participles.

Examine the adjectives and participles in 2, 7, 14 (ὀλίγους, οὐδέν), 15, and observe that they are used substantively and generally have the article.

718. Rule of Syntax. — An adjective or a participle, generally with the article, may be used as a substantive.

Examine the relative position of the article, substantive, and attributive (not only adjectives, but also dependent genitives, prepositions with their cases, adverbs, participles, and possessive pronouns, used attributively) in 2, 5, 9, 14, 16, 17, 21.

719. Rule of Syntax. — When an attributive adjective, or equivalent expression, qualifies a substantive which has the article, the order is commonly *article, attributive, substantive*, but it may be *substantive, article, attributive*. In the latter case the substantive may take another article before it.

a. Dependent genitives often fail to follow the rule, and stand either before or after both article and substantive.¹

Examine the relative position of the article, substantive, and predicate adjective in 3, 11.

720. Rule of Syntax. — When a predicate adjective qualifies a substantive which has the article, it never stands between the article and its substantive, but precedes or follows both.

721.**EXERCISE.**

1. And the gods are judges of the contest. 2. I will carry you safely over, if you will give me a talent (as) pay. 3. But the enemy on² the hill observed the march of the light-armed troops to³ the summit. 4. Many of the foot-soldiers were slain in the pursuit. 5. And Cyrus said that the expedition was⁴ against the Pisidians. 6. All urged Xenophon to go. 7. And she gave him much money. 8. The commanders are safe. 9. There is in this place a palace of the⁵ great king. 10. Wherefore the king did not perceive the plot against himself. 11. Clearchus was a Lacedaemonian exile. 12. Cyrus at length determined⁶ to proceed up country. 13. Cyrus remitted to the king the tributes that accrued.⁷ 14. He marched through Lydia three stages, twenty-two parasangs, to the river Maeander.

¹ The gen. of the personal pronoun, for example, always has this position. Cf. 517, I. 6.

² *ἐν* with the gen.

³ *πρὸς* with the acc.

⁴ For the mood and tense, cf. 712, 16 above.

⁵ See p. 144³.

⁶ It seemed best to Cyrus.

⁷ See 369.

LESSON CIII.

Reading Lesson.

722.

ANABASIS I. i. 7-11.

Cyrus lays siege to Miletus, with the intention of restoring the exiles whom Tissaphernes has expelled from this city (7). He appeals to the king in his contention with Tissaphernes, and thus deceives the king (8). Other Greek mercenaries are enlisted for Cyrus in the Chersonese by Clearchus, who makes this peninsula his base of operations against the Thracians (9). Still other Greek troops are enlisted for him in Thessaly by Aristippus (10), and in Greece, by Proxenus, Sophænetus, and Socrates (11).

I.

ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρηνς προαισθόμενος τὰ 7
αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, ἀποστήναι πρὸς Κῦρον,
τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέκτεψε τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ δὲ
Κῦρος, ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας, συλλέξας στρά-
5 τευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ
θάλατταν, καὶ ἐπειράτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτω-
κότας. καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ
ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα. πρὸς δὲ βασιλεῆ πέρπων 8
ἡξίου ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς
10 πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρην ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ
ἢ μήτηρ συνέπράττειν αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς
τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλήν οὐκ ᾔσθάνετο, Τισ-

1. τὰ αὐτὰ . . . βουλευομένους: sc. τινάς, that certain persons were forming this same (516) plan. The partic. is in indirect discourse (p. 250⁵), and its obj. is a cognate acc. (p. 122¹). — 2. ἀποστήναι: in appos. with τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα. — 3. τοὺς μὲν, τοὺς δέ: cf. 479, I. 12. — 7. τοῦ ἀθροίζειν: cf. 517, I. 14. — 9. ὢν: causal partic. (379). — δοθῆναι: obj. of ἡξίου (355). So ἄρχειν in l. 10. — οἱ: see 515, 513. — 10. αὐτῶν: see p. 83³. — 12. Τισ-

σαφέρνει δὲ ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ
 στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθητο αὐτῶν
 15 πολεμούντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς
 γιγνομένους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν
 Τισσαφέρνης ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων. ἄλλο δὲ στρα- 9
 τευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τῇ καταντι-
 πέρᾳς Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λα-
 20 κεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν· τούτῳ συγγενόμενος ὁ
 Κῦρος ἠγάσθη τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μῦ-
 ρίους δᾶρεικούς. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρῦσίον στρα-
 τευμα συνέλεξεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων, καὶ
 ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος τοῖς Θραξί
 25 τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλήσποντον οἰκοῦσι, καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς
 Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ
 εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλησποντι-
 ακαὶ πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμε-
 νον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στρατευμα. Ἀρίστιππος 10
 30 δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὧν ἐτύγχανεν αὐτῷ, καὶ πιε-
 ζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἰκοὶ ἀντιστασιωτῶν ἔρχεται πρὸς

σαφέρνει: with πολεμοῦντα (cf. 274, I. 4). — 13. αὐτόν: i.e. Cyrus, subj. (350) of δαπανᾶν (354). — 14. οὐδέν, not at all (p. 70⁸). — αὐτῶν πολεμούντων, because they were at war, gen. absolute. Cf. 706, 34, and note on 33. — 15. καὶ γάρ, and (the more) because, Lat. etenim. Cf. 706, 34. — 16. ὧν: for αἷς. The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of its antecedent. — 17. ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων, had (previously), as it happened, possessed. Cf. 706, 5, and note. For the tense of ἐτύγχανεν, cf. ἦσαν, 706, 35, and note. — 18. Χερρονήσῳ τῇ καταντιπέρᾳς: see 719. For the situation of the Chersonese, see the map. — 19. Ἀβύδου: cf. 361, I. 16. — 21. ἠγάσθη, came to admire. The aor. of verbs which denote a continued state generally expresses the entrance into that state. Thus, ἀσθενέω, be sick, ἡσθένησα, fell sick; βασιλεύω, be king, ἐβασίλευσα, became king. This is called the inceptive aor. — 24. τοῖς . . . οἰκοῦσι: see 719. — 28. ἐκοῦσαι: cf. 712, 13. — τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν, was secretly supported

τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους
καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὥς οὕτω περιγενόμενος
ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ
35 εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἕξ μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ δεῖ-
ται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντι-
στασιωτᾶς πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλευσῇται. οὕτω
δὲ αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον
στράτευμα. Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιωτίον ξένον ὄντα 11
40 αὐτῷ ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους πα-
ραγενέσθαι, ὥς εἰς Πισιδᾶς βουλόμενος στρατεύ-
εσθαι, ὥς πράγματα παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ
ἑαυτοῦ χώρα. Σοφαίνεται δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ
Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους,
45 ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους,
ὥς πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τῶν
Μίλησιων. καὶ ἐποιοῦν οὕτως οὗτοι.

(p. 250⁸). — 32. αὐτόν, μισθόν: objects of αἰτεῖ (p. 100²). — εἰς, for. The adj. phrase εἰς . . . ξένους and the following gen. qualify μισθόν. — 33. ὥς οὕτω περιγενόμενος ἂν, on the ground that (for ὥς, see 706, 33, and note) in this way he (Cyrus) would get the better of. περιγενόμενος ἂν, if expressed by a finite mood, would be περιγένοιτο ἂν, to which οὕτω furnishes the pro-
tasis (p. 104¹⁰). — 34. ἀντιστασιωτῶν: see p. 90⁷. — 36. αὐτοῦ: cf. 356, I. 11. — μὴ: the regular neg. with the infin., whereas the indic. regularly has οὐ. — 37. πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλευσῇται, until he should have consulted with him. — 41. ὥς βουλόμενος, on the ground that he (Cyrus) wished. Cf. l. 33 above. — εἰς, into the country of. — 42. ὥς . . . Πισιδῶν, on the ground that the Pisidians were causing trouble. For the gen. absolute with ὥς, see 706, 34. For Pisidia, see the map. — 44. ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, these also being his guest-friends. τούτους is in apposition with Σοφαίνεται and Σωκράτην. — 46. ὥς πολεμήσων: cf. 706, 16, and note. — σὺν, with the aid of. Compare with this the preceding simple dat. Τισσαφέρνει (p. 83¹⁰).

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (ἀμφί, 13; ἀπό, 23; εἰς, 27, 32, 35, 41; ἐν, 1, 18; ἐξ, 16, 24; κατά, 5 (bis); πρὸς, 2, 8, 12, 31, 36; σὺν, 46; ὑπό, 31) according to the directions given in Lesson CI.

LESSON CIV.

Pronouns.

723.

EXERCISE.

1. οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἐσμέν.¹ σὺ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππου ὀχεῖ, ἐγὼ δὲ χαλεπῶς κάμνω τὴν ἀσπίδα φέρων. 2. Χειρίσοφον δὲ κελεύει οἱ συμπέμψαι τοὺς ψιλούς. 3. ἀπορουμένοις δ' αὐτοῖς προσήλθέ τις ἀνὴρ. 4. αὐτὸς δεξιᾷς δούς συνέλαβες τοὺς στρατηγούς. 5. ἦν οὖν αὐτῶν ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες πέπᾱνται σφενδόνᾱς, καὶ τούτῳ² δώμεν αὐτῶν³ ἀργύριον, ἴσως τινὲς φανοῦνται ἱκανοὶ ἡμᾶς ὠφελεῖν. 6. λοιπόν μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ μέγιστον νομίζω εἶναι. 7. ἄλλου τινὸς⁴ δεῖ πρὸς τούτοις οἷς λέγει. 8. οἱ στρατηγοί, οἱ διὰ πίστεως τοῖς βαρβάροις ἑαυτοὺς ἐνεχείρισαν, πολλὰ καὶ κακὰ πεπόνθᾱσιν. 9. πρὸς δὲ βασιλεῆ πῆμπων Κῦρος ἡξίου ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτᾱς τὰς πόλεις. 10. Δέξιππον δὲ κελεύουσι διασώσαντα αὐτοῖς τὰ πρόβατα, τὰ μὲν⁵ αὐτὸν⁶ λαβεῖν, τὰ δὲ σφίσιν ἀποδοῦναι. 11. οὐχ ὥρᾱ ἐστὶν ἡμῖν ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν,⁷ ἀλλὰ βουλεύεσθαι ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. 12. ἄλλο δὲ στρατευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τῇ καταντιπερᾶς Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. 13. Κῦρος παραγγέλλει τῷ Ἀριστίππῳ ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στρατευμα. 14. σύ τε γὰρ Ἑλλήν ἐῖ καὶ ἡμεῖς τοσοῦτοι⁸ ὄντες ὅσους⁸ σὺ ὀράς. 15. οὗς οὖν ἑώρᾱ ἐθέλοντας κινδυνεύειν, τούτους ἄρχοντας ἐποίει ἥς κατεστρέφετο χώρᾱς. 16. ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ

¹ The preceding pause prevents the recession of the accent.

² I.e. the possessor of a sling.

³ for them, i.e. the slings. The thing bargained for is put in the gen.

⁴ something else. Cf. 508, I. 14.

⁵ τὰ μὲν . . . τὰ δέ, some . . . the rest. See p. 118⁵.

⁶ Intensive, himself.

⁷ Cf. 532, I. 5.

⁸ See 542, 571.

πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπόφηναι γνώμην ὃ τι σοι δοκεῖ.
17. τίνα γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας; **18.** εἰ οὖν νῦν
 ἀποδειχθεῖη τίνα χρὴ ἡγεῖσθαι, οὐκ ἂν ὕστερον βουλευέσθαι
 ἡμᾶς δέοι. **19.** εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ,
 τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου.

Examine the subjects of the finite verbs in 1, 4, 14, 16 (σύ), 17, and observe that they are all pronouns and are omitted unless emphatic.

Review 514.

Examine the uses of the personal pronoun of the third person and of αὐτός in 2, 3, 4, 5, 9, 10, 12, 19.

Review 515, 516.

Examine the reflexive pronouns in 8, 11, 13, and note the subjects to which they severally refer.

Review 528.

Examine the uses of the demonstrative pronouns in 5, 7, 9, 11, 12, 15, 19.

Review 540, 541.

Examine the position of the demonstratives, with reference to the article and substantive, in 9, 12.

Review 174. The rule applies also to ὅδε and ἐκεῖνος.

Examine the use of the interrogative pronouns in 5, 17, 18.

Review 558.

Examine the use of the indefinite pronoun in 3, 5, 7.

724. Rule of Syntax. — The indefinite τις may be either substantive or adjective. It is sometimes nearly equivalent to the English *a* or *an*.

Examine the relative pronouns and their antecedents in 8, 14, 15 (οὗς), and note their gender, number, person, and case.

Review 568.

Examine the relation of the relative pronoun to its antecedent in 6, 13.

Review 569.

Examine the relative pronoun in 7, 15 (ἧς), and note its case and its relation to its antecedent.

725. Rule of Syntax.—When a relative would naturally be in the accusative as the object of a verb, it is generally *assimilated* to the case of its antecedent, if this is a genitive or dative. The antecedent may be incorporated into the relative clause.

Examine the use of *δοῖς* in 11, 16.

Review 570.

726.

EXERCISE.

1. *I* am willing to carry you across. 2. For they are now themselves burning the king's country. 3. But once the king's army¹ invaded their country.² 4. And beside these he had (those) whom³ the king gave him. 5. But if anybody sees another better⁴ (plan), let him speak. 6. And what soldiers he himself had he commanded to follow. 7. Having persuaded his own⁵ city, he sailed away. 8. But they attempted to induce him to return. 9. You neither love them⁶ nor (do) they⁶ (love) you. 10. He thinks the general sent back to him what army he had. 11. Cyrus set out with (those) whom I have mentioned. 12. He appointed the same man general. 13. They planned these same (things). 14. Who wounded Cyrus, the son⁷ of Darius?

LESSON CV.

Reading Lesson.

727.

ANABASIS I. ii. 1-6.

Cyrus is now ready to set out inland. He collects his troops at Sardis, and announces, in order to conceal his real object, that his intention is to expel the Pisidians from their territory (1-3). The

¹ *a royal army.*

² *threw (itself) in upon (eis) them.*

³ Use *δοῖς*.

⁴ Use the neut. sing.

⁵ Cf. 532, I. 2.

⁶ Use *ἐκεῖνος*.

⁷ The subst. *νός* may be omitted after the article, when a qualifying gen. is added. Cf. 161, I. 14.

king, informed of the real facts by Tissaphernes, makes ready to meet him (4). Cyrus sets out from Sardis and marches through Lydia across the Maeander to Colossae in Phrygia, where he is joined by Menon (5, 6).

II.

ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἤδη πορεύεσθαι ἄνω, τὴν 1
μὲν πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὡς Πισιδᾶς βουλόμενος
ἐκβαλεῖν παντάπασι ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀθροίζει
ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνι-
5 κόν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ
λαβόντι ἥκειν ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα, καὶ τῷ
Ἀριστίπῳ συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀπο-
πέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα· καὶ Ξενίᾳ
τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ προειστήκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι
10 ξενικοῦ, ἥκειν παραγγέλλει λαβόντα τοὺς ἄλλους
πλὴν ὅποσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάτ-
τειν. ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκοῦντας, 2
καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι,
ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν ἐφ' ᾧ

1. πορεύεσθαι: subj. of ἐδόκει (352). — τὴν μὲν . . . βουλόμενος, *he gave as his pretext indeed (that he was going) because he wished* (cf. 722, 41). μὲν implies a clause with δέ, such as τῇ δ' ἀληθείᾳ ἐπὶ βασιλεῖᾳ ἐπορεύετο. — 4. ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους, *avowedly against these*. — 5. ἐνταῦθα, *there, i.e. to Sardis, his headquarters*. Construe with ἥκειν. — καὶ, *also*. Clearchus and Aristippus were at a distance (722, 19-39), and their troops are not regarded as part of the Greek force (τὸ Ἑλληνικόν) just mentioned. — 6. ἥκειν: subj. not expressed (350). So ἀποπέμψαι in l. 7. — ὅσον . . . στράτευμα, *whatever troops he had* (cf. 706, 31). — 7. τοὺς οἴκοι: cf. 722, 31, and p. 83°. — 9. προειστήκει, *was commander of*, plup. with impf. force. The plup. of ἵστημι is either ἐστήκειν or irregularly εἰστήκειν. — τοῦ ξενικοῦ: for the case, cf. αὐτῶν, 722, 10. — 10. λαβόντα: acc. with the unexpressed subj. of ἥκειν, rather than dat. (cf. ll. 6, 7) with Ξενίᾳ, because the latter is remote in position. — 11. πλὴν: sc. τοσοῦτων, as antec. to ὅποσοι. — 14. ὑποσχόμενος . . . οἰκάδε, *promising them that, if he should successfully accomplish the*

15 ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς
καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἡδέως ἐπείθοντο· ἐπί-
στευον γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα παρήσαν
εἰς Σάρδεις. Ξενίᾳς μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων 3
λαβὼν παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις ὀπλίτας εἰς τετρα-
20 κισχίλιους, Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὀπλίτας μὲν
εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, γυμνήτας δὲ πεντα-
κοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος ὀπλίτας ἔχων
χιλίους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων ὡς
πεντακοσίους, Πᾶσιων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς τριακοσίους
25 μὲν ὀπλίτας, τριακοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρε-
γένετο· ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ
Μίλητον στρατευομένων. οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις 4
αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο. Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανοήσας
ταῦτα, καὶ μείζονα ἡγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ
30 Πισιδᾶς τὴν παρασκευὴν, πορεύεται ὡς βασιλεῆ
ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα ἱππεῆς ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους.
καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους 5
τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

object (569) for which he was taking the field, he would not stop (p. 250⁶) until he restored them to their homes. — 18. Σάρδεις: see the map. — τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων: for ἐκ τῶν πόλεων τοὺς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι. Cf. 706, 23. — 19. ὀπλίτας: in appos. with τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων. — εἰς: cf. 498, I. 12. — 23. ὡς: cf. 494, I. 23. — 26. ἦν: cf. p. 232⁷. — τῶν στρατευομένων: cf. 380, I. 1. — 27. οὗτοι μὲν: in contrast with those who joined him later. Every Greek sentence has in general a conjunction to connect it with what goes before. But Xenophon frequently omits the conjunction in a sentence that begins with a demonstrative (cf. ll. 37, 38) or adverb of place (cf. ll. 5, 41). — 28. αὐτῷ: dat. of advantage (p. 25⁴). — 29. μείζονα . . . ἢ ὡς, too great to be, lit. greater than as (it would be, if) etc. — 30. ὡς: cf. 391, I. 11. — 31. ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα, as rapidly as possible, lit. in what way he could most quickly. — 32. Τισσαφέρνους: gen. of the source. Cf. 498, I. 1.

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς εἶρηκα ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ Σάρ-
 35 δεων· καὶ ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμούς τρεῖς
 παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον
 ποταμόν. τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα· γέφυρα
 δὲ ἐπὴν ἐξευγμένη πλοίοις. τοῦτον διαβὰς ἐξε- 6
 λαίνει διὰ Φρυγίας σταθμόν ἓνα παρασάγγας
 40 ὁκτὼ εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, εὐδαίμονα
 καὶ μεγάλην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ· καὶ
 ἦκε Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους καὶ
 πέλταστας πεντακοσίους, Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας
 καὶ Ὀλυνθίους.

34. ὠρμάτο: the march began in the spring of 401 B.C. Trace the route, in the following description, on the map. — 38. πλοίοις: dat. of means (p. 47^b). — 42. Menon was sent by Aristippus, who was not able to obey the summons of Cyrus in person (see ll. 6 ff.).

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (ἀμφί, 26; ἀπό, 34; διὰ, 35, 39; εἰς, 18, 19 (bis), 21, 27, 40; ἐν, 9; ἐξ, 3, 18; ἐπί, 4, 14, 29, 36; πρός, 7, 8; σύν, 13) according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CVI.

Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases.

728.

EXERCISE.

1. ἀγαθόν τι ποιήσομεν ὑμᾶς. 2. ὦ θαυμασιώτατε ἄν-
 θρωπε, σύγε οὐδὲ ὀρῶν γιγνώσκεις οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι.
 3. οὗτος, ὦ ἄνδρες, βασιλεὺς ἐγένετο τῶν Περσῶν. 4. πο-
 ρευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικνούνται ἐπὶ τὸν
 Μάσκᾶν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. 5. μείναντες δὲ
 ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν τῇ ἄλλῃ¹ ἐπορεύοντο. 6. ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς
 θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξω. 7. στρατιώτας γὰρ ἦττησε

¹ Cf. 167, I. 13.

τὸν σατράπην. 8. τοιαῦτα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἡμῶν οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσουσιν. 9. δεῖ τὸν στρατιώτην φοβεῖσθαι μᾶλλον τὸν ἄρχοντα ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλει φυλακὰς φυλάξειν.¹ 10. κράτιστον, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἔσθαι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. 11. ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι.² 12. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν³ ὁ μὲν ἤρχεν, οἱ δὲ ἐπείθοντο. 13. ἀπείχον τῆς χαράδρᾱς ὅκτῳ σταδίου. 14. Ἀριαῖος δέ, ὃν ἡμεῖς ἠθέλομεν βασιλέᾱ καθιστάναι, ἡμᾶς κακὸν ποιεῖν πειράται. 15. Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες Ἑλληνες, οὐκ ἴστε ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. 16. ἦσαν δὲ νῆ Δία καὶ ἡμῶν⁴ οἱ ἔδεισαν. 17. ἀλλ' οὐ στρατηγήσω ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν. 18. καὶ με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά τε ἄλλα Κῦρος ἐτίμησε καὶ μῦρίους ἔδωκε δᾶρεικούς. 19. πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ πόλις ὠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων ὄνομα Καιναί. 20. ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ἡγεμόνα διδῶ, συνταττώμεθα τὴν ταχίστην.⁵ 21. οὗτοι ἡρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα⁶ τῇ στρατιᾷ. 22. ἀναμνήσω γὰρ ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς τῶν προγόνων τῶν ὑμετέρων⁷ κινδύνους. 23. Κῦρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε. 24. οἱ Θράκες ἐβούλοντο ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς Ἑλληνας τὴν γῆν.

Examine the substantives and pronouns in the nominative in 2, 3, 6, 8, 11, 14, 16, 18, 19, 21, 24, and note their relation to the finite verbs.

729. Rule of Syntax. — The nominative is used chiefly as the subject of a finite verb (713), or in the predicate after verbs signifying to *be*, *become*, etc. (715), when used in a finite mood.

Examine the vocatives in 2, 3, 10, 15.

¹ The fut. infin. is used with μέλλω to form a periphrastic future.

² Cf. 712, 13.

³ thenceforth.

⁴ Sc. τινές as subj. of ἦσαν.

⁵ Sc. ὁδόν.

⁶ See 718.

⁷ See 719 end.

730. Rule of Syntax. — The vocative, with or without α , is used as the case of address.

Examine the accusatives in 6 (αἰτούς), 9 (ἄρχοντα, πολεμίους), 11 (χρήματα), 15 (ὁ τι), 18 (μέ, δᾶρειαίους), 20 (ἡγεμόνα), 23 (Κῦρον), and the verbs on which they depend, and note their mutual relation.

731. Rule of Syntax. — The direct object of the action of a transitive verb is put in the accusative.

Examine the accusatives in 9 (φυλακάς), 17, and the verbs to which they belong, and note their meaning and mutual relation.

732. Rule of Syntax. — Any verb whose meaning permits it may take an accusative of kindred signification. This accusative repeats the idea *already contained* in the verb, and may follow intransitive as well as transitive verbs. It is called the *cognate accusative*.

Examine the function of the accusatives in 4 (εἶρος), 18 (ἄλλα), 19.

733. Rule of Syntax. — The accusative of *specification* may be joined with a verb, adjective, or substantive, to denote that *in respect to which* the expression is used.

Examine the force of the accusatives in 12, 20 (τὴν ταχίστην).

734. Rule of Syntax. — The accusative in certain expressions has the force of an adverb.

Examine the function of the accusatives in 5, 13.

735. Rule of Syntax. — The accusative may denote *extent* of time or space.

Examine the construction of the accusatives in 6 (θεούς), 16.

736. Rule of Syntax. — The accusative follows the adverbs of swearing *νή* and *μά*, *by*. An oath introduced by *νή* is affirmative; one introduced by *μά* is negative.

Examine the pairs of accusatives in 7, 21, 22, 24, and the verbs on which they depend, and note their mutual relation.

737. Rule of Syntax. — Many transitive verbs may take two object accusatives. Such are verbs signifying to *ask*, *remind*, *teach*, *clothe*, *conceal*, and *deprive*.

Examine the pairs of accusatives in 1, 8, 14 (*ἡμᾶς, κακόν*), note the signification of the verbs on which they depend, and observe that of each pair one accusative denotes the person, the other the thing.

738. Rule of Syntax. — Verbs signifying to *do anything to* a person take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

Examine the pairs of accusatives in 14 (*ὄν, βασιλέᾱ*), 23 (*αὐτόν, σατράπην*), and the verbs on which they depend, and observe that of each pair one accusative expresses predicate relation.

739. Rule of Syntax. — Many transitive verbs may take a *predicate* accusative in addition to the object accusative. Such are verbs signifying to *name, choose, make, and think*.

a. This is the active construction corresponding to the passive with copulative verbs. See 715.

The accusative is used also with prepositions (95, 96, 97) and as the subject of the infinitive (350).

740.**EXERCISE.**

1. And another army was collected for him in the following manner. 2. What opinion have you expressed, Socrates? 3. We will ask the general whether he has garrisons in the cities.¹ 4. Why do you ask me for boats? 5. And thence they proceeded one stage, four parasangs. 6. They wished to rob them of their land. 7. The general has committed a great error.² 8. This man they made king. 9. But the Greeks proceeded safely for the rest of the day. 10. And the wall was forty feet³ in height. 11. They remained there seven days. 12. Through the middle⁴ of the city there flows a river, which is called the Cydnus,⁵ two plethra in width. 13. This man was chosen general.

¹ The indirect question is the second obj.

² Cf. 628, I. 17.

³ Cf. 319, I. 18.

⁴ Cf. 386, I. 8.

⁵ Cf. 728, 19 above.

LESSON CVII.

Reading Lesson.

741.

ANABASIS I. ii. 7-12.

From Colossae Cyrus proceeds to Celaenae. The historian, in an interesting digression, tells of the palace and great park of Cyrus at Celaenae; of the sources and of the first course of the river Maeander (7); of the royal residence at Celaenae, close upon the sources of the river Marsyas, which empties into the Maeander; of the contest of Apollo and Marsyas and of the naming of the river (8); and of the building of the palace and of the settlement of Celaenae by Xerxes. Cyrus remains here a month, and is joined by the rest of his Greek troops. He reviews and numbers these (9). Thence he marches northwest through Peltae, where the festival of the Lycaea is celebrated, to the Market of the Ceramians, on the borders of Mysia (11). Thence eastward to the Plain of Caÿster, where Epyaxa, the wife of the king of Cilicia, meets him and furnishes him money with which to pay his troops (12).

II.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας 7
εἴκοσιν εἰς Κελαινάς, τῆς Φρυγιάς πόλιν οἰκουμέ-
νην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βα-
σίλεια ἦν καὶ παράδεισος μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων
5 πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὅποτε γυ-
μνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτὸν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ
μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ῥεῖ ὁ Μαίανδρος ποτα-
μός· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων·
ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι δὲ καὶ 8
10 μεγάλου βασιλέως βασιλεια ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ

5. ὅποτε βούλονται, *whenever he wished*. — 7. μέσου: see p. 141⁵. —
8. ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων: we should say *within* instead of *out of the palace*,
and the more precise statement in Greek would be ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις. —
9. Κελαινῶν: in appos. with πόλεως (716). For the order of the words,

ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ
 ἀκροπόλει· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ
 ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τοῦ δὲ Μαρσίου τὸ
 εὖρος ἐστὶν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν. ἐνταῦθα
 15 λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύαν, νικήσας ἐρί-
 ζοντά οἱ περὶ σοφίας, καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμάσαι ἐν
 τῷ ἄντρῳ ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμὸς
 καλεῖται Μαρσύας. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς 9
 Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ ἀπεχώρει, λέγεται οἰκο-
 20 δομησάι ταῦτά τε τὰ βασιλεία καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν
 ἀκρόπολιν. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρας τριά-
 κοντα· καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς
 ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρᾶκας ὀκτα-
 κοσίους καὶ τοξότας Κρήτας διακοσίους. ἅμα δὲ
 25 καὶ Σῶσις παρῆν ὁ Συρακόσιος ἔχων ὀπλίτας τρια-
 κοσίους, καὶ Σοφαίνετος ὁ Ἀρκὰς ἔχων ὀπλίτας
 χιλίους. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐξέτασεν καὶ ἀριθμὸν
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγέ-
 νοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὀπλῖται μὲν μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι,

cf. ὁ Μαίανδρος ποταμός in l. 7. — 11. ὑπὸ, *under, at the foot of.* — 14. ποδῶν: *cf.* 498, I. 7. — ἐνταῦθα . . . σοφίας: *cf.* 517, I. 19. — 16. καὶ κρεμάσαι, *and to have hung up.* κρεμάσαι, first aor. infin. of κρεμάννυμι, is in the same const. with ἐκδεῖραι. — 17. ὅθεν, *whence, for ὅθι or οὗ, where.* See note on l. 8. — 19. τῇ μάχῃ, *in the (well-known) battle, that of Salamis, fought in 480 B.C.* — λέγεται οἰκοδομησάι: *cf.* λέγεται ἐκδεῖραι in l. 15. — 22. Κλέαρχος: *cf.* 722, 19 ff., and 727, 5 ff. — 25. Σῶσις: not previously mentioned, and not again referred to in the Anabasis. — 26. Σοφαίνετος: if this is the general mentioned in 722, 43, and 727, 22, the purpose for which he had been left behind must remain in doubt. — 28. ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες, *the whole number amounted to.* — 29. ὀπλῖται μὲν, πελτασταὶ δέ: in appos. with οἱ σύμπαντες, expressing the two parts of the whole. The sum-total here given does not tally with the total of the numbers given in the preceding sections. Xenophon is here speaking in round numbers. —

30 πελτασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους. ἐντεῦθεν ἔξε- 10
 λαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Πέλ-
 τας, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας
 τρεῖς· ἐν αἷς Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσσε
 καὶ ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦσαν στλεγγίδες
 35 χρυσαῖ· ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κῦρος. ἐν-
 τεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δώδεκα
 εἰς Κεραμῶν ἀγοράν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, ἐσχάτην
 πρὸς τῇ Μυσῖα χώρα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθ- 11
 μοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς Καῦστρου
 40 πεδῖον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας
 πέντε· καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ὠφείλετο μισθὸς
 πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ πολλάκις ἰόντες ἐπὶ
 τὰς θύρας ἀπήτουν. ὁ δὲ ἐλπίδας λέγων διῆγε
 καὶ δῆλος ἦν ἀνιῶμενος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ
 45 Κύρου τρόπου ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι. ἐνταῦθα 12
 ἀφικνέεται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλί-
 κων βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ
 δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ τότε

30. ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους: cf. 498, I. 12. — ἐντεῦθεν . . . εἰς Πέλτας: Cyrus now changes the direction of his march (see the map), probably with the double object of increasing his supplies and of getting on the main high-road to the east. — 34. ἦσαν: irregularly in agreement with the predicate substantive στλεγγίδες, not with its subj. ἄθλα. — 38. ἐντεῦθεν . . . τριάκοντα: these were forced marches. The object of Cyrus probably was to meet Epyaxa before his Greek troops became clamorous for their pay. — 42. πλέον: used indeclinably for πλεόνων. — 43. ἐλπίδας λέγων διῆγε, kept (διῆγε) expressing (or continued to express) his hope (of paying them). — 44. δῆλος ἦν ἀνιῶμενος: we should say, was evidently troubled. — οὐ γὰρ . . . ἀποδιδόναι: cf. 640, I. 19. — 46. τοῦ Κιλικίων βασιλέως: but above in l. 10 we have simply μεγάλου βασιλέως, without the art. See p. 144³. — 47. ἐλέγετο δοῦναι, she was said to have given. Cf. ll. 15 and 19. — 48. οὖν, at any rate, i.e. however Cyrus got the money, he at any rate

ἀπέδωκε Κῦρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ
 50 ἡ Κίλισσα καὶ φύλακας περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ
 Ἀσπενδίους.

certainly had it to pay his troops with. — Syennesis, as Xenophon calls him, was pursuing a double policy. He sent money to Cyrus by the hands of his wife, but at the same time he was endeavouring to propitiate Artaxerxes, being determined to keep his throne whichever of the two prevailed.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (ἀμφί, 30; ἀπό, 5; διά, 6, 9, 12, 17; εἰς, 2, 13, 31, 37, 39; ἐν, 10, 16, 28, 33; ἐξ, 8, 18; ἐπί, 11, 42; παρά, 47; περὶ, 16, 50; πρὸς, 38, 44; ὑπό, 11) according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CVIII.

The Genitive Case.

742.

EXERCISE.

1. ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις ἦσαν. 2. ὅμως δὲ οἱ πολλοὶ δι' αἰσχύνην καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνηκολούθησαν. 3. καὶ γὰρ νομαὶ πολλαὶ βοσκημάτων κατελήφθησαν. 4. τοῦ δὲ Μαρσίου τὸ εὐρὸς ἐστὶν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν. 5. καὶ τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς ἐβρέχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν.¹ 6. ἦσαν δὲ οὗτοι τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον στρατευομένων. 7. ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος. 8. καὶ ἔταξεν αὐτοὺς λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ² συνεκβιβάζειν τὰς ἀμάξας. 9. τῶν δὲ περιττῶν μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις. 10. ὑμεῖς γὰρ δόξετε αἵτιοι εἶναι ἄρξαντες τοῦ διαβαίνειν.³ 11. πρῶτον μὲν κατακαύσωμεν τὰς ἀμάξας, ἵνα μὴ τὰ ζεύγη ἡμῶν στρατηγῇ. 12. βούλεται

¹ See p. 179¹.

² Sc. μέρος.

³ Cf. 517, I. 14.

οὖν καὶ σὲ τούτων γεύσασθαι. 13. ταῦτα δὲ συνενηνεγμένα ἦν¹ τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς χώρας. 14. καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ συνεπόμενοι ἀπωλώλεσαν. 15. ἐξαπίνης οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ἐτόξευον, οἱ δ' ἐσφενδόνων. 16. καὶ εἴ τις δὲ χρημάτων ἐπιθυμεί, κρατεῖν πειράσθω. 17. διφθέρᾳς ἐπίμπλασαν χόρτου κούφου. 18. πάντες γὰρ κοινῆς σωτηρίᾳς δεόμεθα. 19. μηδαμῶς ἀπτώμεθα τούτου τοῦ πράγματος. 20. τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν πειρώμεθα ταύτης τῆς τάξεως. 21. καὶ αἰτεῖ Κῦρον τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν. 22. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρχαῖον. 23. τῶν δὲ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν ξύλα σχίζων τις ἔησι Κλεάρχου τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ οὗτος αὐτοῦ ἤμαρτεν. 24. τούτων γὰρ κοινωνήσαντες καὶ² προβάτων καὶ ἀνδραπόδων μετέσχετε. 25. ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος ὡς ὀρᾷ αὐτὸν παριόντα ἐπιλαμβάνεται αὐτοῦ τῆς ἵτινος.³ 26. πάντες γὰρ οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀρετῆς. 27. τούτου δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ῥαδίως τεύξεσθε. 28. ἐρωτᾷ αὐτοὺς εἴ που ἦσθηνται ἄλλου στρατεύματος. 29. τούτων δὲ οὐδεὶς μέμνηται. 30. καὶ εἰς κώμας πολλῶν κἀγαθῶν γεμούσᾳς ἦλθον. 31. δέδοικα γὰρ μὴ ἐπιλάθῃσθε τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ. 32. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελείτο Κῦρος. 33. οὐχ ὥρᾳ ἐστὶν ἡμῖν ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν. 34. ὁ τῶν βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς ἦν. 35. κρηπίς δ' ὑπὴν λιθίνῃ τὸ ὕψος εἴκοσι ποδῶν.

Examine the genitives in 1, 2, 3, 4 (Μαρσίου), 5 (τῶν διαβαινόντων), 8, 14, 15, 21, 23 (Μένωνος, στρατιωτῶν), 25 (αὐτοῦ), 34, 35, and note the nature of the relation which each sustains to the substantive, or equivalent expression, on which it depends.

743. Rule of Syntax.—A substantive in the genitive may depend directly on another substantive. This is called the *attributive genitive* and expresses various relations. Thus :—

¹ συνενηνεγμένα ἦν, compound form in the third *sing.*, where *συνένηνεκτο* might have occurred.

² also.

³ the rim of his shield, αὐτοῖ (of him) being a gen. of possession.

1. *Possession*: 1, 23 (Μένωνος), 25 (αὐτοῦ). The *possessive* genitive.

2. The *subject* of an action or feeling: 34. The *subjective* genitive.

3. The *object* of an action or feeling: 2. The *objective* genitive.

4. *Material*: 3. Genitive of *material*.

5. *Measure* of time or space: 21, 35. Genitive of *measure*.

6. The *whole*, after words denoting a part: 5 (τῶν διαβαίωντων), 8, 14, 15, 23 (στρατιωτῶν). The *partitive* genitive.

a. The partitive genitive may occur with all substantives, pronouns, adjectives (especially superlatives), participles with the article, and even adverbs, which denote a part. The word denoting the part is sometimes understood.

Examine the genitives in 4 (ποδῶν), 6, 22, observe that each is part of the predicate, and note the relation of each to the subject of the principal verb.

744. Rule of Syntax.—A substantive in the genitive may stand in the predicate after the copula.

a. The predicate genitive generally belongs to the subject of the sentence, and may express any of the relations of the attributive genitive.

Examine the genitives in 9, 24, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

745. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive follows verbs signifying to *share* (*give or take a part*).

Examine the genitives in 10, 19, 20, 23 (Κλεάρχου, αὐτοῦ), 25 (ἵππος), 26, 27, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

746. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive follows verbs signifying to *take hold of, touch, claim, aim at, hit, attain, miss, make trial of, begin*.

Examine the genitives in 7 (θορύβου), 12, 16, 28, 29, 31, 32, 33, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

747. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive follows verbs which signify an action of the *senses* or of the *mind*, particularly those meaning to *taste, hear, perceive, remember, forget, desire, care for, neglect.*

Examine the genitives in 11, 13, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

748. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive follows verbs signifying to *rule* and *lead.*

Examine the genitives in 17, 18, 30, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

749. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive follows verbs of *plenty* and *want.* Those signifying to *fill* take also the accusative of the thing filled.

750.

EXERCISE.

1. But *we* resolutely refrained on account of our¹ oaths (sworn in the name) of the gods. 2. And underneath there was a foundation of polished stone. 3. And upon this foundation a brick fort a hundred feet in height had been built. 4. So the great (part) of the Greek force was in this way persuaded. 5. Many of the beasts of burden perished of² hunger. 6. He marched on to the river, which was³ a plethrum in width. 7. The water did not touch the hay. 8. It is right to obtain this. 9. Nobody tasted food. 10. And he commanded Clearchus to lead the right wing. 11. Many of the barbarians had fled from the villages. 12. For the cities were the satrap's. 13. And nobody missed (his) man. 14. There is need of slingers and horsemen. 15. But some of the soldiers heard the man's voice, and opened the gate. 16. He began the debate as follows. 17. They were angry on account of the destruction of their fellow-soldiers.

¹ Use the art.² *ἐν* with the gen.³ Use the partic.

LESSON CIX.

Reading Lesson.

751.

ANABASIS I. ii. 13-20.

From the Plain of Caÿster, Cyrus marches south-east to Thymbrium, and thence to Tyriaeum, where he reviews his forces (13, 14). The Greeks draw themselves up in full array, and make a splendid appearance (15, 16). Halting his chariot in front of the Greek phalanx, he orders them to present arms and advance (17). Hereupon the barbarian troops are terrified, and the Cilician queen flees precipitately. Cyrus is pleased to see the terror with which the Greeks inspire the native troops (18). Thence he marches to Iconium, and thence through Lycaonia, which the Greeks plunder (19). Menon is sent to escort the queen into Cilicia; Cyrus himself proceeds to Dana (20).

II.

ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς δύο παρασάγ- 13
γᾶς δέκα εἰς Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα
ἦν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη ἣ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ
Φρυγῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ' ἣ λέγεται Μίδαῶς τὸν Σάτυ-
5 ρον θηρεῦσαι οἶνω κεράσᾳς αὐτήν. ἐντεῦθεν 14
ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς δύο παρασάγγᾳς δέκα εἰς
Τυριαῖον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέ-
ρᾳς τρεῖς. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἣ Κίλισσα Κύρου
ἐπιδεῖξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ· βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπι-
10 δεῖξαι ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλή-
νων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἑλλη- 15
νας ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ
στήναι, συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτά-

3. παρὰ τὴν ὁδόν: the acc. after *παρά* because of the idea of motion involved, the water, after it has left the fountain, flowing *along the road*. With *ἦν*, a verb of rest, we should expect the dat. — 4. τὸν Σάτυρον, the (well-known) *Satyr*, i.e. *Silenus*. — 5. οἶνω, *with wine* (p. 47⁵). — 12. ὡς . . . μάχην, *as their custom (was) for battle*. — 13. στήναι, *to take their*

- χθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων · εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν
 15 Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρχος
 καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί.
 ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους · 16
 οἱ δὲ παρήλαννον τεταγμένοι κατ' ἱλᾶς καὶ κατὰ
 τάξεις · εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας, παρελαύνων ἐφ'
 20 ἄρματος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἄρμαμάξης. εἶχον
 δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκᾶ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινικούς
 καὶ κνημίδας καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένᾳς.
 ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρήλασε, στήσᾳς τὸ ἄρμα 17
 πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης, πέμψᾳς Πίγρητα τὸν
 25 ἐρμηνέᾳ παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι
 ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα προεῖπον τοῖς
 στρατιώταις · καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβαλλόμενοι
 τὰ ὄπλα ἐπῆσαν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θάττον προϊόντων
 30 σὺν κραυγῇ, ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου δρόμος ἐγένετο
 τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ βαρ- 18
 βάρων φόβος πολὺς, καὶ ἡ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ
 τῆς ἄρμαμάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς καταλιπόντες

places (second aor.). — ἕκαστον: *sc.* στρατηγόν. — τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ, *his own men*. — 14. εἶχε: see p. 232ⁱ, and *cf.* 741, 4. — 17. πρῶτον μὲν: the correlative is εἶτα δέ in l. 19. — 18. κατ' ἱλᾶς καὶ κατὰ τάξεις, *by squadrons and by companies*, of cavalry and infantry respectively. — 19. τοὺς Ἑλλήνας: governed by ἐθεώρει in l. 17. — 21. πάντες: *i.e.* the Greeks. — 22. ἐκκεκαλυμμένᾳς, *uncovered*, a circumstantial partic. of manner (379). — 23. παρήλασε, *had driven by*. See note on ἐποίησε in 706, 7. — στήσᾳς: *first aor.*, and therefore trans. — 24. μέσης: *cf.* 741, 7, and note. — 29. θάττον προϊόντων: *sc.* αὐτῶν, *as they advanced more and more rapidly*. For the gen. absol., see note on 706, 33. — 31. ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς: as if threatening the barbarian troops with an attack. Below we are told the Greeks later dispersed to their tents with a roar of laughter (οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες . . . ἤλθον). — 33. οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἔφυγον: *i.e.* οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἔφυγον ἐκ τῆς

τὰ ὦνια ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες σὺν γέλῳτι ἐπὶ
 35 τὰς σκηνὰς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν
 λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύ-
 μασε. Κῦρος δὲ ἤσθη τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς
 τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδών. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει 19
 σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Ἰκόνιον,
 40 τῆς Φρυγίᾳς πόλιν ἐσχάτην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς
 ἡμέρας. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας
 σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα. ταύτην
 τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ὡς
 πολεμίαν οὔσαν. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς 20
 45 τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν· καὶ
 συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιωτὰς οὓς Μένων εἶχε
 καὶ αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει
 διὰ Καππαδοκίᾳς σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας
 εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε πρὸς Δάνα, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγά-
 50 λην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς·
 ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσῃν Μεγαφέρην,
 φοινίκιστὴν βασίλειον, καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρ-
 χων δυνάστην, αἰτιᾶσάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ.

ἀγορᾶς. Cf. 706, 23, and 727, 18, and notes. — 37. ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους: attributive prepositional phrases (p. 23¹). — 43. διαρπάσαι: cf. 524, I. 15 and 20. — ὡς πολεμίαν οὔσαν, on the ground that it was hostile. For ὡς with the causal partic. cf. 706, 33, and 722, 33, 41, 42, and notes. — 45. ὁδόν: adverbial acc. (734). — 47. αὐτόν: intensive (516). — 51. ἐν ᾧ: sc. χρόνῳ. — 52. καὶ ἕτερον . . . δυνάστην, and a certain other powerful man of his subordinates. — 53. ἐπιβουλεύειν: see 354. Cyrus's charge was ἐπιβουλεύουσιν ἐμοί.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (ἀπό, 30; διὰ, 41, 48; εἰς, 2, 6, 12, 37, 39, 44; ἐν, 10, 51; ἐξ, 29, 33, 37; ἐπί, 4, 14, 19, 20, 31, 32, 34; κατὰ, 18 (his); μετὰ, 47; παρά, 3, 25; πρό, 24; πρὸς, 49; σὺν, 15, 30, 34) according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CX.

Genitive Case (continued).

752.

EXERCISE.

1. οὗτος ἡμᾶς Βυζαντίου ἀποκλείσει. 2. τὰ δ' ἄρματα ἐφέρετο διὰ τῶν τάξεων κενὰ ἡνιόχων. 3. τούτου σε ζηλῶ. 4. ἡ δὲ ὄψις τῶν βαλάνων ἡλέκτρου οὐδὲν διέφερεν. 5. μακρότερον γὰρ οἱ Ῥόδιοι τῶν Περσῶν ἐσφεινδόνων. 6. οὕτω περιγένοιτο ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. 7. καὶ πολεμίου οὐδενὸς κατεγέλα. 8. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πότερον ὠνεῖσθαι κρεῖττον¹ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἢ² οὗτοι παρεῖχον, μῖκρά μέτρα³ πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου, ἢ αὐτοὺς⁴ λαμβάνειν; 9. διώξει γὰρ σε ἀσεβείας. 10. ἔμπειροι γὰρ ἦσαν τῆς χώρας. 11. καὶ ὁ σατράπης μάλα ταχέως ἔξω βελῶν ἀπεχώρει. 12. Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος. 13. κακῶς γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων⁵ πάντες οὗτοι οὓς ὀράτε βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων. 14. βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν. 15. τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων, τοξικῆς τε καὶ ἀκοντίσεως, φιλομαθέστατος ἦν. 16. ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ⁶ πάντων τῶν ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ ἐχόντων⁵ ἔδοξε γενέσθαι⁷ ἀνὴρ πολεμικός. 17. ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ λοχᾶγοὶ πλησίον ἀλλήλων. 18. καὶ χρόνον⁸ τινὰ ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας οἱ βάρβαροι. 19. διέσχον ἀλλήλων βασιλεὺς τε καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια. 20. οὐδὲν⁹ πλήθει γε ἡμῶν ἐλείφθησαν. 21. Ξενοφῶν βούλεται τιμωρήσασθαι αὐτοὺς τῆς ἐπιθέσεως. 22. ἔστε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας

¹ *Sc. ἐστίν.*² See 725.³ In apposition with τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.⁴ Intensive (516), to be taken with ἡμᾶς, the unexpressed subj. of λαμβάνειν.⁵ See p. 104⁸.⁶ ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ, as was agreed by.⁷ to have shown himself (354).⁸ See 735.⁹ See 734.

ἥς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω. 23. καὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς κώμας πολλὰς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων μεστᾶς. 24. τῶν καλλίστων ἑαυτὸν ἡξίωσε¹ Ξενοφῶν.

Examine the genitives in 4 (ἡλέκτρον), 18, 19, and observe that they express the idea of separation or distinction.

753. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive (as ablative) may denote that from which anything is *separated* or *distinguished*. On this principle the genitive follows verbs which signify to *remove, restrain, release, cease, fail, differ, yield*, and the like.

Examine the genitives in 6, 20, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

754. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive follows verbs signifying to *surpass* or *be inferior*.

Examine the genitives in 9, 21, observe that they express a crime, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

755. Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *judicial action* are followed by a genitive expressing the *crime*. Such are verbs signifying to *accuse, prosecute, convict, acquit, condemn*, and the like.

Examine the genitives in 3, 22 (ἡς), observe that they denote a cause, and note the signification of the verbs on which they depend.

756. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive often denotes a *cause*, especially with verbs expressing emotions. Such are verbs expressing *admiration, wonder, affection, hatred, pity, anger, envy, revenge*, and the like.

Examine the genitives in 1, 7, and observe that the verbs on which they depend are compound.

757. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive often depends on a preposition included in a compound verb.

Examine the genitives in 8 (ἀργυρίου), 24, and observe that they express price or value.

¹ *deemed himself worthy, valued himself at.*

758. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive may denote the *price* or *value* of a thing.

Examine the genitive in 14, and observe that it expresses the time within which.

759. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive may denote the *time within which* an action takes place.

Examine the genitives in 2 (ἡνιόχων), 10, 15, 22 (ἐλευθερίᾱς), 23, and note the signification of the adjectives with which they are connected.

760. Rule of Syntax.—The *objective* genitive follows many verbal adjectives. These adjectives are chiefly kindred, in meaning or derivation, to verbs which take the genitive, but some of them are kindred to verbs which take the accusative.

Examine the genitives in 11, 16 (αὐτοῦ), 17, and note the signification of the adverbs with which they are connected.

761. Rule of Syntax.—The genitive follows adverbs derived from adjectives which take the genitive, and many adverbs of place.

Examine the substantives and circumstantial participles in the genitive in 12, 13 (τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων), and observe that they are not grammatically connected with the construction of the sentence in which they occur.

762. Rule of Syntax.—A substantive and a circumstantial participle, not grammatically connected with the main construction of the sentence, may stand by themselves in the genitive. This is called the *genitive absolute*.

Examine the genitives in 5, 13 (τῶν ὄντων), and observe that they follow comparatives.

763. Rule of Syntax.—Adjectives and adverbs of the comparative degree are followed by the genitive when ἤ, *than*, is omitted.

The genitive is used also with prepositions (93, 96, 97).

764.

EXERCISE.

1. The soldier was convicted of treason. 2. He admired the citizens for their virtue. 3. You laughed at me. 4. For these are still more cowardly than those who have been defeated¹ by us. 5. And they overcame the light-armed soldiers. 6. But the Greeks were about² eight stadia distant from the ravine. 7. He sold the horse for fifty darics. 8. And the plain abounded in trees of every sort, and in vines. 9. For these rivers are impassable at a distance from their sources. 10. This took place while the Greeks were going away.³ 11. For this general was at the head of the mercenary (force) in the cities. 12. The horse was sacred to the Sun. 13. But all this (is) hard (to do) by night and when there is an uproar.³

LESSON CXI.

Reading Lesson.

765.

ANABASIS I. ii. 21-27.

Leaving Dana, Cyrus defers for a day the attempt to cross the mountains into Cilicia, because he hears that Syennesis is guarding the pass. The next day Syennesis is reported to have withdrawn on hearing that Menon is already in Cilicia, and that triremes are on the way from Ionia (21). Cyrus makes the passage, and descends into a great fertile plain (22). Thence he proceeds to Tarsi, the capital of Cilicia, through which flows the river Cydnus (23). He finds the town abandoned by the king and most of the inhabitants (24). Menon reached Tarsi five days before the arrival of Cyrus, having lost two companies in the passage of the mountains (25), and his soldiers plundered the town, because of the loss of their comrades. Cyrus, on his arrival, summons Syennesis, who is finally persuaded by his wife to obey (26). Cyrus and the king seal their compact of friendship with gifts (27).

¹ See 371.² ὅσον.³ Cf. 752, 12 above.

II.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν · 21
 ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἀμαξιτὸς ὀρθίᾳ ἰσχυρῶς
 καὶ ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώ-
 λυν. ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ Συέννεσις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν
 5 ἄκρων φυλάττων τὴν εἰσβολήν · διὸ ἔμειναν ἡμέ-
 ραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἦκεν ἄγγελος
 λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἶη Συέννεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ
 ᾗσθητο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στράτευμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ
 ἦν εἴσω τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ ὅτι τριήρεις ἤκουε περι-
 10 πλεούσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίᾱς εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμῶν ἔχοντα
 τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. Κῦρος δ' 22
 οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε
 τὰς σκηναὺς οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ
 κατέβαιναν εἰς πεδῖον μέγα καὶ καλόν, ἐπίρρνον,
 15 καὶ δένδρων παντοδαπῶν σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμπέλων ·
 πολὺ δὲ καὶ σήσαμον καὶ μελίνην καὶ κέγχρον καὶ
 πῦρον καὶ κριθὰς φέρει. ὅρος δ' αὐτὸ περιέχει
 ὄχυρόν καὶ ὑψηλὸν πάντα ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατ-
 ταν. καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε 23

3. ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, *impracticable for an army* (p. 25⁴) *to enter* (p. 219¹). — 5. φυλάττων τὴν εἰσβολήν: not with the intention of real opposition, but to give colour to his asserted allégiance to the king. — 7. λελοιπῶς . . . τὰ ἄκρα, *had abandoned the heights*. — ἐπεὶ, *since*. — 9. ὅτι, *because*. The order is, ὅτι ἤκουε Ταμῶν ἔχοντα (p. 250⁵) *τριήρεις περιπλεούσας* (369), *because he heard Tamos was in command of the triremes that were sailing round, etc.* — 11. τὰς . . . Κύρου: with *τριήρεις* (719). — 12. οὖν, *at any rate, i.e. for whatever reason Syennesis left the heights*. Cf. 741, 48. — 13. τὰς σκηναὺς, *the camp*, antecedent to the relative adv. οὗ. — ἐφύλαττον, *had been on guard*. Cf. ἦσαν in 706, 35, and ἐτύγχανεν in 722, 17, and notes. — 16. πολὺ: in agreement with σήσαμον, the nearest subst., but to be understood with the others that follow. — 17. φέρει: not the historical pres., but the pres. to denote the fact that was true at the

- 20 σταθμούς τέτταρας παρασάγγας πέντε καὶ εἴκο-
 σιν εἰς Ταρσούς, τῆς Κιλικιάς πόλιν μεγάλην
 καὶ εὐδαίμονα, ἔνθα ἦν τὰ Σευενέσιος βασι-
 λεια τοῦ Κιλικίων βασιλέως· διὰ μέσου δὲ τῆς
 πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμὸς Κύδνος ὄνομα, εὖρος δύο πλέ-
 25 θρων. ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἐνοικούντες 24
 μετὰ Σευενέσιος εἰς χωρίον ὀχυρὸν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη
 πλὴν οἱ τὰ καπηλεῖα ἔχοντες· ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ
 παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκούντες ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν
 Ἰσοῖς. Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Σευενέσιος γυνὴ προτέρᾳ 25
 30 Κύρου πέντε ἡμέραις εἰς Ταρσούς ἀφίκετο· ἐν δὲ
 τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τῶν ὁρέων τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδῖον δύο
 λόχοι τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος ἀπώλοντο· οἱ
 μὲν ἔφασαν ἀρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν
 Κιλικίων, οἱ δὲ ὑπολειφθέντας καὶ οὐ δυναμένους
 35 εὐρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς εἶτα
 πλανωμένους ἀπολέσθαι· ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι ἑκα-
 τὸν ὀπλίται. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἤκον, τὴν τε πόλιν 26
 τοὺς Ταρσούς διήρπασαν, διὰ τὸν ὀλεθρον τῶν
 συστρατιωτῶν ὀργιζόμενοι, καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τὰ ἐν
 40 αὐτῇ. Κύρος δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν,

time when the historian wrote. So ἀθροίζονται in 706, 8. — 23. μέσου: see 718. — τῆς πόλεως: see 743, 6. — 24. πλέθρων: limits ποταμός (743, 5). — 25. ταύτην: cf. 727, 27, and note. — οἱ ἐνοικούντες: see 718. Cf. οἱ ἔχοντες and οἱ οἰκούντες in l. 27 f. — 27. πλὴν . . . ἔχοντες: sc. οὐκ ἐξέλιπον. — 29. προτέρᾳ . . . ἀφίκετο, reached Tarsi five days (p. 171^b) before (cf. ἐκοῦσαι in 722, 28, and note) Cyrus (763). — 31. τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδῖον: see 719. — 32. οἱ μὲν . . . κατακοπῆναι, some said that they (i.e. the lost soldiers of Menon) had been cut to pieces (354) while committing some act of plunder (732). — 35. εἶτα, then, taking up the two preceding participles, which qualify the unexpressed subj. of ἀπολέσθαι. ἀπολέσθαι is in parallel const. το κατακοπῆναι. — 36. οὖν: cf. l. 12. — 37. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι: i.e. of Menon's force.

μετεπέμπετο τὸν Σύννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὁ δ' οὔτε
 πρότερον οὐδενί πω κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ εἰς χεῖρας
 ἐλθεῖν ἔφη οὔτε τότε Κύρῳ ἵνα ἤθελε, πρὶν ἢ
 γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ πίστει εἴλαβε. μετὰ δὲ 27
 45 ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Σύννεσις μὲν
 ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν,
 Κῦρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ
 τίμια, ἵππον χρῦσοχάλινον καὶ στρεπτὸν χρῦσοῦν
 καὶ ψέλια καὶ ἀκῶάκην χρῦσοῦν καὶ στολὴν Περ-
 50 σικήν, καὶ τὴν χώρην μηκέτι διαρπάζεσθαι· τὰ
 δὲ ἡρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἣν πού ἐντυγχάνωσιν,
 ἀπολαμβάνειν.

— 42. οὐδενί: with εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν, *come into close relations* (p. 83¹⁰). For the neg., see p. 202². — 43. ἐλθεῖν: Syennesis said ἦλθον (354). — ἵνα: sc. εἰς χεῖρας. — 47. Κῦρος δέ: sc. ἔδωκε. — 50. διαρπάζεσθαι, ἀπολαμβάνειν: like δῶρα in l. 47, the objects of ἔδωκε to be supplied. — 51. ἣν πού ἐντυγχάνωσιν, *if they* (Syennesis and the Cilicians) *should fall in with them anywhere*.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (ἀπό, 10; διὰ, 19, 23, 38; εἰς, 1, 10, 14, 18, 21, 26, 30, 31, 40, 42, 46; ἐν, 6, 8, 28 (*vis*), 30, 39; ἐξ, 18; ἐπὶ, 4, 12, 26; μετὰ, 26, 44; παρὰ, 28, 47; πρὸς, 41; ὑπό, 33), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXII.

The Dative Case.

766.

EXERCISE.

1. ἐσήμνη¹ τοῖς Ἑλλήσι τῇ σάλπιγγι. 2. τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ταῦτα ἐδόκει ὠφέλιμα εἶναι. 3. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον² ἐπορεύετο. 4. ὄνομα δὲ ἦν τῇ πόλει Μέσπιλα. 5. πάντες γὰρ ποταμοὶ προΐουσι³ πρὸς τὰς

¹ Sc. ὁ σαλπικτής.

³ in case of those going up-stream

² A participle of manner (379). (sc. τισί).

πηγὰς διαβατοὶ γίνονται. 6. ὑποχείριοι δὲ μηδέποτε γενώ-
 μεθα ζῶντες τοῖς πολεμίοις. 7. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἀγρίων ὄνων
 ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις. 8. οὐ γὰρ κραυγῇ, ἀλλὰ
 σιγῇ, προσῆσαν. 9. εὐθύς ἔννοια αὐτῷ ἐμπίπτει, Τί κατά-
 κειμαι; 10. γέφυρα δὲ ἐπὶν ἐξευγμένη πλοίοις. 11. τῇ δὲ
 αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἦλθεν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν τοῦ ποταμοῦ. 12. ὅσῳ
 ἂν θᾶττον ἔλθω,¹ τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχοῦ-
 μαι. 13. τούτοις ἦσθη Κῦρος. 14. οἱ γὰρ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς δέδεν-
 ται. 15. πάντῃ γὰρ πάντα τοῖς θεοῖς ὑποχα. 16. ἀναγνοὺς
 τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνακινουῦνται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς
 πορείας. 17. πρᾶγματα παρῆχεν οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ τῇ ἐμῇ χώρᾳ.
 18. καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου περιέπεσεν αὐτῷ. 19. τί
 καλὸν ἐπέπράκτο ὑμῖν; 20. εἰν ἴωσι, μισθοφορὰ ἔσται τοῖς
 στρατιώταις. 21. τῷ σατράπῃ τοῦ μισθοῦ ἔνεκα ὑπηρετοῦ-
 μεν. 22. παρεκελεύετο τοῖς Ἑλλησι πορεύεσθαι. 23. ἐμοὶ
 γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος ἐγένετο. 24. ἐμοὶ μῦρίους ἔδωκε δᾶρεικούς.
 25. ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐκ ἐθέλετε πείθεσθαι. 26. ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέ-
 πεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ. 27. τοῖς νεανί-
 σκοις ἐνέχεαν οἶνον. 28. καὶ τὸν βοηθήσαντα πολλοῖς
 μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν. 29. αὐτῷ οἱ καλοὶ τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ
 εὖνοι ἦσαν. 30. ὑμῖν ἐμποδὼν εἰμι; 31. Κῦρος οὐκέτι
 ἡμῖν μισθοδότης ἐστίν. 32. ἔτυχε γὰρ τάξις αὐτῷ ἐπομένη
 τῶν ὀπλιτῶν. 33. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ
 ἡμέρᾳ ἤκουσιν αὐτόμολοι. 34. καὶ συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς
 στρατιώτας. 35. ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἀμαξιτὸς ἀμήχανος
 εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι.

Examine the datives in 17, 24, 26, and observe that they are the indirect objects of transitive verbs.

767. Rule of Syntax. — The indirect object of the action of a transitive verb is put in the dative. This object is generally introduced in English by *to*.

¹ The subjv. here used after the relative with εἰν is of the same nature as the subjv. after εἰάν, expressing future condition (273).

Examine the datives in 1 (Ἑλλῆσι), 2, 21, 22, 25, and observe that they are the indirect objects of intransitive verbs.

768. Rule of Syntax. — Many intransitive verbs take a dative of the indirect object. Some of these verbs are transitive in English.

a. The verbs of this class which are transitive in English are chiefly those signifying to *benefit, serve, obey, defend, assist, please, trust, satisfy, advise, exhort*, or any of their opposites; also those expressing *friendliness, hostility, blame, abuse, reproach, envy, anger, threats*.

Examine the datives in 3, 14, 27, 35, and observe that they denote the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage something is or is done.

769. Rule of Syntax. — The person or thing for whose *advantage* or *disadvantage* anything is or is done is put in the dative. This dative is generally introduced in English by *for*.

Examine the datives in 4, 20, 23, and observe that they follow a copulative verb and denote the possessor.

770. Rule of Syntax. — The dative with εἰμί, γίγνομαι, and similar verbs may denote the *possessor*.

Examine the datives in 5, 28, and note their relation to the rest of the sentence.

771. Rule of Syntax. — The dative may denote the person in whose *view* or in *relation* to whom something is true.

Examine the datives in 6, 15, 29, 30, 31, and note the words with which they are connected.

772. Rule of Syntax. — The dative follows many adjectives and adverbs and some verbal substantives of kindred meaning with the verbs which take the dative of the indirect object or of advantage or disadvantage.

Examine the datives in 7, 12 (βασιλεῖ), 16, 32, 33, and note the signification of the words with which they are immediately connected.

773. Rule of Syntax. — The dative is used with words implying *likeness* or *unlikeness* and *association* or *opposition*. These include verbs, adjectives, and adverbs.

Examine the datives in 9, 18, 34, and observe that the verbs on which they depend are compound.

774. Rule of Syntax. — The dative often follows compound verbs. Such are especially compounds with *ἐν*, *σύν*, and *ἐπί*, and less frequently compounds with *πρός*, *παρά*, *περί*, and *ὑπό*.

Examine the datives in 1 (*σάλπιγγι*), 8, 10, 13, and note the ideas which they express.

775. Rule of Syntax. — The dative is used to denote *cause*, *manner*, and *means* or *instrument*.

Examine the datives in 12 (*ὄσω, τοσούτῳ*), and observe that they are connected with comparatives and denote the degree of difference.

776. Rule of Syntax. — The dative of *manner* is used with comparatives to denote the *degree of difference*.

Examine the dative in 19.

Review 224.

Examine the dative in 11, and observe that it denotes time.

777. Rule of Syntax. — The dative without a preposition often denotes the *time when* an action takes place.

The dative is used also with prepositions (94, 97).

778.

EXERCISE.

1. They shouted to one another not¹ to run. 2. But the soldiers were angry with their generals. 3. And many of the arms of the soldiers² were being carried on wagons. 4. And on the third day he called an assembly. 5. There Cyrus had a palace. 6. It is safer for them to flee than for us. 7. *I*, fellow-Greeks, was both faithful to Cyrus, and (am) now well-disposed to you. 8. He kept warring with the satrap. 9. They feared that the enemy might attack them. 10. He hurls his axe³ at him. 11. This wine is much sweeter. 12. But on the fourth day they descend into the plain. 13. For he did not envy those who were rich. 14. Shall we trust this guide? 15. The arrows were useful to them.

¹ See note on 722, 36.

² See 769.

³ *hurls with his axe.*

LESSON CXIII.

Reading Lesson.

779.

ANABASIS I. iii. 1-7.

A delay of twenty days at Tarsi is caused by the Greeks, who refuse to go farther. Clearchus attempts to force his own troops forward (1), and narrowly escapes being stoned to death. Then he calls them together, and addresses them as follows (2). "You must not forget what a friend Cyrus has been to me. And remember that the money which he gave me I spent on you (3). When our war in Thrace was ended, like loyal men we obeyed his summons (4). But you refuse to advance farther, and I must choose between you and him. Right or wrong, then, I cast in my lot with you (5). I will not abandon my comrades in arms, nor can I doubt that my interests are identical with yours (6)." Hereupon more than 2000 men leave Xenias and Pasion, and take up their quarters with Clearchus (7).

III.

ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας 1
εἴκοσιν· οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ
πρόσω· ὑπώπτενον γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλέᾳ ἰέναι·
μισθωθῆναι δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν. πρῶτος δὲ
κλέαρχος τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιωτᾶς ἐβιάζετο ἰέναι·
οἱ δὲ αὐτόν τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκεί-
νου, ἐπεὶ ἤρξατο προῖέναι. Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν 2
μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, ὕστερον δ'

1. ἔμεινε: cf. ἦν in 727, 26, and see p. 232⁷. — 2. οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, said they would not go (354). The neg. is regularly attached to φημί as the leading verb where we attach it to the dependent verb. — τοῦ πρόσω, forward, a gen. of place, τὸ πρόσω being used as a subst. This use of the gen. is poetic. — 3. ἰέναι, that they were going (354). — 4. πρῶτος: predicate adj. He was the first to do it; πρῶτον, adv., would mean, he did this first and something else afterwards. — 5. ἐβιάζετο, tried to force. The impf. sometimes denotes attempted action. — 6. μικρὸν, by a little, narrowly (734). — ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, escaped being stoned to death. When verbs

ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν
 10 ἐκκλησίαν τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν. καὶ πρῶτον
 μὲν ἐδάκρυε πολλὸν χρόνον ἐστῶς· οἱ δὲ ὀρώντες
 ἐθαύμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιάδε.
 Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς 3
 φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος
 15 Κῦρος ἐγένετο καὶ με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά
 τε ἄλλα ἐτίμησε καὶ μῦρίους ἔδωκε δᾶρεικούς·
 οὓς ἐγὼ λαβὼν οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατεθέμην ἐμοὶ
 ἀλλ' οὐδὲ κατηδυνάθησα, ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς ἔδαπάνων.
 καὶ πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾶκας ἐπολέμησα, 4
 20 καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐτίμωρούμην μεθ' ὑμῶν, ἐκ
 τῆς Χερρονήσου αὐτοὺς ἐξελαύνων βουλομένους
 ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐνοικούντας Ἑλλήνας τὴν γῆν.
 ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμην,
 ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοῖν αὐτὸν ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον
 25 ὑπ' ἐκείνου. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε συμπο-
 ρεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι ἢ ὑμᾶς προδόντα τῇ
 Κύρου φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι ἢ πρὸς ἐκείνον ψευσάμενον

which contain a *negative* idea (here ἐξέφυγε, *escaped* = *did not suffer*) are followed by the infin., the negative μή may be added to strengthen the negation. Such a neg. cannot be translated in English. — 9. ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται, *that he would not be able, i.e. could not*. — 10. πρῶτον μὲν: see 751, 17, and note. — ἐδάκρυε . . . ἐστῶς, *stood* (659) *and wept a long time* (735). — 14. πράγμασιν: dat. of cause (775). — 15. τὰ ἄλλα, *in other respects* (733). — 18. οὐδε, *not even*. — 20. ἐτίμωρούμην: sc. αὐτούς, *i.e. the Thracians*. — 22. Ἑλλήνας, γῆν: see 737. — 24. εἴ τι δέοιτο, *in case he should have any* (732) *need (of me)*. — ἀνθ' ὧν . . . ἐκείνου, *in return for the benefits I had received from him, i.e. ἀντὶ τούτων ἃ* (725), *etc.* — 25. ὑπ' ἐκείνου: εὖ πείσχω, *be well treated*, is practically a pass., and is often followed by ὑπό and the gen. of the agent (223). — ὑμεῖς: see 514, and cf. ll. 17, 30, 33, 34, 40. — 26. ἀνάγκη: sc. ἐστί. — προδόντα: in agreement with μέ, the unexpressed subj. of χρῆσθαι. — 27. φιλίᾳ: see p. 83⁴. This is the *instrumental* dat.

μεθ' ὑμῶν εἶναι. εἰ μὲν δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ
οἶδα, αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὃ τι
30 ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. καὶ οὐποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ
Ἕλληνας ἀγαγὼν εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς
τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλιᾶν εἰλόμην,
ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐκ ἐθέετε πείθεσθαι οὐδὲ ὅ
ἐπεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἔψομαι καὶ ὃ τι ἂν δέῃ πεί-
35 σομαι. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα
καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμαχούς, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν
οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἂν ᾧ, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὦν
οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὐτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι
οὐτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. ὡς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος
40 ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς, οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε. ταῦτα ἦ
εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἱ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου καὶ
οἱ ἄλλοι ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ἐπήνεσαν· παρὰ δὲ
Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι λαβόντες
45 τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο
παρὰ Κλέαρχον.

(775), *χράσθαι* meaning *use* in the sense of *serve oneself*. — 28. *εἰ*, *whether*. — 29. *ὃ τι ἂν δέῃ*, *whatever I must* (sc. *πάσχειν*). — 36. *ἂν εἶναι*: by quotation (354) for *ἂν εἶην*. The protasis is implied in *σὺν ὑμῖν* (p. 104¹⁰), i.e. *if I should follow with you*. — 37. *ὅπου ἂν ᾧ*, *wherever I may be*. — *ὑμῶν*: with *ἔρημος* (760). — 38. *ἂν εἶναι*: representing *ἂν εἶην*, as above in l. 36. The prot. is here contained in *ὦν* = *εἰ εἶην* (p. 104¹⁰). — *οὐτ' ἂν . . . οὐτ' ἂν*: the *ἂν* here does not belong to the following infinitives, but repeats the *ἂν* with *εἶναι*. — *ὠφελῆσαι*, *ἀλέξασθαι*: with *ἱκανός* (p. 219¹). — 39. *ὡς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος*, *since, therefore, I shall (as I say, ὡς) go, etc.* The gen. absolute (762) is causal. For *ὡς*, see 706, 33, and note. — 40. *ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς*, *wherever you too may go* (sc. *ἵητε*). — 41. *οἱ*: see 186 c.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (*ἀντί*, 24; *εἰς*, 17, 18, 31; *ἐξ*, 15, 20; *ἐπί*, 3, 4; *μετά*, 20, 28; *παρά*, 43, 46; *πρός*, 19, 27; *ὑπέρ*, 20; *ὑπό*, 25; *σύν*, 29, 34, 36), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXIV.

Voices. — Tenses. — Causal Sentences. — Imperative and Subjunctive in Commands, Exhortations, and Prohibitions.

780.

EXERCISE.

1. ἡμεῖς Κύρου οὐκέτι στρατιώται ἐσμεν, ἐπεὶ γε οὐ συνε-
 πόμεθα αὐτῷ. 2. ἀλλὰ καλῶς γε ἀποθνήσκωμεν, ὑποχείριοι
 δὲ μηδέποτε γενώμεθα ζῶντες τοῖς πολεμίοις. 3. εἰ δὲ μὴ
 σοὶ τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς συγκαλεῖν δοκεῖ, λέγε καὶ δίδασκε.
 4. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐκ ἐθέλετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν
 ἔψομαι. 5. παρῶμεν οὖν ὥσπερ Κύρος κελεύει. 6. χαλεπά
 ἐστι τὰ παρόντα, ὅποτε στρατηγῶν τοιούτων στερόμεθα.
 7. καὶ μηδεὶς ὑπολάβῃ με βούλεσθαι λαθεῖν. 8. ὑμεῖς, ὦ
 ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε. 9. στρατηγούς
 ἐλώμεθα ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος
 ἀπάγειν. 10. μηδεὶς οἰέσθω με τοῦτο λέγειν. 11. ἄνδρες
 στρατιώται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω τοῖς παρούσι
 πράγμασιν. 12. ἀκούσατε τοὺς λόγους μου. 13. μὴ μοι
 ἀντιλέξης. 14. μὴ πολεμεῖτε ἄδικον πόλεμον. 15. κολα-
 σθέντων δὲ νῦν ἀξίως τῆς ἀδικίᾱς. 16. εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἀθυ-
 μεῖ ὅτι ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶν ἵππεῖς τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις πολλοὶ
 πάρεσιν, ἐνθυμήθητε ὅτι οἱ μύριοι ἵππεῖς οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μύριοί
 εἰσιν ἄνθρωποι. 17. ὅτῳ¹ οὖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν,
 ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. 18. συναλλα-
 γαίς, ὦ Ἀρίστιππε, πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀπόπεμψον πρὸς ἐμὲ ὃ
 ἔχεις στράτευμα. 19. ἔλειψε Σύνεννεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ὅτι τριή-
 ρεις ἤκουε περιπλεουσᾱς ἀπ' Ἰωνίᾱς εἰς Κιλικίᾱν Ταμῶν
 ἔχοντα τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. 20. ἐπεὶ δὲ
 ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι ἢ τῇ Κύρου

¹ See 567.

φιλία χρήσθαι ἢ μεθ' ὑμῶν εἶναι. 21. ἐπώμεθα καὶ μὴ κακίους ὤμεν τῶν πρόσθεν Κύρῳ συναναβάντων. 22. καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφυραν πέμψατε φυλακὴν, ὥς διανοεῖται αὐτὴν λῦσαι Τισσαφέρνῃς τῆς νυκτός. 23. καὶ τὸ νικᾶν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιοῦντα Κύρον¹ οὐδὲν² θαυμαστὸν ἦν, ἐπειδὴ γε καὶ δυνατώτερος ἦν. 24. ταῖς ναυσὶ πολιορκεῖ Μίλητον, ὅτε Τισσαφέρνῃς φίλη ἐστίν.

Review 58, 196, 197, 198, 221, 222, 223, 224, 60, 61, 64, 73, 100, 101, 116, 117, 203.

Examine 1, 4, 6, 11, 16, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, and observe that each contains a clause which expresses a cause. Note the particle that introduces this clause, the mode of its principal verb, the tense of the preceding verb, and the negative that occurs, if the clause is negative.

781. Rule of Syntax. — Causal sentences express a *cause*, and are introduced by *ὅτι*, *ὥς*, *ἐπεὶ*, *ἐπειδὴ*, *ὅτε*, and *ὁπότε*, *because* or *since*. They have the indicative after both primary and secondary tenses. The negative particle is *οὐ*.

Review 265, 266, 267, 321.

Examine the imperatives in 3, 8, 12, 15, 16, 17, 18, 22, and note their force.

Review 325.

Examine the subjunctives in 2, 5, 9, 21, and note their force, their person and number, and their negative, if a negative occurs.

Review 271.

Examine the imperatives and subjunctives in 7, 10, 11, 13, 14, and note their force, and their tense and negative.

Review 327.

782.

EXERCISE.

1. Do not abandon us. 2. Tell us this first. 3. But he is angry because Proxenus speaks of his³ ill-treatment lightly. 4. Let us see this horse. 5. Let him come. 6. Do not be

¹ Subj. of νικᾶν.

² See 734.

³ 528.

dispirited on this account. 7. Let us conquer those who have been drawn up before the king. 8. But now, since the struggle is for¹ deliverance, be much braver. 9. Do not lie. 10. Open the door. 11. Do not despise yourself. 12. Provide yourself with arms. 13. Let us write a letter to the king. 14. Let us go up on the mountain. 15. Fear the gods and honour your parents.² 16. Let the general be honoured by his fellow-citizens.

¹ περί, with gen.

² See p. 27⁵.

LESSON CXV.

Reading Lesson.

783.

ANABASIS I. iii. 8-14.

Cyrus sends for Clearchus, who refuses to obey his summons, but secretly sends him an encouraging message (8). Clearchus again assembles his men, and speaks as follows. "We have broken with Cyrus, and must look elsewhere for our pay (9). Naturally, he is indignant with us (10), and we must take good counsel. The crisis is grave, and, whether we stay here or leave, we must be watchful of our interests (11). Cyrus is a good friend to his friends, but he can be a bitter enemy, and he possesses very great resources. I, therefore, ask you to express your views freely (12)." Different speakers come forward, some of whom, at the instigation of Clearchus, show how hard it will be to get away (13). One in particular, who seems urgent, proposes a plan for their return which is obviously impracticable and full of danger (14).

III.

Κῦρος δὲ τούτοις ἀπορῶν τε καὶ λυπούμενος ὁ μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλέαρχον· ὁ δὲ ἰέναι μὲν οὐκ ᾔθελε, λάθρα δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν πέμπων αὐτῷ ἄγγελον ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν ὡς καταστησομένων τούτων

1. τούτοις: neut. (775).—4. ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν, bade him not to be discouraged (355). ἔλεγε is here equivalent to ἐκέλευε.—ὡς . . . δέον, since

5 εἰς τὸ δέον· μεταπέμπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευεν αὐτόν·
 αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἰέναι. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν 9
 τοὺς θ' αὐτοῦ στρατιώτᾱς καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας
 αὐτῷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.
 * Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου δῆλον ὅτι
 10 οὕτως ἔχει πρὸς ἡμᾱς ὥσπερ τὰ ἡμέτερα πρὸς
 ἐκείνον· οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἔτι στρατιῶται,
 ἐπεὶ γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκείνος ἔτι ἡμῖν
 μισθοδότης. ὅτι μέντοι ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζει ὑφ' 10
 ἡμῶν οἶδα· ὥστε καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ οὐκ
 15 ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, τὸ μὲν μέγιστον αἰσχυρόμενος ὅτι
 σύνοιδα ἑμαυτῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, ἔπειτα
 καὶ δεδιὼς μὴ λαβὼν με δίκην ἐπιθῇ ὧν νομίζει
 ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἡδικῆσθαι. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρᾱ εἶναι 11
 ἡμῖν καθεύδειν οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ

this matter would be settled in the right way (718). For the gen. absolute with *ὥς*, expressing cause, see 706, 33, and note. *ὥς* shows that the reason is that assigned by Clearchus. — 5. *μεταπέμπεσθαι*, to keep sending for him. — 6. *αὐτὸς . . . ἰέναι*: but for himself he said he would not go. *αὐτός* limits the unexpressed (350) subj. of *ἰέναι*, but takes the case of the subj. of the leading verb. The thought is, "You keep sending for me, but still I'll not go." — 7. *θ'*: i.e. *τέ*, by elision (21) and by the change of the smooth mute to the rough before the following rough breathing. — 8. *αὐτῷ*: see 774. — 9. *τὰ . . . Κύρου*: cf. 614, I. 14. — *δῆλον*: sc. *ἐστίν*. — 10. *οὕτως . . . ἐκείνον*: his relations to us are in just (*πέρ* in *ὥσπερ*) the same position as ours to him. — 11. *ἡμεῖς*: sc. *ἐσμέν*. — 13. *μέντοι*, however. — 14. *καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ*, although he keeps sending for me. Note the force of *καὶ* with the concessive partic. (379) used in the gen. absolute (762). — 15. *τὸ μὲν μέγιστον*, chiefly (734). The correlative is *ἔπειτα καί*. — 16. *σύνοιδα . . . αὐτόν*, I am conscious (for *ἑμαυτῷ*, see 774) that I have deceived (p. 250⁵) him in everything. — 17. *δεδιὼς μὴ ἐπιθῇ*: see 280. — *ὧν . . . ἡδικῆσθαι*, for that (sc. *τούτων*, 569), in which (*ὧν* for *ᾧ*, 725) he thinks he has been wronged by me. *ᾧ* is a cognate acc. (cf. 485, I. 13, and 732). — 19. *καθεύδειν, ἀμελεῖν, βουλεύεσθαι*: dependent on *ὥρᾱ* (p. 219¹). —

20 βουλευέσθαι ὃ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. καὶ ἕως
 τε μένομεν αὐτοῦ σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως
 ἀσφαλέστατα μενούμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι,
 ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
 ἔξομεν· ἄνευ γὰρ τούτων οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε
 25 ιδιώτου ὄφελος οὐδέν. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος 12
 φίλος ᾧ ἂν φίλος ᾗ, χαλεπώτατος δ' ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν
 πολέμιος ᾗ, ἔχει δὲ δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἱππικὴν
 καὶ ναυτικὴν ἣν πάντες ὁμοίως ὀρώμεν τε καὶ ἐπι-
 στάμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πόρρω δοκοῦμέν μοι αὐτοῦ
 30 καθῆσθαι. ὥστε ὥρᾳ λέγειν ὃ τι τις γινώσκει
 ἄριστον εἶναι. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. ἐκ δὲ τού- 13
 του ἀνίσταντο οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέγοντες
 ἃ ἐγίγνωσκον, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγκέλευστοι,
 ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἴη ἡ ἀπορίᾳ ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου
 35 γνώμης καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι. εἰς δὲ δὴ εἶπε 14
 προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν ὡς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι
 εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατηγούς μὲν ἐλέσθαι ἄλλους
 ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν·
 τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' ἀγοράζεσθαι (ἢ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν ἐν
 40 τῷ βαρβαρικῷ στρατεύματι) καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι·

20. *ἕως*, as long as, while. — 21. αὐτοῦ: adverb. — σκεπτέον εἶναι: cf. 585, I. 3. — 22. *ἤδη*, at once. — 26. ᾧ ἂν φίλος ᾗ, to whomsoever he is a friend. — 28. ὁμοίως: with πάντες, all alike. — 29. αὐτοῦ: with πόρρω (761), at a distance from him. — 30. ὥρᾳ λέγειν: sc. ἐστί, and see note on l. 19. — 32. λέγοντες: the fut. partic. expresses purpose (379), to say. — 33. ἐκείνου: i.e. Clearchus. — 34. οἷα . . . ἀπορίᾳ, what the difficulty was. Cf. 571 a. — 35. εἰς δὲ δὴ εἶπε, but one in particular proposed. Seven infinitives follow, containing the man's successive recommendations, dependent on εἶπε, the first of which is ἐλέσθαι. — 38. εἰ μὴ βούλεται, if Clearchus was not willing. — μὴ: the regular negative in all conditions. — 39. ἢ δ' ἀγορὰ . . . στρατεύματι: this parenthetical statement of the historian shows the

ἐλθόντας δὲ Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν ·
 εἰ δὲ μὴ διδῶ ταῦτα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κῦρον ὅστις
 διὰ φιλιᾶς τῆς χώρᾳς ἀπάξει · εἰ δὲ μηδὲ ἡγε-
 μόνα διδῶ, συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, πέμψαι δὲ
 45 καὶ προκαταληψομένους τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθά-
 σωσι μήτε Κῦρος μήτε οἱ Κίλικες καταλαβόντες,
 ὧν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἔχομεν ἀνηρπα-
 κότες. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε · μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον
 Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον.

absurdity of the proposal. — 41. **ἐλθόντας**: limits the unexpressed subj. of **αἰτεῖν**. The subj. of each of the infinitives dependent on **εἶπε** is an unexpressed pronoun referring to the Greeks. — 42. **εἰ μὴ διδῶ ταῦτα**, *if he would not give them*. — **ὅστις ἀπάξει**, *who would lead them, i.e. to lead them*. — 43. **φιλιᾶς**: predicate adj. (*sc. οὐσης*), *that was friendly*. — 44. **τὴν ταχίστην**: *sc. ὁδον*, an adverbial acc. (734). — 45. **προκαταληψομένους**: *sc. ἄνδρας*. The partic. expresses purpose (379). — **ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι**, *that they might not get the start*. — 46. **καταλαβόντες**: for the partic. with **φθάνω**, cf. 648, I. 9. — 47. **ὧν . . . ἀνηρπακότες**: these words are in the exact form in which they were originally spoken, *many of whom and much of whose property we have plundered and now have*. — **ἔχομεν ἀνηρπακότες**: equivalent to *ἀνηρπάκομεν καὶ ἔχομεν*.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (**διὰ**, 43; **εἰς**, 5, 37; **ἐν**, 39; **ἐξ**, 20, 31, 32; **μετά**, 6, 48; **πρός**, 10 (*bis*); **ὑπό**, 13, 18, 33), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXVI.

Interrogative Subjunctive. — Subjunctive and Future Indicative with **οὐ μὴ**. — Verbals. — Optative in the Expression of a Wish.

784.

EXERCISE.

1. **σκεπτέον ἐστὶν**¹ ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν. 2. **μὴ τοῦτο ποιῶμεν**; ² 3. **βούλει οὖν τοῦτο ἐπισκοπῶμεν**; ³

¹ See 584.

² *Shall we not do this?*

³ *Do you wish, then, that we should consider this?*

4. οὐ μή σε κρύψω¹ πρὸς ὄντινα βούλομαι ἀφικέσθαι.²
 5. πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ³ δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον. 6. ἦν γὰρ ἅπαξ δύο ἢ τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπόσχωμεν, οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς καταλαβεῖν. 7. ἱκανὸς δὲ καὶ ἐστὶν ἐμποιῆσαι τοῖς παροῦσιν ὥς πειστέον ἐστὶ Κλεάρχῳ.⁴
 8. μὴδ' ἔρωμαι⁵ ὅπόσου πωλεῖ; 9. οὐ πρὸ τῆς ἀληθείας τῆς ἀνῆρ. 10. σὺν Κλεάρχῳ πέμπωμεν τοὺς πελταστὰς; 11. μισθωσώμεθα οὖν κήρυκα, ἃ αὐτὸς ἀνείπω; 12. καταβατέον οὖν ἐν μέρει ἐκάστω. 13. εἴπω οὖν σοι τὸ αἴτιον; 14. ἐπιθῦμητέον ἐστὶ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις τῆς ἀρετῆς. 15. εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι οὐ μήποτε σε ἄκοντά τις ἄξει. 16. ποὶ φύγωμεν; 17. τί δῶ ἐκάστω τῶν φίλων; 18. πότερον τοῦτο βιάν φῶμεν ἢ μὴ φῶμεν εἶναι; 19. πότερον πέμπωμέν τινας ἢ πάντες ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀρήξοντες; 20. ἦν τε εἰς πῇ δυνηθῇ τῶν λόχων ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβῆναι, οὐδεὶς μηκέτι μείνη τῶν πολεμίων. 21. ἀλλὰ τούτους οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτίσαιντο.⁶ 22. ἡμεῖς γὰρ ἂν τοιαῦτα πάθοιμεν,⁷ οἷα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν.⁸ 23. σῶζισθε ἀσφαλῶς ὅποι θέλει ἕκαστος.

Review 265, 266, 267, 296.

Examine 2, 3, 8, 10, 11, 13, 16, 17, 18, 19, and observe that each sentence is interrogative, that its principal verb is in the first person of the subjunctive, and that the sentence, if negative, takes μή.

785. Rule of Syntax. — The first person of the subjunctive may be used in questions of appeal, where a person asks himself or another *what he is to do*. The negative is μή.

a. The question is sometimes introduced by βούλει or βούλεσθε.

¹ I will not (emphatic) conceal from you, etc.

² The indirect question (570) is the second object of κρύψω (737).

³ see in (this undertaking).

⁴ See 768 a.

⁵ And may I not ask, etc.

⁶ May the gods take vengeance on them!

⁷ See p. 104 ¹⁴.

⁸ as may the gods bring upon our foes (738).

Examine 4, 6, 15, 20, and observe that each sentence, or a part of it, is strongly negated by οὐ μή, and has its verb either in the subjunctive or in the future indicative.

786. Rule of Syntax. — The subjunctive and sometimes the future indicative are used with the double negative οὐ μή in the sense of an emphatic future indicative with οὐ.

a. The subjunctive, when used in this construction, is generally in the aorist tense.

Examine the use of the verbals in -τεος in 1, 5, 7, 9, 12, 14.

Review 583, 584.

Examine the optatives in 21, 22 (ποτήσκειαν), 23, and observe that each expresses a wish which refers to the future.

787. Rule of Syntax. — When a wish refers to the future, it is expressed by the optative.

a. The optative may be preceded by εἴθε or εἰ γάρ, *O that, O if*. The negative of these clauses is μή.

788.

EXERCISE.

1. The general must pursue the enemy. 2. What shall I say? 3. They will *not* await the enemy. 4. We must make war on the barbarians.¹ 5. For you will *never* make the vicious better. 6. We must not be dispirited. 7. Will you receive² him, or shall we go away? 8. They will *not* be able to go up on the mountain. 9. We must not surrender these soldiers to the king. 10. With what³ shall I begin? 11. Shall I proceed with the army into the city? 12. Fellow-soldiers, we must make our journey on foot. 13. And may I not⁴ answer, if some young (man) questions me? 14. The general must provide chariots and march against the enemy. 15. We must never do the state harm, but obey (her). 16. Do you wish, then, that I should answer them?

¹ See 773.

² Use the fut indic.

³ With *what*, i.e. *whence*.

⁴ and *not*, cf. 784, 8 above.

LESSON CXVII.

Reading Lesson.

789.

ANABASIS I. iii. 15-21.

Clarchus declares that he will not lead them, but that he will be obedient to the man whom they put in command (15). Another speaker comes forward who shows the folly of the plan just proposed (16). "I should distrust," he says, "any assistance that Cyrus might lend us. I could wish rather that we might get away without his knowledge. But that is impossible (17). We must, therefore, send and ask him what use he intends to make of us. If this undertaking is not different from his previous enterprises, let us follow him (18). But if we cannot approve it, let us tell him that he either must convince us of our duty to support him, or must let us depart in peace. When we get his answer, we can make up our minds (19)." This proposal is adopted. Cyrus answers that he wishes to march against his enemy Abrocomas, twelve stages distant, on the Euphrates (20). The Greeks agree to follow, but demand additional pay. Cyrus promises them half again as much as before (21).

III.

Ὡς μὲν στρατηγήσουντα ἐμὲ ταύτην τὴν στρα- 15
τηγίαν μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ δι'
ἀ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον· ὥς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὄν ἂν
ἔλυσθε πείσομαι ἢ δυνατόν μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῇτε
5 ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος
μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων. μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, 16
ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν τὴν εὐήθειαν τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν

1. ὥς μὲν . . . λεγέτω, let no one of you speak of me as about to assume this command. — 3. ὥς δὲ . . . μάλιστα: sc. οὕτω λέγετε (imv.) from the preceding μηδεὶς λεγέτω. — 4. ἢ δυνατόν μάλιστα, to the best of my ability. Sc. ἐστίν. — 5. ὅτι . . . ἀνθρώπων, that I know how also to submit to authority as well as any man that lives. μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων (743, 6 a), in the highest degree (lit. best of all men), repeats and emphasizes the thought of ὅτι τις καὶ ἄλλος, (as well) as any other man whosoever (καὶ being emphatic).

κελεύοντος, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν στόλον Κύρου ποιου-
 μένου, ἐπιδεικνὺς δὲ ὡς εὐήθες εἶη ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῦν
 10 παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λῦμαινόμεθα τὴν πράξιν. εἰ δὲ
 καὶ τῷ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύσομεν ὃν ἂν Κύρος δῶ, τί
 κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῶν κελεύειν Κύρον προκατα-
 λαβεῖν ; ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοῖν μὲν ἂν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα 17
 ἐμβαίνειν ἃ ἡμῖν δοίη, μὴ ἡμᾶς ταῖς τριήρεσι
 15 καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ ἡγεμόνι ᾧ δοίη
 ἔπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐκ ἔσται ἐξελ-
 θεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπίων Κύρου λα-
 θεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν. ἀλλ'
 ἐγὼ φημι ταῦτα μὲν φλυαρίᾳς εἶναι· δοκεῖ δέ μοι 18
 20 ἄνδρας ἐλθόντας πρὸς Κύρον οἷτινες ἐπιτήδαιοι
 σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωτᾶν ἐκείνον τί βούλεται ἡμῖν
 χρῆσθαι· καὶ ἔαν μὲν ἡ πράξις ἥ παραπλησιᾶ

— 8. ὥσπερ . . . ποιούμενου, *just as if Cyrus were returning* (762) *home* (lit. *making his expedition back*), and so did not longer need his boats.
 — 9. ὡς εὐήθες εἶη, *that it was silly*, corresponding to *τὴν εὐήθειαν* in the clause with *μὲν*. — 10. παρὰ . . . πράξιν: from this point to the end of the speech (l. 32), the words are given in just the form used by the speaker. — 11. πιστεύσομεν, *intend to trust*. The fut. indic. sometimes expresses present intention. — τί . . . προκαταλαβεῖν: i.e. if we intend to trust the guide, we might as well show confidence in Cyrus himself directly, and urge him to secure the heights for us in advance. The question is ironical. — 14. μὴ . . . καταδύσῃ, *lest he may sink us* (280) *with his triremes* (775). — 15. ᾧ: for ὃν (725). — 16. ὅθεν: i.e. (ἐκεῖσε) *θεν*, (*into a place*) *from which*. — 17. ἄκοντος Κύρου: sc. *ἑντος*. The gen. absol. (762) expresses manner (379), *against his will*. — ἀπίων: equivalent to *εἰ ἀπίοιμι* (379). — λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών, *to get off without his knowing it* (p. 250³). — 19. δοκεῖ δέ μοι, *I think it best, I would recommend*. The subjects of *δοκεῖ* (352) are the infinitives that follow, *ἐρωτᾶν* (l. 21), *ἔπεσθαι* (l. 23), *εἶναι* (l. 24), *ἀξιούν* (l. 27), *ἀπαγγέλλαι* (l. 31), and *βουλεύεσθαι* (l. 32), each with its modifiers. — 20. ἄνδρας: subj. of *ἐρωτᾶν*. — οἷτινες, *such as are* (sc. *εἰσίν*). — 21. τί . . . χρῆσθαι, *what use* (732) *he wishes to make of us* (p. 83⁴). The same use of the cases occurs below in *οἷτις*

οἷα περ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρήτο τοῖς ξένοις, ἔπεσθαι
καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ μὴ κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ
25 συναναβάντων· ἔαν δὲ μείζων ἢ πρᾶξις τῆς πρό- 19
σθεν φαίνεται καὶ ἐπιπονωτέρᾳ καὶ ἐπικωδύνο-
τέρᾳ, ἀξιούν ἢ πείσαντα ἡμᾶς ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα
πρὸς φιλιᾶν ἀφίεναι· οὕτω γὰρ καὶ ἐπόμενοι ἂν
φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ πρόθυμοι ἐποίμεθα καὶ ἀπιώντες
30 ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν· ὅ τι δ' ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα λέγῃ
ἀπαγγεῖλαι δεῦρο· ἡμᾶς δ' ἀκούσαντας πρὸς ταῦτα
βουλευέσθαι. ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἐλόμενοι 20
σὺν Κλεάρχῳ πέμπουσιν οἱ ἡρώτων Κῦρον τὰ
δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούει
35 Ἀβροκόμᾳν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ πο-
ταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς· πρὸς
τούτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· καὶ μὲν ἦ ἐκεῖ,
τὴν δίκην ἔφη χρήζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἣν δὲ φύγῃ,
ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. ἀκούσαντες 21
40 δὲ ταῦτα οἱ αἰρετοὶ ἀπαγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώ-
ταις· τοῖς δὲ ὑποψία μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγοι πρὸς βασι-
λέᾳ, ὅμως δὲ ἔδόκει ἔπεσθαι. προσαιτοῦσι δὲ
μισθόν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι

(for οἷα περ by assimilation, 725) and τοῖς ξένοις. — 23. πρόσθεν: when he went to Babylon, just before the death of Darius. See 706, 9-12. — ἔπεσθαι, εἶναι: with ἡμᾶς as subj. — 24. τῶν . . . συναναβάντων: see 763. — 25. τῆς πρόσθεν: sc. πράξεως. — 27. ἀξιούν, demand, i.e. the deputies (ἄνδρας) mentioned in l. 20. ἀπαγγεῖλαι in l. 31 has the same subj. — ἄγειν, ἀφίεναι: the subj. refers to Cyrus. — 28. ἐπόμενοι, ἀπιώντες: equivalent to εἰ ἐποίμεθα, εἰ ἀπίοιμεν (379). — 29. φίλοι πρόθυμοι: predicate adjectives. — 34. ὅτι ἀκούει, that he heard. — 37. καὶ μὲν ἦ ἐκεῖ, and if he should be there. — 38. ἣν δὲ . . . βουλευσόμεθα: the exact words of the speaker. — 41. τοῖς δὲ . . . ἦν, they had (770), etc., i.e. they suspected. For τοῖς δέ, cf. ὁ δέ in l. 34. — ὅτι ἄγοι, that he was leading them. —

δώσειν οὖ πρότερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ δᾶρεικού τρία
 45 ἡμιδᾶρεικὰ τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ
 βασίλειᾳ ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἔν γε
 τῷ φανερώ.

44. δώσειν: see p. 250⁶. — οὖ: i.e. (τούτου) ὅν (725). The gen. depends on ἡμιόλιον, which has the force of a comparative, a *half more* (763). —

45. τοῦ μηνός, *each month* (759). — By the expedient here described, Cyrus led the Greeks nineteen stages farther inland (in place of twelve) before announcing publicly his real purpose.

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (ἀντί, 44; διά, 2; εἰς, 13; ἐν, 46; ἐπὶ, 35, 45; μετὰ, 6; παρά, 10; πρὸς, 20, 28, 30, 31, 36, 39, 41; σύν, 21, 33), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXVIII.

Final and Object Clauses.

790.

EXERCISE.

1. τούτῳ δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ πείσομαι, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχε-
 σθαι ἐπίσταμαι. 2. σκεπτέον ἐστὶν ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα
 μενούμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν,
 καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχομεν. 3. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύνα-
 μιν ἡθροίζειν ὥς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυσπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι
 ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέᾳ. 4. ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ
 ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει.¹ 5. καὶ περὶ τούτων ἐμνήσθην,
 ἵνα μὴ ταῦτὰ πάθῃτε. 6. οἱ θεώμενοι ἐφοβοῦντο μή τι
 πάθῃ. 7. τοὺς δὲ ἀποθανόντας αὐτοκέλευστοι οἱ Ἕλληνες
 ἠκίσαντο, ὥς ὅτι φοβερώτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις εἶη. 8. ὅπως
 δ' ἀμυνόμεθα οὐδεὶς ἐπιμελεῖται. 9. ἀλλὰ δέδοικα μὴ ὥσπερ
 οἱ λωτοφάγοι ἐπιλαθώμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ. 10. φίλος
 ἐβούλετο εἶναι τοῖς μέγιστα δυναμένοις, ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ διδοίῃ
 δίκην. 11. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑπώπτευσεν μή τι πρὸς τῆς

¹ The clause with ὅπως is here the subj. of μελήσει.

πόλεως ἐπαίτιον εἶη Κῦρος φίλον γενέσθαι.¹ 12. καί σε οὐκ ἡγειρον, ἵνα ὡς ἡδιστα καθεύδῃς. 13. ἔδεισε μὴ ἐπιπλεύσωσιν αἱ νῆες. 14. ἐβουλεύετο ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλὰ βασιλεύσει αὐτ' ἐκείνου. 15. πέμψωμεν δὲ καὶ προκαταληψομένους τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθάνωσι μήτε Κῦρος μήτε οἱ Κίλικες καταλαβόντες. 16. λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμεν, ἵνα ὠφελοῖην αὐτὸν ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου. 17. δέδισα μὴ λαβὼν με δίκην ἐπιθῇ ὧν νομίζει ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἡδικῆσθαι. 18. ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοίην μὲν ἀν² εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν, μὴ ἡμᾶς ταῖς τριήρεσι καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἀν² τῷ ἡγεμόνι ἔπescθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐκ ἔσται ἐξελθεῖν.

Review 265, 266, 267, 296.

Examine the use of the subjunctive and optative in the dependent clauses of 1, 3, 7, 10, 15, 16, noting the tense of the leading verb.

Review 278, 302.

Examine 5, 12, noting the mood of the dependent clause and the tense of the leading verb.

791. Rule of Syntax.—The subjunctive may be used in final clauses after secondary tenses, instead of the optative, to express the purpose as originally conceived.

Examine the use of the future indicative in 2, 4, 8, 14, noting the particle which introduces it, its negative, if it is negative, and the meaning and tense of the leading verb.

792. Rule of Syntax.—After verbs which signify to *strive for*, *care for*, or *effect*, the object of the action is expressed by ὅπως, *that*, or ὅπως μὴ, *that not*, with the future indicative, after both primary and secondary tenses.

Examine the use of the subjunctive and optative in the dependent clauses of 9, 11, 17, 18, noting the tense of the leading verb.

Review 280, 304.

¹ Κῦρος φίλον γενέσθαι is the subj. of εἶη, of which τὸ ἐπαίτιον, *some cause for blame*, is predicate.

² Any opt. which refers to the future has the force of a primary tense.

Examine 6, 13, noting the mood of the dependent clause and the tense of the leading verb.

793. Rule of Syntax. — The subjunctive may be used after the secondary tenses of verbs which denote fear, instead of the optative, to express the fear as originally conceived.

794.

EXERCISE.

1. They went and asked Cyrus for boats, that they might sail away. 2. For they feared that the enemy would attack them (while) going through the ravine. 3. He thought that he needed friends, that he might have co-workers. 4. For they feared that they would be cut off and the enemy would get on both sides of them.¹ 5. And they were apprehensive that, if they should burn² the villages, they might not have provisions. 6. Let us therefore burn up the wagons which we have, that our teams may not be our generals.³ 7. But no one of us is in return taking any⁴ care that we may contend (with them) as successfully as possible. 8. They fear that the Greeks will attack them during the night.⁵ 9. See to (it), then, that you be men worthy of the freedom which⁶ you possess. 10. I did this, that the enemy might not think that we had set out for home.

LESSON CXIX.

Reading Lesson.

795.

ANABASIS I. iv. 1-6.

From Tarsi Cyrus proceeds to the river Psarus, thence to the river Pyramus, and finally reaches Issi upon the sea-coast, the last city in Cilicia (1). Here he remains three days. During this time his fleet

¹ See 761.

² See 379.

⁴ οὐδέν. See p. 202² and 732.

³ may not take command of

⁵ See 759.

(στρατηγέω) us (748).

⁶ See 725.

arrives, which has been conducted from Ephesus by Tamos (2). Chirisophus is on board the ships with 700 heavy-armed men. Cyrus is joined also by 400 Greek mercenaries who desert from Abrocomas (3). Thence he proceeds to the Syro-Cilician Pass, a narrow way between the mountains and the coast, and defended at each end by a wall (4). He makes ready to land men on both sides of the furthest wall; but this plan proves to be unnecessary, as Abrocomas does not attempt to bar his passage, but retreats towards Babylon (5). Cyrus advances through Syria, and comes to Myriandus, a thriving emporium (6).

IV.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας 1
δέκα ἐπὶ τὸν Ψάρον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος τρία
πλέθρα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρα-
σάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ τὸν Πύραμον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ
εὖρος στάδιον. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο
παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα εἰς Ἴσσοὺς, τῆς Κιλι-
κίᾳς ἐσχάτην πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ οἰκουμένην,
μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας 2
τρεις· καὶ Κύρῳ παρήσαν αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου
10 νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε καὶ ἐπ' αὐταῖς ναύαρχος
Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος. ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐταῖς Τα-
μῶς Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναὺς ἑτέρας
Κύρου πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλη-
τον, ὅτε Τισσαφέρνει φίλη ἦν, καὶ συνεπολέμει

1. The army has now been on the march four months. Retrace on the map the route travelled from Sardis to Tarsi. — 9. **Κύρῳ**: for the case, cf. αὐτῷ in 727, 28. The fleet, which here effects a junction with the land forces of Cyrus, preparatory to his march into the interior, is the one already mentioned in 765, 9-11. — 11. **ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐταῖς**, conducted them, i.e. the ships (769). — 12. **ἐξ Ἐφέσου**: the Lacedaemonian ships under Pythagoras had joined the fleet of Cyrus at Ephesus. — 13. **αἷς ἐπολιόρκει**, with which he (i.e. Tamos) had been besieging. So συνεπολέμει below. Cf. ἐτύγχανεν in 722, 17, and note. — 14. **ὅτε ἦν**, since it had

15 Κύρῳ πρὸς αὐτόν. παρὴν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος 3
 Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, μετάπεμπτos ὑπὸ
 Κύρου, ἐπτακοσίους ἔχων ὀπλίτας, ὧν ἐστρατήγει
 παρὰ Κύρῳ. αἱ δὲ νῆες ὥρμουν παρὰ τὴν Κύ-
 ρου σκηνήν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ παρ' Ἀβροκόμᾳ
 20 μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες ἀποστάντες ἦλθον παρὰ
 Κύρον τετρακόσιοι ὀπλῖται καὶ συνεστρατεύοντο
 ἐπὶ βασιλεύᾳ. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα πα- 4
 ρασάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ πύλας τῆς Κιλικιάς καὶ τῆς
 Συρίας. ἦσαν δὲ ταῦτα δύο τείχη, καὶ τὸ μὲν
 25 ἔσωθεν τὸ πρὸ τῆς Κιλικιάς Σύννεσις εἶχε καὶ
 Κιλικίων φυλακή, τὸ δὲ ἔξω τὸ πρὸ τῆς Συρίας
 βασιλέως ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ φυλάττειν. διὰ μέσου
 δὲ ρεῖ τούτων ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα, εὖρος πλέ-
 θρου. ἅπαν δὲ τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν στά-
 30 διοι τρεῖς· καὶ παρελθεῖν οὐκ ἦν βία· ἦν γὰρ ἡ
 πάροδος στενὴ καὶ τὰ τείχη εἰς τὴν θάλατταν
 καθήκοντα, ὑπερθεῖν δ' ἦσαν πέτραι ἡλίβατοι· ἐπὶ
 δὲ τοῖς τείχεσιν ἀμφοτέροις ἐφειστήκεσαν πύλαι.
 ταύτης ἕνεκα τῆς παρόδου Κύρος τὰς ναῦς μετε- 5

been (781).—15. αὐτόν: i.e. Tissaphernes.—16. μεταπεμπτός, sent for, verbal in -τος, equal to μεταπεμφθείς, and so followed by ὑπὸ Κύρου (223).—17. ὧν . . . Κύρῳ, the command of whom he (now) held under Cyrus.—19. οἱ παρ' Ἀβροκόμᾳ: cf. τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως in 706, 23, and note.—'Αβροκόμᾳ: the so-called Doric gen., found in Attic chiefly in foreign proper names.—23. πύλας: the article is omitted, since the subst. is used almost as a proper name.—24. ἦσαν . . . τείχη, this pass consisted of two walls. ταῦτα for αὐταί (with which ἦσαν really agrees), by attraction into agreement with the predicate subst. τείχη.—τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν: sc. τεῖχος.—29. ἦσαν: in agreement with the predicate subst. στάδιοι, a plur. to στάδιον.—32. καθήκοντα: to be connected with ἦν as a predicate, ἦν καθήκοντα being equivalent to καθῆκε.—ἐπὶ . . . πύλαι, in (on) each wall a gate

- 35 πέμψατο, ὅπως ὀπλίτᾱς ἀποβιβάσειεν εἴσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν, καὶ βιασάμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους παρέλθοιεν, εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις πύλαις, ὅπερ ᾤετο ποιήσειν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Ἀβροκόμᾱν, ἔχοντα πολὺν στράτευμα. Ἀβροκόμᾱς δὲ οὐ τοῦτ'
- 40 ἐποίησεν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κῦρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα, ἀναστρέψᾱς ἐκ Φοινίκης παρὰ βασιλεῆ ἀπήλαυνεν, ἔχων, ὡς ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα μῦριάδας στρατιᾱς. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίᾱς σταθμὸν ἕνα 6 παρασάγγᾱς πέντε εἰς Μῦρίανδον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην
- 45 νην ὑπὸ Φοινικῶν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ· ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὥρμουν αὐτόθι ὁλκάδες πολλάί.

was set. — 35. εἴσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν, *within and without the pass, i.e. between the two walls and beyond the wall on the Syrian side.* The object of Cyrus was to attack Abrocomas both in front and in the rear. — 37. εἰ φυλάττοιεν, *in case they should be keeping guard.* — 38. ὅπερ, *just the thing which*, referring to the thought of the preceding clause. — 39. ἔχοντα: causal partic. (379).

Make a special study of the prepositions in this Reading Lesson (*διά*, 27, 43; *εἰς*, 6, 31, 44; *ἐν*, 40; *ἐξ*, 9, 12, 41; *ἐπί*, 2, 4, 7, 10, 16, 22, 23, 32, 37; *παρά*, 18 (*his*), 19, 20, 41; *πρό*, 25, 26; *πρός*, 15; *ὑπό*, 16, 45), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXX.

Conditional Sentences: Present and Past Particular Conditions.

796.

EXERCISE.

1. εἰ ὑμεῖς ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν, ἔπεσθαι ὑμῖν βούλομαι. 2. εἰ ταῦτα ἔπραξαν, καλῶς ἔσχεν. 3. εἰ ταῦτα ἔπραξαν, καλῶς ἂν ἔσχεν.¹ 4. εἴπερ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός ἐστιν, οὐκ ἀμαχεῖ ταῦτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι. 5. Κλέαρχος τοίνυν εἰ παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους

¹ *If they had done this, it would have been well*, an unfulfilled supposition. Note that the apodosis has ἂν.

ἔλῳε τὰς σπονδάς, τὴν δίκην ἔχει. 6. ἀλλὰ, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δ' ἐθέλω πορεύεσθαι· εἰ δὲ χρήζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, ἐγὼ δὲ μενῶ αὐτοῦ. 7. καὶ ἂν ταῦτ' ἐποίει, εἰ ἐώρᾳ ἡμᾶς ἀπιόντας.¹ 8. ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε συναπιέναι, ἡκὺν κελεύει ὑμᾶς τῆς νυκτός. 9. οὐκ ἂν τῶν νήσων ἐκράτει, εἰ μὴ τι ναυτικὸν εἶχεν. 10. εἰ δὲ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον,² τολμάτω καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης διδάσκειν. 11. στρατηγούς ἐλώμεθα ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν. 12. εἰ μέντοι τότε πλείους συνελέγησαν, ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν διαφθαρῆναι πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος. 13. εἰ τοῦτο πεποίηκας, ἐπαινέσθαι ἄξιος εἶ. 14. εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, σκεπτέον ἐστὶν ὅπως ἀσφαλέςτατα ἄπιμεν. 15. ἡ πόλις πᾶσα διεφθάρη ἂν, εἰ ἄνεμος ἐπεγένετο. 16. καὶ ἡμῖν γ' ἂν τρισάσμενος ταῦτ' ἐποίει βασιλεύς, εἰ ἐώρᾳ ἡμᾶς μένειν παρασκευαζομένους. 17. οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες, εἴ τις καὶ ἀθυμότερος³ ἦν πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἥδιον καὶ προθυμότερον συνεπορεύοντο.

Examine 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 11, 13, 14, 17.

Observe that these sentences are conditional, consisting of a protasis and apodosis (272); that the protasis is introduced by εἰ, *if*, and has the indic.; that it states a particular supposition in the present or past, and implies nothing as to its fulfilment; and that the apodosis assumes a great variety of forms (being expressed here, *e.g.*, by the indic., present, past, and future, by the inv., by the subjv., and by the verbal in -τεος).

797. Rule of Syntax. — When the protasis *simply states* a present or past particular supposition, implying nothing as to the fulfilment of the condition, it has the indicative with εἰ. Any form of the verb may stand in the apodosis.

Such conditional sentences are designated as *Particular Suppositions of the First Class* (I. 1).

¹ *He would be doing this, if he saw, etc., an unfulfilled supposition.*

² *better plan. Sc. ἐστὶ.*

³ *even (καὶ) somewhat discouraged.*

a. The negative of all protases is regularly $\mu\eta$, that of all apodoses is regularly $\omicron\upsilon$.

Examine 3, 7, 12, 15, 16.

Observe that the protasis is introduced by $\epsilon\iota$, *if*, and has a secondary tense of the indic. ; that it states a supposition in the present or past, using respectively the impf. or aor. indic., and implies that the condition *is not* or *was not fulfilled* ; and that the apodosis has a secondary tense of the indic. with $\acute{\alpha}\nu$.

798. Rule of Syntax. — When the protasis states a present or past supposition, implying that the condition *is not* or *was not fulfilled*, the secondary tenses of the indicative are used in both protasis and apodosis. The apodosis has the adverb $\acute{\alpha}\nu$. The imperfect refers to present time, the aorist to a simple occurrence in past time.

a. The imperfect may refer to an act as going on or repeated in past time. Examine 9, which refers to the past.

Such conditional sentences are designated as *Suppositions of the Second Class* (II.).

799.

EXERCISE.

1. But if anybody sees a better (plan), let him speak.
2. If he had restrained himself, he would now be king.
3. And if you had not come, we should have proceeded against the king.
4. If you have the money, pay it to the soldiers.
5. If this is so, I will go away at once.
6. If the general had wished to go, the soldiers would have followed (him).
7. If he went into the city, he received the gold.
8. He would not have done this, if I had not bid him.
9. If you say this, you are deceived.
10. If he wrote the letter, he did well.
11. If he had done this, he would have injured me greatly.¹
12. If the citizens had been wise, they would then have put this tyrant to death.
13. If you have not done wrong, why are you about² to flee?
14. It would be much more wonderful, if they were honoured.

¹ $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\alpha$, see 732.

² *be about*, $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\lambda\lambda\omega$.

LESSON CXXI.

Reading Lesson.

800.

ANABASIS I. iv. 7-11.

At Myriandus Xenias and Pasion, in jealousy of the increasing influence of Clearchus, desert by sea. The rumour spreads that Cyrus is in pursuit of them (7). But he, calling his Greek generals together, announces that he shall not do this. "Let them go, traitors though they are and though their punishment would be easy, since formerly they were true to me (8)." This decision pleases the Greeks, and they accompany him with greater alacrity. Cyrus proceeds eastward, crosses the Chalus (9), and reaches the sources of the Dardas, where he destroys the park and burns the palace of the Syrian governor (10). At Thapsacus on the Euphrates he announces the real object of his expedition (11).

IV.

ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ· καὶ Ξενιάς ὁ 7
 Ἄρκας στρατηγὸς καὶ Πασίῳν ὁ Μεγαρεὺς ἐμ-
 βάντες εἰς πλοῖον καὶ τὰ πλείστου ἄξια ἐνθέμενοι
 ἀπέπλευσαν, ὥς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις ἐδόκουν, φιλο-
 5 τμηθέντες ὅτι τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς αὐτῶν τοὺς παρὰ
 Κλέαρχον ἀπελθόντας ὥς ἀπιόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
 πάλιν καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλεῆ ἑῷ Κῦρος τὸν Κλέ-
 αρχον ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς, διήλθε λόγος
 ὅτι διώκοι αὐτοὺς Κῦρος τριήρεσι· καὶ οἱ μὲν
 10 ἠῦχοντο ὥς δειλοὺς ὄντας αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι, οἱ δ'

4. **μὲν**: the correlative clause with **δέ** is omitted, but **μὲν** implies that there was another opinion in the camp. — **ἐδόκουν**: *they seemed*, the personal const. We should use the impersonal const., *it seemed*. — **φιλοτιμηθέντες**, *since they were jealous* (379). — 5. **ὅτι** . . . **εἰ** **Κῦρος**: also causal (781). For the facts see 779, 43-46. — **στρατιωτᾶς**: obj. of **ἔχειν** in l. 8. — 6. **ὥς ἀπιόντας**: purpose (706, 16, and note). — 7. **καὶ οὐ**: *sc. ἰόντας* from the preceding **ἀπιόντας**. — 9. **ὅτι διώκοι** . . . **Κῦρος**, *that Cyrus was in pursuit of them*. — 10. **ὥς δειλοὺς** . . . **ληφθῆναι**, *that they might be*

ῥκτειρον εἰ ἀλώσوينτο. Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσας 8
 τοὺς στρατηγούς εἶπεν, Ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς Ξε-
 νίας καὶ Πασίων. ἀλλ' εὖ γε μέντοι ἐπιστάσθων
 ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδεδράκασιν· οἶδα γὰρ ὅπη οἶχον-
 15 ται· οὔτε ἀποπεφεύγασιν· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε
 ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον· ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ
 ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξω, οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ ἔως
 μὲν ἂν παρῇ τις χρώμαι, ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἀπιέναι βού-
 ληται, συλλαβὼν καὶ αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ
 20 χρήματα ἀποσὺλῶ. ἀλλὰ ἰόντων, εἰδότες ὅτι κακί-
 οὺς εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. καίτοι
 ἔχω γε αὐτῶν καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν Τράλλεσι
 φρουρούμενα· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τούτων στερήσονται, ἀλλ'
 ἀπολήσονται τῆς πρόσθεν ἔνεκα περὶ ἐμὲ ἀρετῆς.
 25 καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ Ἑλλήνες, εἴ τις καὶ θ
 ἀθυμότερος ἦν πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν, ἀκούοντες τὴν
 Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἡδίων καὶ προθυμότερον συνεπο-
 ρεύοντο.

μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἔξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τέτταρας
 30 παρασάγγας εἵκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα
 τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων μεγάλων καὶ

caught, because they were cowards. ὡς shows that the reason assigned is that of the subject of ἤσυχοντο. See note on 706, 33.—11. εἰ ἀλώσوينτο, *if they were to be captured.*—17. οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς: emphatic negation (p. 202²).—18. ἔως ἂν παρῇ τις, *so long as anybody stays by me.*—19. ἐπειδὰν βούληται, *when he wishes.*—20. αὐτοὺς: plur., although referring to τις. Cf. πάντας in 706, 24, and note.—23. φρουρούμενα: neuter, although it limits both τέκνα and γυναῖκας, since these are regarded as articles of property.—By this unlooked-for clemency Cyrus got the good-will of the Greeks and lost little; for, although the two generals deserted, their troops remained, numbering some 5000 or 6000.—29. μετὰ ταῦτα: see 727, 27, and note.—31. πλέθρου: see 744 a. So below in line 37.

πρᾶέων, οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον καὶ ἀδικεῖν
 οὐκ εἶων, οὐδὲ τὰς περιστερὰς. αἱ δὲ κῶμαι ἐν
 αἷς ἐσκήνουν Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν εἰς ζώνην δεδο-
 35 μέναι. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς πέντε παρα- 10
 σάγγαῖς τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τὰς πηγάς τοῦ Δάρδατος
 ποταμοῦ, οὗ τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου. ἐνταῦθα ἦν τὰ
 Βελέσσυος βασιλεία τοῦ Συριάς ἄρξαντος, καὶ παρά-
 δεισος πάνν μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα
 40 ὦραι φύουσι. Κῦρος δ' αὐτὸν ἐξέκοψε καὶ τὰ βα-
 σίλεια κατέκαυσεν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς 11
 τρεῖς παρασάγγαῖς πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην
 ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ
 πόλις αὐτόθι ὤκειτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων Θάψα-
 45 κος ὄνομα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέραῖς πέντε· καὶ
 Κῦρος μεταπεμψάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλ-
 λήνων ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλεῆα
 μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν
 ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ ἀναπείθew ἔπρεσθαι.

— 32. οὓς, θεοίς: see 739. — ἀδικεῖν: sc. τινά as subj. — 34. Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν, belonged to Parasatis (744 a). — 38. τοῦ ἄρξαντος, who had been ruler. Note the tense. Belesys had probably fled on the approach of Cyrus. — 47. ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο, that the expedition would be. The fact here announced must have been apparent to the Greeks for some time. They had kept on, however, intending, when they arrived at the Euphrates and Cyrus announced his real object, to demand a bounty.

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition with verbs (127) in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 49; ἀπο-, 4, 6 (bis), 12, 14, 15, 18, 20, 24; δια-, 8; ἐν-, 2, 3; ἐξ-, 29, 35, 40, 41; κατα-, 41; μετα-, 46; παρα-, 18; συν-, 11, 19, 27), carefully consulting the General Vocabulary. Note the meaning of the simple verb, the force of the preposition when used in composition, and the meaning of the compound verb when the two are united. The prepositions were originally adverbs, and it is chiefly as such that they appear in composition with verbs.

LESSON CXXII.

Conditional Sentences: Present and Past General Conditions.—
Iterative Tenses.

801.

EXERCISE.

1. οἱ θεοὶ ἱκανοὶ εἰσι τοὺς μικροὺς, *κἂν ἐν δεινοῖς ὦσι*,¹ σῶζειν εὐπετῶς. 2. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας ἂν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ,² ἔστι λαμβάνειν. 3. ἦν ἐπικούρημα τῶν ποδῶν, εἴ τις τὴν νύκτα ὑπολύοιτο.³ 4. ἦν τι⁴ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἀμαρτάνωσι, περὶ τὰς ἑαυτῶν ψυχὰς ἀμαρτάνουσι. 5. περὶ πλείστου ἐποιεῖτο Κῦρος, εἴ τῳ σπείσαιοτο⁵ καὶ εἴ τῳ ὑπόσχοιτό τι, μηδαμῶς ψεύδεσθαι. 6. καὶ εἴ τις αὐτῷ δοκοίῃ τῶν πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένων βλαβεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν ἐπιτήδειον ἔπαισεν αὐν.⁶ 7. εἰ δέ τινα ὀρώῃ Κῦρος δεινὸν ὄντα οἰκονόμον, οὐδένα ἂν πώποτε ἀφείλετο,⁷ ἀλλ' αἰ πλείω προσεδίδου. 8. μῖσει, οὐκ ἦν τίς τι⁴ αὐτὸν ἀδικῇ, ἀλλ' ἐάν τινα ὑποπτεύσῃ βελτίονα ἑαυτοῦ εἶναι. 9. εἰ δὴ ποτε πορεύοιτο, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο. 10. εἴ τινες ἰδοίεν πῃ τοὺς σφετέρους ἐπικρατοῦντας, ἀνεθάρρησαν αὐν. 11. ἐάν τις τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ποιήσῃ αὐτόν,⁸ νικᾶν πειράται. 12. ἀναλαμβάνων αὐτῶν τὰ ποιήματα διηρώτων αὐν.⁹ 13. εἰ ἐξελεύνοι Ἀστυάγης, ἐφ' ἵππου χρῦσοχαλίνου περιήγε τὸν Κῦρον. 14. καὶ τοὺς ὄνους οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ διαστάντες οἱ ἵππεῖς θηρῶν διαδεχόμενοι. 15. καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ αὐτῶν ἡγούνται, νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι,¹⁰ ἦν ἢ ἡ ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ἐκατέρωθεν.

¹ even if they are, etc.² if one starts them up, etc.³ if one took off his shoes, etc.⁴ See 732.⁵ if he made a treaty, etc.⁶ he would beat him.⁷ used to rob (ἀν ἀφείλετο), etc.⁸ See 738.⁹ I used to question them.¹⁰ See 354. Their thought is, οὕτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ ἑσμέν, ἦν ἢ ἡ ἰσχὺς ἡμῶν ἐκατέρωθεν.

802. Suppositions are to be distinguished as *particular* or *general*.

a. The protases of the examples given to establish the rule in 797 are all *particular* suppositions, *i.e.* they refer to a definite act supposed to occur or to have occurred at some definite time.

b. But a supposition otherwise similar to those referred to in 797, *i.e.* a present or past supposition which implies nothing as to the fulfilment of the condition, may be *general*. Such a general supposition refers indefinitely to any act of a given class, which may be supposed to occur or to have occurred at any time. The apodosis expresses a customary or repeated action or a general truth in present or past time. *E.g., if ever he receives anything, he (always) gives it; if ever he received anything, he (always) gave it.*

c. This distinction of suppositions as particular or general is seen in all classes of conditional sentences, but it is only in the First Class (I.) that the distinction is indicated by the *form* of the sentence.

Examine 1, 2, 4, 8, 11, 15.

Observe that these general suppositions are all present; that the protasis is introduced by $\epsilon\acute{\alpha}\nu$ (or $\eta\nu$ or $\acute{\alpha}\nu$, for which see p. 90¹), *if*, and has the subjv.; and that the apodosis has the pres. indic. or its equivalent.

803. Rule of Syntax. — Present general suppositions have $\epsilon\acute{\alpha}\nu$ with the subjunctive in the protasis, and the present indicative (or some other present form denoting repetition) in the apodosis.

Such conditional sentences are designated as *Present General Suppositions of the First Class* (I. 2 a).

Examine 3, 5, 9, 13, 14.

Observe that these general suppositions are all past; that the protasis is introduced by $\epsilon\iota$, *if*, and has the opt.; and that the apodosis has the impf. indic.

804. Rule of Syntax. — Past general suppositions have $\epsilon\iota$ with the optative in the protasis, and the imperfect indicative (or some other form denoting past repetition) in the apodosis.

Such conditional sentences are designated as *Past General Suppositions of the First Class* (I. 2 b).

Examine 12, and the apodoses in 6, 7, 10.

Observe that the impf. or aor. indic. here has *ἄν*, and expresses customary action.

805. Rule of Syntax. — The imperfect and aorist indicative are sometimes used with the adverb *ἄν* to denote a *customary* action.

a. This *iterative* use of the secondary tenses of the indic. with *ἄν* must be carefully distinguished from apodoses with *ἄν* expressing non-fulfilment (798).

Observe that 6, 7, 10 are past general suppositions (804).

806.**EXERCISE.**

1. If any soldier ever stole, he was punished. 2. He is always angry, if he sees anybody doing wrong. 3. If he promises anybody anything, he never deceives him. 4. But it was a protection, if one journeyed with something black before his eyes. 5. If we ever attacked the enemy, they escaped with ease. 6. If the soldiers march in good order, he praises them. 7. If anybody perjures himself, they impose a penalty on him. 8. He used to beat his soldiers. 9. If he suspected that anybody was plotting against him, he put him to death. 10. They would not let the late-comers approach the fire, unless they gave them a share of their provisions.

LESSON CXXIII.**Reading Lesson.****807.****ANABASIS I. iv. 12–19.**

The Greek troops refuse to go on without extra pay (12). Cyrus agrees to give each man five minas, when they get to Babylon. Menon, in the mean time, urges his troops to cross the Euphrates before the others decide, and so win the favour of Cyrus by seeming to be the most zealous in his service (13–15). They comply, and Cyrus ex-

presses his satisfaction (16). Cyrus then crosses the Euphrates with the rest of his troops, and proceeds to the Araxes, where he remains three days (17-19).

IV.

οἱ δὲ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα · 12
οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ
ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς πάλαι ταῦτ' εἰδότας κρύπτειν, καὶ
οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, ἔαν μή τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῶ,
5 ὥσπερ τοῖς προτέροις μετὰ Κύρου ἀναβάσι παρὰ
τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἐπὶ μάχην
ἰόντων, ἀλλὰ καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρὸς Κύρον. ταῦτα 13
οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ ἀπήγγελλον · ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο
ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστῳ δώσειν πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὶ
10 εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦκωσι, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῇ μέχρη
ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἑλληνας εἰς Ἰωνίαν πάλιν.
τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπείσθη.
Μένων δέ, πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι
στρατιῶται, πότερον ἔψονται Κύρῳ ἢ οὐ, συνέλεξε
15 τὸ αὐτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε
τάδε. Ἄνδρες, ἔαν μοι πεισθῆτε, οὔτε κινδυνεύ- 14
σαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτι-

2. *ἐχαλέπαινον*: the anger of the soldiers was doubtless feigned, to force from Cyrus the greater pay. — 3. *εἰδότας*, though they had known, concessive (379). — 4. *τις*: the reference is, of course, to Cyrus. — 5. *ὥσπερ*: sc. *ἔδωκε*, as he had given it. — *τοῖς προτέροις ἀναβάσι*, to those who had previously gone inland. *προτέροις* is a predicate adj. with the force of an adv. Cf. *προτέρᾳ* in 765, 29, and note. The reference is to the 300 Greeks mentioned in 706, 10-12. — 6. *καὶ ταῦτα*, and that too. Sc. *ἐποίησεν*. — 7. *ἰόντων*: sc. *ἐκείνων*, referring to τοῖς ἀναβάσι. For the gen. absol., see 762. So *καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρὸς* following. — 8. *δώσειν*: see p. 250⁶. — *ἐπὶ* . . . *ἦκωσι*, when they should get to Babylon. — 10. *ἐντελῇ*, in full, predicate adj. (720). The daric and a half a month, promised in 789, 44 f., was not to be reduced because of the present bounty of five minas. — *μέχρη ἂν καταστήσῃ*, until he should restore them. — 17. *τῶν ἄλ-*

μήσεσθε στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι ; νῦν δέϊται Κῦρος ἔπεσθαι τοὺς Ἑλλη-
 20 νας ἐπὶ βασιλέᾳ · ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι δια-
 βῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅ-
 τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρῳ. ἦν μὲν 15
 γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἔπεσθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἵτιοι εἶναι
 ἄρξαντες τοῦ διαβαίνειν, καὶ ὡς προθυμοτάτοις
 25 οὖσιν ὑμῖν χάριν εἴσεται Κῦρος καὶ ἀποδώσει ·
 ἐπίσταται δ' εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος · ἦν δὲ ἀποψηφίσων-
 ται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἅπιμεν μὲν ἅπαντες τοῦμπαλιν, ὑμῖν
 δὲ ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις πιστοτάτοις χρήσεται
 καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ εἰς λοχαγιάς, καὶ ἄλλου οὔτι-
 30 νος ἂν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι τεύξεσθε Κύρου.
 ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπείθοντο καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν 16
 τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο
 διαβεβηκότας, ἦσθη τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι πέμ-
 ψας Γλοῦν εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς
 35 ἐπαινῶ · ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ
 μελήσει, ἢ μηκέτι με Κῦρον νομίζετε. οἱ μὲν δὴ 17
 στρατιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγάλαις ὄντες ἠὔχοντο αὐτὸν
 εὐτυχῆσαι, Μένωνι δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι
 μεγαλοπρεπῶς. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας διέβαινε · συν-
 40 εἶπετο δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα αὐτῷ ἅπαν.
 καὶ τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς ἐβρέχθη

λων στρατιωτῶν: see 763. — 24. τοῦ διαβαίνειν: cf. 742, 10. — 26. ἐπίστα-
 ται: sc. χάριν ἀποδίδοναι. — εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος: cf. ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος in 789, 5.
 — 27. τοῦμπαλιν: i.e. τὸ ἔμπαλιν (p. 55⁴). — 28. ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις,
 because you alone were obedient. — πιστοτάτοις, as most trustworthy,
 predicate adj. — 29. ἄλλου . . . δέησθε, whatever else you want (749). —
 30. τεύξεσθε Κύρου, you will get from Cyrus (p. 188¹). — 33. διαβεβηκότας,
 that they had crossed (p. 250⁶). — 35. ὅπως . . . μελήσει: cf. 790, 4. —

ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ 18
 Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐπώποθ' οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς
 διαβατὸς γένοιτο πεζῇ εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις,
 45 ἂν τότε Ἀβροκόμας προῖων κατέκασεν, ἵνα μὴ
 Κῦρος διαβῇ. ἐδόκει δὴ θεῖον εἶναι καὶ σαφῶς
 ὑποχωρῆσαι τὸν ποταμὸν Κῦρι ὡς βασιλεύσονται.
 ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συριᾶς σταθμοὺς ἐννέα 19
 παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα· καὶ ἀφικνούνται πρὸς
 50 τὸν Ἀράξην ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι πολ-
 λαὶ μεστὰὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν
 ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.

43. ὅτι . . . γένοιτο, *that never before had this river become passable.* —

44. εἰ μὴ τότε, *except then, emphasizing οὐπώποτε.* — 45. κατέκασεν: plup. in force. — ἵνα μὴ διαβῇ: see 791. — 46. ἐδόκει . . . βασιλεύσονται, *it seemed accordingly that it (the lowness of the river) was a divine intervention (718), and that the river had plainly retired before Cyrus (769), because he was about to be king.*

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 5; ἀπο-, 1, 8, 22, 25, 26, 27, 32, 49; δια-, 20, 24, 31, 33, 39, 41, 46; ἐξ-, 48; ἐπι-, 35 (*bis*), 52; κατα-, 11, 45; προ-, 17, 45; συν-, 14, 39; ὑπο-, 8, 47), according to the directions given in Lesson CXXI.

LESSON CXXIV.

Conditional Sentences: Future Conditions.

808.

EXERCISE.

1. *κἂν μὲν ἦ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἐπιθήσομεν αὐτῷ, ἢν δὲ φύγῃ, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα.* 2. *εἰ οὖν ὀρώην ὑμᾶς σωτήριόν τι βουλευομένους, ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς ὑμᾶς.* 3. *οὕτω¹ γὰρ ἂν ὑμεῖς ἀπολελυμένοι τῆς αἰτίας εἴητε.*

¹ *In this way, or if this should happen, representing the protasis.*

4. ἐγὼ ἐθέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς, ἂν ἐμοὶ ὦν δέομαι ὑπηρετήσητε καὶ τάλαντον μισθὸν πορίσητε. 5. νῦν ἂν, εἰ βούλοιο, σύ τε ἡμᾶς ὀνήσαιοι καὶ ἡμεῖς σέ μέγαν ποιήσαιμεν. 6. καίτοι εἰ ἅμα τ' ἐλεύθερος εἴης καὶ πλούσιος γένοιο, τίνος ἂν δέοιο; 7. τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἐλοίμην ἂν ἀντὶ ὧν¹ ἔχω πάντων. 8. εἰ δὲ ἄθλα προτιθείη τις, πολὺ ἂν πλείους διὰ τοῦτο ἐμπορεύοντο. 9. οὐδ' εἰ πάντες ἔλθοιεν Πέρσαι, πλήθει γε οὐχ² ὑπερβαλοίμεθ' ἂν τοὺς πολεμίους. 10. ἂν δέ τις ἀνθιστῇται, σὺν ὑμῖν πειρᾶσόμεθα χειροῦσθαι. 11. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν με ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπαινοίῃ, εἰ ἐξελαύνοιμι τοὺς εὐεργέτας. 12. οὐκ ἴμεν,³ ἔὰν μή τις ἡμῖν χρήματα διδῶ. 13. ἦν οὖν σωφρονῆτε, τοῦτον τᾶναντία⁴ ποιήσετε ἢ τοὺς κύνας ποιοῦσι· τοὺς μὲν γὰρ κύνας τοὺς χαλεποὺς τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας διδέασι, τὰς δὲ νύκτας ἀφιᾶσι, τοῦτον δέ, ἦν σωφρονῆτε, τὴν νύκτα μὲν δήσετε, τὴν δὲ ἡμέραν ἀφήσετε. 14. καὶ ἔὰν μὲν ἢ πρᾶξις ἢ παραπλησίᾳ οἶαπερ⁵ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρήτο Κῦρος τοῖς ξένοις, ἐπώμεθα καὶ ἡμεῖς· ἔὰν δὲ μείζων ἢ πρᾶξις τῆς πρόσθεν φαίνεται, ἀξιῶμεν πεισθέντα ἡμᾶς πρὸς φιλιᾶν ἀφιέναι. 15. ἔὰν καλῶς καταπράξω ἐφ' ᾧ στρατεύομαι, ὑμᾶς κατὰξω οἴκαδε. 16. Κῦρος δὲ τοῖς Κίλιξι δίδωσι τὰ ἥρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἦν που ἐντυγχάνωσιν, ἀπολαμβάνειν. 17. καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν⁶ μὲν ἂν εἶην τίμιος, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὧν⁷ οὐκ ἂν ἰκανὸς εἶην οὗτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι οὗτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. 18. ἔὰν δὲ μὴ διδῶ πλοῖα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτῶμεν Κῦρον· ἔὰν δὲ μὴδὲ ἡγεμόνα διδῶ, συνταττώμεθα τὴν ταχίστην. 19. βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπιῶν⁸ Κύρου λαβεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν. 20. οὕτω γὰρ καὶ ἐπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ ἐποίμεθα καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν. 21. ἄνδρες, ἔὰν μοι πεισθῇτε, τῶν ἄλλων πλεον προτιμή-

¹ See 725.

² Not even if all, etc., not even then, etc.

³ See p. 274⁴.

⁴ See 738.

⁵ See note on 789, 21.

⁶ The phrase implies the protasis, with you, i.e. if I should be with you.

⁷ Conditional, i.e. if I should be.

⁸ I.e. if I should leave.

σεσθε στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. 22. ἦν μὲν γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἔπεσθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἰτιοὶ εἶναι· ἦν δ' ἀποψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἄπιμεν ἅπαντες τοῦμπαλιν.

Review 265, 266, 267, 296.

Examine 1, 10, 12, 13, 15, 21, 22.

Review 272 a.

Examine 4, 14, 16, 18.

Observe that here the apodosis is not expressed by the fut. indic., but by other future forms, namely, by the infin. (4, 16) and subjv. (14, 18).

Review 273.¹

Such conditional sentences are designated as *Suppositions of the Third Class* (III.).

Examine 2, 5, 6, 8, 9, 11.

Review 299 a and 300.

Such conditional sentences are designated as *Suppositions of the Fourth Class* (IV.).

Examine 3, 7, 17, 19, 20.

Observe that here the protasis is not expressed by the opt. with εἰ, but is contained in a participle (17, 19, 20),² or is implied in an adv. (3) or in some other part of the sent. (17),³ or is even altogether omitted (7).⁴

809.

EXERCISE.

1. For if we take this height, those above the road⁵ will not be able to remain. 2. He would gladly give them guides, if they should wish to go away. 3. For if they see you dispirited, they will all be cowardly. 4. What shall we suffer, if we yield and get in the power of the king? 5. If they should receive pledges, they would come. 6. If the king fights within ten days, I will give you ten talents. 7. For if we should besiege this city, we should take it. 8. And we shall

¹ The fut. indic. with εἰ is often used for the subjv. with εἴην in future conditions, as a still more vivid form of expression.

² See 379.

³ See p. 104¹⁰.

⁴ See p. 104¹⁴.

⁵ οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ. See p. 83⁹.

not be able to pass by, unless we cut off the enemy. 9. If the horsemen arrive before the battle, we shall be victorious. 10. If I should escape the notice of these (men), I should be saved; but¹ if I should be taken, I should suffer death. 11. If therefore we make the peace, we shall dwell in the city in² great safety. 12. If therefore we should have arms, we should make use also of our valour; but¹ if we should surrender these, we should lose our lives also.

¹ For the correlation of the two parts of the sentence, cf. 808, 1 above.

² *μετά* with the gen.

LESSON CXXV.

Reading Lesson.

810.

ANABASIS I. v. 1-7.

The march is continued from the river Araxes through the desert of Arabia along the northern bank of the Euphrates (1). The horsemen hunt the wild animals in which the plain abounds (2, 3). The army reaches Corsote, which has been abandoned by its inhabitants, on the river Mascas (4). Thence Cyrus rapidly marches thirteen days through the desert. Many of the beasts of burden perish from hunger (5). Grain failing, the soldiers live upon flesh (6). Once during this time the wagons are stuck in the mud, and Cyrus bids Glus and Pigres to take part of the barbarian force and aid in getting them out (7).

v.

έντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίᾱς τὸν Εὐ- 1
φράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους
πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε. ἐν τούτῳ
δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδίον ἅπαν ὁμαλὲς
5 ὥσπερ θάλαττα, ἀψινθίου δὲ πλήρες· εἰ δέ τι καὶ
ἄλλο ἐνῆν ὕλης ἢ καλάμου, ἅπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη

4. ἅπαν: cf. 263, I. 3. — 6. ἅπαντα, if there was anything else, they were all, etc. Cf. 706, 23, 24, and note. — ἦσαν: see 90. This plur. occurs

ὥσπερ ἀρώματα· δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν ἐνῆν, θηρία δὲ 2
 παντοῖα, πλείστοι ὄνοι ἄγριοι, πολλαὶ δὲ στρουθοὶ
 αἱ μεγάλαι· ἐνήσαν δὲ καὶ ὠτίδες καὶ δορκαδες·
 10 ταῦτα δὲ τὰ θηρία οἱ ἵππεῖς ἐνίοτε ἐδίωκον. καὶ
 οἱ μὲν ὄνοι, ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες ἔστα-
 σαν· πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων ἔτρεχον θάττον· καὶ
 πάλιν, ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν οἱ ἵπποι, ταῦτόν ἐποίουν,
 καὶ οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ διαστάντες οἱ ἵππεῖς
 15 θηρῶεν διαδεχόμενοι. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἀλισκομέ-
 νων ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, ἀπαλώτερα δέ.
 στρουθὸν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν 3
 ἱππέων ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο· πολὺ γὰρ ἀπέσπα φεύ-
 γουσα, τοῖς μὲν ποσὶ δρόμῳ, ταῖς δὲ πτέρυξιν
 20 αἴρουσα ὥσπερ ἰστίῳ χρωμένη. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας
 ἂν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ, ἔστι λαμβάνειν· πέτονται
 γὰρ βραχὺ ὥσπερ πέρδικες καὶ ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύ-
 ουσι. τὰ δὲ κρέα αὐτῶν ἡδιστα ἦν. πορευόμενοι 4
 δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρᾳς ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν
 25 Μάσκᾱν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. ἐνταῦθα
 ἦν πόλις ἐρήμη, μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ Κορσωτή·
 περιερρεῖτο δ' αὕτη ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκᾱ κύκλῳ.
 ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
 ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρισκαίδεκα 5
 30 παρασάγγας ἐνενήκοντα τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν ἐν

frequently in Xenophon. — 7. δένδρον: emphatic by its position. — 8. πλείστοι, *very many* (453). — 11. ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι, *whenever anybody pursued*. So in l. 13, ἐπεὶ . . . ἵπποι, *whenever they came near*. — ἔστασαν: see 697. — 14. οὐκ ἦν, *it was impossible*. — εἰ μὴ . . . θηρῶεν: see 804. — 19. τοῖς μὲν . . . χρωμένη, *plying its feet in running* (775) and *raising and using its wings like a sail*. δρόμῳ and αἴρουσα (379) express the manner. — 21. ἂν τις . . . ἀνιστῇ: see 803. — 27. Μάσκᾱ: Doric gen. Cf. 795, 19. —

δεξιᾷ ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλᾱς. ἐν τού-
 τοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώλετο
 ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν
 δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ψιλὴ ἦν ἅπανσα ἡ χώρα· οἱ δὲ ἐνοι-
 35 κούντες ὄνους ἀλέτᾱς παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ὀρύττοντες
 καὶ ποιοῦντες εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦγον καὶ ἐπώλουν καὶ
 ἀνταγοράζοντες σῖτον ἔζων. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὃ 6
 σῖτος ἐπέλιπε, καὶ πρίασθαι οὐκ ἦν εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ
 Λυδία ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ Κύρου βαρβαρικῷ, τὴν καπί-
 40 θην ἀλεύρων ἢ ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. ὃ δὲ
 σίγλος δύναται ἐπτὰ ὀβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιωβόλιον Ἀτ-
 τικούς· ἡ δὲ καπίθη δύο χοίνικας Ἀττικὰς ἐχῶρει.
 κρέα οὖν ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο. ἦν 7
 δὲ τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν οὓς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυ-
 45 νεν, ὁπότε ἡ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο διατελέσαι ἡ
 πρὸς χιλόν. καὶ δὴ ποτε στενοχωρίᾱς καὶ πηλοῦ
 φανέντος ταῖς ἀμάξαις δυσπορεύτου ἐπέστη ὁ
 Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαι-

33. ἄλλο, *besides*. — 35. ὄνους ἀλέτᾱς, *mill-stones*. From the ass, as a beast of burden, the term ὄνος came to have various derived meanings, as here *the upper mill-stone*. — παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν: note the acc. and cf. 751, 3. — 38. καὶ . . . ἦν, *it was impossible to purchase it*. — 39. τὴν καπίθην . . . σίγλων, *namely the capithe of flour or barley* (gen. of material, 743, 4) *for four sigli* (758). — 41. δύναται, *is worth*, with acc. — 43. κρέα ἐσθίοντες: *by eating* (379) *flesh, i.e. on flesh*. — ἦν . . . οὓς: equivalent to ἡσάν τινες τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν οὓς, *there were some of these marches* (743, 6) *which, etc.* In the same way ἔστιν οἱ signifies simply *some* (= *sunt qui* in Lat.). The phrases became fixed and the verb remained in the sing., without regard to the number of the unexpressed subj. Translate ἦν οὓς simply *some*. The acc. is cognate (732) after ἤλαυνεν. — 44. μακροὺς: predicate adj. — 45. ὁπότε βούλοιτο, *whenever he wished*. — 46. καὶ δὴ ποτε, *and once in particular*, adding a special fact. — στενοχωρίᾱς . . . φανέντος: gen. absol. (762). The partic. agrees with the nearer subst. — 47. ταῖς ἀμάξαις δυσπο-

μονεστάτοις καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα λαβόν-
 50 τας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συνεκβιβάζειν τὰς
 ἀμάξας.

ρεύτου, *hard for the wagons (769) to get through.* — 50. στρατοῦ: see 743, 6 a.

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 21; ἀντι-, 37; ἀπο-, 18, 22, 24, 31, 32; δια-, 14, 15, 43, 45; ἐν-, 6, 7, 9, 34; ἐξ-, 1, 29, 50; ἐπι-, 28, 38, 47; περι-, 27; προ-, 11; συν-, 50), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXVI.

Relative and Temporal Sentences: Conditional Relative.

811.

EXERCISE.

1. ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. 2. τούτους τοὺς σταθμοὺς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυνεν, ὁπότε ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο διατελέσαι ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. 3. ἐγὼ γὰρ ὁκνοίην ἂν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν ἂ ἡμῖν δοίη. 4. τῷ δὲ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύομεν ὃν ἂν Κῦρος δίδῃ. 5. καὶ οἱ ὄνοι, ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες ἔστασαν· καὶ πάλιν, ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν οἱ ἵπποι, ταῦτόν ἐποίου. 6. τοὺς πλείστους ἔθαψαν· οὓς δὲ μὴ ἡύρισκον, κενοτάφιον αὐτοῖς ἐποίησαν. 7. τῷ δὲ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἔλησθε πείσομαι. 8. ὃ τι δ' ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα λέγῃ ἀναγγείλατε δεῦρο. 9. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ τὰ ἄρματα προῖδοιεν, δίσταντο. 10. ὅτῳ οὖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, ἐπικῆρωσάτω ὡς τάχιστα. 11. καὶ σὺν ἱμῖν ὃ τι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. 12. ὅπου στρατηγὸς σῶς εἴη, τὸν στρατηγὸν παρεκάλουν. 13. οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὃ τι ἂν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις γίγνηται. 14. εἰς τὰ πλοῖα τοὺς τε ἀσθενοῦντας ἐνεβίβασαν καὶ τῶν σκευῶν ὅσα μὴ ἀνάγκη ἦν ἔχειν. 15. ὡς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς, οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε. 16. ἔπεμπε γὰρ βίκους οἴνου, ὁπότε πάνυ ἡδὺν λάβοι. 17. οὕτινος δ'

ἀν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι τεύξεσθε Κύρου. 18. ἂ μὴ ἐβούλετο δοῦναι, οὐκ ἂν ἔδωκεν. 19. τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν πειρώμενοι ταύτης τῆς τάξεως βουλευσόμεθα ὅτι ἂν ἀεὶ κράτιστον δοκῇ εἶναι. 20. εἰ οὖν νῦν ἀποδειχθεῖη τίνας χρὴ ἡγεῖσθαι τοῦ πλαισίου, οὐκ ἂν ὁπότε οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλθοιεν βουλευέσθαι ἡμᾶς δέοι. 21. ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστῳ δώσω πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὴν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἤκωμεν. 22. οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ ἐπειδὴν ἀπιέναι βούληται τις συλλαβὼν αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ.

812. Relative clauses are to be distinguished according to the nature of the antecedent of the relative.

a. The antecedent of a relative is either *definite* or *indefinite*. It is definite when the relative refers to a definite person or thing, or to some definite time, place, or manner; it is indefinite when no such definite person, thing, time, place, or manner is referred to. Both definite and indefinite antecedents may be either expressed or understood.

b. A relative clause with an indefinite antecedent has a conditional force, and is called a conditional relative clause. Its negative is always *μή*.

c. A conditional relative clause differs from an ordinary conditional clause not in force but only in form. It substitutes for the ordinary conditional particle *εἰ*, *if*, a relative pronoun or adverb, but with the added idea of the person, thing, time, place, or manner contained in the relative. *E.g.* in the sentences given above *ὅσῳ*, *to whomsoever*, in 1, is equivalent to *εἰ τινι*, *if to anybody*; *ὁπότε*, *whenever*, in 2, to *εἰ ποτε*, *if ever*, *ἃ*, *which*, in 3, to *εἰ ταῦτα*, *etc.*

Review 797, and the observation which precedes it.

Examine 1, 6, 10, 14, conditional relative sentences of the First Class, expressing particular suppositions (I. 1).

Review 803, and the observation which precedes it.

Examine 13, 22, conditional relative sentences of the First Class, expressing present general suppositions (I. 2 a).

Review 804, and the observation which precedes it.

Examine 2, 5, 9, 12, 16, conditional relative sentences of the First Class, expressing past general suppositions (I. 2 b).

Review 798, and the observation which precedes it.

Examine 18, a conditional relative sentence of the Second Class (II.).

Review 273, and 272 a.

Examine 4, 7, 8, 11, 15, 17, 19, 21, conditional relative sentences of the Third Class (III.).

Review 300, and 299 a.

Examine 3, 20, conditional relative sentences of the Fourth Class (IV.).

813. Rule of Syntax. — Conditional relative sentences have *four* classes, two (I., II.) containing *present* and *past*, and two (III., IV.) containing *future* conditions, which correspond to those of ordinary protasis. Class I. has two forms, one (1) with particular suppositions, the other (2) with general suppositions, either present (a) or past (b).

814. The following table gives a summary classification of both ordinary conditional and conditional relative sentences : —

I. *Present and Past suppositions implying nothing as to the fulfilment of the condition* : —

1. *Particular* : —

Protasis has $\epsilon\iota$	}	with indicative.
Conditional relative has relative		
Apodosis has	}	any form of the verb.
Antecedent clause has		

2 a. *Present General* : —

Protasis has $\epsilon\acute{\alpha}\nu$	}	with subjunctive.
Conditional relative has relative with $\alpha\acute{\nu}$		
Apodosis has	}	present indicative.
Antecedent clause has		

2 b. *Past General* : —

Protasis has $\epsilon\iota$	}	with optative.
Conditional relative has relative		
Apodosis has	}	imperfect indicative.
Antecedent clause has		

II. *Present and past suppositions implying that the condition is not or was not fulfilled:—*

Protasis has $\epsilon\iota$	} with past tense of indicative.
Conditional relative has relative	
Apodosis has	} past tense of indicative with $\alpha\nu$.
Antecedent clause has	

III. *Future suppositions in the more vivid form:—*

Protasis has $\epsilon\acute{\alpha}\nu$	} with subjunctive. ¹
Conditional relative has relative with $\alpha\nu$	
Apodosis has	} any future form.
Antecedent clause has	

IV. *Future suppositions in the less vivid form:—*

Protasis has $\epsilon\iota$	} with optative.
Conditional relative has relative	
Apodosis has	} optative with $\alpha\nu$.
Antecedent clause has	

815.

EXERCISE.

1. But we must suffer whatever shall seem best to the gods.
 2. And I should fear to follow the guide whom he might give us.
 3. But if anybody shall hinder us from our journey, we shall fight it out with him² as bravely as possible.³
 4. He (is) a worthy friend, to whomsoever he is a friend.
 5. But I grant you, said he, whichever you wish to choose.
 6. And in company with you I shall be in honour wherever I shall be.
 7. He hunted on horseback, whenever he wished to exercise himself.
 8. Whenever anybody wished to go away, he permitted him.⁴
 9. And whenever it was necessary to cross a bridge, each company hastened.
 10. (Those) who⁵ were not able to escape perished.
 11. Whatever⁶ arrows were taken were useful to the bowmen.
 12. Whenever it shall be (the) proper time, I will come.

¹ See p. 375¹.

² Use $\sigma\delta\tau\omicron\varsigma$, and see 773.

³ Lit., as we shall be able most bravely.

⁴ Cf. 811, 22 above.

⁵ Use $\theta\sigma\omicron\varsigma$.

⁶ Lit., how many (use $\sigma\pi\delta\sigma\omicron\varsigma$) of the arrows (743, 6 a).

LESSON CXXVII.

Reading Lesson.

816.

ANABASIS I. v. 8-13.

The work progresses slowly, and Cyrus bids the noblest of the Persians about him to lay hold. With splendid discipline, they instantly obey (8). The march of Cyrus across the desert has been rapid, for he hopes by a quick and vigorous attack to take the king at a disadvantage (9). On the way the soldiers cross the Euphrates, on rafts made of skins, to Charmande, where they purchase food and wine (10). Here a dispute arises between the troops of Clearchus and Menon, and Clearchus narrowly escapes being killed (11, 12). Greatly incensed, he calls his men to arms, and advances against Menon's division, who are thrown into consternation by his attack (13).

v.

ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ σχολαίως ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ 8
ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσας τοὺς
κρατίστους συνεπισπεῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξας. ἔνθα δὲ
μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας ἦν θεάσασθαι. ῥίψαντες
6 γὰρ τοὺς πορφυροῦς κἀνδῦς ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος
ἐστηκώς, ἔεντο ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις περὶ νίκης
καὶ μάλα κατὰ πρᾶνοῦς γηλόφου, ἔχοντες τούτους
τε τοὺς πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας καὶ τὰς ποικίλας ἀνα-
ξυρίδας, ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχή-
10 λοις καὶ ψέλια περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθὺς δὲ σὺν
τούτοις εἰσπηδήσαντες εἰς τὸν πηλὸν θᾶπτον ἢ ὥς

1. ὥσπερ ὀργῇ, just as if in anger (775). — 6. ὥσπερ . . . νίκης, just as one would run (i.e. in a foot-race at the public games) to get the victory. — 7. καὶ μάλα . . . γηλόφου, even down a very (μάλα) steep hill. — ἔχοντες . . . ἀναξυρίδας, having on both the costly tunics and coloured trousers which they are in the habit of wearing. τούτους marks the dress as one well known. — 11. θᾶπτον . . . ἂν ᾤετο, more quickly than (omit ὥς, as, in

- τις ἂν ᾤετο μετεώρους ἐξεκόμισαν τὰς ἀμάξας. τὸ δὲ σύμπαν δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος ὡς σπεύδων πᾶσαν 9 τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ διατρίβων ὅπου μὴ ἐπισιτισμοῦ
- 15 ἔνεκα ἢ τῶς ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου ἐκαθέζετο, νομίζων, ὅσῳ μὲν θάπτον ἔλθοι, τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι, ὅσῳ δὲ σχολαίτερον, τοσούτῳ πλεόν συναγείρεσθαι βασιλεῖ στράτευμα. καὶ
- 20 συνιδεῖν δ' ἦν τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν ἢ βασιλέως ἀρχὴ πλήθει μὲν χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰσχυρὰ οὔσα, τοῖς δὲ μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενής, εἴ τις διὰ ταχέων τὸν πόλεμον ἐποιεῖτο. πέρᾱν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποτα-
- 10 μού κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς ἦν πόλις εὐδαί-
- 25 μων καὶ μεγάλη, ὄνομα δὲ Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἡγόραζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, σχεδίαις

English) *one would have thought*. This indic. with ἂν expresses past possibility, and is called the potential indic. — 12. μετεώρους ἐξεκόμισαν: *i.e. lifted and carried out*. — 13. δῆλος . . . σπεύδων, *Cyrus himself* (ὡς with the partic.) *showed that he was making haste*. — 14. ὁδόν: see 735. — οὐ διατρίβων: with δῆλος ἦν, *it was evident he did not delay*. — ὅπου μὴ, *except where*, lit. *where not*. — 16. ὅσῳ . . . ἀπαρασκευοτέρῳ, *the (ὅσῳ) more quickly he came (to Babylon) the (τοσούτῳ) less prepared, etc.* — 17. τοσούτῳ . . . στράτευμα, *the greater the army that was collecting for the king*. Note the tense of συναγείρεσθαι, expressing an action in progress. — 18. καὶ . . . οὔσα, *and further (καὶ) an attentive observer (τῷ . . . τὸν νοῦν, 771) could see that the king's empire was powerful in respect to extent of territory and number of inhabitants*. συνιδεῖν is introduced as subj. of ἦν, *it was possible to see*, and the natural const. to follow would be τὴν ἀρχὴν ἰσχυρὰν οὔσαν (p. 250⁵). But after τὸν νοῦν the writer's point of view changes, and the rest of the sentence is constructed as if for συνιδεῖν ἦν the nearly equivalent δῆλη ἦν (cf. l. 13) had been used. — 20. πλήθει: a dat. of manner (775) used to express the *respect*. — 21. τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι: pf. infin. used with the art. as a subst. in the dat., like πλήθει above. — 22. δυνάμεις: subj. of διεσπᾶσθαι. — εἰ . . . ἐποιεῖτο: *i.e. in case of a vig-*

διαβαίνοντες ὧδε. διφθέρᾱς ᾗς εἶχον στεγάσματα
 ἐπίμπλασαν χόρτου κούφου, εἶτα συνήγον καὶ
 συνέσπων, ὥς μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης τὸ ὕδωρ.
 30 ἐπὶ τούτων διέβαινον καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,
 οἶνόν τε ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου πεπονημένον τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ
 φοίνικος καὶ σίτον μελίνης· τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν ἐν τῇ
 χώρα πλείστον. ἀμφιλεξάντων δέ τι ἐνταῦθα τῶν 11
 τε τοῦ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρ-
 35 χου, ὁ Κλέαρχος κρίνᾱς ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος
 πληγᾶς ἐνέβαλεν· ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ
 στράτευμα ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται
 ἐχαλέπαινον καὶ ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυρῶς τῷ Κλεάρχῳ.
 τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν διά- 12
 40 βασιν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμενος τὴν
 ἀγορὰν ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ
 Μένωνος στρατεύματος σὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐ-
 τόν· Κῦρος δὲ οὐπω ἦκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι προσήλανε·
 τῶν δὲ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν ξύλα σχίζων τις ὥς
 45 εἶδε Κλέαρχον διελαύνοντα, ἔησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ
 οὗτος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἤμαρτεν· ἄλλος δὲ λίθῳ καὶ
 ἄλλος, εἶτα πολλοί, κραυγῆς γενομένης. ὁ δὲ 13
 καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα, καὶ εὐθὺς

orous attack. — 27. διφθέρᾱς, χόρτου: see 749. — στεγάσματα, as coverings
 (716). — 29. ὥς μὴ ἄπτεσθαι: the infin. with ὥς (as with ὥστε) expresses
 result. — κάρφης: see 746. — 31. ἐκ, ἀπό: respectively out of, off of. —
 32. τοῦτο . . . πλείστον, for this (thing) was very abundant in the coun-
 try. τοῦτο is neut., although referring to μελίνης. — 33. ἀμφιλεξάντων τι,
 having had some dispute (732). — 35. ἀδικεῖν . . . Μένωνος, that Menon's
 soldier (probably two soldiers, one of Menon, the other of Clearchus,
 had begun the quarrel) was in the wrong (354). — 42. σὺν . . . αὐτόν, with
 few about him, lit. with those about him few, ὀλίγοις being a pred. adj. —
 46. αὐτοῦ: see 746. — λίθῳ: sc. ἔησι. — 48. καταφεύγει, flees for help. —

παραγγέλλει εἰς τὰ ὄπλα· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ὀπλί-
 50 τὰς αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευσε μείναι τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ
 γόνατα θέντας, αὐτὸς δὲ λαβὼν τοὺς Θρᾶκας καὶ
 τοὺς ἱππέας, οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι
 πλείους ἢ τετταράκοντα, τούτων δὲ οἱ πλείστοι
 Θρᾶκες, ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ' ἐκείνους
 55 ἐκπεπλήχθαι καὶ αὐτὸν Μένωνα, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ
 τὰ ὄπλα· οἱ δὲ καὶ ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ
 πράγματι.

50. τὰς ἀσπίδας . . . θέντας: an attitude of defence. The shield was set in rest on the left knee, which was slightly advanced. — 54. ὥστ' ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλήχθαι: cf. 553, I. 19. — 56. ἔστασαν: see 697. — 57. πράγματι: dat. of cause (775).

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀμφι-, 33; ἀπο-, 41; δια-, 21, 27, 30, 45; εἰς-, 11; ἐν-, 36; ἐξ-, 12, 55; ἐπι-, 3; κατα-, 15, 40, 48; παρα-, 49; προσ-, 19, 43; συν-, 3, 18, 19, 28, 29), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXVIII.

Relative and Temporal Sentences: Relative Clauses expressing Purpose, Result, or Cause, and Temporal Particles signifying *Until* and *Before*. — Consecutive Clauses with ὥστε.

817.

EXERCISE.

1. οὐποτ' ἐπὶ αἰσιν ἕως ἂν τὸ σύνθημα παρέλθῃ. 2. καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπρᾳττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλὴν οὐκ ἠσθάνετο. 3. οὐδαμόθεν αὐτοὺς ἀφίσταν πρὶν παραθεῖεν ἄριστον. 4. ἔσονται σπονδαί, μέχρι ἂν βασιλεῖ ταῦτα διαγγελθῇ. 5. ἡγεμόνα αἰτῶμεν Κῦρον, ὅστις διὰ φιλιᾶς τῆς χώρᾳς ἀπάξει. 6. ἕως οἱ πλείστοι

γνώμην ἀπεφάναντο, ἡσυχίαν ἂν ἤγουν. 7. καὶ ἐὰν ἐγὼ φαίνωμαι ἀδικεῖν, οὐ χρή με ἐνθένδε ἀπελθεῖν πρὶν ἂν δῶ δίκην. 8. καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦτον μεταξύ τῶν στρατευμάτων ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οὐκ ἐφάνησαν οἱ πολέμιοι. 9. ἡγεμόνες ἤκουσιν οἱ ὑμᾶς, ἐὰν σπουδαὶ γένωνται, ἄξουσιν ἔνθεν ἔξετε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 10. ἀλλὰ διατρίψω ἔστ' ἂν ἤκωσιν οἱ ἄγγελοι. 11. ἄτοπα λέγεις, ὅς γε κελεύεις ἐμὲ καθηγεῖσθαι. 12. ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστῳ δώσει τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῇ μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας εἰς Ἰωνίαν πάλιν. 13. ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου γηλόφου οὐκ ἐκίνησαν τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς πρὶν ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς τοῦ πλαισίου ἀνήγαγον πελταστὰς πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. 14. τίς οὕτω μαίνεται ὅστις οὐ βούλεταί σοι φίλος εἶναι ; 15. οὐκ αἰσχύνεσθε, οἵτινες ἡμᾶς προδεδωκότες σὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἔρχεσθε ; 16. καὶ παρήγαγον ἐν τρίσιν ἡμέραις ἕως ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρια κατέστησαν τοὺς Ἑλλήνας. 17. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἰσχυρῶς κατέτεινεν, ἔστε διεπράξατο πέντε μὲν στρατηγούς, ἑνᾶν, εἴκοσι δὲ λοχαγούς. 18. καὶ πολεμῶν διεγένετο Κλέαρχος μέχρι Κῦρος ἐδεήθη τοῦ στρατεύματος. 19. ἐκάστοτε περιεμένομεν ἕως βασιλεὺς παρελεύνοι. 20. διατελοῖν ἂν πολεμῶν ἕως τὰς ναῦς παραδοίησαν. 21. πάντας οὕτω διατιθεῖς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. 22. ὑμᾶς χρή διαβῆναι τὸν ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἑλλήνες ἀποκρινοῦνται. 23. ἐὰν καλῶς καταπράξω ἐφ' ἃ στρατεύομαι, οὐ πρόσθεν παύσομαι πρὶν ἂν ὑμᾶς καταγάγω οἴκαδε.

Examine the relative clauses in 5, 9 (two illustrations).

Observe that these clauses express *purpose* and have the fut. indic.

818. Rule of Syntax. — The relative with the future indicative may express a *purpose*.

Examine the relative clause in 14.

Observe that this clause expresses *result* and has the indicative with οὐ.

819. Rule of Syntax. — The relative, generally with the indicative, may express a *result*. The negative is *οὐ*.

Examine the relative clauses in 11, 15.

Observe that these clauses express *cause* and have the indicative.

820. Rule of Syntax. — A relative clause may express a *cause*. The verb is in the indicative, as in causal sentences (781).

Examine the temporal clauses in 16, 17, 18.

Observe that these clauses are introduced by temporal particles meaning *until*, that they refer to the past, and have the indicative.

821. Rule of Syntax. — When *ἕως, ἔστε, and μέχρι, until*, refer to a definite past action, they take the indicative, usually the aorist.

Examine the temporal clauses in 1, 4, 6, 10, 12, 19, 20.

Observe that these clauses follow the construction of conditional relative sentences.

822. Rule of Syntax. — The particles *ἕως, ἔστε, and μέχρι, until*, follow the construction of conditional relatives in both forms of future conditions, in unfulfilled conditions, and in present and past general suppositions.

Examine the clauses with *πρίν* in 3, 7, 13, 22, 23.

823. Rule of Syntax. — The particle *πρίν, before, until*, is followed by the infinitive, and also (like *ἕως*) by the finite moods.

a. With the infinitive *πρίν* means *before*, and the leading clause is affirmative. With the finite moods *πρίν* means *before* or *until*, and the leading verb is negative or implies a negative.

Examine the consecutive clauses with *ὥστε* in 2, 8, 21.

824. Rule of Syntax. — *ὥστε, so as, so that*, is used with the infinitive and with the indicative to express a *result*.

a. With the infin. (the negative being *μῆ*), the result is stated as one which the action of the leading verb *tends* to produce; with the indicative (the negative being *οὐ*), as one which that action *actually* does produce.

825.

EXERCISE.

1. They waited until the men left the city. 2. They are getting arms together with which to defend themselves. 3. Let the truce be in force until I come. 4. He had not come; so that the Greeks were anxious. 5. He was not willing to go, until his wife persuaded him. 6. They command the heralds to wait until the general shall be at leisure. 7. But the rest of the soldiers struck¹ and stoned and reviled the man until they compelled (him) to take² his shield and proceed. 8. Generals have come to collect an army for Cyrus. 9. When they had heard this, they obeyed and crossed before the rest made answer. 10. He will not stop fighting against his opponents until he has consulted with you. 11. You are happy, since you have ancestral gods. 12. For I have triremes, so as to capture their boat. 13. I shall delay in Sardis until the general arrives. 14. If I had known this, I should have waited until the general had arrived. 15. We will go forward until we join Cyrus.

LESSON CXXIX.

Reading Lesson.

826.

ANABASIS I. v. 14-17 and vi. 1-5.

Proxenus comes up and endeavours to persuade Clearchus not to make an attack (15). Then Cyrus comes (16), and in sharp and vigorous language shows the Greeks the folly and danger of a quarrel (16). Clearchus comes to his senses, and withdraws his troops (17).

As the army advances, traces of the king's cavalry are observed. Orontas, a Persian noble, turning traitor to Cyrus, offers to go forward with a thousand horse and cut off the cavalry that are laying the country waste by fire. To this Cyrus consents (1, 2). Orontas

¹ Use the historical pres.

² Use the partic.

then writes to the king, saying that he intends to desert with his command. But his messenger betrays him and carries the letter to Cyrus. He arrests the traitor and summons seven Persian noblemen and Clearchus to his tent to try him (3, 4). Clearchus afterwards relates how the trial was conducted (5).

V.

ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος (ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος προσιὼν καὶ 14
τάξις αὐτῷ ἐπομένῃ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν) εὐθὺς οὖν εἰς τὸ
μέσον ἀμφοτέρων ἄγων ἔθετο τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐδεῖτο
τοῦ Κλέαρχου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' ἐχαλέπαιεν
5 ὅτι αὐτοῦ ὀλίγου δεήσαντος καταλευσθῆναι πράως
λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος, ἐκέλευσέ τε αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ
μέσου ἐξίστασθαι. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἐπῆει καὶ Κῦρος 15
καὶ ἐπύθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα· εὐθὺς δ' ἔλαβε τὰ παλτὰ
εἰς τὰς χεῖρας καὶ σὺν τοῖς παροῦσι τῶν πι-
10 στῶν ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε.
Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες 16
Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἴστε ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. εἰ γάρ τινα ἀλλή-
λοις μάχην συνάψετε, νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ
ἐμέ τε κατακεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ
15 ὕστερον· κακῶς γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων
πάντες οὗτοι οὓς ὁρᾶτε βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι
ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων. ἀκούσας 17
ταῦτα ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο· καὶ παυσά-
μενοι ἀμφοτέροι κατὰ χώραν ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα.

1. ἔτυχε . . . προσιὼν, *happened to be coming on later* (p. 250³). —
2. τάξις: *sc.* ἔτυχεν. — οὖν: resumes the narrative, after the parenthetical
statement. — 5. ὅτι . . . λέγοι, *because, when he (i.e. Clearchus) had barely
escaped, lit. had wanted little (749) of (762), being stoned to death, he had
spoken lightly.* — 12. εἰ συνάψετε: see p. 375¹. — 14. κατακεκόψεσθαι: *cf.*
553, I. 22. — 15. κακῶς ἐχόντων: equivalent to *ἐὰν τὰ ἡμέτερα κακῶς ἔχη.*
See 762 and p. 104¹⁰.

20 ἐντεῦθεν προϊόντων ἐφαίνετο ἵχνη ἵππων καὶ 1
κόπρος· εἰκάζετο δ' εἶναι ὁ στίβος ὡς δισχιλίων
ἵππων. οὗτοι προϊόντες ἑκάον καὶ χιλὸν καὶ εἴ τι
ἄλλο χρήσιμον ἦν. Ὀρόντας δὲ Πέρσης ἀνὴρ
γένει τε προσήκων βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγό-
25 μενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν ἐπιβουλεύει Κύρῳ,
καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσας, καταλλαγεῖς δέ. οὗτος 2
Κύρῳ εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίῃ ἱππέας χιλίους, ὅτι τοὺς
προκατακάοντας ἱππέας ἢ κατακάνοι ἂν ἐνεδρεύ-
σας ἢ ζῶντας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἂν ἔλοι καὶ κωλύσειε
30 τοῦ κάειν ἐπιόντας, καὶ ποιήσειεν ὥστε μήποτε
δύνασθαι αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα
βασιλεῖ διαγγεῖλαι. τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι
ταῦτα ἐδόκει ὠφέλιμα εἶναι, καὶ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν
λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων. ὁ 3
35 δ' Ὀρόντας νομίσας ἐτοίμους εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς
ἱππέας γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλεῆα ὅτι ἥξοι
ἔχων ἱππέας ὡς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους· ἀλλὰ φρά-
σαι τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ ἱππεῦσιν ἐκέλευεν ὡς φίλιον αὐτὸν
ὑποδέχεσθαι. ἐνὴν δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς
40 πρόσθεν φιλίᾳς ὑπομνήματα καὶ πίστεως. ταύ-

20. ἐντεῦθεν: from the camp opposite Charmande. — προϊόντων: sc. αὐτῶν (762). — 24. γένει: cf. 816, 20. — τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος, *reckoned, in matters pertaining to war* (733). — 27. εἰ αὐτῷ δοίῃ: the apodosis to this protasis (300) contains four verbs. The particle ἂν is expressed with the first two and is to be supplied with the others. — ὅτι: the position is unusual. We should expect to find ὅτι just after εἶπεν. — 30. τοῦ κάειν ἐπιόντας, *from attacking* (ἐπιόντας limits the subj. of κάειν) and burning (753). — ὥστε μήποτε δύνασθαι: see 824 a. — 33. ταῦτα: subj. of ἐδόκει. — 34. ἡγεμόνων: i.e. the Persian commanders. — 36. ὅτι . . . πλείστους, (to the effect) that he would come with as many horsemen as he should be

την τήν ἐπιστολήν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρί, ὡς ᾤετο.
 ὁ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ δίδωσιν. ἀναγνοὺς δὲ αὐτὴν ὁ 4
 Κῦρος συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόντᾱν, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς
 τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσᾱς τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν
 45 περὶ αὐτὸν ἑπτὰ, καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατη-
 γοὺς ἐκέλευεν ὀπλίτᾱς ἀγαγεῖν, τούτους δὲ θέσθαι
 τὰ ὄπλα περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκηνήν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα
 ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὀπλίτᾱς.
 Κλέαρχον δὲ καὶ εἴσω παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον, ὃς 5
 50 γε καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκει προτιμηθῆναι
 μάλιστα τῶν Ἑλλήνων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξῆλθεν, ἐξήγ-
 γειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ Ὀρόντᾱ ὡς ἐγέ-
 νετο· οὐ γὰρ ἀπόρρητον ἦν. ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον
 ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου ᾔδε.

able (to come with), i.e. with as many as possible. — 50. καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις, not only to him (i.e. Cyrus) but also to the rest (i.e. of the Persians). That is, it was generally known to the Persians that Clearchus was the most prominent (note προτιμηθῆναι) man among the Greeks. — 51. τῶν Ἑλλήνων: with μάλιστα (743, 6 a). — 53. οὐ γὰρ ἀπόρρητον ἦν: i.e. ὡς ἡ κρίσις ἐγένετο.

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 42; δια-, 32; ἐν-, 28, 39; ἐξ-, 7, 51 (*bis*); ἐπι-, 7, 25, 30; κατα-, 5, 14, 26, 28 (*bis*); παρα-, 9, 11, 49; προ-, 20, 22, 28, 50; προσ-, 1, 24; συν-, 13, 43 (*bis*); ὑπο-, 39), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXX.

Indirect Discourse: Simple Sentences after ὅτι and ὡς and in Indirect Questions.

827. Examine the following:—

γράφω ἐπιστολήν, *I am writing a letter*; λέγει ὅτι (or ὡς) γράφει ἐπιστολήν, *he says that he is writing a letter*.

τί βούλεσθε; *what do you want?* ἐρωτᾷ τί (ὃ ὃ τι) βούλεσθε, *he asks what you want.*

τί εἴπω; *what shall I say?* ἀπορεῖ τί (ὃ ὃ τι) εἶπη, *he is at a loss what to say.*

Observe in these examples that a simple sentence, in the form of a statement or question, is quoted *indirectly*, i.e. that its original words are made to conform to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted. This involves in some of these examples a change in the *person* of the verb of the quoted sentence. Whether the person changes or not depends on the connexion, as in English. It involves also the use of *ὅτι* or *ὥς*, *that*, to introduce the indirect quotation and may involve a change of the interrogative pronoun to the general relative (570) in the indirect question.

828. Examine the following:—

ἔλεξεν ὅτι (ὃ ὥς) γράφοι ἐπιστολήν, *he said that he was writing a letter.*

ἠρώτησε τί (ὃ ὃ τι) βούλοισθε, *he asked what you wanted.*

ἠπόρει τί (ὃ ὃ τι) εἶποι, *he was at a loss what to say.*

Observe that now, with a change of the verb in the principal clause from a *primary* to a *secondary* tense (61), the *mood* of the verb of the indirect quotation or question has changed to the optative, but that the *tense* remains unchanged.

829.

EXERCISE.

1. τούτῳ πείσομαι, ἵνα εἰδῇτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι. 2. ἀλλὰ ἰόντων, εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰς περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. 3. ὥστε ὥρᾱ ἐστὶ λέγειν ὅ τι τις γινώσκει ἄριστον εἶναι. 4. βουλεύομαι ὅπως σε ἀποδρῶ.¹ 5. δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἡμᾶς ἐρωτᾶν Κῦρον τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι. 6. οὐκ ἔχω² ὅ τι δῶ ἐκάστῳ τῶν φίλων. 7. ἀποκρίνεται ὅτι ταῦτ' ἂν ἐποίησεν ἡμᾶς ἰδών.³ 8. λέγει ὥς περὶ πλείστου ἂν ποιήσαιτο σῶσαι ἡμᾶς. 9. ἐπεδείκνυ ὥς εὖηθες εἶη

¹ In the original, πῶς σε ἀποδρῶ; (785).

² I do not know.

³ Equivalent to εἰ εἶδε (379).

ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν. 10. ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλεῆ ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς. 11. ἡρώτων Κῦρον τί βούλοιτο τῇ στρατιᾷ χρῆσθαι. 12. τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἡπόρουν ὁπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν.¹ 13. εἶπον ὅτι οὕτω σωτηρίᾳ ἂν τύχοιεν. 14. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβροκόμᾱν ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι. 15. τοῖς δὲ στρατιώταις ὑποψία ἦν ὅτι Κῦρος ἄγει πρὸς βασιλεῆ. 16. διέβησαν τὸν ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅτι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κίρῳ. 17. ἡποροῦμεν εἰ κατακαύσωμεν τὰς ἀμάξας. 18. διέβαλλε τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ. 19. διήλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκοι αὐτοὺς Κῦρος τριήρεσι. 20. Μένων δέ, πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται, πότερον ἔψονται Κίρῳ ἢ οὐ, συνέλεξε τὸ αὐτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων. 21. ὁ ἄγγελος ἔλεξεν ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἴη Σύννεσις τὰ ἄκρα. 22. οἱ δὲ Θαφακηνοὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐπόποθ' οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς διαβατὸς γένοιτο περὶ εἰ μὴ τότε. 23. ἡρώτων εἰ δοῖεν ἂν τούτων τὰ πιστά. 24. καὶ Κῦρος ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλεῆ μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα. 25. καὶ οὐποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ προδοὺς ὑμᾶς τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίαν εἰλόμην. 26. ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται τοὺς στρατιώτας βιάσασθαι ἰέναι. 27. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν ὅτι πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον πονηρὰ τάξις εἴη. 28. ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγοιντο ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 29. ἐβόᾱ καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται.

In examining the sentences cited below, convert each indirect quotation and question into its original Greek form.

Examine the indirect quotations and questions in 1, 2, 3, 5, 25.

Observe that each of these follows a verb in a primary tense, and retains its own verb in its original mood (the indicative without ἄν) and tense.

¹ In the original, πόθεν λαμβάνωμεν;

Examine the indirect quotations and questions in 9, 10, 11, 18, 19, 21, 22, 24, 27.

Observe that each follows a verb in a secondary tense, and that its verb has been changed from the indicative (without *ἄν*) to the optative, but that the tense of its verb remains unchanged.

Observe that in translating these optatives into English, we use a *past* tense of the *indicative*, or, if they refer to the future, a form with *would*.

Examine the indirect quotations and questions in 14, 15, 16, 20, 26, 29.

Observe that each follows a verb in a secondary tense, but retains its verb in its original mood (the indicative without *ἄν*) and tense.

Observe that we translate the quoted verbs as if optatives (see above).

830. Rule of Syntax. — After a primary tense, an indicative (without *ἄν*), in indirect quotations after *ὅτι* and *ὡς* and in indirect questions, retains both its mood and its tense. After a secondary tense, it is either changed to the same tense of the optative or retained in the original mood and tense.

Examine the indirect questions in 4, 6.

Observe that each follows a primary tense and retains its own verb in its original mood (785) and tense.

Examine the indirect questions in 12, 28.

Observe that each follows a secondary tense, and that its verb has been changed from the subjunctive (785) to the optative, but that the tense of its verb remains unchanged.

Examine the indirect question in 17.

Observe that this follows a secondary tense, but retains its verb in its original mood (785) and tense.

831. Rule of Syntax. — After a primary tense, an interrogative subjunctive, when indirectly quoted, retains both its mood and its tense. After a secondary tense, it is either changed to the same tense of the optative or retained in the same tense of the subjunctive.

Examine the indirect quotations and question in 7, 8, 13, 23.

Observe that each retains its verb in the original mood and tense (an indicative or an optative with ἄν), whether the verb which it follows is primary or secondary.

832. Rule of Syntax. — After both primary and secondary tenses, an indicative or optative with ἄν, in indirect quotations with ὅτι or ὥς and in indirect questions, retains both its mood and its tense (with ἄν).

833.

EXERCISE.¹

1. I said that we had many fair² hopes of safety. 2. But he answered that he had deliberated with respect to this. 3. For they now knew that he was leading (them) against his brother. 4. And he shouted that the king was coming on with a great army. 5. For the satrap said that Cyrus had plotted against the king. 6. But they deliberated how³ they should drive the men away from the hill. 7. He asked whither he should turn. 8. They knew that their fear was groundless. 9. He said that he would arrest him and put (him) to death. 10. But he did not indicate what he would do. 11. But he was deliberating whether⁴ they should send some, or⁴ should all go to the camp. 12. And (on) being asked what he needed, he said, "I shall need two thousand leathern bags." 13. They were at a loss what they should call this. 14. For they perceived that the enemy were among the baggage. 15. Thereupon he answered that they would⁵ die sooner than give up their arms. 16. Silanus said to Cyrus that the king would not fight within ten days.

¹ In translating these sentences into Greek, determine first of all what the quoted sentence would be in the direct form in *English*, so as to get the original tense. In Greek the tense does not change when the sentence is indirectly quoted, but

in English a change of tense is the rule after secondary tenses.

² many and fair.

³ πῶς.

⁴ Cf. 829, 28.

⁵ The original affirmation was, πρόσθεν ἂν ἀποθάνοιμεν, etc.

LESSON CXXXI.

Reading Lesson.

834.

ANABASIS I. vi. 6-11.

Cyrus, addressing the council, tells how Orontas on two previous occasions proved false to him, but was again received into favour (6, 7). He then asks the prisoner if he has received any injury from him that would justify his present attempt. Orontas acknowledges that he has not, and that he has no reason to expect further mercy (8). Cyrus then refers the case to those present, and Clearchus advises that the culprit be put to death, in which opinion the others concur, and Orontas is led away (9, 10). He is taken to the tent of Artapates, and is never seen again, alive or dead (11).

VI.

Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν ὁ
βουλευόμενος, ὃ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ
πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο πράξω περὶ Ὀρόντου του-
τουί. τοῦτον γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδω-
κεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ δὲ ταχθεὶς, ὡς ἔφη
αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν
ἐμοὶ ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἀκρόπολιν καὶ ἐγὼ
αὐτὸν προσπολεμῶν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ
τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι, καὶ δεξιὰν ἔλα-

3. **τουτουί**: the demonstratives may be emphasized by adding *-t*. The strengthened form implies a gesture, *Orontas here*. — 6. **αὐτός**: simply emphasizes (516) the subj. of ἔφη, which is here to be rendered by an emphatic *he*. Cyrus discredits the statement. — 7. **καὶ ἐγὼ ἐποίησα**, and *I brought it about*, dependent on ἐπεὶ in l. 5. The principal clause begins with μετὰ ταῦτα in l. 10. — 8. **αὐτόν**: not the obj. of προσπολεμῶν, which takes the dat. Cyrus began to say ἐγὼ αὐτόν (*him*, emphatic) προσπολεμῶν (partic. of manner) ἐποίησα τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι (αὐτόν being subj. of παύσασθαι), but changed the construction, so that αὐτόν seems to stand

- 10 βον καὶ ἔδωκα, μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ Ὀρόντᾱ, ἔστιν ἡ
 ὃ τι σε ἠδίκησα ; ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐ. πάλιν δὲ ὁ
 Κῦρος ἠρώτᾱ, Οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὥς αὐτὸς σὺ ὁμο-
 λογεῖς οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικούμενος, ἀποστὰς εἰς
 Μῦσοὺς κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώρᾱν ὃ τι ἐδύνω ;
 15 ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντᾱς. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὁπότ' αὖ
 ἔγνως τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν τῆς
 Ἀρτεμίδος βωμὸν μεταμέλεις τέ σοι ἔφησθα καὶ
 πείσᾱς ἐμὲ πιστὰ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι καὶ ἔλαβες
 παρ' ἐμοῦ ; καὶ ταῦθ' ὁμολόγει ὁ Ὀρόντᾱς. Τί
 20 οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρί-
 τον ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας ; εἰπόντος
 δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντᾱ ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθεὶς, ἠρώτησεν ὁ
 Κῦρος αὐτόν, Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος γε-
 γενῆσθαι ; Ἡ γὰρ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντᾱς. ἐκ
 25 τούτου πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος, Ἐτι οὖν ἂν γένοιο
 τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός ;
 ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί
 γ' ἂν ποτε ἔτι δόξαιμι. πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε ὅτι
 τοῖς παροῦσιν, Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε,
 30 τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει. ὕμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε,

loosely with ἐποίησα (*made him so that he thought it best, etc.*). — 10. μετὰ ταῦτα, *since that*, the pledge given and received. There is an abrupt change of address from the council to Orontas, which is helped by the insertion of ἔφη, *said he*. — ἔστιν . . . ἠδίκησα, *is there any wrong which (732) I have done you ?* — 11. ὅτι οὐ : *sc. ἐστὶ (or εἴη)*. At the end of a sentence οὐ is accented. — 14. ὃ τι ἐδύνω, *in what (733) you were able*. — 16. δύναμιν : the context shows that this means here *lack of power, weakness*. — 17. μεταμέλεις σοι, *that you repented (354)*. — 21. ἐπιβουλεύων . . . γέγονας, *are you so manifestly plotting against me ?* — εἰπόντος Ὀρόντᾱ : see 762. — 22. ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθεὶς : *sc. ἐπιβουλεύων αὐτῷ φανερὸς γέγονε*. — 24. Ἡ γάρ, (*I confess*) *for in truth, etc.* — ἀνάγκη : *sc. ἐστίν*. — 27. ὅτι :

ἀπόφηναι γνώμην ὃ τι σοι δοκεῖ. Κλέαρχος δὲ
 εἶπε τάδε. Συμβουλευώ ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον
 ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς μηκέτι δέη τοῦ-
 τὸν φυλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ σχολή ἢ ἡμῖν τὸ κατὰ
 35 τοῦτον εἶναι τοὺς ἐθελοντάς φίλους τούτους εἶ
 ποιεῖν. ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ ἔφη καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους 10
 προσθέσθαι. μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, κελεύοντος Κύρου
 ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τὸν Ὀρόντᾱν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἅπαν-
 τες ἀναστάντες καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς· εἶτα δὲ ἐξῆγον
 40 αὐτὸν οἷς προσετάχθη. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἷπερ
 πρόσθεν προσεκύνουν, καὶ τότε προσεκύνησαν,
 καίπερ εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον ἄγοιτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ 11
 εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνὴν εἰσήχθη τοῦ πιστο-
 τάτου τῶν Κύρου σκηπτούχων, μετὰ ταῦτα οὔτε
 45 ζῶντα Ὀρόντᾱν οὔτε τεθνηκότα οὐδεὶς εἶδε πώποτε
 οὐδὲ ὅπως ἀπέθανεν οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς ἔλεγεν· εἰκαζον
 δὲ ἄλλοι ἄλλως· τάφος δὲ οὐδεὶς πώποτε αὐτοῦ
 ἐφάνη.

here introduces a *direct* quotation, and is not to be translated. — 34. **τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι**, so far as this fellow is concerned. The infin. may stand *absolutely* in parenthetical phrases, but in certain instances of this use it seems superfluous, as here **τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι** means no more than **τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον** (lit. *as regards what pertains to him*). **τό** with the word for thing understood (p. 83⁹) is an accusative of specification (733). — 35. **ἐθελοντάς**: note the accent (a subst., not *ἐθέλοντας*, partic. of *ἐθέλω*). — 38. **ἔλαβον** . . . **Ὀρόντᾱν**: verbs signifying to *take hold of* may be followed by the simple gen. (746), or, as here, by an object acc. with a gen. of the part taken hold of. — 39. **καί**, even. — 40. **οἷς προσετάχθη**, to whom it had been appointed, sc. *ἐξάγειν*. — 42. **καίπερ εἰδότες**, although they knew (379).

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 39; ἀπο-, 11, 13, 27, 31, 46; εἰς-, 43; ἐπι-, 21; ἐξ-, 39; μετα-, 17; παρα-, 1, 29; προσ-, 8, 37, 40, 41 (*bis*); συν-, 32), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXXII.

Indirect Discourse: Infinitive and Participle in Indirect Quotations.

835.

EXERCISE.

1. ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προησθάνετο τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους.¹ 2. ὥστε βασιλεὺς Τισσαφέρνει ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα Κῦρον ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν. 3. Τισσαφέρνης μείζονα ἡγείτο εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισιδᾶς τὴν παρασκευὴν. 4. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύαν καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμάσαι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ. 5. Κῦρος δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος. 6. τοῦ Εὐφράτου τὰς πηγὰς ἐλέγετο οὐ πρόσω τοῦ Τίγρητος εἶναι. 7. αὐτῷ Κῦρον ἐπιστρατεύοντα πρῶτος² ἡγγεῖλα. 8. τριήρεις ἤκουε περιπλεύσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίᾶς εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμῶν ἔχοντα. 9. νομίζει Κῦρος ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἡδικῆσθαι. 10. οἶδα γὰρ ὑμῖν τοὺς Μῦσοὺς λῦπηροὺς ὄντας. 11. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι ταῦτα τὰ βασίλεια. 12. οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν τοὺς τοῦ Μένωνος στρατιώτας ἀρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικίων, οἱ δὲ οὐ δυναμένους εὐρεῖν τὰς ὁδοὺς ἀπολέσθαι. 13. σύνοιδα γὰρ ἐμαντῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν. 14. τοῖς Αἰγυπτίοις μάλιστα ὑμᾶς νῦν γιγνώσκω τεθῦμωμένους. 15. καὶ ἐλέγετο Ἐπύαξα Κῦρῳ δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. 16. οἱ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ πρόσω· ὑπώπτευν γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλέᾳ ἰέναι· μισθωθῆναι δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν. 17. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κίρου ἐπιδείξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ. 18. Κλέαρχος δοκεῖ γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ πολεμικός. 19. τί οὖν ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας; 20. οὐδὲ πόρρῳ δοκοῦμέν μοι Κίρου καθῆσθαι. 21. καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὧν οὐκ ἂν

¹ Sc. τινάς.² Cf. 779, 4, and note.

ἱκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὐτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι οὐτ' ἂν ἐχθρόν ἀλέξασθαι. 22. εὖ συμβουλευσᾶς ἐφάνη ὁ ἀνὴρ. 23. οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιαῦτα παθεῖν οἷα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσκειαν.¹ 24. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ᾗσθητο τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς διαβεβεγκότας, ᾗσθη. 25. ὑπισχνεῖται αὐτοῖς μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρὶν ἂν αὐτοὺς καταγάγῃ οἴκαδε. 26. ἐπειδὴ δὲ τοὺς βαρβάρους οὐ προσιόντας ἐώρων οἱ Ἕλληνες, ᾗσθησαν. 27. ᾗδειν γὰρ ἡμᾶς οὕτως ἂν ποριζομένους² τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 28. εἰ οὖν ὀρώην ὑμᾶς σωτήριόν τι βουλευομένους, ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς ὑμᾶς. 29. ἐπιβουλεύων ἡμῖν φανερός ἐστι. 30. τούτους δὲ ἔφασαν οἰκεῖν ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη καὶ πολεμικοὺς εἶναι, καὶ βασιλέως οὐκ ἀκούειν, ἀλλὰ ἐμβαλεῖν ποτε εἰς αὐτοὺς βασιλέα.

836. Indirect quotations are expressed not only by *ὅτι* or *ὥς* and a finite verb (830), but also by the *infinitive*, and sometimes by the *participle*.

In examining the sentences cited below, convert each indirect quotation into its original form.

Examine the infinitives in 2, 3, 9, 12 (κατακοπῆναι, ἀπολέσθαι), 16, 21 (ἂν εἶναι, ἂν εἶναι), 23, 25, 30.

Observe that these infinitives follow verbs of *saying* or *thinking* or the like, that they represent indicatives, or optatives with *ἂν* (21, 23), in the original, and that the tenses have not been changed. If the original had *ἄν*, the infinitive retains it.

Review 354.

Examine 4, 6, 11, 15, 17 (δεηθῆναι), 18, 20.

837. Many verbs of this class, especially λέγω in the passive and δοκέω, *seem*, while allowing both the personal and the impersonal construction, are generally used personally.

838. Of the three common verbs meaning to *say*, —

a. φημί regularly takes the infinitive in indirect discourse. Examine 12, 16, 30.

¹ See 787.

² The original was, ἂν ποριζοίμεθα.

b. *εἶπον* regularly takes *ὅτι* or *ὥς* with the indicative or optative. Examine 829, 13.

c. *λέγω* allows either construction, but in the active voice it generally takes *ὅτι* or *ὥς*. Examine 829, 8, 21, 22, 24.

Examine the participles in 1, 5, 7, 8 (*ἔχοντα*), 10, 13, 14, 19 (*ἐπιβουλεύων*), 22, 24, 26, 27, 28, 29, and note the meaning of the verbs after which they are quoted, and the mood and tense of the originals of the participles.

839. Rule of Syntax. — With many verbs the participle stands in indirect discourse, each tense representing the corresponding tense of a finite mood.

a. If the original had *ἄν*, the participle retains it. Examine 27.

b. Such verbs are chiefly those signifying to *see, hear, learn, perceive, know, be ignorant of, remember, forget, show, appear, prove, acknowledge*, and *ἀγγέλλω, announce*. Here belong also the phrases *δῆλός εἰμι* and *φανερὸς εἰμι, φανερὸς γίνομαι*, used personally.

c. Most of these verbs may also take a clause with *ὅτι* or *ὥς* in indirect discourse.

Examine the negatives with the infinitives and participles in 6, 16, 21, 25, 26, 30.

840. The regular negative of the infinitive and participle in indirect discourse is *οὐ*, but *μή* sometimes irregularly occurs.

841.

EXERCISE.¹

1. For he heard that Cyrus was² in Cilicia. 2. And he promised³ that he would deliver over the Greeks to him. 3. He said that he had been ordered⁴ by my brother to war with me. 4. The wife of the king is said to have taken refuge there. 5. For I know that pledges have been given. 6. For I knew that the soldiers had provisions. 7. And the great king dug⁵ this trench when he learned⁶ that Cyrus was

¹ See p. 396¹.

² Use the participle in translating this exercise into Greek whenever the principal verb is one of those named in 839 b.

³ See p. 250⁶.

⁴ He said, *ἐτάχθην*.

⁵ *made*.

⁶ Use *ἐπειδή* and the indic. of *πυνθάνομαι*.

marching against (him). 8. I saw that you were suffering harm and were not¹ able to retaliate. 9. For they did not know that he was dead. 10. They therefore announce that in that case the Greeks would retreat. 11. And the Greeks knew the enemy wished to go away. 12. Do you think,² Cyrus, that your brother will fight? 13. Let it not yet be manifest that we³ have set out for home. 14. He accordingly showed⁴ that the satrap had broken the truce. 15. He is conscious that he has broken⁵ the truce.

LESSON CXXXIII.

Reading Lesson.

842.

ANABASIS I. vii. 1-10.

Cyrus proceeds through Babylonia, and at the end of the third day's march reviews his troops (1). The next morning he receives information about the King's army, and summons the Greek generals and captains to council (2). He expresses his confidence in them (3), describes the manner of a Persian onset, and promises to reward them magnificently in case of victory (4). Gaulites says there are doubts as to the sincerity of Cyrus and his ability to fulfil his promises (5). Cyrus thereupon describes the extent of country he hopes to conquer, and promises a crown to each Greek (6, 7). The Greeks are much encouraged by these assurances (8). Cyrus gives his decided opinion that his brother will not refuse to fight (9). The numbers of the Greeks and barbarians in the army of Cyrus are given (10).

VII.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνιᾶς στα- 1
θμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δώδεκα. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ
σταθμῷ Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται τῶν Ἑλλήνων
καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας·

¹ Cf. 835, 26 above.

² Use οἶμαι.

³ Cf. 835, 29 above.

⁴ Use δείκνυμι.

⁵ Cf. 835, 13 above, and note the use of the reflexive pron.

5 ἐδόκει γὰρ εἰς τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἔω ἤξειν βασιλεῶ σὺν
 τῷ στρατεύματι μαχόμενον· καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέ-
 αρχον μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως ἡγεῖσθαι, Μένωνα δὲ
 τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ εὐωνύμου, αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ
 διέταξε. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ 2
 10 ἡμέρᾳ ἦκοντες αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως
 ἀπήγγελλον Κύρῳ περὶ τῆς βασιλέως στρατιᾶς.
 Κύρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχα-
 γούς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνεβουλεύετό τε πῶς ἂν τὴν
 μάχην ποιοῖτο καὶ αὐτὸς παρῆναι θαρρύνων τοι-
 15 ᾶδε. ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἀνθρώπων ἀπορῶν 3
 βαρβάρων συμμάχους ὑμᾶς ἄγω, ἀλλὰ νομίζων
 ἀμείνους καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν βαρβάρων ὑμᾶς
 εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο προσέλαβον. ὅπως οὖν ἔσεσθε
 ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς κέκτησθε καὶ ἧς
 20 ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω. εὖ γὰρ ἴστε ὅτι τὴν ἐλευ-
 θερίαν ἐλοίμην ἂν ἀνθ' ὧν ἔχω πάντων καὶ ἄλλων
 πολλαπλασίων. ὅπως δὲ καὶ εἰδῆτε εἰς οἶον ἔρ- 4
 χεσθε ἀγῶνα, ὑμᾶς εἰδὼς διδάξω. τὸ μὲν γὰρ
 πλῆθος πολὺ, καὶ κραυγὴ πολλῇ ἐπιᾶσιν· ἂν δὲ
 25 ταῦτα ἀνάσχησθε, τᾶλλα καὶ αἰσχίνεσθαί μοι

5. ἐδόκει, *he thought*. — εἰς . . . ἔω: cf. 175, I. 9. — 6. μαχόμενον: fut. partic. expressing purpose (379). — καὶ ἐκέλευε . . . διέταξε: the Greeks were next to the river, Cyrus and his barbarian troops on their left. — 13. πῶς ἂν . . . μάχοιτο: see 832. — 14. παρῆναι . . . τοιαῦδε, *exhorted and encouraged them as follows*. — 18. διὰ τοῦτο: resumes νομίζων, *because I thought, etc., on this account*. — ὅπως ἔσεσθε: an object clause (792) after σκοπεῖτε, *see to it*, to be supplied. — 19. ἧς, ἧς: see 725 and 756. — 21. ἀνθ' ὧν . . . πάντων, *in preference to all that (725) I have*. — 22. ὅπως εἰδῆτε: a final clause (278). — εἰς οἶον . . . ἀγῶνα, *into what sort of a struggle you are going (571 a)*. — 23. τὸ πλῆθος: sc. ἐστί. — 25. ταῦτα: i.e. their numbers and outcry. — τᾶλλα . . . ἀνθρώπους, *as to all else, I feel even ashamed*

δοκῶ οἴους ἡμῖν γνῶσεσθε τοὺς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας
 ἀνθρώπους. ὑμῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν ὄντων καὶ εὐτόλμων
 γενομένων, ἐγὼ ὑμῶν τὸν μὲν οἴκαδε βουλόμενον
 ἀπιέναι τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτὸν ποιήσω ἀπελθεῖν, πολ-
 30 λούς δὲ οἶμαι ποιήσειν τὰ παρ' ἐμοὶ ἐλέσθαι ἀντὶ
 τῶν οἴκοι. ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης παρὼν φυγὰς Σά- 5
 μιος, πιστὸς δὲ Κύρῳ, εἶπε, Καὶ μήν, ὦ Κῦρε,
 λέγουσί τινες ὅτι πολλὰ ὑπισχνεῖ νῦν διὰ τὸ ἐν
 τοιούτῳ εἶναι τοῦ κωδύνου προσιόντος, ἂν δὲ εὖ
 35 γένηται τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαί σέ φασιν· ἔνιοι δὲ
 οὐδ' εἰ μεμνήῃ τε καὶ βούλοιο, δύνασθαι ἂν ἀπο-
 δοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνεῖ. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἔλεξεν ὁ θ
 Κῦρος, Ἄλλ' ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἡ ἀρχὴ
 ἡ πατρώᾳ πρὸς μὲν μεσημβρίαν μέχρι οὗ διὰ

(lit. *seem to myself even to be ashamed* — see 837) *as to what sort of men* (ἀνθρώπους with emphasized contempt at the end of the sentence) *you will discover those in our country to be* (ὄντας, 839). The indirect question οἴους . . . ἀνθρώπους (571 a) follows αἰσχύνεσθαι. Its direct form would be ποίους γνωσόμεθα τοὺς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους; — 27. ὑμῶν . . . γενομένων: gen. absol. (762), the participles expressing condition (379). Freely rendered the thought is, *only do you be men* (cf. l. 18) *and prove yourselves bold of spirit, and I will make, etc.* — 28. ὑμῶν: with τὸν βουλόμενον (743 a), which is the subj. of ἀπελθεῖν. — 29. τοῖς οἴκοι, *to those at home* (771). — 31. τῶν οἴκοι: neut. Cf. τὰ παρ' ἐμοὶ just above. — Γαυλίτης . . . εἶπε: probably at the suggestion of Cyrus. — 33. διὰ . . . προσιόντος, *because you are* (lit. *on account of your being* — cf. 524, I. 19) *at such (a critical point) of the danger* (743 a) *that is approaching*. — 35. τι: the reference to his present undertaking is purposely vague. — μεμνήσεσθαι: fut. perf., serving as a simple fut. to μέμνημαι (642, 6). — ἔνιοι δέ: sc. φασίν. — 36. οὐδ' εἰ . . . δύνασθαι ἂν, *not even if you should remember, etc., would you be able* (354). — μεμνήῃ: perf. opt. mid. sec. per. sing. of μιμνήσκω. The perf. opt. mid. is ordinarily compound (307 d), but a few vowel verbs form it directly from the stem. Thus, μέμνημαι, *remember*, opt. μεμνήμην, μεμνήῃ, μεμνήτο, etc. (for μεμνη-μην, μεμνη-ιο, μεμνη-ιτο). — 38. ἔστι πρὸς μεσημβρίαν, *is* (i.e. *extends*) *toward the south*. For ἔστι, see 188 a. — 39. μέχρι

40 καῦμα οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν ἄνθρωποι, πρὸς δὲ ἄρ-
 κτον μέχρι οὗ διὰ χειμῶνα· τὰ δ' ἐν μέσῳ τούτων
 πάντα σατραπεύουσιν οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι.
 ἦν δ' ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν, ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους 7
 φίλους τούτων ἐγκρατεῖς ποιῆσαι. ὥστε οὐ τοῦτο
 45 δέδοικα μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ὃ τι δῶ ἐκάστῳ τῶν φίλων,
 ἂν εὖ γένηται, ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ἱκανοὺς οἷς δῶ.
 ὑμῶν δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ στέφανον ἐκάστῳ χρῦ-
 σοῦν δώσω. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοὶ τε 8
 ἦσαν πολὺ προθυμότεροι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐξήγ-
 50 γελλον. εἰσῆσαν δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν οἳ τε στρατηγοὶ
 καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τινὲς ἀξιούντες εἰδέναι τί
 σφίσιν ἔσται, ἔαν κρατήσωσιν. ὁ δὲ ἐμπιμπλὰς
 ἀπάντων τὴν γνώμην ἀπέπεμπε. παρεκελεύοντο 9
 δὲ αὐτῷ πάντες ὅσοι περ διελέγοντο μὴ μάχεσθαι,
 55 ἀλλ' ὅπισθεν ἑαυτῶν τάττεσθαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ καιρῷ
 τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ᾧ δέ πως ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον· Οἶει
 γάρ σοι μαχεῖσθαι, ὦ Κῦρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν; Νὴ Δί',
 ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἶπερ γε Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος
 ἐστι παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός, οὐκ ἀμαχεῖ ταῦτ' ἐγὼ
 60 λήψομαι. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ ἀριθμὸς 10
 ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἄσπῖς μυριά καὶ τετρα-

οὗ, *to where*, lit. *to what (place)*, οὗ being the gen. sing. neut. of the rela-
 tive ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, and μέχρι an improper prep. — 44. τούτων: see 760. — τοῦτο:
 introduces the object clause (280) μὴ οὐκ ἔχω, *this, namely, that I shall*
not know, etc. — 45. ὃ τι δῶ: see 831. — 46. ἂν εὖ γένηται: sc. τὰ πράγ-
 ματα. — ἀλλὰ . . . δῶ, *but that I shall not have enough to whom to give.* —
 48. οἱ δέ: the generals and captains (see l. 12) present at the council. —
 53. παρεκελεύοντο . . . τάττεσθαι: had Cyrus followed this advice, the
 whole course of Persian history might have been changed. — 61. ἄσπῖς,
shield, i.e. men, as we say 'a thousand horse.' — The sum total of the

κοσιᾶ, πελτασταὶ δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πεντακόσιοι,
τῶν δὲ μετὰ Κύρου βαρβάρων δέκα μυριάδες καὶ
ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἄμφι τὰ εἴκοσι.

Greeks here given does not tally with the numbers previously given. The reason for the discrepancy is uncertain.

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 25; ἀπο-, 11, 29 (*bis*), 36, 53; δια-, 9, 54; εἰς-, 50; ἐν-, 52; ἐξ-, 1, 49; ἐπι-, 24; παρα-, 14, 31, 53; προσ-, 18, 34; συν-, 12, 13; ὑπο-, 33, 37), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXXIV.

Indirect Discourse: Indirect Quotation of Complex Sentences.

843.

EXERCISE.

1. ὁ δὲ Κύρος ὑπὶσχυεῖτο ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι δώσειν οὐ πρότερον ἔφερον.¹ 2. ἡξίουεν εἰδέναι τί σφίσιν ἔσται, ἂν κρατήσωσιν. 3. καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, ἂν μή τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῶ. 4. οὗτος δ' εἶπεν ὅτι φλυᾶροίη ὅστις λέγοι ἄλλως πως σωτηριᾶς ἂν τυχεῖν² ἢ βασιλέᾳ πείσῃς. 5. ὑπέσχετο αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειε τὸν στόλον, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. 6. ἐνόμιζε γάρ, ὅσῳ θάπτον ἔλθοι, τοσοῦτῳ ἀπαρασκευοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι. 7. ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστῳ δώσειν πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὴν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦκωσι, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῇ μέχρῃ ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἑλληνας εἰς Ἰωνίαν πάλιν. 8. οἱ δ' ἐαλωκότες ἔλεγον ὅτι τὰ πρὸς μεσημβρίαν³ τῆς⁴ ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα εἴη, δι' ἣσπερ ἦκοιεν. 9. τοῦτο δὲ δεῖ λέγειν, πῶς ἂν πορευοίμεθα τε ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα καί, εἰ μάχεσθαι δέοι, ὡς κράτιστα μαχοίμεθα.⁵ 10. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι περὶ

¹ Cyrus said, ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι δώσω οὐ πρότερον ἔφερετε.

² In the original ἂν τύχοιμι (838 c).

³ the (parts) to the south.

⁴ Sc. ὁδοῦ, and see 744.

⁵ ἂν belongs to μαχοίμεθα also.

σπονδῶν ἤκοιεν, ἄνδρες οὔτινες ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ ἀπαγγεῖλαι. 11. οἶδα αὐτοὺς τοῦτο ἂν ποιήσαντας,¹ εἰ ἐξήν.² 12. οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρῇ τις χρῶμαι, ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, συλλαβὼν καὶ αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσιλῶ. 13. ἂν δὲ εὖ γένηται τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαί σέ φᾶσιν· ἔνιοι δὲ οὐδ' εἰ μεμνήῳ τε καὶ βούλοιο, δύνασθαι ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνεῖ. 14. ἔλεγον ὅτι ἤκοιεν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες, οἱ αὐτούς, ἔαν σπονδαὶ γένωνται, ἄξουσιν ἔνθεν ἔξουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 15. Ὅρόν- τας ἔγραψεν ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλεῆς ὅτι ἤξοι ἔχων ἱππέας ὡς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους. 16. οὗτος Κύρῳ εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίῃ ἱππέας χιλίους, ὅτι τοὺς προκατακάοντας ἱππέας ἡ κατακάονοι ἂν ἐνεδρεύσας ἡ ζῶντας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἔλοι. 17. καὶ μὲν ἡ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη χρήζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἣν δὲ φύγη, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα.³ 18. οἱ δ' ὤκτειρον εἰ ἀλώσوينτο. 19. ὁ δ' ἐχαλέπαινεν ὅτι⁴ πρῶτος λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος. 20. λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμεν, ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοῖν αὐτόν. 21. Κύρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο, ὅπως βιασάμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους παρέλθοιεν, εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις πύλαις. 22. ἐδεῖτο αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλευσῇται. 23. εἰς δὲ δὴ εἶπε στρατηγούς μὲν ἐλέσθαι ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν· ἐλθόντας δὲ Κύρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα· ἔαν δὲ μὴ διδῶ ταῦτα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κύρον ὅστις διὰ φιλιᾶς τῆς χώρας ἀπάξει.

844. When a complex sentence, *i.e.* a sentence consisting of a principal and a dependent clause or clauses, is indirectly quoted, its *leading* verb follows the rules for simple sentences (830, 831, 832, 354, 839). But its *dependent* verbs are subject to the following law (845).

¹ In the original τοῦτο ἂν ἐποίησαν (839 a).

² had it been possible.

³ Observe the shift to *direct* discourse in the last clause.

⁴ because.

In examining the sentences cited below, convert each quoted complex sentence into its original form.

Examine the dependent verbs in 9 (δέοι), 11 (ἐξῆν), 12 (παρῆ, βούληται), 13 (γένηται, μεμνήο, βούλοιο, ὑπισχνεῖ).

Observe that the dependent clause here follows a primary tense, and that its verb has not changed its original mood and tense.

Examine the dependent verbs in 4 (λέγοι for λέγει), 5 (εἰ καταπράξειε for εἰάν καταπράξω, πρὶν καταγάγοι for πρὶν ἂν καταγάγω), 6 (ὅσῳ ἔλθοι for ὅσῳ ἂν ἔλθω), 8 (ἤκοιεν for ἤκετε).

Observe that the dependent clause here follows a secondary tense, that its verb was originally in the subjunctive or in a primary tense of the indicative, that it has been changed to the optative, but that its tense remains the same, and that, when the subjunctive becomes the optative, ἂν is dropped.

Examine the dependent verbs in 2 (κρατήσωσιν), 3 (διδῶ), 7 (ἤκωσι, καταστήσῃ), 10 (ἔσονται), 14 (γένωνται, ἄξουσιν, ἕξουσιν), 15 (δύνηται), 17 (ῆ, φύγῃ).

Observe that the dependent clause here follows a secondary tense, but that its verb has not changed its original mood and tense.

Examine the dependent verbs in 1 (ἐφέρον) and 16 (δοίῃ).

Observe that the dependent clause here follows a secondary tense, that its verb was originally in a secondary tense of the indicative or in the optative, and that it has not changed its mood and tense.

845. Rule of Syntax.—When a complex sentence is indirectly quoted, after primary tenses its *dependent* verbs retain their original mood and tense. After secondary tenses, dependent *primary* tenses of the indicative and all dependent subjunctives may either be changed to the *same tense* of the optative or retain their original mood and tense. When a subjunctive becomes optative, ἂν is dropped, εἰάν becoming εἰ, etc. Dependent *secondary* tenses of the indicative and dependent optatives remain unchanged.

a. One verb of the quoted complex sentence may be changed to the optative, while another is retained in the original mood. Examine 10, 14, 15.

Examine the dependent verbs in 18 (ἀλώσονται for ἀλώσιντο), 19 (λέγοι for ἔλεγε), 20 (εἰ δέοιτο for εἰάν δέηται), 21 (εἰ φυλάττειν for εἰάν φυλάττωσιν), 22 (συμβουλεύσῃται), 23 (βούλεται, διδῶ, ἀπάξει)

Observe that the clause to which the dependent clause is here attached is *not itself quoted*, but that nevertheless the dependent clause follows the rule in 845.

846. Rule of Syntax. — The principles of 845 apply also to any dependent clause after a secondary tense (even if the clause on which it depends is not quoted) which expresses indirectly the past thought of any person.

a. This construction is allowed after verbs of *emotion* (18), sometimes in causal sentences (19), after final clauses (20, 21), and after verbs of *commanding, advising, and the like with the infinitive* (22, 23).

847.**EXERCISE.¹**

1. And he promised him that if he would come he would make him a friend to Cyrus. 2. He said that if there was no objection² he wished to converse with them. 3. He said that if they should see you dispirited they would all be cowardly. 4. And he told (him) that just as soon as³ the expedition should come to an end he would immediately send him home. 5. He announced that if we had not come they would be proceeding against the king. 6. He said that he should delay until the king arrived. 7. But he said that he did not commend the man if he had done this. 8. And they said that the enemy were within in great numbers,⁴ and that they⁵ were striking our men. 9. And they said that they would burst open the gates if they did not open (them) of their own accord. 10. It was evident that they would elect him if anybody should put it to vote. 11. But he said he should dread to embark in the boats which Cyrus might give them. 12. He accordingly then asked who those were who (always) did⁶ whatever took place in battle.⁷

¹ See p. 396¹. The direction is here of special importance.

² *unless something hindered.*

³ *just as soon as, ἐπειδὴν* (or ἐπειδὴ) *τάχιστα.*

⁴ *in great numbers, πολλοί.* See also 720.

⁵ *and that they, i.e. who.*

⁶ *those who did, see 371.*

⁷ *ἐν ταῖς μάχαις.*

LESSON CXXXV.

Reading Lesson.

848. ANABASIS I. vii. 11-20 and viii. 1-3.

An account of the king's forces is given (11-13). Cyrus advances a day's march farther, and at midday comes to a deep trench dug by the king, but he succeeds in making his way past this (14-16). The king does not come to an engagement, and traces of his retreat are observed (17). Cyrus rewards the soothsayer Silanus (18). Concluding that the king has given up the intention of fighting, he proceeds with less caution (19, 20).

But near the station where he intends to halt for breakfast, Cyrus is met by Patagyas riding at full speed, who calls out that the king and his army are approaching (1). Great confusion ensues (2), and Cyrus gives orders for all to arm and fall into line (3).

VII.

τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ 11
 εἴκοσι μῦριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα διακό-
 σια. ἄλλοι δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἵππεῖς, ὧν
 Ἄρταγέρσης ἦρχεν· οὗτοι δ' αὖ πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασι-
 5 λέως τεταγμένοι ἦσαν. τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως στρατεύ- 12
 ματος ἦσαν ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες
 τέτταρες, τριάκοντα μῦριάδων ἕκαστος, Ἀβροκό-
 μάς, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύας, Ἀρβάκης. τούτων
 δὲ παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἑνενήκοντα μῦριάδες
 10 καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα·
 Ἀβροκόμας δὲ ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης ἡμέραις πέντε,
 ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐλαύνων. ταῦτα δὲ ἡγγελλον πρὸς 13

1. εἶναι: see 837.—3. ἄλλοι, besides. Cf. 810, 33.—4. αὖ, moreover.
 —11. μάχης: after ὑστέρησε (754), which implies comparison. Cf. the
 construction of ἐμοῦ after the adv. in 826, 14.—ἡμέραις: see 776.—

- Κῦρον οἱ αὐτομολήσαντες ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων παρὰ
 15 μέγαλον βασιλέως πρὸ τῆς μάχης, καὶ μετὰ τὴν
 μάχην οἱ ὕστερον ἐλήφθησαν τῶν πολεμίων ταῦτα
 ἡγγελλον. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν 14
 ἓνα παρασάγγας τρεῖς συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύ-
 ματι παντὶ καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ·
 ὥτετο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέᾳ·
 20 κατὰ γὰρ μέσον τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον τάφρος ἦν
 ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ὀργυιαὶ πέντε, τὸ δὲ
 βάθος ὀργυιαὶ τρεῖς. παρετέτατο δὲ ἡ τάφρος 15
 ἄνω διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας μέχρι
 τοῦ Μηδίᾳς τείχους. ἔνθα αἱ διώρυχες, ἀπὸ τοῦ
 25 Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ ρέουσιν· εἰσὶ δὲ τέτταρες, τὸ
 μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ
 πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν αὐταῖς σῖταγωγὰ· εἰσβάλλουσι δὲ
 εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, διαλείπουσι δ' ἐκάστη παρα-
 σάγγην, γέφυραι δ' ἔπεισιν. ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν
 30 Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ
 τῆς τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος· ταύτην δὲ 16
 τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ μέγας ἀντὶ ἐρύματος,
 ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα. ταύτην
 δὴ τὴν πάροδον Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρῆλθε

14. καὶ μετὰ . . . ἡγγελλον: compare the *order* with that of the preceding sentence. — 15. πολεμίων: with *στ* (743, 6a). — 17. συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι, with *his troops in line of battle*, a dat. of manner (775) expressing the idea of *accompaniment*. — 20. μέσον: cf. 741, 7, and see p. 141⁵. — 21. ὀργυιαί: in appos. with τάφρος, where we should expect ὀργυίων (743, 5). Cf. the use of the adj. in 26. — 24. τοῦ Μηδίᾳς τείχους: see the map. — διώρυχες: sc. εἰσίν. — 28. διαλείπουσι . . . παρασάγγην, *they are distant each a parasang (from the other)*. — 33. προσελαύνοντα: see p. 250⁵. — 34. παρῆλθε, ἐγένοντο: the point of view shifts. Cyrus is prominently

35 καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου. ταύτῃ μὲν οὖν τῇ 17
 ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσατο βασιλεὺς, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούν-
 των φανερά ᾗσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἵχνη
 πολλά. ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος Σιλᾶνὸν καλέσας τὸν 18
 Ἀμπρακιώτην μάντιν ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ δᾶρειακοὺς τρις-
 40 χιλίους, ὅτι τῇ ἐνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ προθυό-
 μενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα
 ἡμερῶν, Κῦρος δ' εἶπεν, Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ
 ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἔαν δ' ἀλη-
 θεύσης, ὑπισχνοῦμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα. τοῦτο τὸ
 45 χρῦσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρήλθον αἱ δέκα
 ἡμέραι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλυε βασι- 19
 λεὺς τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε καὶ
 Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνῶκεναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι·
 ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ἡμελημένως
 50 μᾶλλον. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τε τοῦ ἄρματος καθή- 20
 μενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει
 ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον
 ἐπορεύετο καὶ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ
 ἐπὶ ἀμαξῶν ἤγετο καὶ ὑποζυγίων.

in the writer's mind when he says παρήλθε (sing.), the whole army when he says ἐγένοντο. — 35. μὲν: cf. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ in l. 50. — 37. ᾗσαν: cf. 810, 6, and note. — 40. ὅτι . . . εἶπεν: causal clause (781). — ἀπ', from, i.e. before. — 41. ὅτι . . . μαχεῖται: see 830. — 42. ἡμερῶν: see 759. — ἔτι, hereafter, i.e. at all. — εἰ οὐ μαχεῖται: οὐ for μή (797 a), because Cyrus is consciously repeating the statement of Silanus. For the fut. indic., see p. 375¹. — 43. ἀληθεύσης, prove to be speaking the truth. The future apodosis (273) is δάσειν, to be supplied with ὑπισχνοῦμαι. — 45. παρήλθον: see note on 706, 7. — 47. ἔδοξε, he seemed (837). — 48. ἀπεγνῶκεναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι, to have abandoned the intention of fighting (753 and p. 194⁶). — 49. ὥστε ἐπορεύετο: see 824. — 52. αὐτῷ: dat. of disadvantage, but στρατιώταις below, of advantage (769).

- 55 καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν καὶ 1
 πλησίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα ἔμελλε καταλύειν,
 ἥνίκα Πατηγυᾶς ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον
 πιστῶν προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος ἰδρῶντι
 τῷ ἵππῳ, καὶ εὐθὺς πᾶσιν οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν ἐβόα
 60 καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν
 στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὥς εἰς μάχην
 παρεσκευασμένος. ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο·
 αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐδόκουν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πάντες
 δὲ ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι· Κῦρός τε κατα- 3
 65 πηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρματος τὸν θώρακα ἐνέδῃ καὶ
 ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας
 ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλί-
 ζεσθαι καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν
 ἕκαστον.

58. ἰδρῶντι τῷ ἵππῳ, *with his horse in a sweat*, a dat. of manner (775).
 Cf. l. 17 above. — 59. οἷς: see 774. — 60. ὅτι . . . προσέρχεται: see 830. —
 61. ὥς εἰς μάχην, *apparently for battle*. — 66. τὰ παλτὰ . . . ἔλαβε: cf. 826, 8.

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 52, 66; ἀπο-, 45, 48; δια-, 28, 47; εἰς-, 27; ἐν-, 59, 65; ἐξ-, 16, 67; ἐπι-, 29, 64; κατα-, 50, 56, 64, 68; παρα-, 9, 22, 34, 45, 62, 67; προ-, 58; προσ-, 33, 61; συν-, 17; ὑπο-, 36, 44), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXXVI.

The Infinitive.

849.

EXERCISE.

1. ἐδείθη ἡ Κίλισσα Κῦρον ἐπιδείξαι τὸ στρατεύμα αὐτῇ.
2. αἰσχρὸν δ' οὐδὲν ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις οὐτ' ¹ ἀκοῦσαι

¹ See p. 202 ².

οὐτ' ἰδεῖν ἔστιν.¹ 3. Κύρος οὖν οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν, ἀνὴρ ὦν ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος. 4. ἤρξατε τοῦ διαβαίνειν. 5. καὶ τοῖς ἱππεῦσιν εἴρητο θαρροῦσι² διώκειν. 6. καὶ εἴ τις πολέμιος ἐγένετο, σπείσαμένου Κύρου ἐπίστευε μηδὲν ἂν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς παθεῖν.³ 7. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἰέναι οὐκ ἤθελεν. 8. λοιπόν μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ μέγιστον νομίζω εἶναι. 9. ἐνόμιζον γὰρ ἱκανοὺς εἶναι ἡμᾶς περιγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ. 10. ἔτι δ' ἔχομεν σώματα ἱκανώτερα τούτων πόνους φέρειν. 11. εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὥρμησαν. 12. συνωφελοῦσι δ' οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι οὐτ' εἰς τὸ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν. 13. κράτιστον ἡμῖν ἔσθαι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. 14. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα περαίνειν ἤδη ὥρᾱ. 15. ἡ βασιλέως ἀρχὴ ἣν τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι⁴ τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενής. 16. οὗτοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν. 17. τοῦτον γὰρ ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί. 18. αἱ γὰρ σφενδόναί διατὰ χεῖρο-πληθέσι τοῖς λίθοις σπενδονᾶν⁵ ἐπὶ βραχὺ ἐξικινούνται. 19. αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἣν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα. 20. πολλὰ ὑπισχνεῖ νῦν, ὦ Κύρε, διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιούτῳ εἶναι τοῦ κινδύνου προσιόντος. 21. εἶπεν ὅτι σπείσασθαι βούλοιο. 22. ταύτην τὴν χώρᾱν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἑλλησι. 23. τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόᾳ ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων. 24. ἔδοξε βασιλεὺς καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι.⁶

Examine the infinitives in 2, 5, 8 (εἰπεῖν), 13, and the verbs with which they are connected as subject nominatives.

Review 352.

Examine the infinitives in 6, 8 (εἶναι), 9 (εἶναι), 24 (ἀπεγνωκέναι), and note the meaning of the verbs on which they depend.

¹ See 188 a.

² *courageously*, dat. plur. of the partic. qualifying the unexpressed subj. of διώκειν, but assimilated in case to ἱππεῦσιν. The partic. expresses manner (379).

³ In the original ἂν πάθοιμι.

⁴ For τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι, see 775. The subj. of the infin. is τὰς δυνάμεις.

⁵ *Sc.* τοὺς σφενδονήτας as subj. of the infin.

⁶ For τοῦ μάχεσθαι, see 753.

Review 354, and re-examine in 835 the infinitives in indirect discourse in 2, 3, 4, 6, 9, 11, 12, 15, 16, 17, 18, 20, 21, 23, 25, 30.

Examine the infinitives in 1, 7, 21, 23, and the verbs on which they depend as object accusatives.

Review 355.

Examine the infinitives in 3, 9 (*περιγενέσθαι*), 10, 14, 16, and the adjectives and the substantive on which they depend.

850. Rule of Syntax. — The infinitive may depend on adjectives or substantives, especially those which express *ability*, *fitness*, or the like.

Examine the infinitives in 17, 22, and observe that they express purpose.

851. Rule of Syntax. — The infinitive may express the *purpose* of an action.

Examine the infinitives in 11, 12, 18, 20, and observe that they have the neuter article and depend on prepositions.

852. Rule of Syntax. — The infinitive with the neuter article may depend on a preposition.

Examine the infinitives in 4, 15, 19, 24 (*μάχεσθαι*), and observe that they have the neuter article and are used as substantives in the genitive or dative.

853. Rule of Syntax. — The genitive and dative of the infinitive, with the neuter article, may stand in most of the constructions belonging to those cases.

For the infinitive with *πρίν* and *ὥστε*, see 823 and 824.

854.

EXERCISE.

1. It seemed best to them to go away. 2. And the station was near, where he was about to halt. 3. It is not, therefore, a time for us to be sleeping. 4. But it was a most fearful (thing) to see. 5. They intrust their children to them to be educated.¹ 6. It was manifest,² therefore, that Menon desired

¹ Use the *active* of the infin., *to educate*.

² See 839 b.

to be rich. 7. But the peltasts must¹ pursue. 8. The fairest equipment befits victory.² 9. He accomplished this by³ being⁴ severe. 10. For I should be able in this way to benefit my friends. 11. And they said they would give up the dead. 12. It is safer for them to flee than for us. 13. But when⁵ it was now evening, it was time for the enemy to go away. 14. For we have come to save you. 15. For he was stern in aspect.⁶

¹ Use δεῖ.

² Use the infin. (853) of *νικάω* in the dat. (768).

³ ἐκ.

⁴ Use the infin. (852).

⁵ ἐπειδή.

⁶ stern to see.

LESSON · CXXXVII.

Reading Lesson.

855.

ANABASIS I. viii. 4-16.

The troops of Cyrus fall into line as speedily as possible (4, 5). The armour of the body-guard of Cyrus and of their horses is described (6, 7). Toward evening the enemy appear, marching in solid squares, with their chariots in the van. They approach slowly and in silence, prepared for battle (8-11). Cyrus calls to Clearchus to attack the centre where the king is, but he is unwilling to do this (12, 13). The king's troops continue to advance, the Greek force being not yet completely in line. Cyrus surveys both armies, and tells Xenophon, who rides up to him, to announce that the sacrifices are favourable (14, 15). The watchword passes down the line of the Greeks from man to man and then back again (16).

VIII.

ἐνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ καθίσταντο, Κλέ- 4
αρχος μὲν τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος ἔχων πρὸς τῷ
Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δ'

2. τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος, the right (sc. μέρη, parts) of the wing. κέρας here refers to the whole Greek force (τὸ Ἑλληνικόν), which was the right

- ἄλλοι μετὰ τοῦτον, Μένων δὲ καὶ τὸ στράτευμα
 5 τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας ἔσχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. τοῦ δὲ 5
 βαρβαρικοῦ ἵππεις μὲν Παφλαγόνες εἰς χιλίους
 παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστησαν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ καὶ τὸ
 Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν, ἐν δὲ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ Ἀρι-
 αῖός τε ὁ Κύρου ὑπαρχος καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν.
 10 Κῦρος δὲ καὶ οἱ ἵππεις τούτου ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι 6
 ὦπλισμένοι θώραξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ παραμηριδίοις
 καὶ κράνεσι πάντες πλὴν Κύρου· Κῦρος δὲ ψιλὴν
 ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο. οἱ 7
 δ' ἵπποι πάντες οἱ μετὰ Κύρου εἶχον καὶ προμετω-
 15 πίδα καὶ προστερνίδια· εἶχον δὲ καὶ μαχαίρας οἱ
 ἵππεις Ἑλληνικάς. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας 8
 καὶ οὐπω καταφανεῖς ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι· ἥνικα δὲ
 δείλη ἐγίγνετο, ἐφάνη κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη
 λευκή, χρόνῳ δὲ συχνῷ ὕστερον ὥσπερ μελανίᾳ
 20 τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ πολὺ. ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγί-
 γνοντο, τάχα δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις ἤστραπτε καὶ αἱ
 λόγchai καὶ αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίγνοντο. καὶ 9
 ἦσαν ἵππεις μὲν λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύ-
 μου τῶν πολεμίων· Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο τούτων

wing of the entire force of Cyrus. *κέρας* in l. 5 refers only to a *part* of this same Greek division (or *κέρας*).—5. *τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ*: with *ἵππεις* (743, 6). Note *τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν* in l. 9.—6. *χιλίους*: note the case and cf. 498, I. 12.—7. *ἔστησαν*: *took their position* (second aor.). The Paphlagonian cavalry and light-armed Greek troops were placed at the extreme right to support the heavy-armed troops of Clearchus.—10. *Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἵππεις τούτου*: *sc. ἔστησαν*.—*ὅσον*, *about*.—11. *θώραξι μὲν αὐτοί*: the arming of the men *themselves* is contrasted with that of the horses (*οἱ δ' ἵπποι* in l. 13).—12. *πάντες πλὴν Κύρου*: the exception extends only to *κράνεσι*, as appears from what follows.—19. *χρόνῳ . . . πολὺ*, *but some time* (776) *later* (*the cloud of dust appeared*) *just like a sort of blackness in the plain*

- 25 ἄρχειν· ἐχόμενοι δὲ τούτων γερροφόροι, ἐχόμενοι
δὲ ὀπλίται σὺν ποδήρεσι ξυλίναις ἀσπίσιν· Αἰγύ-
πτιοι δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι· ἄλλοι δ' ἱππεῖς,
ἄλλοι τοξόται. πάντες δ' οὗτοι κατὰ ἔθνη ἐν
πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνθρώπων ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπο-
30 ρεύετο. πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἄρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν 10
ἀπ' ἀλλήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα· εἶχον
δὲ τὰ δρέπανα ἐκ τῶν ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον ἀποτετα-
μένα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῖς δίφροις εἰς γῆν βλέποντα, ὡς
διακόπτειν ὅτῳ ἐντυχάνοιεν. ἡ δὲ γνώμη ἦν ὡς
35 εἰς τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐλῶντα καὶ διακό-
ψοντα. ὁ μέντοι Κῦρος εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρε- 11
κελεύετο τοῖς Ἑλλησι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβάρων
ἀνέχεσθαι, ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο· οὐ γὰρ κραυγὴ ἀλλὰ
σιγῇ ὡς ἀνυστὸν καὶ ἡσυχῇ ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως
40 προσῆσαν. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων 12
αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν
ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόᾳ ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα
κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς

for a great distance. — 25. τούτων: see 746. — 28. πάντες . . . ἐπορεύετο, but these were all proceeding nation by nation, each nation (ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος in appos. with οὗτοι) in the form of a solid square. ἐπορεύετο (for ἐπορεύοντο) is attracted into agreement with ἔθνος, which intervenes between the verb and its subj. — 30. ἄρματα: sc. ἦν. — σύχρον: sc. χωρίον (735). — 33. ὡς διακόπτειν: cf. 816, 29, and note. See also 824 a. — 34. ὅτῳ ἐντυχάνοιεν: we might have had ὅτῳ ἂν ἐντυχάνωσιν to express the thought in the form in which it was originally conceived. See 846. — ἡ δὲ γνώμη . . . διακόψοντα, they were intended to drive (fut. of ἐλαύνω), etc. The participles are nom., as if γνώμην εἶχεν (sc. τὰ ἄρματα) had preceded; and ὡς is used with the future participles of purpose as if the chariots themselves had the intention. See note on 706, 16. — 38. ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο, in this (733) he was mistaken. τοῦτο repeats the relative clause. — 39. ἐν ἴσῳ, with even step. — 43. ὅτι εἶη: we might have had ἦν. See 781,

εἶη· καὶ τοῦτ', ἔφη, νικῶμεν, πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποίη-
 45 ται. ὁρῶν δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος τὸ μέσον στῖφος καὶ 13
 ἀκούων Κύρου ἔξω ὄντα τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ εὐωνύμου
 βασιλεᾶ (τοσοῦτον γὰρ πλήθει περιῆν βασιλεὺς
 ὥστε μέσον τὸ ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου
 ἔξω ἦν) — ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀπο-
 50 σπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας, φοβού-
 μενος μὴ κυκλωθεῖη ἐκατέρωθεν, τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ
 ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι. καὶ 14
 ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα
 ὁμαλῶς προῆει, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ
 55 μένον συνετάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ
 Κῦρος παρελαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στρα-
 τεύματι κατεθεᾶτο ἐκατέρωσε ἀποβλέπων εἰς τε
 τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς φίλους. ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν 15
 ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὑπελάσας
 60 ὡς συναντήσαι ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι· ὁ δ'
 ἐπιστήσας εἶπε καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευσε πᾶσιν ὅτι καὶ

846 a. — 44. καὶ νικῶμεν: see 273. The apodosis πεποίηται, although a perf. in form, still refers vividly to the future, *our whole task is (will have been) done*. — ἡμῖν: see 224. — 45. ὁρῶν . . . στῖφος, although he saw (concessive, 379) *the compact body at the centre, i.e. the 6000 cavalry men mentioned in 848, 3*. ἀκούων is also concessive. — 46. Κύρου, *from Cyrus* (p. 188¹). — ὄντα βασιλεᾶ, *that the king was* (839). — 47. πλήθει, *in respect to numbers*, a dat. of manner (775) expressing *respect*. — 49. ἀλλ' ὅμως, *but still*, resuming the narrative after the parenthesis, with emphatic repetition of ὁ Κλέαρχος. — 52. ὅτι . . . ἔχοι: Clearchus said, *εἰ μοι μέλει ὅπως καλῶς ἔχη* (sc. τὰ πράγματα). See 845. — 53. τὸ βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα: *the king's army*. — 55. μένον: nom. sing. neut. of the present partic. — συνετάττετο . . . προσιόντων, *was forming its line from those still coming up*. — 56. οὐ πάνυ πρὸς, *not very near, i.e. at some distance from*. — 57. ἐκατέρωσε: with ἀποβλέπων. — 60. ὡς συναντήσαι: cf. l. 33 above, and note. — εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι, *whether he had any orders* (830). — 61. ἐπι-

τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια καλά. ταῦτα δὲ 16
λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος, καὶ
ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος εἶη. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι
65 τὸ σύνθημα παρέρχεται δεύτερον ἤδη. καὶ ὃς
ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει καὶ ἤρετο ὃ τι εἶη τὸ
σύνθημα. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρῶτο ΖΕΤΣ ΣΩΤΗΡ ΚΑΙ
ΝΙΚΗ.

στήσας, pulling up (sc. τὸν ἵππον). — 64. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος: Clearchus had ridden up in the meantime. — 65. καὶ ὃς, and he, i.e. Cyrus. The relative is here used as a demonstrative. — 66. τίς παραγγέλλει, who was giving it out, without his approval.

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 38; ἀπο-, 32, 49, 52, 57, 67; δια-, 30, 35; ἐν-, 34; ἐπι-, 61; κατα-, 1, 13, 57; παρα-, 36, 40, 56, 60, 65, 66; περι-, 47; προ-, 54; προσ-, 40, 55; συν-, 55, 60; ὑπο-, 59), according to the directions previously given.

LESSON CXXXVIII.

The Participle.

856.

EXERCISE.

1. ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούντων φανερά ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἵχνη πολλά. 2. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τε τοῦ ἄρματος καθήμενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον ἐπορεύετο. 3. ἤδη ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσιν. 4. Ὀρόντων προσεκύνησαν, καίπερ εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον ἄγοιτο. 5. καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν. 6. πυνθάνεται βασιλεὺς Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα. 7. ἐπειδὴ πεπτωκότα εἶδε Κῦρον, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου περιέπεσεν αὐτῷ. 8. ὁ δ' ἔχαιρε ταῦτα ἀκούων. 9. πειθόμενοις ἑμὶν οὐ μεταμελήσει. 10. ἐγὼ οὖν οὐποτε ἐπανόμην βασιλεῖ μακαρίζων, διαθεώμενος ὅσῃν

χώρᾱν ἔχοι. 11. ὁ πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγχανεν. 12. μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, ἐπιδεικνὺς τὴν εὐήθειαν τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν κελεύοντος. 13. καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων τοξεύμασιν. 14. βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος¹ ἀπὶ ὧν Κῦρου λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθόν. 15. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἱππεῖς καὶ φεύγοντες ἅμα ἐτίτρωσκον εἰς τοῦπισθεν τοξεύοντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων. 16. παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσιν. 17. οἱ πολέμιοι οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο δι' ὅλης τῆς νυκτὸς κυλίνδοντες τοὺς λίθους. 18. καὶ κατέκοψάν τινας τῶν ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 19. ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνη ἂν παύσαιμι ἐνοχλοῦντα ἅει τῇ ὑμετέρᾳ εὐδαιμονίᾳ. 20. μετὰ ταῦτα ἤδη ἡλίου δύνοντος ἔλεξε τοιαύδε. 21. καὶ τοῖς ἱππεύσιν εἶρητο θαρροῦσι διώκειν ὡς ἐφεσπομένης ἱκανῆς δυνάμεως. 22. ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος.² 23. πέμπωμεν δὲ προκαταληφθέντας τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθίσωσιν οἱ Κίλικες καταλαβόντες. 24. οὗτοι δὲ προσελθόντες καὶ καλέσαντες τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄρχοντας λέγουσιν ὅτι βασιλεὺς κελεύει τοὺς Ἑλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει καὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτονε, παραδόντας τὰ ὅπλα ἰόντας ἐπὶ τὰς βασιλέως θύρας εὐρίσκεσθαι ἂν τι δύνωνται ἀγαθόν.

857. The participle has three uses. First, it may express an *attribute*, qualifying a substantive like an ordinary adjective; secondly, it may define the *circumstances* under which an action takes place; thirdly, it may be joined to certain verbs to *supplement* their meaning, often having a force resembling that of the infinitive.

Examine the attributive participles in 1, 3, 12 (ἐπιδεικνὺς), and observe that they are used as attributive adjectives.

Review 369.

¹ *Sc. ὤντος.*

² Not in indirect discourse. The supplementary partic. may be used

to denote the act in which an object is perceived, as here, *heard a noise go.*

Examine the attributive participles in 12 (κελεύοντος), 18, 24 (ἄρχοντας), and observe that they are used substantively with the article after the analogy of adjectives (718).

Review 371.

Examine the circumstantial participles in 2, 4, 5, 7 (καταπηδήσας), 10 (διαθεώμενος), 14 (ἀπιών), 15, 21 (θαρροῦσι), 22 (λέγων), 23 (προκαταληψομένους), 24 (προσελθόντες, καλέσαντες, παραδόντας, ἴοντας), and observe that they are adverbial in their nature and express relations of *time, cause, manner, means, purpose, condition, concession, and attendant circumstance*.

Review 379.

Examine the circumstantial participles in 14 (ὄντος), 16, 20, 21 (ἐφευρισκόμενης), and observe that they are used in the genitive absolute, and express relations of *time, cause, etc.*, as above.

Review 762.

858. Circumstantial participles, especially those denoting *cause* or *purpose*, are often preceded by ὥς. This shows that they express the idea or the assertion of the subject of the leading verb or that of some other person prominent in the sentence, *without implying* that it is also the idea of the speaker or writer. Examine 5, 16, 21.

Examine the supplementary participles in 8, 9, 10 (μακαρίζων), 13, 17, 19, and observe that they complete the idea expressed by the verb and closely resemble the infinitive.

859. Rule of Syntax. — The supplementary participle completes the idea expressed by the verb, by showing to what its action relates. It may belong to either the subject or the object of the verb, and it agrees with it in case.

a. In this sense the participle is used with verbs signifying to *begin, continue, endure, persevere, cease, repent, be weary, be pleased, displeased, or ashamed*.

Examine the supplementary participles in 11, 14 (ἀπελθών), 23 (καταλαμβάντες), 24 (νικῶν), note the verbs with which they are connected, and observe that the participle contains the leading idea of the expression.

860. Rule of Syntax.—The participle with *λανθάνω*, *escape the notice of*, *τυγχάνω*, *happen*, and *φθάνω*, *anticipate*, contains the leading idea of the expression and is usually to be translated by a finite verb.

a. The aorist participle here coincides in time with the principal verb, and does not, according to the rule for the participle (372), in itself denote past time.

Examine the supplementary participles in 6, 7 (*πεπτωκότα*), and observe that they are used in indirect discourse.

Review 839, and re-examine in 835 the participles in indirect discourse in 1, 5, 7, 8, 10, 13, 14, 19, 22, 24, 26, 27, 28, 29.

861.**EXERCISE.**

1. But these got¹ above the enemy (who were) following.²
 2. For those who had been wounded were many. 3. And another army was secretly³ supported for him in Thrace.
 4. For they have ceased to war with one another.⁴ 5. He happened to have money. 6. We came and encamped near him. 7. A square is a bad arrangement when enemies are following. 8. We attacked⁵ them while (they were) crossing the ravine. 9. He went up upon the mountains without opposition.⁶ 10. When this had been said, they arose. 11. I therefore never ceased to pity you. 12. Let us therefore attack those who are burning the ships. 13. He immediately crossed the river with his soldiers. 14. The enemy appeared while the Greeks were crossing the river. 15. They then announced that the generals had all suffered death.⁷ 16. Though he continues to send for me, I am not willing to go. 17. He suffered no injury, though he had (only) a few soldiers (with him).

¹ Use *γίγνομαι*.

² Put the partic. in the attributive position.

³ Cf. 856, 14.

⁴ See 773.

⁵ Use *ἐπιτίθημι*.

⁶ *nobody opposing*.

⁷ Use *ἀποθνήσκω*.

LESSON CXXXIX.

Reading Lesson.

862.

ANABASIS I. viii. 17-29.

Cyrus accepts the watchword, and returns to his own place. The Greeks sing the pæan and advance (17). They break into a run, and raise the war-cry (18), at which the barbarians on the left of the king's army give way and take flight (19). The enemies' chariots do little execution (20). Cyrus is pleased at the enemies' defeat, but does not join in the pursuit. He directs his attention towards the king, who is beyond his extreme left, and then, in fear that the Greeks may be encircled, moves directly upon him and puts to rout the troops in front (21-24). He attacks the king in person and wounds him, but is himself struck with a javelin, and in the fierce fight that ensues is killed. Artapates dies upon his body (25-29).

VIII.

ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀκούσας, Ἀλλὰ δέχομαί τε, ἔφη, 17
καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω. ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ
χώραν ἀπήλυνε· καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα
στάδια διειχέτην τὸ φάλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἡνίκα
5 ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ προήρχοντο ἀντίοι
ιέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. ὥς δὲ πορευομένων ἐξεκύ- 18
μαινέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος, τὸ ἐπιλειπόμενον ἤρξατο
δρόμῳ θεῖν· καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγγοντο πάντες οἷόν περ
τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθεον.
10 λέγουσι δέ τινες ὥς καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ
δόρατα ἐδούπησαν, φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις.
πρὶν δὲ τόξωμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι, ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρ- 19

1. Ἀλλὰ δέχομαι, *well, I accept it* (the pass-word). ἀλλά marks the opposition between his present concession and previous surprise.—
6. πορευομένων: *sc. αὐτῶν, as they proceeded* (762).—11. ἵπποις: see

βαροι καὶ φεύγουσι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον
 μὲν κατὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις
 15 μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἔπεσθαι. τὰ δ' 20
 ἄρματα ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων,
 τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κενὰ ἡνιόχων. οἱ δ'
 ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν, δίσταντο· ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ κατε-
 λήφθη ὥσπερ ἐν ἵπποδρόμῳ ἐκπλαγεῖς· καὶ οὐδὲν
 20 μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς
 οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐννύμῳ τοξευθῆναί τις ἐλέ-
 γετο. Κῦρος δ' ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ 21
 καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυ-
 25 νούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν,
 οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειράμενην
 ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἐξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν
 ἐπεμελεῖτο ὃ τι ποιήσει βασιλεὺς. καὶ γὰρ ᾗδει
 αὐτὸν ὅτι μέσον ἔχοι τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος.
 30 καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον 22
 ἔχοντες τὸ αὐτῶν ἡγοῦνται, νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ
 ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι, ἣν ἢ ἡ ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ἐκατέ-
 ρωθεν, καὶ εἴ τι παραγγεῖλαι χρήζοιεν, ἡμίσει ἂν
 χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸ στρατεύμα. καὶ βασιλεὺς 23

769. — 16. τὰ μὲν, τὰ δέ: in appos. with ἄρματα. — 17. ἡνιόχων: see 760.
 — 18. ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν: see 813. — ἔστι δ' ὅστις: we should expect ἦν δέ τις
 ὅς. Cf. ἦν οὖς in 810, 43, and note. — κατελήφθη ἐκπλαγεῖς, in his con-
 sternation was caught (i.e. by failing to get out of the way of an on-
 coming chariot). — 19. καὶ . . . ἔφασαν, and yet they said that not even
 he suffered any harm. — 20. οὐδέ . . . δέ: the negative expression corre-
 sponding to καὶ . . . δέ. Cf. 706, 7, and note. — οὐδ' οὐδεὶς οὐδέν: em-
 phatic negation (p. 202²). — 28. ᾗδει αὐτὸν ὅτι ἔχοι, knew him that he
 had, i.e. knew that he had. — 30. μέσον τὸ αὐτῶν: see 719 and 743, 1. —
 33. ἂν αἰσθάνεσθαι: in the original ἂν αἰσθάνοιτο (354), the apodosis to εἰ

35 δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὁμῶς ἔξω
 ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρατος. ἐπεὶ δὲ
 οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου οὐδὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ
 τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὡς εἰς κύκλω-
 σιν. ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσας μὴ ὀπισθεν γενό- 24
 40 μενος κατακόψη τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος·
 καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ
 βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε τοὺς
 ἑξακισχιλίους, καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ
 ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν.
 45 ὥς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ 25
 Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὀρμήσαντες, πλὴν
 πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν, σχεδὸν
 οἱ ὁμοτράπεζοι καλούμενοι. σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὦν 26
 καθορᾷ βασιλέᾳ καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκείνον στῖφος· καὶ
 50 εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν Τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ,
 ἔτετο ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ
 τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὥς φησι Κτησιᾶς ὁ
 ἰατρὸς καὶ ἰᾶσθαι αὐτὸς τὸ τραῦμά φησι. παί- 27
 55 οντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλ-
 μὸν βιαίως· καὶ ἐνταῦθα μαχόμενοι καὶ βασιλεὺς
 καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου, ὁπό-

. . . χρῆζοιεν. — 39. *γενόμενος*: i.e. *ἐὰν γένηται* (379). — 47. *σχεδὸν* . . . *καλούμενοι*, chiefly his so-called table-companions. — 49. *τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκείνον στῖφος*: the king's *ὁμοτράπεζοι*, probably, who, now that the 6000 had fled, rallied about him in a compact body (*στῖφος*) for his protection. — 53. *καὶ ἰᾶσθαι* . . . *φησι*, he says that he himself cured the wound. Ctesias said *ἰώμην* (impf.) αὐτὸς τὸ τραῦμα. The present infin. in indirect discourse (354) sometimes represents the *imperfect* indic., against the rule that in Greek the tense does not change in quotation. This results from the fact that there is no imperfect infin.; but the construction is allowed only when the time of the infin. is made clear by the context. —

σοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλεᾶ ἀπέθνησκον Κτησιᾶς
λέγει· παρ' ἐκείνῳ γὰρ ἦν· Κῦρος δὲ αὐτός τε
ἀπέθανε καὶ ὁκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν
60 ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. Ἀρταπάτης δ' ὁ πιστότατος 28
αὐτῷ τῶν σκηπτούχων θεράπων λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ
πεπτωκότα εἶδε Κῦρον, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ
ἵππου περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ. καὶ οἱ μὲν φᾶσι βασιλεᾶ 29
κελεύσαι τινα ἐπισφάζαι αὐτὸν Κύρῳ, οἱ δ' ἑαυτὸν
65 ἐπισφάξασθαι σπασάμενον τὸν ἀκινάκην· εἶχε
γὰρ χρῦσοῦν· καὶ στρεπτόν δ' ἐφόρει καὶ ψέλια
καὶ τᾶλλα ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι Περσῶν· ἐτετίμητο
γὰρ ὑπὸ Κύρου δι' εὐνοίαν τε καὶ πιστότητα.

60. ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ θεράπων, *the attendant most in his confidence*. —
63. περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ, *to have fallen about him* (774), *i.e.* so as to embrace
him. — 64. ἐπισφάζαι αὐτὸν Κύρῳ, *to slay him* (Artapates) *over* Cyrus
(774), *i.e.* as a sacrifice. — ἑαυτὸν ἐπισφάξασθαι: strongly reflexive, ἑαυτόν
being added to the verb in the mid. (196).

Make a special study of the prepositions used in composition in this
Reading Lesson (ἀνα-, 50; ἀπο-, 3, 43, 57, 59; δια-, 4, 18, 45; ἐν-, 41;
ἐξ-, 6, 12 (*bis*), 19, 26; ἐπι-, 7, 28, 38, 64, 65; κατα-, 18, 40, 47, 49, 62;
παρα-, 33; περι-, 63; προ-, 5, 18; προσ-, 24; συν-, 26), according to the
directions previously given.

MARCH OF THE TEN THOUSAND FOR XENOPHON



VOCABULARIES.

- I. GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.
- II. ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.



abl. = ablative.
 abs., absol. = absolute, -ly.
 acc. = accusative.
 act. = active, -ly.
 adj. = adjective, -ly.
 adv. = adverb, adverbial, -ly.
 antec. = antecedent.
 aor. = aorist.
 apod. = apodosis.
 appos. = apposition, appositive.
 art. = article.
 attrib. = attributive.
cf. = *confer*, compare.
 comm. = commonly.
 comp. = comparative.
 cond. = condition, conditional.
 conj. = conjunction.
 const. = construction.
 contr. = contraction, contracted.
 dat. = dative.
 def. = definite.
 dem., demon. = demonstrative.
 dep. = deponent.
 dim. = diminutive.
 dir. = direct.
 disc. = discourse.
e.g. = for example.
 encl. = enclitic.
 Eng. = English.
 esp. = especial, -ly.
etc. = and so forth.
 f., ff. = following.
 fem. = feminine.
 freq. = frequently.
 fut. = future.
 gen. = genitive.
i.e. = that is.
 impers. = impersonal, -ly.
 impf., imperf. = imperfect.
 inv. = imperative.
 indec., indecl. = indeclinable.
 indef. = indefinite.

ind., indic. = indicative.
 indir. = indirect.
 inf., infin. = infinitive.
 interr. = interrogative, -ly.
 intr., intrans. = intransitive, -ly.
 Lat. = Latin.
 lit. = literal, -ly.
 masc. = masculine.
 mid. = middle.
 neg. = negative, -ly.
 neut. = neuter.
 nom. = nominative.
 obj. = object.
 opt. = optative.
 p., pp. = page, pages.
 part., partic. = participle.
 pass. = passive, -ly.
 pers. = person, personal, -ly.
 pf., perf. = perfect.
 pl., plur. = plural.
 plpf., plup. = pluperfect.
 post-posit. = post-positive.
 pred. = predicate.
 prep. = preposition.
 pres. = present.
 pron. = pronoun.
 prop. = proper, -ly.
 prot. = protasis.
 reflex. = reflexive, -ly.
 rel. = relative, -ly.
 R. = root.
 Rem. = remark.
sc. = *scilicet*.
 sec. = second.
 sent. = sentence.
 sing. = singular.
 subj. = subject.
 subjv. = subjunctive.
 subst. = substantive, -ly.
 sup. = superlative.
 tr., trans. = transitive, -ly.
 voc. = vocative.

VOCABULARIES.

I. GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

In the following Vocabulary the theme of each simple verb is given in parentheses directly after the present indicative unless the verb is of the First Class (595).

The small Roman numeral following the principal parts of a simple verb designates the class to which the verb belongs. When no small Roman numeral occurs, the verb is of the First Class. Compound verbs are not classified, nor are their themes or principal parts given, if the simple verb occurs elsewhere in the Vocabulary or presents no difficulties. Deponents that are regular have the aorist middle, unless it is stated that they are passive deponents. Arabic numerals refer to the sections of this book.

The form of the genitive is given for substantives of the A-declension, the gender is indicated in the O-declension, and both genitive and gender are given in the Consonant-declension.

The derivation of most words is indicated within brackets or by means of the dagger, which points up (†) or down (‡) or in both directions (†‡) to some simpler related word or words. Arabic numerals within the brackets refer to the groups of related words previously given. If no indication of the derivation is given, the etymological connexion of the word is unknown, doubtful, or too difficult to be discussed here. The parts of compound words are separated by a hyphen.

ἀ-

A

ἄγριος

ἀ-, an inseparable particle, (a) *negative*; (b) *copulative*. 424 a b.
ἀ, see δς.

ἄ-βατος, *ον* [βαίνω], *not to be trodden*; of mountains or a country, *impassable*, for men or horses.

Ἀβροκόμης, *ᾱ* (Dor. gen.), *Abrocomas*, satrap of Phoenicia and Syria, and commander of one fourth of the king's army.

Ἀβῦδος, *ή*, *Abūdus*, a city of Troas, on the Hellespont.

ἀγαγεῖν, ἀγάγη, *etc.*, see ἀγω.

ἀγαθός, *ή, ὁν*, 469, *good* in the broadest sense (as opposed to κακός), *brave, expert, upright, noble, useful, excellent*; ἀγαθόν, τό, *good, good thing*; pl., *good things, blessings, supplies*; καλός καὶ ἀγαθός, καλός καὶ ἀγαθός, *noble and good, 'gentleman'*; ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ, *for one's good*.

ἄγαμαι, ἡγασάμην, ἡγάσθην, 647, 3, vii., *admire*.

ἀγγέλλω (αγγελ-), ἀγγελῶ, ἡγείλα, ἡγγέλκα, ἡγγεῖλαι, ἡγγέλθην, 619, 1, iv., *bring news, announce, report*. 839.

ἄγγελος, ὁ [angel, *ev-angelist*], *messenger, scout, envoy, herald*.

ἀγείρω (αγερ-), ἡγείρα, iv., *collect*.

ἄγκυρα, *ᾱς*, [anchor], *anchor*.

ἀ-γνώμων, *ον*, gen. *ονος* [644], *ignorant, thoughtless, senseless*.

ἀγορά, *ᾱς* [ἀγείρω], *assembly, meeting, place of assembly*, Lat. *forum*, esp. *market-place, market*; ἀμφὶ ἀγορᾶν πλῆθουσιν, *about the time of full market, forenoon*.

ἀγοράζω (αγοραδ-), ἀγοράσω, *etc.*, iv., *frequent the market, buy, purchase*; mid., *buy for oneself*.

ἄγριος, *ᾱ, ὄν* [435], *wild*.

ἄγω, ἄξω, ἡγαγον, ἡχα, ἡγμαι, ἡχην, 604, 1 [435], *set going, drive, lead, bring, conduct, carry, convey*, intrans., *lead on, march, go*; ἄγε δὴ, ἄγετε δὴ, *come now! well then!* ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν, *keep quiet*; ἄγων, ἄγοντες, *with*.

ἄγών, ὦνος, ὁ [435], *assembly, contest, struggle, games*; ἄγῶνα τιθέναι, *hold games*.

ἄγωνίζομαι (αγωνιδ-), ἀγωνιοῦμαι, etc., iv. [435], *contend, fight*.

ἄγωνοθέτης, ου [435, 638], *judge of a contest, president in the games*.

ἄ-δειπνος, ου [δείπνον], *without supper, supperless* (see δείπνον).

ἀδελφός, ὁ, *brother*.

ἄ-δεῶς, adv. [δεῖδω], *without fear, fearlessly, confidently*.

ἄ-δηλος, ου [δῆλος], *doubtful, uncertain*.

ἄ-δικῶ, ἀδικήσω, etc. [486], *be unjust, do wrong, wrong, injure*, with fut. mid. as pass.; pres. as pf., *have done wrong, be in the wrong*, and so in the pass., *be wronged, have suffered wrong*.

ἄ-δικιᾶ, ἄς [486], *wrongdoing*.

ἄ-δικος, ου [486], *unjust, wicked*; ὁ ἄδικος, *the wrongdoer*.

ἄ-δόλως, adv. [δόλος, deceit], *without deceit or treachery*.

ἄ-δύνατος, ου [δύναμις], *unable, powerless, impossible*.

ἄει, adv. [Lat. *aeuum*, *age*, Eng. *ever, aye*], *always, ever, from time to time*.

ἀετός, ὁ, *eagle*.

Ἀθῆναι, ὦν, *Athens*.

Ἀθηναῖος, ἄ, ου, *Athenian*; Ἀθηναῖος, ὁ, *an Athenian*.

Ἀθήνησι, adv., *at Athens*.

ἄθλον, τό [ἄθλος, ὁ, *contest*, Eng. *athlete*], *prize of contest, prize*.

ἄθροίζω (αθροιδ-), ἀθροίσω, etc., 618, 1, iv. [ἀθρόος, *in a body*], *press*

close together, collect, as troops, Lat. *cōgō*; mid., intrans., *muster*.

ἀ-θυμέω, ἀθυμήσω [537], *be discouraged, dejected, or dispirited, lose courage*.

ἀ-θυμῶ, ἄς [537], *faintheartedness, dejection, despondency*.

ἄ-θυμος, ου [537], *without heart, dispirited, fainthearted*.

αἶ, αἶ, see ὁ, ὅς

Αἰγύπτιος, ἄ, ου [Αἴγυπτος, *Egypt*], *Egyptian*; Αἰγύπτιος, ὁ, *an Egyptian*.

αἰκίζω (αικιδ-), comm. dep., αἰκίζομαι, αἰκιοῦμαι, etc., iv. [αἰκῆς, *shameful*], *outrage, maltreat, mutilate*.

αἰνέω, αἰνέσω, ἤνεσα, ἤνεκα, ἤνημαι, ἡνέθην [αἶνος, *tale, praise*], *praise*.

Αἰνιάν, ἄνος, ὁ, *an Aenianian*.

αἶξ, αἰγός, ὁ, ἡ, *goat*.

ταίπερός, ἡ, ὅν, *chosen*; οἱ αἰπετοί, *the deputies*.

αἰρέω (αἰρε-, ἐλ-), αἰρήσω, εἶλον, ἤρκα, ἤρημαι, ἡρέθην, 655, 1, viii. [*di-aeresis, heresy*], *take, seize, capture*; mid., *take for oneself, choose, prefer, elect*.

αἶρω (ᾱρ-), ἄρῶ, ἥρα, ἥρκα, ἥρμαι, ἥρθην, iv. [*met-eor*], *raise*.

αἶς, see ὅς.

αἰσθάνομαι (αισθ-), αἰσθήσομαι, ἡσθῶμαι, ἡσθῆμαι, 625, 1, v. [*aesthetic*], *perceive, learn, see, observe*; with gen., *hear, hear of*. 747, 839.

αἰσχρός, ἄ, ὅν [αἰδώς, *sense of shame*], *shameful, base, disgraceful*.

αἰσχύνῃ, ης, *shame, disgrace*; δι' αἰσχύνῃν ἀλλήλων, *from a sense of shame before one another*.

αἰσχύνω (αισχυν-), αἰσχυνῶ, ἡσχύνω, ἡσχύνῃ, 619, 2, iv., *shame*; mid. as pass. dep., *feel ashamed, feel ashamed before, stand in awe of*.

αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, etc., *ask for, beg, demand*. 737.

αἰτιά, ἄς, *blame, censure*.

ἰαῖτιάομαι, αἰτιάσομαι, etc., 265 a, *blame, reproach, accuse, charge.*

ἰαίτιος, ᾱ, ον, *to blame, responsible*; αἰτίας εἰμι, *be the cause*; τὸ αἷτιον, *the cause.*

αἰχμ-άλωτος, ον [564], *captured by the spear, taken in war, captured*; αἰχμάλωτοι, οἱ, *captives.*

ἀκῖνάκης, ου, *a short sword.*

ἀκολουθέω, ἀκολουθήσω, etc., *accompany, follow.* 773.

ἀκοντιζω (ακοντιδ-), ἀκοντιῶ, iv. [564], *hurl the javelin, hit with a javelin, hit.*

ἀκόντισις, εως, ἡ [564], *javelin-throwing.*

ἀκοντιστής, οὔ [564], *javelin-thrower, javelin-man.*

ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκήκοα, ἡκούσθην, 604, 2 [Lat. *caueō*, *take care*, Eng. *acoustic*], *hear, learn, hear of, listen to, give heed to.* 354, 839.

ἄκρᾱ, ᾱς [564], *height, citadel.*

ἄ-κρᾱτος, ον [κεράννυμι], *unmixed.*

ἄκρό-πολις, εως, ἡ [564], *upper city, acropolis, citadel.*

ἄκρος, ᾱ, ον [564], *pointed, at the point, highest, topmost*; ἄκρον, τό, *height, summit*; τὰ ἄκρα, *the heights.*

ἄκρ-ωνυχία, ᾱς [564], *spur, crest.*

ἄκων, ουσα, ον [for ἀ-έκων, see ἐκών], *unwilling, reluctant*; ἄκοντός τιος (sc. *δντος*), *against a man's will, without his consent.*

ἀλαλάζω (αλαλαγ-), ἀλαλάξομαι, ἡλάλαξα, iv. [ἀλαλή, *battle-cry*], *raise the war-cry.*

ἀλέξω, ἀλέξομαι, ἡλεξάμην, *ward off*; mid., *ward off from oneself, repulse.*

ἀλέτης, ου [ἀλέω, *grind*], lit. *grinder*, only as adj. in the phrase *δνος ἀλέτης*, *upper mill-stone.*

ἄλευρον, τό [ἀλέω, *grind*], in. pl., *flour, wheaten flour.*

ἰά-λήθεια, ᾱς, *truth, sincerity.*

ἰά-ληθεύω, ἀληθεύσω, ἡλήθευσα, *speak the truth, tell the truth.*

ἀ-ληθής, ἐς [λανθάνω], *unconcealed, true*; τὸ ἀληθές, *the truth.*

ἀλίσκομαι (ἀλ-), ἀλώσομαι, ἐάλων and ἤλων, ἐάλωκα and ἤλωκα, 642, 1, vi., *be captured, taken, caught, be convicted, used as pass. to αἰρέω.*

ἄλκιμος, ον [ἀλκή, *prudence*], *stout, brave, warlike, valiant.*

ἄλλά, *adversative conj.* [533], *otherwise, in another way, on the other hand, still, but, yet.* It introduces something different from or opposed to what has been said before, and occurs frequently after negatives. At the beginning of a speech, by way of an abrupt transition, or to break off discussion, *well, well but, however, for my part.*

ἀλλάττω (αλλαγ-), ἀλλάξω, ἡλλαξα, ἡλλαχα, ἡλλαγμαί, ἡλλάχθην and ἡλλάγην, 617, 1, iv. [533], *change.*

ἄλλῃ, adv. [533], *in another way, elsewhere, somewhere else.*

ἀλλήλων, *reciprocal pron.*, 530 [533], *of one another, each other.*

ἄλλος, η, ο [533], *other, another*; with the art., *the other, the remaining, the rest, the rest of*; ἄλλοι ἄλλως, Lat. *alii aliter*, *some one way, others another*; τῇ ἄλλῃ (sc. *ἡμέρᾳ*), *next day*; with numerals and in enumerating objects, *besides, further*; ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος, *as (well as) any other man whatsoever*; οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ, *nothing else than, only.*

ἄλλοτε, adv. [533], *at another time*; ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε, *every now and then.*

ἄλλως, adv. [533], *otherwise, in another way*; ἄλλως πως, *in some or any other way.*

ἀ-λόγιστος, ον [591], *unreasoning, foolish, inconsiderate.*

ἄλφειτον, τό, in pl., *barley meal.*

άλωπεκή, ἥς [άλώπηξ, fox, Lat. *volpēs*, fox], fox-skin, fox-skin cap.

άλωσμαι, see ἀλίσκομαι.

ἄμα, adv. [Lat. *sem-per*, always, Eng. *SAME*, *SOME*], at the same time, together; ἄμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, at daybreak; ἄμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ, as the next day was breaking. 773.

ἄμ-αξα, ἡς [435], a heavy wagon, originally and generally with four wheels (and therefore with two united axles, as the name signifies).

ἄμ-αξιτός, ὅν [435], passable for wagons; ὁδὸς ἄμαξιτός, wagon-road.

ἁμαρτάνω (ἁμαρτ-), ἁμαρτήσομαι, ἥμαρτον, ἡμάρτηκα, ἡμάρτημαι, ἡμαρτήθην, 625, 2, v., miss the mark, miss, fail (in conduct), err, do wrong, commit error. 746.

ἀ-μαχεί, adv. [μάχη], without fighting, without a struggle.

ἀ-μαχητί, adv. [μάχη], without fighting.

Ἀμπρακιώτης, οὐ, an Ambraciot.

ἀμείνων, οὐ, gen. *ovos*, comp. of ἀγαθός, 469, better, braver, stouter.

ἀ-μελέω, ἀμελήσω, etc. [μέλει], be careless, neglect. 747.

ἀ-μελῶς, adv. [μέλει], negligently, carelessly, incautiously.

ἀ-μήχανος, οὐ [455], without means, impossible, impracticable.

ἀμιλλάσμαι, ἀμιλλήσομαι, etc., pass. dep., 599 [ἀμιλλα, contest], contend, struggle, race.

ἄμπελος, ἡ, vine.

ἀμύνω (αμυν-), ἀμυνῶ, ἡμῦνα, iv., ward off, defend; mid., ward off from oneself, defend oneself.

ἀμφί, prep. [akin to ἄμφω, cf. Lat. *ambi-*, *amb-*, in composition, round about], orig. on both sides of, hence about, followed by the acc. and very rarely by the gen. With gen., about, concerning, of things. With acc., of place, round, about, of per-

sons, countries, or things; of the object affected, ἀμφί στρατεύμα δαπανᾶν, spend money on an army; of time, about, at; with numerals preceded by the art., about, Lat. *circiter*. οἱ ἀμφί with an acc. of a person may denote either the followers of that person or that person and his followers, as οἱ ἀμφί βασιλέα, the king's attendants, but οἱ ἀμφί Χειρίσοφον, Chirisophus and his men; τὰ ἀμφί τάξεις, tactics.

In composition ἀμφί signifies on both sides, about.

ἀμφι-λέγω, speak on both sides, have a dispute, quarrel.

ἰἀμφοτέρως, ἂ, οὐ, both.

ἰἀμφοτέρωθεν, adv., on both sides, from both sides.

ἄμφω [akin to ἀμφί, cf. Lat. *ambō*, both, Eng. *BOTH*], both.

ἄν, a post-positive particle without an exact equivalent in English. Three uses of ἄν are to be distinguished: I. In conditional, relative, and temporal protases. See 273, 803, 814, III., 814, I. 2 a, 822, 823. ἄν unites with the particle εἰ (forming ἔάν, ἄν, or ἥν), and sometimes with the relatives. II. In apodosis. See 798, 300, 814, II., 814, IV., 822, 823. III. In iterative sentences. See 805.

ἄν, contracted form of ἔάν.

ἀνά, prep. with acc. [Eng. *on*], up (opposed to κατά). Of place, up, up along, upon, over, throughout; with numerals to signify distribution, at the rate of, ἀνὰ ἑκατόν, by hundreds, a hundred each; to express manner, ἀνὰ κράτος, up to one's strength, at full speed.

In composition ἀνά signifies up, back, again, and is sometimes simply intensive.

ἀνα-βαίνω, go up, ascend, march up, mount.

†ἀνά-βασις, εως, ἡ, going up, ascent, march inland.

ἀνα-βολή, ἡς [480], that which is thrown up, earth-work, rampart.

ἀν-αγγέλλω, bring back word, report.

ἀνα-γινώσκω, know again, recognize, read.

†ἀναγκάζω (αναγκαδ-), ἀναγκάσω, etc., iv., force, compel, oblige.

†ἀναγκαῖος, ᾱ, ον, necessary; ἀναγκαῖόν τι, some necessity.

ἀνάγκη, ἡς, force, necessity, constraint; ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ (more often without ἐστὶ), it is necessary, one must, of physical necessity.

ἀνα-γνοῦς, see ἀνα-γινώσκω.

ἀν-άγω, lead up, take up.

ἀνα-θαρρέω, regain courage, pluck up courage again.

ἀνά-θημα, ατος, τό [638], something set up, a votive offering.

ἀν-αιρέω, take up; mid., take up one's dead for burial.

ἀνα-κοινώω, make common, communicate, consult a god; mid., confer with a friend. 773.

ἀνα-κράζω, raise a shout, shout, cry out.

ἀνα-λαμβάνω, take or pick up.

ἀνα-λάμπω, burst into flames.

ἀνα-μένω, wait for, await, Lat. expectō; intrans., remain, wait.

ἀνα-μιμνήσκω, remind of. 737.

ἀναξυρίδες, ἰδων, αἱ, trousers.

ἀνα-παύω, make to cease or halt; mid., desist, stop, halt for the purpose of resting, rest.

ἀνα-πειθω, persuade.

ἀνα-πνέω, breathe again.

ἀν-αρπάζω, snatch up, carry off as booty, plunder.

ἀνα-στάς, etc., see ἀν-ίστημι.

ἀνα-σταυρόω [649], set up on a stake, impale.

ἀνα-στέλλω, send back, repulse.

ἀνα-στρέφω, turn back, turn round, face about; pass., be turned back, rally.

ἀνα-σχέσθαι, etc., see ἀν-έχω.

ἀνα-ταράττω, stir up; pf. pass., be in confusion or disorder.

ἀνα-τείνω, stretch up, hold up; ἀνατεταμένος, with extended wings.

ἀνα-τίθημι, put or lay upon.

ἀνα-χωρέω, move back, withdraw, retire, of troops.

ἀνδράποδον, τό, a slave, esp. a captive taken in war.

ἀνδρεῖος, ᾱ, ον [ἀνὴρ], manly, brave, valiant.

†ἀνδρείως, adv., bravely, courageously.

ἀν-εἶλον, see ἀν-αιρέω.

ἀν-εἶναι, see ἀν-τημι.

ἀν-εἶπον, proclaim, of a herald.

ἄνεμος, ὁ [Lat. anima, breath, wind, animus, soul], wind; ἄνεμος ἐναντιος, a wind full in the face.

ἀν-ερωτάω, ask with authority, inquire of, question, demand.

ἀν-έστην, see ἀν-ίστημι.

ἄνευ, improper prep., without, followed by the gen.

ἀν-έχω, impf. and aor. mid. with double augment, ἡνεχόμην and ἡνεσχόμην, hold up; mid., control oneself, tolerate, endure.

ἀν-ήγαγον, see ἀν-άγω.

ἀν-ήκεστος, ον [ἰκέομαι, heal, ἔκος, τό, remedy, Eng. pan-acea], not to be healed, incurable, irreparable.

ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ, 291, man, Lat. uir, as opposed to woman, youth, or child, in contrast with the generic ἄνθρωπος.

ἀνθ-ίστημι, match against; mid., stand against, resist.

ἄνθρωπος, ὁ, ἡ [phil-anthropy], man, human being, Lat. homō, one of the human race as opposed to a higher or lower order of beings;

contemptuously, person, fellow; pl., men, persons, people.

ἀνιάω, ἀνιάσω, ἡνιάσα, ἡνιάσθην [ἀν'ᾱ, grief], harass, trouble.

ἀν-ίστημι, make stand up, rouse up, start up, raise up; mid., with pf. and 2 aor. act., stand up, rise, get up.

ἀν-όδος, ἡ [ὁδός], way up, the march inland from the coast.

ἀν-όλω, ἀν-όλω, ἀν-έφη, ἀν-έφωγα and ἀν-έφχα, ἀν-έφγωμαι, ἀν-έφχθην, 604, 8, open up, open.

ἀντ-αγοράζω, buy in exchange.

ἀντ-επιμέλομαι, take care in return, take measures against.

ἀντί, prep. with gen., orig. facing, over against, against, hence, instead of, for, in place of, in preference to, in return for.

In composition ἀντί signifies against, in opposition, in return, in turn, instead.

ἀντι-λέγω, say or speak against, say in opposition, object.

ἀντίος, ᾱ, ον [ἀντί], set against, opposite; ἀντίοι λέναι, go to meet; ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου, from the opposite side. 772.

ἀντι-παρα-θέω, run along one's own line to meet.

ἀντι-παρασκευάζομαι, prepare oneself in turn.

ἀντι-παρατάττομαι, array oneself against.

ἀντι-ποιέω, do in return, retaliate; mid., lay claim to. 746.

ἀντι-στασιώτης, ου [649], one of the opposite faction, opponent.

ἀντι-τάττω, set against; mid., marshal oneself against. 773.

ἀντι-φυλάττω, guard in turn; mid., guard oneself in turn.

ἀντρον, τό, cave.

ἀνυστός, όν [ἀνύω, accomplish], to be accomplished, possible.

ἄνω, adv. [ἀνδ], above, up, on higher ground, upwards, into the air, up country; comp., ἀνωτέρω, sup., ἀνωτάτω.

ἄνωθεν, adv., from above.

ἄξιᾱ, ᾱς [435], worth, value; τὴν ἀξιᾱν τιπὶ νεῖμαι, give one his deserts.

ἄξινη, ης [Lat. ascia, axe, Eng. AXE, ADZE], axe, Lat. bipennis.

ἄξιος, ᾱ, ον [435], weighing as much as, worthy of, deserving, valuable, befitting, worth; neut. ἄξιον (sc. ἐστὶ), be worth while, becoming; πολλοῦ ἄξιος, worth much, of great value; πλείονος ἄξιος, more valuable or serviceable, πλείστου ἄξιος, most valuable. 760.

ἄξιόω, ἀξιόσω, etc. [435], think fit, deem worthy or proper, expect; hence, claim, ask, demand. 758.

ἄξιος, adv. [435], worthily, fitly. 761.

ἄξων, ονος, ό [435], axle.

ἀπ-αγγέλλω, bring back word, announce, report.

ἀπ-αγορεύω [ἀγορεύω, harangue, say, ἀγορά], say no, forbid; intrans., give up or out.

ἀπ-άγω, lead away or back.

ἀπ-αίτέω, ask from, demand, demand back.

ἀπ-αλλάττω, change off, abandon, quit, go away, depart, withdraw, act. and mid.; pass., be freed from, be rid of.

ἀπαλός, ἡ, όν, tender, delicate.

ἅπαξ, numeral adv., 496, once.

ἀπαράσκευος, ον [παρασκευή], unprepared.

ἅπας, ᾱσα, αν [544], all together, all, whole, entire; with the art. it has pred. position, as ἅπαν τὸ μέσον, the entire space between.

ἅπ-ειμι (εἶμι), be away or absent.

ἅπ-ειμι (εἶμι), go off or away, depart.

ἀ-πειρος, ον [561], *without experience, unskilled.*

ἀπ-ελαύνω, *drive away; intr., march, ride, or go away.*

ἀπ-ελθών, *see ἀπ-έρχομαι.*

ἀ-περ, *see δσ-περ.*

ἀπ-έρχομαι, *come or go away, depart, retreat, desert.*

ἀπ-εχθάνομαι, ἀπ-εχθήσομαι, ἀπ-ηχθόμην, ἀπ-ήχθημαι, 625, 3, v. [ἐχθος, τό, *hatred*], *be hated or hateful, incur hatred.*

ἀπ-έχω, *keep off or away; intr., be away from or distant, Lat. distō; mid., keep oneself from, desist or refrain from.*

ἀπ-ήει, *see ἀπ-ειμι (εἶμι).*

ἀπ-ήλθον, *see ἀπ-έρχομαι.*

ἀπ-ιέναι, etc., *see ἀπ-ειμι (εἶμι).*

ἀ-πιστεύω, ἀπιστήσω, etc. [495], *distrust, mistrust, disobey. 768.*

ἀ-πλετος, ον [πίμπλημι], *not to be filled or measured, great.*

ἀπλόος, ὅη, ὅον, contr. οὖς, ἦ, οὖν, *simple, frank, sincere, Lat. simplex; τὸ ἀπλοῦν, sincerity.*

ἀπό, prep. with gen. [Lat. ab, Eng. off, of], *from, off, off from, away from. Of place, from, away from; of time, from, after, starting from; of source, including origin, from; of cause, on, upon; of means, by, out of, by the aid of, by means of, with.*

In composition ἀπό signifies *from, away, off, in return, back*, but is sometimes simply intensive, and sometimes almost neg. (arising from the sense of *off*).

ἀπο-βιβάζω, *make go off, disembark.*

ἀπο-βλέπω, *look away from all other objects at one, look steadily.*

ἀπο-γινώσκω, *give up the intention of. 753.*

ἀπο-δείκνυμι, *point out, make*

known, appoint; mid., set forth one's views, declare, express.

ἀπο-δέρω, *take the hide off, flay, skin.*

ἀπο-διδράσκω, *run away, desert, escape by stealth, abandon.*

ἀπο-δίδωμι, *give back or up, restore, deliver, pay, fulfil; mid., sell.*

ἀπο-θνήσκω, *die off, die, be killed, be slain, be put to death, suffer death.*

ἀπο-θύω, *sacrifice in payment of a vow, offer a votive sacrifice.*

ἀπό-κειμαι, *be laid away.*

ἀπο-κλείω, *shut off, cut off, intercept.*

ἀπο-κόπτω, *cut off, beat off.*

ἀπο-κρίνομαι, *give a decision, make answer, answer, Lat. respondeō.*

ἀπο-κρύπτω, *hide from, conceal.*

ἀπο-κτείνω, *kill off, put to death.*

ἀπο-κωλύω, *hinder from, hinder, prevent.*

ἀπο-λαμβάνω, *take from or back, regain.*

ἀπο-λείπω, *leave behind, forsake, abandon, desert.*

ἀπο-όλλυμι, *destroy utterly, kill; mid. with 2 pf. and plpf. act., perish, die, be lost.*

Ἀπόλλων, ὦνος, ὁ, *Apollo, one of the greatest of the divinities of the Greeks, god of music and poetry.*

ἀπο-λύω, *loose from, acquit. 757.*

ἀπο-ολώλεκα, *see ἀπ-όλλυμι.*

ἀπο-οοστέω [νόστος, *return home*], *return home.*

ἀπο-πέμπω, *send off or away, let go, send home, remit; mid., send away from oneself, dismiss.*

ἀπο-πλέω, *sail from the side of, sail away or home.*

ἀπό-πλοος, contr. ἀπόπλους, ὁ [πλέω], *voyage home.*

ἀπο-πορεύομαι, *go off, depart.*

ἀ-πορέω, ἀπορήσω, etc. [561], *be in doubt, be at a loss, act. and mid.; be in want of. 749.*

ἀ-πορίᾱ, ᾱs [561], *difficulty*.

ἀ-πορος, ον [561], *without means, impracticable*; of roads, mountains, or rivers, *impassable, unfordable*;

ἀπορον, τό, *obstacle, difficulty*.

ἀπό-ρητος, ον [ἐρῶ], *not to be told, secret*.

ἀπο-σκεδάννυμι, *scatter to the winds*; mid. and pass., *be dispersed, straggle*.

ἀπο-σπάω, *draw off, separate, withdraw*.

ἀπο-στέλλω, *send back or away with a commission, despatch, dismiss*.

ἀπο-στρατοπεδεύομαι, *camp away from*.

ἀπο-στρέφω, *turn back, induce to return*.

ἀπο-σῦλάω [σῦλον, σκῦλον, *spoil*], *strip off, spoil, rob*. 737.

ἀπο-σώζω, *bring back safely or in safety, restore safe*.

ἀπο-τείνω, *reach out, extend*.

ἀπο-τέμνω, *cut off, sever*, as parts of the body, and so as a military phrase, *intercept*.

ἀπο-τίθημι, *put or store away*.

ἀπο-τίνω, *pay back*; mid., *make pay back, punish, requite*.

ἀπο-φαίνω, *show forth*; mid., *show one's own, declare, express*.

ἀπο-φεύγω, *flee away, escape, flee*.

ἀπο-χωρέω, *go away, depart, retreat, withdraw*.

ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι, *vote no, vote against, reject by vote*.

ἀ-προσδόκητος, ον [προσδοκάω, *expect*], *unexpected*; ἐξ ἀπροσδοκήτου, *unexpectedly*, Lat. *ex improvisō*.

ἄπτω (ἄφ-), ἄψω, ἤψα, ἤμμαι, ἤφθην, 613, 1, iii., *lay hold of, fasten, kinde*; mid., *touch*. 746.

ἄρα, post-positive particle of inference, *therefore, accordingly, then*.

ἄρα, interrogative particle, *surely? indeed?*, but often best expressed

in Eng. by the intonation; ἄρ' οὐ, Lat. *nōne*, expecting an affirmative answer.

Ἄραβία, ᾱs, *Arabia*.

Ἀράξης, ου, *the Araxes*.

Ἀρβάκης, ου, *Arbaces*, one of the four generals of the king.

Ἀργεῖος, ᾱ, ον, *of Argos or Argolis*; Ἀργεῖος, δ, *an Argive*.

ἄργός, δν [468], *not working, idle, in idleness*.

ἄργυρεος, ᾱ, ον, 191, *of silver*.

ἄργύριον, τό, *silver, silver money, coin*.

ἄργυρος, δ [ἄργός, *white*, Lat. *argentum*], *silver*.

ἀρέσκω (αρε-), ἀρέσω, ἤρεσα, ἠρέσθην, vi., *please, suit*. 768.

ἀρετή, ἧς, *goodness, virtue, courage, valour, good service*.

ἀρήγω, ἀρήξω, ἠρήξα, *succour*.

Ἀριαῖος, δ, *Ariæus*, the lieutenant-general of Cyrus, and commander of his barbarian force.

ἀριθμός, δ [*arithmetic*], *number, enumeration, extent*.

Ἀρίσταρχος, δ, *Aristarchus*.

ἀριστάω, ἀριστήσω, etc. [ἄριστον], *breakfast*, Lat. *prandeō*.

ἀριστερός, ᾱ, δν, *left*, Lat. *sinister*; ἐν ἀριστερᾷ (sc. χειρὶ), *on the left*.

Ἀριστιππος, δ, *Aristippus*.

ἄριστον, τό [ἤρι, *early*], *breakfast*.

ἄριστος, η, ον, 469, *fittest in any sense, best, bravest, noblest*.

Ἀρκάς, ἄδος, δ, *an Arcadian*.

ἄρκτος, ἡ [*arctic*], *bear*; the constellation *Ursa Maior, the north*.

ἄρμα, ατος, τό, *war-chariot*, Lat. *currus*.

ἄρμ-άμαξα, ης [435], *a closed carriage*.

Ἀρμενία, ᾱs, *Armenia*.

ἀρμωστής, ου, *governor, harmost*.

ἀρπάξω (ἄρπαδ-), ἀρπάσω, ἤρπασα, ἤρπακα, ἤρπασμαι, ἤρπάσθην, 618, 2,

iv. [Lat. *rapiō*, seize, tear, Eng. *Harpy*], seize, capture, carry away, plunder.

Ἀρταγέρσης, ου, *Artagerses*, commander of the king's body-guard.

Ἀρταξέρξης, ου, *Artaxerxes II.*, eldest son of Darius II. 705.

Ἀρταπάτης, ου, *Artapates*, the confidential attendant of Cyrus.

Ἄρτεμις, ἰδος, ἡ, *Artemis*, sister of Apollo, patroness of hunting.

ἄρτος, ὁ, loaf of bread.

Ἀρχαγόρας, ᾱ, *Archagoras*.

ἀρχαῖος, ᾱ, ον [463], old, ancient; τὸ ἀρχαῖον, adv., formerly.

ἀρχή, ἡς [463], beginning, rule, province, government, satrapy.

ἀρχικός, ἡ, ὄν [463], fit to rule.

ἄρχω, ἔρξω, ἤρξα, ἤρξμαι, ἤρχθην, 600, 1 [463], be first, in point of time begin, take the lead in an action, be the first to do it; in point of station rule, reign over, command, have command; ἔρχων, ὁ, ruler, commander, leader, chief, a higher title than στρατηγός; τὸ ἄρχειν, the government; οἱ ἀρχόμενοι, subjects, soldiers; mid., begin, enter upon an action. 746, 748.

ἄρωμα, ατος, τό [aroma], spice, fragrant herbs.

ἀ-σέβεια, ᾱς [ἀ-σεβής, impious, σέβομαι, revere], impiety.

†ἀ-σθενέω, be feeble, ill, sick.

ἀσθενής, ἐς [σθένος, τό, strength], without strength, weak, feeble.

Ἀσίᾱ, ᾱς, Asia.

ἀσκέω [ascetic], practice, observe.

ἄσκος, ὁ, leathern bag, wine-skin.

ἄσμενος, η, ον [ἡδομαι], well-pleased, with pleasure, gladly.

ἀσπάζομαι (ασπαδ-), ἀσπάζομαι, iv. [580], draw to oneself, embrace, welcome, greet.

Ἀσπένδιος, ὁ, an Aspendian.

ἀσπίς, ἰδος, ἡ, shield.

ἀστράπτω (αστραπ-), ἡστραψα, iii., flash, glitter.

ἄστυ, εως, τό, town.

Ἀστυάγης, ου, *Astyages*.

†ἀσφάλεια, ᾱς, safety, freedom from danger, security.

ἀσφαλής, ἐς [σφάλω], not liable to be tripped up, safe, free from danger, sure, secure; ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῃ, in greater security; ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῃ, in the safest place.

ἀσφαλτός, ἡ [asphalt], asphalt.

ἀσφαλῶς, adv. [ἀσφαλής], safely, securely, without danger.

ἀ-τακτέω [554], be out of order.

ἀ-τακτος, ον [554], in disorder.

ἀ-τιμάζω (ατιμαδ-), ατιμάσω, etc., iv. [444], dishonour, disgrace.

ἀτμίζω (ατιμιδ-), ἀτμίσω, iv. [ἀτμός, vapour], steam.

ἄ-τοπος, ον [τόπος], out of place, strange, absurd.

Ἀττικός, ἡ, ὄν, Attic.

αὐ, adv., again, in turn, moreover.

αὐλιζομαι (αυλιδ-), ηυλίσθην, iv. [αὐλή, open courtyard], lie in the open air, bivouac, lodge, be quartered.

αὐτίκα, adv., at this very moment, immediately, on the spot.

αὐτόθι, adv. [518], in this or that very place, here, there.

αὐτο-κέλευστος, ον [518], self-directed, of one's own accord.

αὐτό-ματος, ον [518], self-impelled; ἀπὸ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, unbidden, voluntarily.

αὐτο-μολέω [518], desert, the regular military word.

αὐτό-μολος, ὁ [518], deserter.

αὐτός, ἡ, ὁ, 511 [518], intensive pron., self, same, him, her, it. 515, 516.

αὐτοῦ, adv. [518], in the very place, here, there.

αὐτοῦ, see εαυτοῦ.

ἀφ', see ἀπό.

ἀφ-αίρῶ, take away; mid., take away for oneself, rob. 737.

ἀφανής, ἐς [483], unseen, out of sight.

ἀφανίζω (αφανιδ-), ἀφανῶ, ἡφάνισα, ἡφάνικα [483], hide, blot out.

ἀφ-αρπάζω, plunder, pillage.

ἀφ-ειστήκεσαν, see ἀφ-ίστημι.

ἀφ-ήσω, see ἀφ-ήμι.

ἀφθονος, ὃν [φθόνος, ὁ, envy], ungrudging, abundant, fertile.

ἀφ-τήμι, send away, let go, let loose, let flow; πρὸς φιλιᾶν ἀφίεναι, let depart in peace.

ἀφ-ικνέομαι, come from one place to another, arrive, reach, return.

ἀφ-ιππεύω [564], ride back or off.

ἀφ-ίστημι, set off, separate, lead to revolt; intrans. in pass. and in 2 aor. and pf. act., stand off, revolt.

ἄφρων, ὃν, gen. ὄνος [φρήν], without sense, senseless, foolish.

ἀφύλακτος, ὃν [φυλάττω], unguarded, unwatched.

ἄφύλακτως, adv., unguardedly.

Ἀχαιός, οὗ, ὁ, an Achæan.

ἀχάριστος, ὃν [χαρίζομαι], ungracious, unpleasant.

ἄχαριστως, adv., without thanks.

ἄχθομαι, ἀχθέσσομαι, ἡχθέσθην, be troubled, displeased, or vexed.

ἄχρεϊος, ὃν [χράσσομαι], useless.

ἀψίνθιον, τό, wormwood.

B.

Βαβυλών, ὦνος, ἡ, Babylon.

Ἰβαβυλωνία, ἄς, Babylonia.

Ἰβάθος, οὗς, τό [bathos], depth.

βαθύς, εἶα, ὅ, deep.

βαίνω (βα-), βήσομαι, ἔβην, βέβηκα, βέβαιμαι, ἐβάθην, 646, 1, iv. and v. [Lat. uenitō, come, Eng. come, *basis*], go, walk.

Ἰβακτηρία, ἄς, staff, walking-stick.

βαλανός, ἡ, acorn, date.

βάλλω (βαλ-), βαλῶ, ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην, 619, 3, iv. [480], throw, throw at, hit, hit with stones, stone.

βάπτω (βαφ-), βάψω, ἔβαψα, βέβαυμαι, ἐβάφην, 613, 2, iii. [baptize], dip, dip in.

Ἰβαρβαρικός, ἡ, ὄν, foreign, barbarian; τὸ βαρβαρικόν (sc. στρατεύμα), the Persian force of Cyrus.

Ἰβαρβαρικῶς, adv., in the barbarian tongue, e.g. in Persian.

βάρβαρος, ὃν [barbarous], not Greek, barbarian, foreign; βάρβαρος, ὁ, a foreigner, barbarian.

βαρέως, adv. [βαρύς, heavy, Lat. grauis, heavy, Eng. *bary-tone*], heavily; βαρέως ἀκούειν, hear with anger.

Ἰβασιλεία, ἄς, queen.

Ἰβασιλεία, ἄς, kingdom, royalty.

Ἰβασιλειος, ὃν, royal; βασιλεῖον, τό, and βασιλεία, τά, palace.

βασιλεύς, ἑως, ὁ [basilica, basilisk], king, Lat. *rēx*, esp. the king of Persia, when the art. is regularly omitted; παρὰ βασιλεῖ, at court.

Ἰβασιλείω, βασιλεύσω, be king.

Ἰβασιλικός, ἡ, ὄν, royal, the king's.

βέβαιος, ἄ, ὃν [βαίνω], abiding, firm, constant.

Βέλεσις, οὗς, ὁ, Belesys, a satrap.

βέλος, οὗς, τό [480], missile.

βέλτιστος, ἡ, ὃν, 469 [615], most desired, best, noblest, most advantageous.

βελτίων, ὃν, 469 [615], more desired, better, nobler, more advantageous.

βῆμα, ατος, τό [βαίνω], stride.

βία, ἄς, force, violence, Lat. *uīs*.

Ἰβιάζομαι (βιαδ-), βιάσσομαι, etc., 618, 3, iv., force, compel, overpower.

Ἰβιαίως, adv., violently, hard.

βιβάζω (βιβαδ-), βιβάσω or βιβῶ, ἐβίβασα, iv. [βαίνω], make go.

βιβλος, ἡ [*Bible, biblio-graphy*], book, Lat. *liber*.

βικος, ὁ, a large jar, wine-jar.

βιος, ὁ [Lat. *vīvus*, alive, Eng. *QUICK*, *bio-graphy*], life, living.

βλάκεύω [βλάξ, slack], be slack or idle, shirk.

βλάπτω (βλαβ-), βλάψω, ξβλαψα, βέβλαφα, βέβλαμμαι, ἐβλάφθην and ἐβλάβην, 613, 3, iii. [βλάβη, hurt], injure, hurt, damage, harm.

βλέπω, βλέψω, ξβλεψα, look, turn one's eyes, face, point.

† **βοάω**, βοήσομαι, ἐβόησα, shout, call out, cry out.

βοή, ἡς, shout, call, cry.

† **βοή-θεια**, ας, succour, aid, help.

↓ **βοη-θέω**, βοηθήσω, ἐβοήθησα, βεβοήθηκα, βεβοήθημαι [θέω], run to rescue at a cry for help, give assistance, bring aid, help, assist. 768.

Βοιωτός, ὁ, a Boeotian.

Βορέας, ου, contr. *Borṛās*, ᾶ, Boreas; *Βορέας* OR *ἄνεμος Βορέας*, the north wind.

βόσκημα, ατος, τό [βόσκω, feed], fattened beast, pl. cattle.

βουλεύω, βουλεύσω, etc. [615], plan, plot; comm. mid., form one's own plan, plan, consider, deliberate, purpose, determine, settle on.

βουλή, ἡς [615], will, plan, deliberation; senate.

βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην, 605, 1 [615], will, wish, desire, be willing, like.

βοῦς, βοός, ὁ, ἡ, 388 [Lat. *bōs*, ox, cow, Eng. cow, *bucolic*], ox, cow, pl. cattle, oxen.

βραδέως, adv. [βραδύς, slow], slowly, leisurely.

βραχύς, εἶα, ὅ [Lat. *brevis*, short], short; πέτεσθαι βραχύ, have a short flight; βραχύτερα τοξεύειν, shoot less far; ἐπὶ βραχὺ ἐξικνεῖσθαι, have a short range.

βρέχω, ξβρεξα, βέβρεγμαi, ἐβρέχθην, 600, 2, wet, pass. get wet.

βροτός, ὁ, a mortal.

Βυζάντιον, τό, *Byzantium*.

βωμός, ὁ, altar.

Γ.

γάμος, ὁ [*bi-gamy, crypto-gam*], wedding, marriage.

γάρ, post-positive causal conj., for; when it expresses specification, confirmation, or explanation, because, indeed, certainly, then, now, for example, namely; in questions, then, or to be omitted in translation; καὶ γάρ, Lat. *etenim*, and (this is so) for, and to be sure, and really.

γαστήρ, τρός, ἡ [*gastric*], belly.

Γαυλίτης, ου, *Gaulites*.

γέ, enclitic and post-positive intens. particle, even, at least, yet, indeed, certainly, but often to be indicated in Eng. only by emphasis.

γεγενῆσθαι, γέγονα, see γίγνομαι.

γελάω, γελάσομαι, ἐγέλασα, ἐγελάσθην, 441, laugh, Lat. *rideō*.

† **γέλως**, ωτος, ὁ, laughter, roar of laughter.

γέμω, be full of. 749.

γενναιότης, ητος, ἡ [612], nobility, magnanimity, generosity.

γένος, ους, τό [612], family, race.

γέρρον, τό, wicker-shield.

† **γερρο-φόροι**, οἱ [658], light-armed troops with wicker-shields.

γέρων, οντος, ὁ [GRAY], old man.

γεύω, γεύσω, ἔγευσα, γέγευμαι [Lat. *gustō*, taste, Eng. CHOOSE], give a taste; mid., taste. 747.

γέφυρα, ας, bridge; γέφυρα ἐξευγμένη πλοίοις, pontoon bridge.

γῆ, γῆς [*apo-gee, geo-graphy*], earth, ground, country, Lat. *terra*, land as opposed to sea.

†γῆ-λόφος, ὁ [λόφος], mound of earth, hill, hillock.

γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, γέγονα, γεγένημαι, 606, 1 [612], be born, become, be made, happen, take place, occur, and with many other meanings to be determined from the context, such as arise, fall upon, get, dawn, draw on, fall, accrue, be favourable, amount to, prove oneself to be.

γινώσκω (γνο-), γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην, 642, 2, vi. [644], perceive, know, understand, learn, think. 839.

Γλοῦς, ὁ, Glus, an Egyptian.

γνώμη, ἡς [644], opinion, plan, understanding, judgment; ἄνευ τῆς γνώμης τινός, against one's will; ἐπιμπλάσ τὴν γνώμην, satisfy one's desire.

γινῶναι, γινώσομαι, see γινώσκω.

γονεὺς, ἑως, ὁ [612], father, pl. parents.

γόνυ, γόνατος, τό [Lat. genū, knee, Eng. KNEE], knee.

γούν, post-positive intensive particle [γέ+οὖν], at any rate, anyhow.

γραῦς, γραῖός, ἡ, 388 [cf. γέρων], old woman.

γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα, γέγραφα, γέγραμμαι, ἐγράφη, 604, 3 [Lat. scribō, write, Eng. SHARP, GRAVE, graphic, grammar, etc.], make a mark, draw, write, describe.

†γυμνάζω (γυμναδ-), γυμνᾶσω, etc., iv., train naked, exercise.

†γυμνῆς, ἦτος, ὁ, a light armed foot-soldier.

†γυμνικός, ἡ, ὄν, gymnastic.

γυμνός, ἡ, ὄν, [gymnast], naked, stripped, lightly clad.

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ, 392 [612], woman, wife.

Γωβρύας, ου, Gobryas, one of the four generals of the king.

Δ.

δαίμων, ονος, ὁ [demon], divinity.

δάκνω (δακ-), δήξομαι, ἔδακον, δέδηγμαί, ἐδήχθην, 624, 1, v., bite.

δακρύω, δακρύσω, ἐδάκρυσσα, δεδάκρῦμαι [δάκρυ, tear, Lat. lacrima, tear, Eng. TEAR], shed tears, weep.

Δάνα, τῷ, Dana, a city.

δανείζω (δανειδ-), δανείσω, iv., lend; mid., have lent to oneself, borrow.

δαπανᾶω, δαπανήσω, etc. [δαπάνη, expense], spend, expend.

Δάρδας, ατος, ὁ, the Dardas.

†δάρεικός, ὁ, daric, a Persian gold coin. It contained about 125.5 grains of gold, and would now be worth about \$5.40 in American gold. The daric was worth 20 Attic drachmas.

Δαρείος, ὁ, Darius, the name of many of the Persian kings. 705.

δασμός, ὁ, tax, impost, tribute.

δασύς, εἶα, ὅ, thick, dense, thickly grown, rough.

δέ, post-positive conj., but, midway in force between ἀλλά and καί. Its adversative force is often slight, so that it may be rendered by and, to be sure, further, etc. μέν is often found in the preceding clause, and μέν . . . δέ then have the force of while . . . yet, on the one hand . . . on the other, or both . . . and, but generally these expressions are too strong to be used in translating into English, and the force of μέν had better be indicated simply by stress of the voice (see μέν). καί . . . δέ, and (δέ) also, but further.

-δε, suffix denoting whither, or with demonstrative force.

δεδιώς, δέδουκα, see δεῖδω.

δέη, δεηθῆναι, δεῖ, see δέω, lack.

δεῖδω, δέισομαι, ἔδεια, δέδοικα and δέδιο, 660, 3 (pres. not Attic), fear, be afraid, of reasonable fear.

δείκνυμι (δεικ-), δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέ-
δειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην, 651, 1, v.
[486], *point out, indicate, show.*

δελή, ης, *afternoon, evening.*

δειλός, ἡ, ὅν [δείδω], *fearful, cowardly, skulking, vile.*

δεινός, ἡ, ὅν [δείδω], *dreadful, perilous, terrible, marvellous, skilful, clever*; **δεινόν**, τό, *peril, danger.*

δείπνον, τό, *dinner, supper.*

δέκα, indecl., 496 [Lat. *decem, ten*, Eng. *TEN, decade*], *ten.*

δένδρον, τό, *tree, Lat. arbor.*

δεξιός, ἄ, ὅν [602], *right, Lat. dexter*; ἡ **δεξιὰ** (sc. χεῖρ), *the right (hand)*, used either in indicating direction, or with λαβεῖν καὶ δοῦναι as a sign of confirmation; τὸ **δεξιόν** (sc. κέρας), *the right (wing).*

† **δέρμα**, ατος, τό, *hide, skin.*

δέρω, δερῶ, ἔδειρα, δέδαρμαι, ἐδάρην [Lat. *dolū, split*, Eng. *TEAR, epidermis*], *flay.*

δεσμός, ὁ [δέω, bind], *band, strap.*

δεσπότης, ου [despot], *master, lord*, Lat. *dominus.*

δεῦρο, adv., *hither, here.*

δεύτερος, ἄ, ον, 496 [499], *second*; **δεύτερον**, as adv., *a second time*, Lat. *iterum.*

δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδέξαμην, δέδεγμαι, 600, 6 [602], *receive what is offered, take, accept, admit, await.*

δέω, δήσω, ἔδησα, δέδεκα, δέδεμαι, ἐδέθην, 442 [*dia-dem*], *bind, fasten, tie, fetter, shackle.*

δέω, δεήσω, ἐδέησα, δεδέηκα, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην, 605, 2, *lack, want, need*; comm. mid., *lack, need, want, desire, beg, request*; δεῖ, used impersonally, *there is need, it is necessary or proper, one must, ought, should.* 749.

δή, post-positive intensive particle, *now, indeed, in particular, accordingly, so, then*, but often its force is best indicated simply by emphasis.

δῆλος, η, ον, *plain, clear, evident, manifest.*

† **δηλώω**, δηλώσω, etc., *make clear.*

δημόσιος, ἄ, ον [δήμος, *the people*], *public*; τὰ **δημόσια**, *the public money.*

δηῶω, δηῶσω, ἐδηῶσα [Epic δήιος, *hostile*], *lay waste, ravage.*

διά, prep. with gen. and acc. [499], orig. *between*, then *through*. With gen., used of place, time, or means, *through, during, throughout, by means of*, Lat. *per*; διὰ ταχέων, *rapidly*; διὰ πίστεως, *trustingly*. With acc., *through, by means or aid of, on account of, for the sake of*, Lat. *ob* or *propter*.

In composition **διά** signifies *through* or *over*; sometimes it adds an idea of continuance or fulfilment; or it may signify *apart*, Lat. *di-, dis-*.

Δία, Διτ, Διός, see Ζεύς.

δια-βαίνω, *go over, cross.*

δια-βάλλω, *throw over, throw at* with words, *slander, traduce.*

διά-βασις, εως, ἡ [δια-βαίνω], *a crossing, hence ford, bridge.*

δια-βατός, ἡ, ὅν [δια-βαίνω], *fordable, passable.*

δια-βιβάζω, *make go across, take or carry across.*

δι-αγγέλλω, *carry word through, bring word, report.*

δια-γίγνομαι, of time, *get through, continue, exist, subsist.* 859.

δι-άγω, of time, *pass, spend, live, continue.* 859.

δια-δέχομαι, *receive at intervals*; θηρῶσι διαδεχόμενοι, *relieve one another in the chase.*

δια-δίδωμι, *distribute.*

δια-θεάομαι, *observe closely.*

δια-κόπτω, *cut to pieces or through.*

διὰ-κόσμιαι, αι, α, 496 [499], 200.

δια-λαγχάνω, *assign by lot.*

δια-λέγομαι, δια-λέξομαι, δι-είλεγμαι, δι-ελέχθην, *converse with.* 773.

δια-λείπω, leave a space between, stand apart, be distant.

δια-νέμω, divide up among.

δια-νοέομαι, pass. dep., be minded, intend, purpose.

δια-πέμπω, send round.

δια-πλέω, sail over or across.

δια-πολεμέω, fight it out. 773.

δια-πράττω, work out; comm. mid., bring to pass, effect.

δια-σπαίρω, tear in pieces, plunder, lay waste, sack, spoil, ravage.

δια-σημαίνω, point out, indicate.

δια-σκηνέω, encamp apart.

δια-σπᾶω, draw apart, separate, scatter, of soldiers.

δια-σπείρω, scatter about, scatter.

δια-σφίζω, bring through safely, keep safe, save.

δια-τάττω, draw up in array.

δια-τελέω, finish, complete the march, continue. 859.

δια-τίθημι, arrange, dispose.

δια-τρέφω, feed well, support.

δια-τρίβω, rub through, spend, waste time, delay.

δια-φερόντως, adv. [658], differently from others, pre-eminently, peculiarly, surpassingly.

δια-φέρω, bear apart, quarrel, be different from, Lat. differō. 753.

δια-φθείρω, destroy utterly, ruin, corrupt.

διδάσκαλος, δ [486], teacher.

διδάσκω (διδάχ-), διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, δεδίδαχα, δεδίδαγμαί, ἐδιδάχθην, 642, 3, vi. [486], teach, instruct, show, Lat. doceō. 737.

δίδημι, bind, collateral form of δέω, bind.

διδράσκω (δρα-), δράσομαι, ἔδρᾱν, ἐδέρᾱκα, 646, 2, vi. [TREAD], run.

δίδωμι (δο-), δάσω, ἔδωκα, δέδωκα, ἐδόμαι, ἐδόθην, 647, 2, vii. [641], give, grant, permit.

δι-ελαύνω, drive or ride through.

δι-έρχομαι, go or march through, travel, spread abroad.

δι-ερωτάω, cross-question.

δι-έχω, hold apart, be apart. 753.

δι-ίστημι, set apart; mid. and 2 aor. act. intr., stand apart, open ranks, stand at intervals.

δικαίος, ᾱ, ον [486], just, right, reasonable, proper.

δικαιοσύνη, ης [486], justice.

δικαίως, adv. [486], justly, rightly.

δίκη, ης [486], custom, right, justice, punishment, deserts.

διό, for δι' ὅ, wherefore.

δι-πλοῦς, ῆ, οὖν, 191 [499], double.

δίσ, adv., 496 [499], twice, Lat. bis.

δισ-χίλιοι, αι, α, 496 [499], 2000. διφθέρᾱ, ᾱς, tanned hide, leathern bag.

δί-φρος, δ [499, 658], body of a chariot.

διώκω, διώξω, ἐδίωξα, δεδίωχα, ἐδιώχθην, 604, 4, pursue, go in pursuit, chase, give chase, prosecute.

†διώξις, εως, ῆ, pursuit.

δι-ὥρυξ, υχος, ῆ [δι-ορύττω, dig through], ditch, canal.

δοκέω, δόξω, ἐδοξα, δέδογμαί, ἐδόχθην, 605, 3 [586], seem, appear, seem best or good, be voted, think.

Δόλοψ, οπος, δ, a Dolopian.

δόξα, ης [586], reputation.

δορκάς, ἄδος, ῆ, gazelle.

δόρυ, ατος, τό [δρῦς, tree, Eng. TREE], prop. stem of a tree, then shaft of a spear, and hence spear.

†δουλεύω, ἐδούλευσα, δεδούλευκα, be a slave, Lat. serviō.

δοῦλος, δ, slave, Lat. servus.

δοῦναι, etc., see δίδωμι.

δουπέω, ἐδούπησα [δοῦπος, din], make a din.

Δρακόντιος, δ, Dracontius.

δράμοιμι, δραμοῦμαι, see τρέχω.

†δρεπανη-φόρος, ον [658], scythe-bearing, of chariots.

δρέπανον, τό, scythe.

δρόμος, ὁ [cf. διδράσκω, Eng. *drum-darg*], a running, run., race, race-course; δρόμῳ, on the run, double quick.

δύναμαι (δυνα-), δυνήσομαι, δεδύνημαι, ἐδυνήθην, 647, 4, vii. [*dynamic*], be able, be capable, be strong enough, be powerful, can, be worth, amount to.

↓ δύναμις, εὖς, ἡ, ability, power, resources, force, troops.

↓ δυνάστης, οὐ, nobleman.

↓ δυνατός, ἡ, ὄν, able, possible.

δύνω, set, of the sun. See δέω.

δύο, δυοῖν, 496 [499], two.

δυσ- [*dys-peptic*], ill, hard. 424 c.

δυσ-πόρευτος, οὐ [561], hard to get through, of heavy ground.

δύω, δύσω, ἐδύσα and ἐδύν, δέδυκα, δέδυμαι, ἐδύθην, 652, 1, make enter, intr. enter; mid., set, of the sun.

δώδεκα, indecl., 496 [499], twelve.

δωρόμαι, δωρήσομαι, etc. [641], give a present, present.

δώρον, τό [641], present, gift.

E.

εἶλωκα, εἶλων, see ἀλίσκομαι.

εἶν, contr. εἶν or ἦν, in crasis καὶ εἶν, conj. [εἶ+εἶν], if, with subjv. 273, 803.

εἶ-αυτοῦ, ἡς, οὗ, reflexive pron., 527 [518], of himself, herself, itself. 528.

εἶω, εἶσω, εἶασα, εἶακα, εἶαμαι, εἶξ-θην, permit, allow, let, let go.

εἴβdomos, η, ον, 496 [ἐκτά], seventh.

εἶ-, for ἐν before a palatal mute.

ἐγγύς, adv., near, at hand, comp.

ἐγγύτερον, sup. ἐγγυτάτω or ἐγγύτατα.

ἐγείρω (εγερ-), ἐγερῶ, ἤγειρα and ἠγρόμην, ἐγρήγορα, ἐγρήγερμαι, ἠγέρθην, iv., rouse; pass. and 2 pf., lie awake.

ἐγ-καλύπτω, cover closely; mid., wrap oneself up.

ἐγ-κλειυστος, οὐ [κελεύω], instigated.

ἐγ-κέφαλος, ὁ [κεφαλῇ], brain; crown, cabbage, of the palm.

ἐγ-κρατής, ἐς [471], in possession of, master of. 700.

ἐγ-χειρίδιον, τό [χείρ], dagger.

ἐγ-χειρίζω (χειριδ-), ἐγ-χειριούμαι, etc., iv. [χείρ], commit to the hands of, entrust.

ἐγ-χέω, pour in.

ἐγώ, ἐμοῦ or μοῦ, personal pron., 511 [Lat. *ego*, *mē*, Eng. *I*, *me*, *egoist*], *I*. 512, 513, 514.

↓ ἐγώ-γε [γέ], *I for my part*.

εἶδισα, see δέω.

† ἐθελοντής, οὗ, volunteer; as adj., of one's own free will.

ἐθῶ or ἐθῶ, ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα, 605, 4, wish, be willing, volunteer.

ἔθνος, οὐς, τό [*ethnic*], nation, tribe, Lat. *nātiō*.

εἰ, conj., if, with indic. and opt., 797, 798, 800, 804; in indirect questions, *whether*; εἰ μή, *if not*, except, unless, Lat. *nisi*; εἰ δὲ μή, *otherwise*.

εἶα, εἶασα, see εἶω.

εἶδον, see ὁράω.

εἰκάω (εἰκαδ-), εἰκάσω, εἵκασα, εἵκασμαι, εἰκάσθην, iv., liken, suppose, conjecture, fancy.

εἴκοσι, indecl., 496 [Lat. *uīginti*, *twenty*, Eng. *twenty*], twenty.

εἰληφα, etc., see λαμβάνω.

εἶλον, εἰλόμην, see αἰρέω.

εἶμι [εἰ-], ἔσομαι, 700 [666], be, exist; with gen. or dat. of possessor, belong, have, possess; ἔστι, it is possible, one can.

εἶμι (ι-), impf. ἦα or ἦειν, 701 [Lat. *eō*, *ire*, go], go (pres. indic. with fut. sense, shall go), proceed, march.

εἰ-περ [εἰ+περ], if in fact.

εἶπον (επ-, ερ-), ἐρῶ, εἶρηκα, εἶρημαι, ἐρρήθην, 655, 2, viii. [Lat. *uocō*, call];

Lat. *uerbum, word*, Eng. *word*], *say, speak, tell, relate, propose, order*; *ἐρητο, orders had been given.* 838 b.

ειρήνη, ης [*Irene*], *peace*, Lat. *pāx*.

εις, prep. with acc., properly of place, *into, to, among, for, against, into the country of*, sometimes with verbs of rest, but implying previous motion, where Eng. uses *in*; of time, *up to, during, in, at*; with numerals, *up to, at most, to the number of*; of the end or object, *in regard to, for, in respect to*.

In composition **εις** signifies *into, to, on, in*.

εις, *μία, ἓν*, numeral adj., 496, 497, *one*, Lat. *ūnus*.

εἰς-άγω, *lead into or in*.

εἰς-βάλλω, *throw into*; intr., *empty, of rivers, invade*.

εἰς-βολή, ἧς [480], *entrance, pass*.

εἰς-εἰμι (*εἶμι*), *go in, enter*.

εἰς-ελαύνω, *drive or march into*.

εἰς-έρχομαι, *come in, enter*.

εἴσομαι, see *οἶδα*.

εἰς-οδος, ἥ [*όδός*], *entrance*.

εἰς-πηδάω, *spring into*.

εἰστίκειν, see *ἴστημι*.

εἴσω, adv. [*ἐν*], *inside, within*.

εἶτα, adv., *then, thereupon*.

ἐκαστος, η, ον, *each, every, of more than two*.

ἐκάστοτε, adv., *every time*.

ἐκάτερος, ᾱ, ον, *each of two*.

ἐκατέρω-θεν, adv., *on both sides or flanks*.

ἐκατέρω-σε, adv., *in both directions*.

ἐκατόν, indecl., 496 [Lat. *centum*, Eng. *HUNDRED, hecatom-b*], *100*.

ἐκ-βάλλω, *throw out, expel*.

ἐκ-γονος, ον [612], *born or sprung from*; *ἐκγονον, τό*, *offspring*.

ἐκ-δέρω, *strip off the skin, flay*.

ἐκ-δίδωμι, *give or deliver up*.

ἐκεῖ, adv., *there, in that place, thither*.

ἐκείνος, η, ο, dem. pron., 539 b, *that, that man there*, Lat. *ille*. 540.

ἐκ-καλύπτω, *uncover*, of shields without the usual leathern case.

ἐκ-κλησιᾶ, ᾱς [622], *meeting, assembly*.

ἐκ-κλίνω, *bend out, give way*.

ἐκ-κομίζω, *carry out*.

ἐκ-κόπτω, *cut off or down*.

ἐκ-κῦμαίνω (*κῦμαν-*), iv. [*κῦμα, billow*], *billow out, surge forward*.

ἐκ-λέγω, *pick out*; mid., *select for oneself, choose*.

ἐκ-λείπω, *leave out, abandon, quit*; intr., *fail, melt away*.

ἐκ-πεπληγμένος, see *ἐκ-πλήττω*.

ἐκ-πίπτω, *fall out or down, be driven out, be exiled*.

ἐκ-πλέω, *sail out or away*.

ἐκ-πλεως, ων, gen. *ω* [*πίμπλημι*], *filled out, full, in full, complete*.

ἐκ-πλήττω, *strike out of one's senses, amaze, terrify*.

ἐκ-ποδών, adv. [*πούς*], *out of the way*.

ἐκ-πορίζω, *furnish, supply*.

ἕκτος, η, ον, 496 [*ἕξ*], *sixth*.

ἐκ-τρέπω, *turn out or aside*.

ἐκ-τρέφω, *bring up, rear*.

ἐκ-φέρω, *carry out, report*.

ἐκ-φεύγω, *flee away, escape*.

ἐκών, οὔσα, όν, *willing, of one's own accord*; in pred., *willingly*.

ἐλάττων, ον, gen. *ονος*, 469, *smaller, less, fewer*.

ἐλαύνω, (*ελα-*), *ἐλῶ, ἤλασα, ἐλήλακα, ἐλήλαμαι, ἤλᾰθην*, 624, 2, v. [*elastic*], *drive, set in motion*; intr., *ride, drive, march*.

ἐλάφειος, ον [*ἐλαφος, deer*], *of a deer*; *κρέα ἐλάφεια*, *venison*.

ἐλάχιστος, η, ον, 469, *fewest, least, shortest, lowest*.

ἐλέγχω, ἐλέγξω, ἤλεγξα, ἐλήλεγμαι, ἤλέγχθην, 600, 3, *investigate, examine, convict, confute*.

ελεῖν, ἐλίσθαι, see αἰρέω.

ἐλελιζω (ελελιγ-), ἡλέλιξα, iv., cry
ἐλελεῦ, raise the war-cry.

†ἐλευθερία, ās, liberty, freedom.

ἐλεύθερος, ā, on, free, Lat. liber.

†ἐλευθερώω, ἐλευθερώσω, liberate.

ἐλθεῖν, ἐλθών, see ἔρχομαι.

†Ἑλλάς, ādos, ἡ, Greece.

Ἑλλην, ηνος, ὁ [Hellenic], a Greek.

†Ἑλληνικός, ἡ, ὁν, Greek; τὸ Ἑλ-
ληνικόν, the Greek army.

†Ἑλληνικῶς, adv., in Greek.

†Ἑλλησποντιακός, ἡ, ὁν, lying on
the Hellespont.

Ἑλλησποντος, ὁ, the Hellespont,
now the Dardanelles.

ἐλπίς, ἰδος, ἡ, hope.

ἐμ-, for ἐν- before a labial mute.

ἐμ-αυτοῦ, ἡς, reflexive pron., 527
[518], of myself. 528.

ἐμ-βαίνω, go into, embark.

ἐμ-βάλλω, throw in, inflict; intr.,
empty, of rivers, make an invasion,
attack.

ἐμ-βιβάζω, embark, put on board.

ἐμός, ἡ, ὁν, 531 [Lat. meus, my,
Eng. MINE, MY], my, mine.

ἐμ-παλιν, adv. [πάλιν], with τό (by
crasis), τοῦμπάλιν, back, back again.

ἐμ-πειρος, on [561], acquainted
with. 760.

ἐμ-πίεως, adv. [561], by experi-
ence; ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ ἔχειν, be per-
sonally acquainted with him. 761.

ἐμ-πύμπλημι, fill full, satisfy. 749.

ἐμ-πύμπρημι, set on fire.

ἐμ-πίπτω, fall upon, occur to. 774.

ἐμ-πλεως, ων, gen. ω [πύμπλημι],
quite full of, full of. 760.

ἐμ-ποδών, adv. [πούς], before the
feet, in the way; ἐμποδὼν εἶναι, be in
the way, hinder. 772.

ἐμ-ποιέω, create or inspire in, im-
press upon. 774.

ἐμ-πορεύομαι [561], travel on busi-
ness, engage in traffic.

ἐμ-πόριον, τό [561], place of trade,
emporium.

ἐμ-προσθεν, adv. [πρόσθεν], before,
in front of; ὁ ἐμπροσθεν λόγος, the
previous book. 761.

ἐν, prep. with dat. [Lat. in, Eng.
IN], in. Of place, in, among, in the
presence of, before, at, on, by; of
time, in, during, within, at, in the
course of; ἐν τούτῳ, meanwhile;
ἐν φ, while.

In composition ἐν signifies in, at,
on, upon, among.

ἐν-αντίος, ā, on [ἀντίος], opposite,
in one's face; τὰναντία, the reverse.

ἐν-άπτω, set on fire.

ἐν-δέκατος, η, on, 496 [ἐν-δεκα,
eleven], eleventh.

†ἐνδο-θεν, adv., from inside.

ἐνδον, adv. [ἐν], inside, within.

ἐν-δύω, put on.

ἐν-εδρεύω, ἐν-εδρεύσομαι, ἐν-ἡδρευσα,
ἐν-ἡδρεύθην [ἐν-εδρά, ambush, ἔδρα,
seat, see καθ-έζομαι], set an ambush,
waylay.

ἐν-εἰμι (εἰμί), be in or there.

ἐνεκα or ἐνεκεν, improper prep.
with gen., post-positive, on account
of.

ἐνενήκοντα, indecl., 496 [ἐννέα],
ninety.

ἐν-εσθίω, eat quickly or hastily.

ἐν-εχειρίσσω, see ἐγ-χειρίζω.

ἐνθα, adv. [ἐν], of place, where,
there, here; of time, then, there-
upon.

†ἐνθά-δε, adv., there, here, hither.

†ἐνθα-περ, adv., just where.

ἐν-θεν, adv. [ἐν], from there, thence,
whence.

†ἐνθén-δε, adv., hence, from this spot.

ἐν-θύμέομαι, ἐν-θύμήσομαι, ἐν-τεθύμη-
μαι, ἐν-εθύμήθην, 599 [537], have in
mind, reflect.

ἐν-θύμημα, ατος, τό [537], thought,
device, plan.

ἐνιαυτός, *δ*, year, Lat. *annus*.

ἐνιοι, *αι*, *α*, some.

ἐνίοτε, *adv.* [cf. ἐνιοι], sometimes.

ἐννέα, indecl., 496 [Lat. *novem*, nine, Eng. NINE], nine.

ἐν-νοέω, *have in mind*, often as pass. dep., *consider, be anxious or apprehensive*.

ἐν-νοια, *ās* [644], *thought*.

ἐν-οικέω, *live in, inhabit*; οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες, *the inhabitants*.

ἐν-οράω, *see in a person or thing*.

ἐνός, ἐνί, *see εἰς*.

ἐν-οχλέω, ἐν-οχλήσω, ἡν-ώχλησα, ἡν-ώχληκα, ἡν-ώχλημαι, ἡν-ωχλήθην [ὄχλος, *crowd*], *crowd upon, harass, annoy*.

ἐνταῦθα, *adv.* [ἐν], *there, here, in this place, hereupon, thereupon*.

ἐν-τείνω, *stretch or strain tight, inflict upon*.

ἐν-τελής, ἐς [τέλος, *end*], *at the end, complete, in full*.

ἐντεῦθεν, *adv.* [ἐν], *thence, from this place, thereupon*.

ἐν-τίθῃμι [638], *put in, inspire in*. 774.

ἐντός, *adv.* [ἐν], *within*. 761.

ἐν-τυγχάνω, *chance upon, meet, find*. 774.

Ἐνυάλιος, *δ*, *Enyalios*, a name of Ares, god of war.

ἐξ, before a consonant ἐκ, *prep.* with gen. [Lat. *ex*, *ē*]. Of place, *out of, from, from within*; of time, *after*, as ἐκ τούτου, *after this, hereupon*, ἐκ παιδων, *from boyhood*; of source or origin, *from, in consequence of*, as ἐκ τούτου, *in consequence of this*.

In composition ἐξ signifies *from, away, out*, often implying resolution, strong intention, fulfilment, or completion.

ἐξ, indecl., 496 [Lat. *sex*, *six*, Eng. SIX, *hex-agon*], *six*.

ἐξ-αγγέλλω, *tell out, report, esp. the proceedings of a conference*.

ἐξ-άγω, *lead forth, induce*.

ἐξ-αίτέω, *ask from, demand*; mid., *beg off, save by entreaty*.

ἐξακισ-χίλιοι, *αι*, *α*, 496 [ἐξ+χίλιοι], 6000.

ἐξα-κόσιοι, *αι*, *α*, 496 [ἐξ+ἐκατόν], 600.

†ἐξ-απατάω, ἐξ-απατήσω, *deceive grossly, mislead*.

ἐξ-απάτη, *ης* [ἀπάτη, *deceit*], *gross deceit, deception*.

ἐξ-απίνης, *adv.* [ἄφνω, *adv.*, of a sudden], *all of a sudden, unexpectedly*.

ἐξ-εἰμι (εἰμί), *used only impers.*, ἐξ-εστί, *it is allowed or possible*.

ἐξ-εἰμι (εἴμι), *go out, depart*.

ἐξ-ελαύνω, *drive out, expel*; intr., *march, march on*.

ἐξ-έρχομαι, *go or come out, get out, escape, march out*.

ἐξ-εστί, ἐξ-έσται, *see ἐξ-εἰμι (εἰμί)*.

ἐξ-ετάζω (εταδ-), ἐξ-ετάδω, etc., iv. [666], *examine closely, review*.

ἐξ-έτασις, *εως, ἡ* [666], *inspection, review*.

ἐξήκοντα, indecl., 476 [ἑξ], *sixty*.

ἐξ-ικνέομαι, *reach a place from somewhere, reach the mark, hit*.

ἐξ-ίστημι, *make stand out of*; mid., *stand aside, retire*.

ἐξ-οπλίζω, *arm*; mid., *arm oneself*.

†ἐξ-οπλισία, *ās*, *state of being armed*; ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ, *under arms*.

ἐξ-ορμάω, *urge out, incite, arouse*; intr., *set out*.

ἔξω, *adv.* [ἐξ, Eng. *exotic*], *outside, without, beyond the reach of*. 761.

ἐπ-αγγέλλομαι, *declare oneself, promise, offer*.

ἐπ-αινέω, *bestow praise on, praise, commend, approve, applaud*.

ἐπ-αίτιος, *ον* [αἴτιος], *blamed for*; ἐπαίτιόν τι, *cause for blame*.

ἐπ-ακολουθία, follow upon or after, follow, pursue. 773.

ἐπάν, see ἐπήν.

ἐπεί, temporal and causal conj., when, since.

ἴπειδ-άν, conj. with subjv. [ἄν], when, after, with or without τάχιστα, as soon as.

ἴπει-δή, conj. [δή], when.

ἐπ-εἰμι (εἰμί), be on or upon, be over.

ἐπ-εἰμι (εἰμι), go or come on, follow, advance, make an attack.

ἐπεί-περ, conj. [ἐπεί], since indeed.

ἐπ-εἰτα, adv. [εἰτα], thereupon, thereafter, moreover.

ἐπ-εκ-θέω, run out against.

ἐπ-έχω, hold upon, hold back, delay. 753.

ἐπήν, temporal conj. with subjv. [ἐπεί+ἄν], whenever, as soon as.

ἐπί, prep. with gen., dat., or acc.

With gen., of place, on, upon, ἐφ' ἵππων, on horseback, with verbs of motion, towards, in the direction of; of time, in the time of, at; of manner, esp. denoting distribution, ἐπὶ τεττάρων, four deep, ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, in the form of a phalanx, in battle array. With dat., of place, upon, on, by, close to, at, ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ, on the sea; of time, ἐπὶ τούτῳ or τούτοις, at or upon this, thereupon; of cause, aim, or reason, for; of possession, in the power of, in command of; of manner, in, ἐπὶ γάμφ, in marriage. With acc., of place, on, upon, to, against; of extent of space, extending over, over, along; of extent of time, for, during; of purpose or object, to, for.

In composition ἐπί signifies over, in, upon, against, in addition, but often it is merely intensive.

ἐπι-βουλεύω, plan or plot against, design. 774.

ἐπι-βουλή, ἥς [615], a plan against, plot, design.

ἐπι-γίγνομαι, come upon, arise.

ἐπι-γράφω, write upon, inscribe.

ἐπι-δείκνυμι, show to, point out, display, disclose; mid., show for oneself, show.

ἐπί-θεσις, εως, ἡ [638], attack.

ἐπι-θύμω, ἐπι-θύμῃσω, ἐπ-εθύμησα [537], have one's heart on, desire, long for. 747.

ἐπι-θύμιᾶ, ᾗς [537], desire.

ἐπι-κάμπτω (καμπ-), ἐπι-κάμψω, iii., bend towards, wheel.

ἐπι-κατα-ρρίπτω, throw down after.

ἐπί-κειμαι, lie upon, attack. 774.

ἐπι-κίνδυνος, ον [κίνδυνος], dangerous, perilous.

ἐπικουρέω, ἐπικουρήσω, ἐπεκούρησα [ἐπίκουρος, ally], lend assistance. 768.

ἰπικούρημα, ατος, τό, relief, protection.

ἐπι-κρατέω, get the mastery.

ἐπι-κρύπτω, conceal, hide.

ἐπι-κυρώω, ἐπι-κυρώσω [κύρος, τό, might], make valid, confirm, ratify.

ἐπι-λαμβάνω, take to oneself; mid., take hold of. 746.

ἐπι-λανθάνομαι, forget. 747.

ἐπι-λείπω, leave behind; intr., fail, give out.

ἴπι-μέλεια, ᾗς, care, thoughtfulness, attention.

ἴπι-μελέομαι, ἐπι-μελήσομαι, ἐπι-μεμέλημαι, ἐπ-εμελήθην, care for, give attention to. 747.

ἐπι-μελής, ἐς [μέλει], careful.

ἐπι-νοέω, have in mind, purpose.

ἴπι-ορκέω, ἐπι-ορκήσω, ἐπι-ώρκησα, ἐπι-ώρκηκα, swear falsely, forswear or perjure oneself.

ἐπί-ορκος, ον [ὅρκος], perjured.

ἐπι-πίπτω, fall upon, attack, assail; of snow, fall.

ἐπι-πλέω, sail upon or against.

ἐπί-πονός, ον [580], laborious.

ἐπι-ρρυτος, *ον* [ρέω], *flowed upon, watered, well watered.*

ἐπι-σιτίζομαι (σιτιδ-), ἐπι-σιτιοῦμαι, ἐπ-εσιτισάμην, *iv.* [σίτος], *collect or procure supplies.*

ἐπι-σιτισμός, *ὁ, a procuring of supplies, foraging.*

ἐπι-σκέπτομαι, *look to, examine, inquire.*

ἐπι-σκοπέω, *look to, consider.*

ἐπίσταμαι (επιστα-), ἐπιστήσομαι, ἠπιστήθην, 647, 5, *vii.*, *understand, know, know how.*

ἐπι-στέλλω, *send to, send word, enjoin, command.*

ἐπι-στολή, *ἡς* [epistle], *letter.*

ἐπι-στρατεύω, *make an expedition against.* 774.

ἐπι-σφάττω, *slay upon.*

ἐπι-τάττω, *lay orders on, command.* 774.

ἐπι-τελέω, *bring to an end, fulfil.*

ἐπιτιγδεις, *ᾱ, ὄν* [ἐπιτηδές, of set purpose], *suitable, fit, deserving; τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, provisions, supplies.*

ἐπι-τίθημι, *impose upon, inflict; δίκην ἐπιτιθέναι, inflict punishment; mid., attack, assault.* 774.

ἐπι-τρέπω, *turn over to, entrust; mid., give oneself up for protection.*

ἐπι-τυγχάνω, *chance on, find.* 774.

ἐπι-φαίνομαι, *show oneself to, appear.*

ἐπι-χειρέω, ἐπι-χειρήσω [χείρ], *put one's hand to, attempt.*

ἐπι-χέω, *pour on or in.*

ἐπι-χωρέω, *move against, advance.*

ἐπι-ψηφίζω, *put to vote.*

ἐπι-οικοδομέω, *build on or upon.*

ἔπομαι, ἔψομαι, ἐσπόμεν, 604, 5 [Lat. *sequor, follow*], *follow, accompany, pursue.* 773.

ἐπτά, *indecl.*, 496 [Lat. *septem, seven, Eng. SEVEN, hepta-gon*], *seven.*

ἑπτα-κόσιοι, *αι, α* [ἐκατόν], 700.

Ἐπύξα, *ης, Epyxa.*

ἐργάζομαι (εργαδ-), ἐργάσομαι, εἰργασάμην, ἐργασμαι, 618, 4, *iv.* [468], *work, do, inflict on.* 738.

ἔργον, τό [468], *work, deed, execution, exercise.*

ἔρημος, *η, ὄν, and ὅς, ὄν* [hermit], *deserted, empty, uninhabited, destitute or deprived of; σταθμοὶ ἔρημοι, marches through a desert.* 760.

ἐρίζω (εριδ-), ἤρισα, *iv.* [ἐρις, strife], *strive, contend, vie with.* 773.

ἑρμηνεύς, *ἑως, ὁ* [hermeneutic], *interpreter.*

Ἑρμῆς, *οὔ, 178, Hermes, the Mercury of the Romans, messenger of Zeus.*

ἔρυμα, *ατος, τό, protection, wall.*

ἑρυσμός, *ῆ, ὄν, fortified.*

ἔρχομαι (ερχ-, ελυθ-), ἤλθον, ἑλήλυθα, 655, 3, *viii.* [pros-elyte], *come, go.*

ἐρῶ, *see εἶπον.*

ἔρως, *ωτος, ὁ* [erotic], *love.*

ἐρωτάω, ἐρωτήσω, *etc., 2 aor. ἠρόμην, ask a question, inquire, question.*

ἑσθής, ἦτος, ἡ [ἐννύμι, clothe, Lat. uestis, clothing, Eng. WEAR], *clothes, raiment.*

ἑσθίω (εσθι-, ἐδ-, φαγ-), ἔδομαι, ἔφαγον, ἐδήδοκα, ἐδήδεσμαι, ἠδέσθην, 655, 4, *viii.* [Lat. *edō, eat, Eng. EAT*], *eat, have to eat, live on.*

ἔσται, ἔσονται, *see εἰμί.*

ἑσταλμένος, *see στέλλω.*

ἔστε, *conj., until.* 821, 822.

ἑστηκώς, ἔστησαν, ἑστώς, *see ἵστημι.*

ἑσχατος, *η, ὄν* [ἐξ], *farthest, outermost, extreme; τὰ ἑσχατά παθεῖν, suffer death.*

ἔσω-θεν, *adv.* [εἶσω], *from inside; τὸ ἐσωθεν, the inner.*

ἑτάξα, ἐτάχθησαν, *see τάττω.*

ἕτερος, *ᾱ, ὄν* [hetero-dox, hetero-geneous], *the other, one of two; without art., another, other.*

ἔτι, adv. of time and degree, *yet, still, further, longer, any more, again*.

ἔτοιμος, η, ον, or ος, ον [666], *ready, prepared*.

ἔτος, ουσ, τό [Lat. *vetus*, old, Eng. *WETHER*], *year*, Lat. *annus*.

ἐτράφην, see *τρέφω*.

εὖ, adv. [666], *well, well off, happily*; *εὖ ποιεῖν*, *do well by, benefit*.

εὖ-δαιμονία, *ās*, *prosperity*.

εὖ-δαιμονίζω [ευδαιμονιζ-], *εὐδαιμονιῶ*, *ἡδαιμόνισα*, iv., *count happy, congratulate*. 756.

εὖ-δαιμόνως, adv., *happily*, comp. *εὐδαιμονέστερον*.

εὖ-δαίμων, ον, gen. *ονος*, [δαίμων], *of good fate or fortune, fortunate, happy, prosperous, flourishing*.

εὖ-εργέτης, ου [468], *well-doer, benefactor*.

εὖ-ηθεια, *ās*, *simplicity, silliness, folly*.

εὖ-ήθης, ες [ἥθος, τό, *character*, Eng. *ethics*], *of simple character, silly, foolish*.

εὐθύς, adv., *straightway, immediately, at once*, Lat. *statim*.

εὐ-κλέως, adv. [εὐ-κλής, *famous*, *κλέος*, τό, *fame*, Lat. *clueō*, *be spoken of*, Eng. *LOUD*], *gloriously*.

εὖ-νοια, *ās* [644], *good-will, fidelity*.

εὖ-νοικῶς, adv. [644], *with good-will, kindly*; *εὐνοικῶς ἔχειν*, *be well-disposed*.

εὖ-voos, ον, contr. *εὐvous*, ουν [644], *well-disposed, attached*.

εὖ-πετώς, adv. [εὐ-πετής, *falling well, easy*, cf. *πιπτω*], *easily*.

εὐρίσκω (εὐρ-), *εὐρήσω*, *ἡύρον*, *ἡύρηκα*, *ἡύρημαι*, *ἡύρέθην*, 642, 4, vi., *find, devise, procure*.

εὖρος, ουσ, τό [εὐρύς, *broad*], *breadth, width*.

εὖ-τάκτως, adv. [554], *in good order*.

εὖ-ταξία, *ās* [554], *good order, discipline*.

εὖ-τολμος, ον [τόλμα], *of brave spirit, courageous*.

εὖ-τυχέω, *εὐτυχήσω*, etc. [554], *have success*.

Εὐφράτης, ου, *the Euphrātes*.

εὐχομαι, *εὔξομαι*, *εὐξάμην*, 600, 7, *pray, wish for, offer one's vows*.

εὖ-ώδης, ες [ὄζω, *smell*, Lat. *odor*, *smell*], *sweet-smelling, fragrant*.

εὖ-ώνυμος, ον [644], *of good name or omen*, euphemistic for the ill-omened word *ἀριστερός*, *left*; τὸ *εὖ-ώνυμον*, *the left wing*.

ἐφ', see *ἐπί*.

ἔφαγον, see *ἐσθίω*.

ἐφάνην, see *φαίνω*.

ἔφασαν, **ἔφατε**, see *φημί*.

ἐφ-έπομαι, *follow after, pursue*. 773.

Ἔφεσος, ἡ, *Ephesus*.

ἔφη, **ἔφησθα**, see *φημί*.

ἐφ-ίστημι, *bring to a stand, make halt*; intr. in mid., 2 aor., and pf., *be set in or on, stop, halt*.

ἐφ-οδος, ἡ [ὁδός], *way to, approach*.

ἐχθρός, ἄ, ὅν [ἐχθος, *hate*], *hostile*; *ἐχθρός*, ὁ, *enemy, foe*, Lat. *hostis*.

ἔχω (σεχ-), *ἔξω* and *σχήσω*, *ἔσχον*, *ἔσχηκα*, *ἔσχημαι*, 604, 6 [608], *have*, Lat. *habeō*, *hold, possess, receive, keep, wear*; *ἔχων*, *having, with*; with inf., *be able, can*; with an adv. equivalent to *εἶναι* with an adj., as *εὐνοικῶς ἔχειν*, *be well-disposed*; *οὐκ ἔχω*, *not to know*; mid., *hold on to, come next to*.

ἔψω, *ἐψήσω*, *ἥψησα*, *boil*.

ἑώρᾱ, **ἑώρᾱκα**, **ἑώρων**, see *ὁράω*.

ἑως, *ἕω*, ἡ [Lat. *aurōra*, *dawn*, Eng. *EAST*], *dawn, east*.

ἕως, conj., *as long as, while, until*. 821, 822.

Z.

ζάω, *ζήσω* [ζωός, *alive*, Eng. *zoology*], *live, be alive*.

ζεύγνυμι (ζυγ-), ζεύξω, ἐζευξα, ἐζευνγμαι, ἐζύγην and ἐζεύχθην, 651, 2, v. [654], *yoke, join, form by joining*.

ζεύγος, οὐς, τό [654], *yoke, team*, Lat. *iugum*, pl. *cattle*.

Ζεύς, Διός, ὁ, 392, *Zeus, highest of the gods*.

ζηλόω, ζηλώσω [ζῆλος, *envy*, Eng. *zeal, jealous*], *emulate, envy*.

‡**ζηλωτός**, ἡ, ὁν, *to be envied*; **ζηλωτόν**, *an object of envy*.

ζημιά, ἄς, *loss, penalty*.

‡**ζημιώω**, ζημιώσω, etc., *cause one loss, do damage to, punish*.

ζην, ζῶν, *see ζάω*.

ζητέω, ζητήσω, etc., *seek, ask for*.

ζώνη, ης [*zone*], *belt, girdle*.

H.

ή, conj., *or*; **ή . . . ή**, *either . . . or*; **πότερον . . . ή**, *whether . . . or*.

ή, conj., *than*, Lat. *quam*.

ή, intensive particle, *really, truly*; in oaths, **ή μήν**, *in very truth*.

ὅ, dat. sing. fem. of *ὅς* used adv. (*sc. ὁδῶ*), *in which way, where, as*.

ήγγεिला, *see ἀγγέλλω*.

ήγεμών, ὄνος, ὁ [435], *leader, guide*.

ήγέομαι, ήγήσομαι, ήγησάμην, ήγημαι, ήγήθην, 255 a [435], *go before, lead, conduct, command; think, believe, consider*. 748.

ήδειν, ήδεσαν, *see οἶδα*.

ήδέως, adv. [*ήδύς*], *gladly*; comp. *ήδιον*, sup. *ήδιστα*.

ήδη, adv., *already, by this time, at length, now, forthwith*.

†**ήδομαι**, ήσθήσομαι, ήσθην, *be glad, be pleased*.

ήδύς, εἶα, ὅ [Lat. *suavis*, *sweet*, Eng. *sweet*], *sweet*.

ήκιστα, *see ήττων*.

ήκω, ήξω, *come, be or have come*.

ήλασε, *see ελαύνω*.

ήλειος, ὁ, *an Elean*.

ήλεκτρον, τό [*electric*], *lustre, radiance, amber*; *electrum*, a compound of $\frac{1}{2}$ gold and $\frac{1}{2}$ silver.

ήλθον, *see έρχομαι*.

ήλίβατος, ον, *high, steep*.

ήλίθιος, ἄ, ον, *idle, foolish, silly*;

τό *ήλίθιον*, *folly*.

ήλιος, ὁ [*helio-trope, peri-helion*], *the sun*.

ήλωκώς, *see ἀλίσκομαι*.

ήμαι [*ήσ-*], 667, 3, *sit*.

ήμεῖς, etc., *see έγώ*.

ήμελημένως, adv. [formed from pf. pass. partic. of *ἀμελέω*], *carelessly*.

ήμέρᾱ, ἄς [*ep-hemeral*], *day*; τῇ ἐπιούσῃ *ήμέρᾱ*, *next day*; μέσον *ήμέρᾱς*, *mid-day, noon*; ἕμα τῇ *ήμέρᾱ*, *at day-break*.

ήμέτερος, ἄ, ον, 531 [*ήμεῖς*], *our*; τὰ *ήμέτερα*, *our affairs*.

ήμι-, only in composition [Lat. *sēmi-*, *half-*, Eng. *hemi-*], *half*.

ήμι-βρωτος, ον [*βρωτός*, *to be eaten*, *βιβρώσκω*, *eat*, Lat. *vorō*, *devour*], *half-eaten*.

ήμι-δάρεικόν, τό, [*δᾶρεικός*], *half-daric*.

ήμι-δεής, ἐς [*δέω*, *lack*], *wanting half, half full*.

ήμι-όλιος, ἄ, ον [*όλος*], *containing the whole and half, half as much again*.

ήμισυς, εἰα, υ [*ήμι-*], *half*.

ήμι-ωβόλιον, τό [*όβολός*], *half-obol*.

ήν, contr. form of *ἐάν*.

ήν, *see εἰμί*.

ήνίκα, conjunctive adv., *when*.

ήνι-οχος, ὁ [608], *driver, charioteer*.

ήρέθην, ήρήμην, *see αἰρέω*.

ήρόμην, *see έρωτάω*.

ήσθη, *see ήδομαι*.

ήσυχῆ, adv. [*ήσυχος*, *quiet*], *quietly, in silence*.

ἡσυχία, *ās* [ἡσυχος, *quiet*], *stillness, quiet*; ἡσυχίαν ἔχειν, *keep still, hold one's peace*.

†ἡττώμαι, ἡττήσομαι, *etc.*, *pass. dep.*, 599, *be inferior, be worsted or defeated*.

ἡττων, *ον*, *gen. onos*, 469, *inferior, weaker*.

Θ.

θάλαττα, *ης*, *sea*, *Lat. mare*.

θαμινά, *adv.* [θαμύ, *often*], *frequently, often*.

θάνατος, *δ* [θνήσκω], *death*.

†θανατώ, θανατώσω, ἐθανάτωσα, ἐθανάωθη, *put or condemn to death*.

θάπτω (ταφ-), θάψω, ἔθαψα, τέθαμμαι, ἐτάφην, 613, 4, *iii.*, *bury*.

†θαρραλέος, *ᾱ, on*, *bold, courageous*.

†θαρραλέως, *adv.*, *boldly, courageously*.

†θαρρέω, θαρρήσω, ἐθάρρησα, τεθάρρηκα, *be bold or courageous, take heart*; θαρρῶν, *partic. as adv.*, *confidently*.

θάρρος, *ους*, τό [DARE, DURST], *courage*.

†θαρρύνω, *iv.*, *make bold, cheer, encourage*.

θάπτων, *see ταχύς*.

θαυμάζω (θαυμαδ-), θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύμασα, τεθαύμακα, ἐθαυμάσθην, 618, 5, *iv.* [θαῦμα, *wonder*, *Eng. thaumat-urgy*], *wonder at, admire, wonder*.

†θαυμάσιος, *ᾱ, on*, *wonderful, remarkable*.

†θαυμαστός, *ή, ὄν*, *wondrous, wonderful, surprising, remarkable*.

†Θαψακηνοί, οἱ, *inhabitants of Thapsacus, Thapsacenes*.

Θάψακος, *ή, Thapsacus*.

θεά, *ᾱς* [θεός], *goddess*.

θεάομαι, θεάσομαι, *etc.*, 598 [theatre], *gaze at, behold*.

θεῖος, *ᾱ, on* [θεός], *divine*; θεῖον, τό, *divine intervention, portent*.

θέλω, *see θέλω*.

-θεν, *suffix denoting whence*.

θεός, *δ, ή* [theo-logy, theism], *god, goddess*.

†θεραπεύω, θεραπεύσω [therapeutic], *serve, wait upon, take care of, court*.

θεράπων, *οντος, δ*, *servant*.

†Θετταλία, *ᾱς*, *Thessaly*.

Θετταλός, *δ, a Thessalian*.

θέω (θυ-), θεύσομαι, 610, 1, *ii.*, *run, race*; of troops, *charge*.

θεωρέω, θεωρήσω, ἐθεώρησα, τεθεώρηκα [θεωρός, *spectator*, *cf. θεάμαι*, *Eng. theorem, theory*], *view, witness, inspect, review*.

θήρᾱ, *ᾱς* [θήρ, *wild beast*, *Lat. ferus, wild*, *Eng. deer*], *hunt, chase*.

†θηράω, θηράσω, ἐθήρᾱσα, τεθήρᾱκα, ἐθηρᾱθήν, *hunt, chase, pursue*.

†θηρεύω, θηρεύσω, *etc.*, *hunt, catch*.

†θηρίον, τό, *wild animal, creature*.

θησαυρός, *δ* [638], *treasure*.

-θι, *suffix denoting where*.

θνήσκω (θαν-), θανοῦμαι, ἔθανον, τέθνηκα, 642, 5, *vi.*, *die, pf. and 2 pf.*, 660, 2, *be dead, be slain*.

θόρυβος, *δ* [θρός, *noise*], *noise, disturbance, uproar*.

†Θράκιος, *ᾱ, on*, *Thracian*.

Θράξ, *κός, δ, a Thracian*.

θυγάτηρ, τρός, *ή, 291* [DAUGHTER], *daughter*.

Θύμβριον, τό, *Thymbrium*.

θύμο-ειδής, *ἑς* [537, 663], *high-spirited*.

θύμός, *δ* [537], *soul, heart*.

θύρᾱ, *ᾱς* [Lat. foris, door, Eng. door], *door*; ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλείωσ θύραις, *at court*; so θύραι of a general's headquarters.

θυσιᾱ, *ᾱς* [538], *sacrifice, offering*.

θύω, θύσω, ἔθυσα, τέθυκα, τέθυμαι, ἐτύθην, 442 [538], *sacrifice*; mid., *cause to sacrifice, offer sacrifice*.

†**θωράκιζω** (θωράκιδ-), ἐθωράκισα, τεθωράκισμαι, ἐθωράκισθην, iv., arm with a cuirass; mid., put on one's cuirass.

θώραξ, ἄκος, δ [thorax], breastplate, corselet, cuirass.

I.

ἰάομαι, ἰάσομαι, ἰασάμην, ἰάθην, heal, cure.

†**ἰατρός**, δ, surgeon, physician.

ἰδεῖν, etc., see ὀράω.

ἴδιος, ἄ, ον [idiom, idio-syncrasy], one's own, personal, private; eis τὸ ἴδιον, for one's personal use.

†**ἰδιώτης**, ου [idiot], an ordinary or private person, private soldier, private.

ἰδρώω, ἰδρωσα [ιδρώς, sweat, Lat. sudor, sweat, Eng. SWEAT], sweat, reek with sweat.

†**ἱερεῖον**, τό, victim for sacrifice.

ἱερός, ἄ, ὄν [hier-archy, hieroglyphic], holy, sacred; ἱερά, τὰ, sacrifices, omens from inspecting the vitals, in contrast to σφάγια.

ἵημι(έ-), ἤσω, ἤκα, εἵκα, εἵμαι, εἴθην, 667, 1, 702, send, throw, hurl at; mid., send oneself, rush, charge. 746.

†**ἱκανός**, ἡ, ὄν, coming up to, sufficient, able, capable, competent.

†**ἱκανῶς**, adv., sufficiently, enough.

ἱκνέομαι (ἱκ-), ἔξομαι, ἱκόμην, ἵγμαι, 627, 1, v., come.

†**Ἰκόνιον**, τό, Iconium.

ἱλεως, ων, gen. ω, 170, propitiuous.

ἱλη, ης [εἵλω, press, hem in], crowd, band; of cavalry, troop.

ἵνα, final particle, that, in order that.

ἵππεύς, έως, δ [564], horseman, knight, cavalryman, pl., cavalry.

ἵππικός, ἡ, ὄν [564], for cavalry, cavalry-; ἵππικόν, τό, cavalry, horse.

ἵππό-δρομος, δ [564], race-course, hippodrome.

ἵππος, δ, ἡ [564], horse, mare; ἀπὸ ἢ ἐφ' ἵππου, on horseback.

ἴσθι, ἴσμεν, etc., see οἶδα.

†**ἴσο-πλευρος**, ον [πλευρά], with equal sides, equilateral.

ἴσος, η, ον [iso-sceles], equal; οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου ἐσμέν, we are not on an equality.

†**Ἰσσοί**, οἱ, Issus.

ἵστημι (στα-), στήσω, ἕστησα and ἕστην, ἕστηκα, ἕσταμαι, ἐστάθην, 647, 6, vii., 2 pf. ἕστατον, etc., 659, 697 [649], set, make stand, make halt; intr. in mid. (except 1 aor.), in 2 aor., both pfs., and both plpfs. act., stand, stop, halt.

ἱστίον, τό [649], sail.

†**ἰσχυρός**, ἄ, ὄν, strong.

†**ἰσχυρῶς**, adv., strongly, vehemently, exceedingly, vigorously, with severity.

ἰσχύς, ὅς, ἡ [Lat. uīs, strength], strength; of an army, force.

ἴσως, adv. [ἴσος], equally, perhaps.

ἴψος, ὅς, ἡ, outer edge, rim.

ἰχθύς, ὅς, δ [ichthyo-logy], fish.

ἵχνος, οὐς, τό, trace, track.

†**Ἰωνία**, ἄς, Ionia.

†**Ἰωνικός**, ἡ, ὄν, Ionian.

K.

κάγαθά, by crasis for καὶ ἀγαθά.

κάγώ, by crasis for καὶ ἐγώ.

καθ', see κατὰ.

καθ-ἕομαι (έδ-), καθ-εδούμαι, impf. ἐκαθ-έζομην, iv. [Lat. sedeō, sit, Eng. SIT, SET], sit down; of a general, make a halt, encamp.

καθ-εύδω, καθ-ευδήσω, lie down to sleep, sleep, lie or be asleep.

καθ-ηγέομαι, lead or show the way.

καθ-ηδυναθίω, καθ-ηδυνάθῃσα [580], be luxurious, waste in luxury.

καθ-ήκω, *come down, reach or extend down.*

καθ-ημαι, 704, *sit down, be seated; of soldiers, be encamped.*

καθ-ίστημι, *set down, station, bring down or back, bring, establish, make, appoint; mid. with pf. and 2 aor. act. intrans., take one's place, be established.*

καθ-οράω, *look down on, observe, inspect.*

καί, conj., *and*, Lat. *et*; influencing particular words or expressions, *also, too, even, further*, Lat. *etiam*; **καί . . . καί** or **τε . . . καί**, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also.*

Καιναί, ὦν, *Caenae.*

καινός, ἡ, ὄν, *new, strange.*

καί-περ, concessive particle [καί], *although, with the participle.*

καιρός, ὁ, *the right or fitting time, opportunity, occasion.*

καί-τοι, conj. [καί+τοί], *and yet.*

καίω, see **κάω**.

κάκεινος, by crasis for **καί ἐκείνος**.

†**κακό-νους**, ουν, 191 c [644], *evil-minded, ill-disposed.*

κακός, ἡ, ὄν, 448, 469, *bad in the broadest sense (as opposed to ἀγαθός), base, cowardly, hurtful; κακόν, τό, harm, evil.*

‡**κακοῦργος**, ὁ [468], *wrongdoer.*

‡**κακῶς**, adv., *badly, ill; κακῶς ποιεῖν, do harm or damage to, injure, ravage; κακῶς ἔχειν, be badly off.*

καλαμος, ὁ, *reed*, Lat. *harūdō*.

καλέω, *καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην*, 442 [622], *call, summon*, Lat. *uocō, call, name; ὁ καλούμενος, the so-called.*

Καλλίμαχος, ὁ, *Callimachus.*

καλός, ἡ, ὄν, 469 [HALE, WHOLE, *calli-graphy*], *beautiful, fair, propitious, noble; καλὸς καὶ ἀγαθός, καλὸς ἀγαθός, noble and good, 'gentleman.'*

καλύπτω (*καλυβ-*), *καλύψω, ἐκάλυφα, κεκάλυμμαι, ἐκαλύφθην*, 613, 5, iii., *cover.*

καλῶς, adv. [καλός], *beautifully, bravely, well, successfully, honourably; καλῶς ἔχειν, be well.*

κάμνω (*καμ-*), *καμοῦμαι, ἔκαμον, κέκμηκα*, 624, 3, v., *labour, be weary.*

κάμοι, by crasis for **καὶ ἐμοί**.

κάν, by crasis for **καὶ ἔάν**.

κάνδυσ, υος, ὁ, *a long outer garment, the caftan.*

κάνεον, contr. *καροῦν, τό, basket.*

καπηλεῖον, τό [κάπηλος, *retail dealer*, Lat. *caupō, tradesman*], *retail shop, tavern*, Lat. *caupōna*.

καπιθή, ης, *capithe*, a Persian dry measure, equal to two choenices. See **χοῖνιξ**.

κάπνος, ὁ, *smoke*, Lat. *fūmus*.

Καππαδοκία, ἄς, *Cappadocia*.

κάπρος, ὁ [Lat. *caper, goat*], *wild boar*, Lat. *aper*.

Καρδοῦχοι, οἱ, *the Carduchians*.

Καρία, ἄς, *Caria*.

Κάρσος, ὁ, *the Carsus*.

κάρφη, ης [κάρφω, *dry up*], *dried stalks, hay, straw*.

Καστωλός, ἡ, *Castōlus*.

κατά, prep. with gen. and acc., *down* (as opposed to *ἀνά*), Lat. *sub*. With gen., denoting 'motion from above, down, down from, down upon, underneath'. With acc., of place or position, with verbs of motion, *on, over, down, down along, by, opposite, against, near, at*; of fitness or relation, *according to, concerning*; **καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν**, *by land and sea*; **κατὰ κράτος**, *with might and main*; **κατὰ ἔθνη**, *by nations*; **κατὰ μέσον τὸν σταθμόν**, *about the middle of the day's march*.

In composition *κατὰ* signifies *down, along, or against*; frequently it

merely strengthens the meaning of the simple verb, and often cannot be translated; sometimes it gives a transitive force to an intransitive simple verb (cf. Lat. *dē-*).

κατα-βαίνω, go down, descend.

κατά-βασις, εως, ἡ, descent, march down to the coast.

κατά-γειος, ον (γῆ), underground.

κατα-γελᾶω, laugh at, deride. 757.

κατ-άγω, lead down or back, bring back, restore.

κατα-δύω, make enter, sink, of ships; mid. intr., sink down.

κατα-θεάομαι, look down on.

κατ-αισχύνω, disgrace.

κατα-καίνω (καυ-), κατα-κανῶ, κατέκνον, κατα-κέκονα, iv. [cf. κτείνω], kill, slay, cut down.

κατα-κάω, burn down, burn up, burn.

κατά-κειμαι, lie down, lie asleep or outstretched.

κατα-κηρύττω, proclaim.

κατα-κλείω, shut up or in.

κατα-κόπτω, cut to pieces, slay.

κατα-λαμβάνω, seize upon, capture, take, surprise, occupy.

κατα-λείπω, leave behind, abandon.

κατα-λεύω, κατα-λεύσω, κατ-έλευσα, κατ-ελεύσθην [λᾶς, λᾶος, ὁ, stone], stone to death, stone.

κατ-αλλάττω, change completely, reconcile.

κατα-λύω, unloose, dissolve, end, make peace, stop fighting, unyoke (sc. τὰ ὑποζύγια), i.e. make a halt, halt.

κατα-μανθάνω, learn thoroughly.

κατα-μένω, stay behind.

κατα-νοέω, mark well, observe.

κατ-αντι-πέρᾱς, adv. [561], over against, opposite. 761.

κατα-πετρόω [πέτρᾱ], stone to death.

κατα-πηδάω, leap down, leap.

κατα-πράττω, do thoroughly, execute, bring to an end, accomplish.

κατα-σκέπτομαι, view closely.

κατα-σκήνέω, encamp, camp.

κατα-σπάω, draw or drag down.

κατά-στασις, εως, ἡ [649], state, condition.

κατα-στρέφω, turn down, subdue.

κατα-σχίζω, split down, cleave asunder, burst through, burst open.

κατα-τείνω, stretch hard, insist.

κατα-τίθημι, put down, lay away or up; παρά τινα καταθέσθαι, put into one's keeping.

κατα-φανής, ἐς [483], clearly seen, in plain sight, visible.

κατα-φεύγω, take refuge.

κατα-φρονέω, set one's mind against, despise. 757.

κατ-εἶδον, see καθ-οράω.

κατ-εσθίω, eat up, bolt.

κατ-έχω, hold down, restrain, check, control, occupy.

κατ-ηγoreώ, κατ-ηγoreήσω, etc., 597 [κατ-ήγορος, accuser, ἀγορεύω, harangue, speak, ἀγορά], speak against, charge, accuse. 757.

κατ-ιδών, see καθ-οράω.

καῦμα, ατος, τό [κάω], heat.

Καῦστρον πεδῖον, τό, Caÿster Plain, Caÿsterfield.

κάω (καυ-), καύσω, ἔκαυσα, κέκαυκα, κέκαυμαι, ἐκαύθην, 620, 1, iv. [caustic, holo-caust], burn, kindle, cauterize; πῦρ ἔκαον, they kept a fire going.

κέγχρος, ὁ, millet, millet grass.

κείμει, κέλισσεται, 667, 2, 703 [Lat. civis, citizen, quies, rest, Eng. home, cemetery], lie, be laid, lie dead.

Κελαιναί, ὦν, Celaenae.

κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκέλευκα, κεκέλευσμαι, ἐκέλευσθην, 441 b [Lat. celer, swift, currō, run, Eng. car, horse], drive, order, command, bid, give orders, Lat. iubeō, urge, advise, suggest.

κενός, ἡ, ὄν, *empty, groundless.*
760.

†κενο-τάφιον, τό [τάφος], *cenotaph.*

Κεραμῶν ἀγορά, ἄς, *Market of the Ceramians.*

κεράννυμι (κερα-), ἐκέρασα, κέκρᾱμαι, ἐκεράσθην and ἐκράθην, v. [crasis], *mix.*

κέρας, κέρως and κέρᾱτος, τό [Lat. cornū, horn, Eng. HORN, HART, rhino-ceros], horn, prop. of an animal, then bugle horn, drinking horn, peak of a mountain, wing of an army.

Κερασούντιοι, οἱ, *the Cerasuntians.*

κεφαλή, ἡς [Lat. caput, head, Eng. HEAD, a-cephalous], *head.*

κήρυξ, ὅκος, ὁ [622], *herald.*

κηρύττω (κηρυκ-), κηρύξω, ἐκήρῡξα, κекήρῡχα, κекήρῡγμαι, ἐκηρύχθην, 617, 2, iv. [622], *be a herald, proclaim, make proclamation.*

†Κιλικία, ἄς, *Cilicia.*

Κιλίξ, ὅκος, ὁ, *a Cilician.*

†Κλισσα, ἄς, *Cilician queen.*

†κινδυνεύω, κινδυνεύσω, etc., *encounter danger, run a risk, be in peril.*

κινδύνος, ὁ, *danger, risk.*

κινέω, κινήσω, etc. [Lat. cieō, cause to go, Eng. HIE], *move, remove.*

κλάω (κλαυ-), κλαύσομαι and κλαυσοῦμαι, 620, 2, iv., *weep, wail.*

Κλεάνωρ, ὀρος, ὁ, *Cleānor.*

Κλέαρχος, ὁ, *Clearchus, a Spartan general, the special friend of Cyrus; Κλέαρχοι, men like Clearchus.*

κλείω, κλείσω, ἐκλείσα, κέκλειμαι and κέκλεισμαι, ἐκλείσθην, 441 b [Lat. claudō, close, Eng. SLOT], *shut, close.*

κλέπτω (κλεπ-), κλέψω, ἐκλεψα, κέκλοφα, κέκλεμμαι, ἐκλάπην, 613, 6, iii. [Lat. clepō, steal, Eng. shop-LIFTER], *steal, embezzle.*

Κλεώνυμος, ὁ, *Cleonymus.*

†κλιμαξ, ἄκος, ἡ [climax], *ladder (because it leans).*

κλίνω (κλιν-), κλινῶ, ἐκλίνα, κέκλιμαι, ἐκλίθην and ἐκλίην, 619, 4, iv. [Lat. inclinō, incline. Eng. LEAN, climate, en-clitic], *cause to lean, bend.*

κλώψ, κλωπός, ὁ [κλέπτω], *thief.*

κνημίς, ἴδος, ἡ [κνήμη, leg], *greave.*

κοιμάω, ἐκοίμῃσα, ἐκοιμήθην [κεῖμαι], *lay to rest, put to sleep; mid. and pass., lie down, go to sleep, sleep.*

†κοινῇ, adv., *in common, jointly.*

κοινός, ἡ, ὄν, *common, joint.*

†κοινῶω, κοινῶσω, *make common, communicate.*

†κοινωνέω, κοινωνήσω, *have a share of, partake of.* 745.

†κοινωνός, ὁ, *sharer, partner.*

κολάζω (κολαδ-), κολάσω, ἐκόλασα, κекόλασμαι, ἐκολάσθην, iv., *check, punish, inflict punishment.*

Κολοσσαί, ἄν, *Colossae.*

Κόλχοι, οἱ, *the Colchians.*

κομίζω (κομιδ-), κομιῶ, etc., iv. [κομέω, care for], *carry away so as to save, bring, convey.*

κονιορτός, ὁ, *cloud of dust.*

κόπρος, ἡ, *dung.*

κόπτω (κοπ-), κόψω, ἔκοψα, κέκοφα, κέκομαι, ἐκόπην, 613, 7, iii. [CHOP, syn-copate], *cut, hew, slash, fell, slaughter.*

Κορσωτή, ἡς, *Corsōte.*

κορυφή, ἡς, *top, summit.*

†κοσμέω, κοσμήσω, *dress, adorn.*

κόσμος, ὁ [cosmic, cosmetic], *order, dress, equipment.*

κούφος, ἡ, ὄν, *light; χόρτος κούφος, hay.*

κράζω (κραγ-), ἐκραγον, κέκρᾱγα, 617, 3, iv. [622], *cry out.*

κράνός, οὐς, τό [cranium], *head-piece, helmet.*

κρατέω, κρατήσω, etc. [471], *be strong, have the power, be superior, master, overcome, control, conquer.*

κράτηρ, ἦρος, ὁ [κεράννυμι], *mixing bowl, punch bowl*.

κράτιστος, η, ον, 469 [471], *strongest, bravest, best, noblest*; neut. pl. **κράτιστα** as adv., *in the best way, most bravely*.

κράτος, ουσ, τό [471], *strength, force, might*, Lat. *uis*.

κραυγή, ἥς [622], *outcry, shout, clamour, uproar*.

κρέας, κρέως, τό [Lat. *carō*, *flesh*, Eng. *creo-sote*], *flesh*, pl. *pieces of flesh, meat*.

κρείττων, ον, gen. *ονος*, 469 [471], *stronger, braver, better, nobler, more valuable*.

κρεμαμαι (κρεμα-), *κρεμήσομαι*, 647, 7, vii., intr., *hang, be suspended*.

†**κρεμάννυμι** (κρεμα-), *κρεμῶ, ἐκρέμασα, ἐκρεμάσθην*, v., trans., *hang up, suspend*.

κρήνη, ἥς, *spring, well*, Lat. *fōns*.

κρηπίς, ἴδος, ἡ, *base, foundation*.

Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ, *a Cretan*.

κριθή, ἥς, in pl., *barley*.

†**κρίθινος**, η, ον, *of barley*.

κρίνω (κριν-), *κρινῶ, ἐκρίνα, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι, ἐκρίθην*, 619, 5, iv. [Lat. *cernō*, *separate*, Eng. *critic, hypothesis*], *divide, distinguish, decide, determine, be of opinion, judge, bring to trial*.

κρίός, ὁ, *ram*, Lat. *ariēs*.

κρίσις, εως, ἡ [κρίνω, Eng. *crisis*], *decision, trial*.

κρούω, κρούσω, *ἔκρουσα, κέκρουκα, κέκρουμαι* and *κέκρουσμαι, ἐκρούσθην*, *strike one thing against another, clash, rattle*.

κρύπτω (κρυφ-), *κρύψω, ἔκρυψα, κέκρυμμαι, ἐκρύφθην*, 613, 8, iii. [*crypt, crypto-gam, grotto*], *hide, conceal*, Lat. *tegō*. 737.

κτάομαι, κτήσομαι, *ἐκτησάμην, κέκτημαι*, 598, *acquire, gain, get, get together*; pf. as pres., *possess, have*.

κτείνω (κτεν-), *κτενῶ, ἔκτεινα, ἔκτονα*, 619, 6, iv., *kill*.

κτῆμα, ατος, τό [κτάομαι], *possession, pl. property*.

κτῆνος, ουσ, τό [κτάομαι], *chattel, domestic animal, pl. cattle*.

Κτησίᾱς, ου, *Ctesias*, a famous Greek physician at the Persian court.

Κύδνος, ὁ, *the Cydnus*.

κύκλος, ὁ [Lat. *circus, circle*, Eng. *ring, cycle, bi-cycle, en-cyclo-pædia*], *circle, curve, ring*; *κύκλω, in a circle*.

†**κυκλώω**, *κυκλώσω, etc.*, *surround, encircle, hem in*.

†**κύκλωσις**, εως, ἡ, *an encircling*; *ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν, as if to encircle*.

κυλίνδω, ἐκύλισα, *κεκύλισμαι, ἐκυλίσθην* [*cylinder*], *roll, roll down*.

Κύρος, ὁ, I. *Cyrus the Elder*, founder of the Persian empire, according to Xenophon the son of Cambyses and grandson of Astyages. II. *Cyrus the Younger*, the leader of the expedition against Artaxerxes. 705.

κύνω, κυνός, ὁ [Lat. *canis, dog*, Eng. *hound, cynic*], *dog, hound, cur*.

κωλύω, κωλύσω, etc., *hinder, prevent, oppose, check*; *τὸ κωλύον, the hindrance, obstacle*.

†**κωμ-άρχης**, ου [463], *village-chief*.

κώμη, ἥς [κεῖμαι], *village*.

†**κωμήτης**, ου, *villager*.

κώπη, ἥς, *oar-handle, oar*.

Δ.

λαβεῖν, λαβών, see *λαμβάνω*.

λαγχάνω (λαχ-), *λήξομαι, ἔλαχον, εἴληχα, εἴληγμαι, ἐλήχθην*, 626, 1, v., *obtain by lot, get, obtain, be possessed of, hold*.

λαγώς, ὁ, *hare*, Lat. *lepus*.

λαθεῖν, λαθών, see *λανθάνω*.

λάθρα, adv. [λανθάνω], *covertly, without the knowledge of.*

Δακεδαμόνιος, ἄ, ον, *Lacedaemonian*; Δακεδαμόνιος, ὁ, a *Lacedaemonian*.

λακτίζω (λακτιδ-), λακτιῶ, etc., iv. [λάξ, adv., *with the foot*, Lat. *calx*, *heel*], *kick at, kick.*

Δάκων, ὄνος, ὁ, a *Laconian*.

†**Δακωνικός**, ἡ, ὄν, *Laconian*.

λαμβάνω (λαβ-), λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, εἴληφα, εἴλημμαι, ἐλήφθην, 626, 2, v. [Lat. *labor*, *toil*, Eng. *di-lemma*, *pro-lepsis*], *take, take into one's hand, receive, get, take or get possession of, enlist, catch, find.*

†**λαμπρός**, ἄ, ὄν, *bright, distinguished.*

†**λαμπρότης**, ητος, ἡ, *splendour.*

λάμπω, λάμψω, ἔλαμψα, ἐέλαμπα [Lat. *limpidus*, *clear*, Eng. *lamp*], *shine, be bright, blaze.*

λανθάνω (λαθ-), λήσω, ἔλαθον, ἐέληθα, ἐέλησμαι, 626, 3, v. [Lat. *lateō*, *lie hid*, Eng. *lethargy*, *Lethe*], *lie hid, escape the notice of; mid., forget.* 860.

λέγω, ἔλεξα, εἴλοχα, εἴλεγμαι, ἐλέγην and ἐέλεχθην, 604, 7 [591], *gather, collect.*

λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα, ἐέλεγμαι, ἐέλεχθην, 600, 4 [591], *say, speak, tell, state, mention, relate*, Lat. *dicō*, *bid*, *charge, vote.* 837, 838 c.

λείπω (λιπ-), λείψω, ἔλιπον, ἐέλοιπα, ἐέλειμμαι, ἐέλειφθην, 609, 1, ii. [Lat. *linquō*, *leave*, Eng. *lend*, *ec-lipse*], *leave, abandon, forsake, quit, leave behind, leave alive; πλήθει ἡμῶν λειφθέντες, inferior to us in numbers.*

†**λευκο-θώραξ**, ἄκος, ὁ, ἡ [θωράξ], *in white cuirass.*

λευκός, ἡ, ὄν [Lat. *lūx*, *light*, Eng. *light*], *white.*

λεώς, ὁ, *people.*

λήγω, λήξω, ἔληξα, *leave off, end, come to an end.*

ληΐσμαι (ληδ-), ἐλησάμην, iv. [λεῖᾱ, *booty*], *plunder, pillage.*

†**λησστής**, οὔ, *plunderer, robber.*

†**λίθινος**, η, ον, *of stone.*

λίθος, ὁ [litho-graphy], *stone.*

λιμήν, ἐνός, ὁ, *harbour, port.*

λιμός, ὁ, *hunger, famine.*

λίνεος, ἄ, ον, contr. οὐς, ἡ, οὖν [λίνον, *linen*], *linen.*

λόγος, ὁ [591], *word, saying, statement, speech, discourse, debate, rumour, narrative.*

λόγχη, ης, *point or spike of a spear, spear, lance.*

λοιδορέω, λοιδορήσω, etc. [λοιδορος, *abusive*], *revile, abuse.*

λοιπός, ἡ, ὄν [λείπω], *remaining, with the art., the rest; λοιπόν (sc. ἐστὶ), it remains; τὸ λοιπόν, for the future.*

λόφος, ὁ, *hill, ridge, height.*

†**λοχ-ἀγία**, ἄς [435], *captaincy.*

†**λοχ-ἀγός**, ὁ [435], *commander of a λόχος, captain.*

λόχος, ὁ [λέχος, *couch*, Lat. *lectus*, *couch*, Eng. *lie, lair, log*], *ambush, men in ambush, a company.*

†**Λυδία**, ἄς, *Lydia.*

Λύδιος, ἄ, ον, *Lydian.*

Λύκαιος, ἄ, ον, *Lycæan*; τὰ Λύκαια, *the Lycæa*, a festival in honour of *Zeus.*

Λυκάονιᾱ, ἄς, *Lycæonia.*

Λυκίος, ὁ, *Lycius*, an Athenian.

λύκος, ὁ [Lat. *lupus*, *wolf*, Eng. *wolf*], *wolf.*

λύμαινομαι (λύμαι-), λύμανοῦμαι, ἐλύμηνάμην, ἐελύμασμαι, iv. [λύμη, *insult*], *outrage, destroy, ruin.*

†**λύπέω**, λύπησω, etc., *grieve, distress, vex, annoy, molest.*

λύπη, ης, *pain, grief, sorrow.*

†**λύπηρός**, ἄ, ὄν, *painful, troublesome, annoying.*

λῦω, λύσω, ἐλύσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην, 442 [Lat. *luō*, loose, Eng. LOSE, LOOSE, *ana-lyze*], loose, set free, release, break, break down, destroy; mid., loose one's own, ransom.

λωτο-φάγοι, οἱ [λωτός, *lotus*, + φαγεῖν, see ἐσθίω], *lotus-eaters*.

λῶν, λῶν, gen. *onos*, 469, better, preferable, pleasanter.

M.

μα, intensive particle, surely, used in negative oaths. 736.

Μαίανδρος, ὁ [*meander*], the *Maeander*, a river in Asia Minor of winding course.

μαίνομαι (μαν-), *μανοῦμαι*, μέμνηται, ἐμάνην, iv. [*maniac*, *necro-mancy*], rage, be mad.

μακαρίζω (μακαρίζω-), ἐμακάρισα, ἐμακάρισθην, iv. [455], regard as happy.

μακαριστός, ἡ, ὁν [455], deemed happy, enviable.

μακρός, ἄ, ὁν [455], long, high, tall; μακράν (sc. ὁδόν), a long way; μακρότερον, adv., farther, at longer range.

Μάκρων, *onos*, ὁ, a *Macronian*.

μάλα, adv., very, much, very much, greatly, exceedingly, Lat. *ualdē*; comp. μάλλον, more, rather; sup. μάλιστα, most, especially.

μαθάνω (μαθ-), μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον, μεμάθηκα, 626, 4, v. [*mathematics*], learn, find out.

μάντις, εως, ὁ [μαίνομαι], one inspired, seer, diviner.

Μαρσύας, *ou*, *Marsyas*, a satyr.

†**μαρτυρέω**, μαρτυρήσω, etc., testify, bear witness, Lat. *testor*.

†**μαρτύριον**, τό, evidence, proof.

μάρτυς, υρος, ὁ [*martyr*], witness.

Μάσκα, ἄ, ὁ, the *Masca*.

μάστιξ, ἱγος, ἡ, whip, lash.

μαστός, ὁ, *nipple*, breast, of men; *hill*, *hillock*.

†**μάχαιρα**, ἄς, knife, sword, sabre.

μάχη, ης, battle, engagement, fight.

†**μάχομαι**, μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην, μεμάχημαι, 605, 5, fight, give battle. 773.

μεγαλο-πρεπῶς, adv. [455], magnificently, in a princely manner.

μεγάλως, adv. [455], greatly.

Μεγαρεύς, εως, ὁ, a *Megarian*.

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, 385, 469 [455], great, Lat. *māgnus*, large, tall, weighty, powerful; neut. as adv., μέγα, greatly; τὸ μέγιστον, chiefly; οἱ μέγιστα δυνάμενοι, the most powerful.

Μεγαφέρνης, *ou*, *Megaphernes*.

μέγεθος, *ous*, τό [455], greatness, magnitude, size.

μέγιστος, sup. of μέγας.

μεθ', see μετὰ.

μεζών, comp. of μέγας.

μείων, comp. of μικρός.

†**μελανία**, ἄς, blackness.

μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν, gen. μέλανος, etc., 338 [*melan-choly*], black.

μέλει, μελήσει, ἐμέλησε, μεμέληκε, impers., it is a care, it concerns; ἐμοὶ μελήσει, I will see to it.

†**μελετάω**, μελετήσω, ἐμελέτησα, μεμελέτηκα, care for, attend to, practise.

†**μελέτη**, ης, care, attention, practice.

μελίνη, ης, millet.

μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα, be about, intend, delay.

μεμνηῶ, etc., see μνησκειν.

μέν, post-positive particle, never used as a conj. to connect words and sentences, but to distinguish the word or clause with which it stands from something that is to follow, and commonly answered by δέ (sometimes by ἀλλά, μέντοι, ἔπειτα)

in the corresponding clause, *on the one hand, indeed, truly*, but often it is not to be translated, and its presence is to be shown merely by stress of voice; *ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ, the one . . . the other, plur. some . . . others; ἀλλὰ μὲν, but certainly.*

μὲν-τοι [τοι], adv., *really, certainly, in truth*; conj., *yet, still, however, nevertheless.*

μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα, 605, 6 [Lat. *maneō, stay*], *remain, stay, wait for, last, be in force.*

Μένων, ὠνος, δ, Menon.

μέρος, ους, τό, division, part, share, portion, Lat. *pars*; **μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας**, *an instance of their discipline*; **ἐν μέρει**, *in turn.*

ἡμεσ-ημβρία, ᾧς [ἡμέρᾱ], *noon, mid-day; the south.*

μέσος, η, ον [Lat. *medius, middle*, Eng. *mid*], *middle*; **μέσον, τό, the middle, centre, midst, space between.**

Μέσπιλα, ᾧς, Mespila.

μεστός, ἡ, ὄν, full of, laden. 760.

μετά, prep. with gen. and acc. With gen., *with, in company with, among*; with acc., *of place or time, behind, after, next*; **μετά τοῦτο** or **ταῦτα**, *after this, hereupon.*

In composition **μετά** signifies sharing, *with, among*, or time or quest, *after, or change, from one place to another.*

μετα-δίδωμι, *give among, give a share.* 745.

μετα-μέλει, it is a care afterwards, it repents; **μετα-μέλει μοι**, *I repent.*

μεταξύ, adv., *between.* 761.

ἡμετά-πεμπτος, ον, sent for.

μετα-πέμπω, *send after*; mid., *send for a person to come to oneself, summon.*

μετ-έχω, *have a share.* 745.

μετ-έωρος, ον [αἶρω, Eng. *meteor*], *raised from the ground, on high.*

μέτρον, τό [Lat. *mētiōr, measure*, Eng. *metre, etc.*], *measure.*

μέχρι, improper prep. with gen., *of time or place, up to, until*; conj., *until.* 821, 822.

μή, adv., *not*, used with the imv. and subjv. in all constructions; in all final and object clauses, except after **μή**, *that not, lest*, which takes *οὐ*; in all conditional and conditional relative clauses, and in the corresponding temporal sentences after **ἔως, πρίν, etc.**; in relative sentences expressing a purpose; in expressions of a wish; with the infin., except in indirect discourse; and with the partic. when it expresses a condition. All of the compounds of **μή** follow the usage of the simple word.

μηδαμῶς, adv. [*μηδαμὸς, none*], *by no means*, Lat. *nequāquam.*

μη-δέ, conj. and adv. [δέ], *but not, and not, nor*, Lat. *neque, nec*; *not even*, Lat. *nē . . . quidem.*

μηδ-είς, μία, ἐν, 497 c [είς], *not one, none, no, nobody, nothing*, Lat. *nēmo, nullus.*

μηδέ-ποτε, adv. [ποτέ], *never*, Lat. *nunquam.*

†Μηδία, ᾧς, Media.

Μηδος, δ, a Mede.

Μηδοκος, δ, Medocus.

μήθ', see **μήτε.**

μη-κ-έτι, adv. [μή+έτι], *not again, no longer.*

μήκος, ους, τό [455], *length.*

μήν, post-positive intensive particle, *in truth, surely, truly*, Lat. *uērō*; **καὶ μήν**, *and in fact, and yet*; **ἀλλὰ μήν**, *but surely, but still*; **ἡ μήν**, *in very truth.*

μήν, μηνός, δ [Lat. *mēnsis, month*, Eng. **MOON, MONTH**], *month.*

μηνύω, μηνύσω, etc., disclose, make known.

μή-ποτε, adv. [μή + ποτέ], *not ever, never*, Lat. *nunquam*.

μή-τε, conj. [μή + τέ], *and not; μήτε . . . μήτε, neither . . . nor; μήτε . . . τέ, not only not . . . but also*, Lat. *neque . . . et*.

μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ, 291 [Lat. *māter*, *mother*, Eng. *MOTHER*], *mother*.

μία, see εἷς.

μίγνυμι (μυγ-), μίξω, ξίμιξα, μέμιγμαι, ἐμίχην and ἐμίγην, 651, 3, v. [Lat. *miscēō*, *mix*, Eng. *MIX*], *mix, mingle*.

Μίδας, ου, *Midas*, a mythical king of Phrygia.

Μιθριδάτης, ου, *Mithridātes*.

μικρός, ὁ, ὄν, 469 [*micro-scope*], *small, little*, Lat. *parvus*, of *small account, insignificant*; neut. as adv., *μικρόν*, *hardly*; comp. *μείων*, *smaller, less*; neut. as adv., *μείον*, *less*.

† **Μιλήσιος**, ἄ, ου, *Milesian*.

Μίλητος, ἡ, *Milētus*.

μιμέομαι, μιμήσομαι, etc. [μίμος, actor, Eng. *mimic*], *imitate, copy*.

μιμνήσκω (μνα-), μνήσω, ἔμνησα, μέμνημαι, ἐμνήσθην, 642, 6, vi. [Lat. *meminī*, *remember*, *moneō*, *remind*, *admonish*, Eng. *mentor*, *mnemonics*], *remind*; mid. and pass., *remind oneself, remember, mention, make mention*, with pf. *μέμνημαι* as pres., Lat. *meminī*. 747.

μισέω, μίσήσω, etc. [μίσος, τὸ, *hatred*, Lat. *miser*, *wretched*, Eng. *mis-anthrope*], *hate*, Lat. *odī*.

† **μισθο-δότης**, ου [641], *paymaster, employer*. 772.

μισθός, ὁ [MEED], *wages, pay, hire, reward*.

† **μισθο-φορά**, ἄς [658], *wages received, pay*.

† **μισθο-φόρος**, ου [658], *receiving pay; μισθοφόροι, οἱ, mercenaries*.

† **μισθόω**, μισθώσω, etc., *let for hire, let*; mid., *have let to oneself, hire*, 197 a; pass., *be hired*.

μνᾶ, ἄς, *mina*, the next to the highest denomination in Attic silver money, although never actually minted as a coin, one sixtieth of a talent, and worth to-day about \$18.00 in U.S. silver money, according to its legal rate of value.

μνήμων, ου, gen. *ονος* [μμνήσκω], *mindful*.

μνησθῆ, see μμνήσκω.

μόλυβδος, ὁ, *lead*.

μόνος, η, ου [monk, monad, mono-], *alone*, Lat. *sōlus*, *only, sole*; neut. as adv., *μόνον*, *alone, only, solely*.

Μοῦσα, ης [Muse], *Muse*.

Μυριάδος, ἡ, *Myriandus*.

† **μυριάς**, δδος, ἡ [myriad], *the number ten thousand, myriad*.

μῦρος, ἄ, ου, *countless*; pl. *μύριοι*, αι, α, 496, 10,000; ἄσπις *μυρία*, *ten thousand shield, i.e. shield-bearers*.

† **Μύσιος**, ἄ, ου, *Mysian*.

Μῦσός, δ, ἃ *Mysian*.

μῶπος, ἄ, ου [sopho-more], *dull, stupid, foolish*, Lat. *stultus*.

N.

νάπη, ης, *ravine, glen*.

† **ναυ-αρχος**, ὁ [463], *admiral*.

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ, 388 [Lat. *nāvis*, *ship*, Eng. *nautical*, cf. *νέω*], *ship* (because it swims).

† **ναύτης**, ου, *sailor*.

† **ναυτικός**, ἡ, ὄν, *naval*; *ναυτικόν τι*, *a naval force, a fleet*.

νεανίās, ου [νέος], *young man*.

† **νεανίσκος**, δ, *young man*.

νεκρός, ὁ [Lat. *nex*, *death*, Eng. *necro-logy*], *dead body, corpse*; οἱ *νεκροί*, *the dead*.

νέμω, νεμῶ, ἐνειμα, νενέμηκα, νενέμῃμαι, ἐνεμήθην, 605, 7 [509], *distribute, portion out, award*, Lat. *distribuō*, *drive to pasture*; mid., of *cattle, feed, graze*.

νέος, ᾧ, ον [Lat. *novus*, *new*, Eng. *new*, *neo-phyte*], *young, fresh*.

νεφέλη, ης [νέφος, τό, *cloud*, Lat. *nūbēs*, *cloud*]; hence *net*.

νέω (νυ-), νουσῶμαι, ἐνευσα, νένευκα, 610, 2, ii. [Lat. *nō*, *swim*, cf. *naūs*], *swim*.

νεώς, ῶ, 170, *temple*.

νεῶν, see *ναῦς*.

νή, intensive particle, *surely*, used in affirmative oaths. 736.

νήσος, ἡ [cf. νέω], *island* (as *swimming* in the sea).

νικάω, νικήσω, etc., *conquer, prevail over, surpass, outdo*, Lat. *vincō*.

νίκη, ης, *victory*, Lat. *uictōria*.

νόω, νοήσω, etc. [644], *observe, perceive, plan*.

νομή, ης [509], *pasture, herd*.

νομίζω (νομιδ-), νομιῶ, etc., 618, 6, iv. [509], *regard as a custom, pass., be the custom, be usual; own, regard, consider, believe, think*, Lat. *putō*.

νόμος, ὁ [509], *custom, law*.

νοῦς, νοῦ, ὁ, 180 [644], *mind*, Lat. *mēns*; ἐν νῷ ἔχειν, *have in mind, purpose*.

νυκτο-φύλαξ, ακος, ὁ [νύξ + φύλαξ], *night-watch, picket*.

νύκτωρ, adv. [νύξ], *by or at night*.

νῦν, adv. [Lat. *nunc*, *now*, Eng. *now*], *now, just now, just, at present*.

νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ [Lat. *nox*, *night*, Eng. *NIGHT*], *night; μέσαι νύκτες, midnight*.

Ξ.

Ξενίās, ου, *Xenias*.

ξενικός, ἡ, ον, *mercenary; τὸ ξενικόν* (sc. στρατεύμα), *the mercenary force*.

ξένος, ὁ, *stranger, foreigner, guest friend, guest, host, foreign soldier, mercenary*.

Ξενοφών, ὠντος, ὁ, *Xenophon*, an Athenian, author of the *Anabasis*.

Ξέρξης, ου, *Xerxes*, in particular *Xerxes I.*, son of Darius I.

ξηραίνω (ξηραν-), ξηρανῶ, ἐξήρανα, ἐξήρασμαι, ἐξηράνην, iv. [ξηρός, *dry*], *dry*.

ξίφος, ους, τό, *sword*, Lat. *gladius*.

†ξυλλίζομαι (ξυλιδ-), iv., *gather wood*.

†ξύλινος, η, ον, *of wood, wooden*.

ξύλον, τό, *wood, piece or bar of wood; pl. timbers, beams, wood, fuel*.

Ο.

ὁ, ἡ, τό, the definite art., 88, *the*, with demonstrative force in the expressions *ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ, the one . . . the other, this . . . that*, pl. *these . . . those, some . . . the rest*; *ὁ δέ*, without preceding *ὁ μὲν*, and *he, but he*, and in pl., *but they, the rest* (never referring to the subject of the preceding sentence, but always to some word in an oblique case). As the art., used sometimes in Greek where we should omit it, as with proper names and numerals. The art. may be used also to mark a person or thing as *well known* or *customary*, or with distributive force, as *τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ, per month to each soldier*, or where we should use a possessive pron. *τὰ Κύρου, Cyrus's relations*; *οἱ ἐκείνου, his men*; *οἱ φεύγοντες, the exiles*; *ὁ βουλόμενος, whoever wishes*; *οἱ οἴκοι, those at home*; *οἱ ἔνδον, those within*; *οἱ παρὰ βασιλέως, men from the king*; *οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, market men*; *οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, his men*.

ὀβολός, ὁ, *obol*, an Attic silver coin, worth about three cents.

ὀγδοήκοντα, indecl., 496 [ὀκτώ], *eighty*.

ὄγδοος, η, ον, 496 [ὀκτώ], *eighth*.

ὄδε, ἥδε, τόδε, demon. pron., 539 a [ὁ + -δε], *this, the following*. 540, 541.

ὁδός, ἡ [Lat. *solum*, *ground*; Eng. *ex-odus*, *meth-od*, etc.], *way, road*, Lat. *uia*; *march, journey, expedition*.

ὅθεν, adv. [ὅς], *from which place, whence*.

οἱ, οἷ, οἶ, see ὁ, ὅς, οὗ.

οἶδα, 2 pf. with pres. force, 661, 698 [663], *know, understand, have knowledge of*.

τοῖκα-δε, adv., *home, homeward*.

τοῖκεῖος, ᾧ, ον, *belonging to one's house, familiar*; οἱ οἰκεῖοι, *one's family, kinsmen, friends*.

τοῖκέτης, ου, *house servant, domestic*.

τοῖκέω, οικήσω, etc., *inhabit, dwell, occupy, live*; pass., *be inhabited, be situated*.

τοικίᾱ, ᾧς, *house, dwelling*.

τοῖκο-δομέω, οἰκοδομήσω, etc. [δέμω, *build*], *build, construct, erect*.

τοῖκο-θεν, adv., *from home*.

τοῖκοι, adv., 28, *at home*.

τοῖκο-νόμος, ὁ [509], *steward*.

οἶκος, ὁ [Lat. *uīcus*, *abode, village*, Eng. *di-ocese*, *eco-nomy*], *house regarded as a home*.

οἰκτεῖρω (οικτερ-), οἰκτερῶ, ᾗκτειρα, iv. [οἶκτος, *pity*], *pity*, Lat. *misereor*.

οἶμαι, see οἶομαι.

οἶνος, ὁ [Lat. *uīnum*, *wine*], *wine*; οἶνος φοινίκων, *palm-wine*.

οἶομαι or οἶμαι, οἰήσομαι, φήθην, 605, 8, *think, believe, expect*.

οἶος, ᾧ, ον, *of which kind, (such) as*, Lat. *quālis*; οἶός τε, *able, possible*; *of what sort or kind*. 571, 571 a.

οἶός-περ, ἅπερ, ὅνπερ, *just (such) as*; neut. as adv., οἶόνπερ, *just as*.

οἶσω, see φέρω.

οἶχομαι, οἰχήσομαι, pres. with pf. force, *have gone, be gone*.

οἰωνός, ὁ, *bird of omen, omen*.

τοῖκνέω, ὀκνήσω, ᾤκνησα, *shrink from an act, hesitate, dread, fear*.

τοῖκνηρῶς, adv., *reluctantly*.

ὀκνος, ὁ, *hesitation, reluctance*.

τοῖκτακισ-χίλιοι, αι, α, 496 [χίλιοι], 8000.

τοῖκτα-κόσιοι, αι, α, 496 [ἐκατόν], 800.

ὀκτώ, indecl., 496 [Lat. *octō*, *eight*, Eng. *EIGHT*, *octo-gon*], *eight*.

ὀλεθρος, ὁ [δολῦμα], *destruction, loss*.

ὀλίγος, η, ον [olig-archy], *little, small, pl. few*.

ὀλκάς, ἄδος, ἡ [ἐλκω, *haul*], *ship of burden, merchantman*.

ὀλλῦμι (ολ-), ὀλῶ, ὤλεσα and ὤλόμην, ὀλώλεκα and ὤλωλα, 651, 4, v., *destroy, lose*.

ὅλος, η, ον [Lat. *solidus*, *whole*, Eng. *cath-olic*], *whole, entire*.

Ὀλύνθιος, ὁ, *an Olynthian*.

ὀμαλῆς, ἐς [ὀμός], *even, level*.

ὀμαλῶς, adv., *in even line*.

ὀμνῦμι (ομ-), ὀμοῦμαι, ὤμοσα, ὀμώμοκα, ὀμώμομαι and ὀμώμοσμαι, ὀμόσθην and ὀμώσθην, 651, 5, v., *swear, take an oath*.

ὀμοῖος, ᾧ, ον, *like, similar*. 773.

ὀμοῖως, adv., *in like manner, alike*.

ὀμο-λογέω, ὁμολογήσω, etc. [591], *agree, confess, admit*.

ὀμο-λογουμένως, adv. [591], *unavoidably, by common consent*.

ὀμός, ἡ, ὅν [ἕμα], *one and the same*.

ὀμο-τράπεζος, ον [τράπεζα], *at the same table*; ὁμοτράπεζος, ὁ, *table-companion*.

ὀμῶς, adv., *all the same, nevertheless, yet, still, however*.

ὄν, ὄν, see εἶμι, ὅς.

ὀνείρατα, τά, *dream*.

δόννημι (ονα-), δνήσω, ὠνησα and ὠνήμην, ὠνήθην, 647, 8, vii., *benefit, assist*.

δνομα, ατος, τό [644], *name*.

δνος, ὁ [Lat. *asinus*, *ass*, Eng. *ass*], *ass*.

δπη, conjunctive adv., *where, wherever, in whatever way*, Lat. *quā*.

δπισθεν, adv., *behind, in the rear*; τὸ ὕπισθεν, τοῦπισθεν, *the rear*. 761.

†δπισθο-φυλακιά, *as, command of the rear*.

†δπισθο-φύλαξ, ακος, ὁ [φύλαξ], *rear-guard*.

†δπλιζω (δπλιδ-), ὥπλισα, ὥπλισμαι, ὥπλισθην, *arm, equip*.

δπλίτης, ου, *heavy-armed soldier, hoplite*.

δπλον, τό [pan-*orply*], *implement, pl. gear, arms, armour*; ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις, *under arms*.

ὅποιος, ᾧ, ον, rel. pron., *of which kind, (such) as*, Lat. *quālis*, *of what sort*. 571, 571 a.

ὅπόσος, η, ον, rel. pron., *how much or large, how many, (as much or as many) as*, Lat. *quantus*. 571, 571 a.

ὅποτε, conjunctive adv., *when, whenever, since, because*.

ὅποτερος, ᾧ, ον, rel. pron., *which of two parties, whichever*, Lat. *uter*.

ὅπου, conjunctive adv., *where, wherever*, Lat. *ubi*.

ὀπτός, ἡ, ὄν, *baked, burnt*.

ὅπως, conjunctive adv. and final particle, *in what way, how, that, in order that*.

ὀράω (ὄρα-, ἰδ-, οπ-), ὕψομαι, εἶδον, ἑώρακα and ἑώρακα, ἑώραμαι and ὤμα, ὠφθην, 655, 5, viii. [*a-ware*, pan-*orama*]; 663; Lat. *oculus*, Eng. *EYE*, *OGLE*, *optic*, *syn-opsis*], *see in its widest sense, behold, look, observe, perceive*, Lat. *uideō*. 839.

ὀργή, ἡς, *temper, anger*; ὀργῇ, *in a passion*.

†ὀργίζομαι (οργιδ-), ὀργιοῦμαι, etc., iv., *be angry, be in a passion*. 768.

ὀργυιά, ᾧς, *fathom, six Greek feet*.

†ὀρθιος, ᾧ, ον, *straight up, steep, in column*.

ὀρθός, ἡ, ὄν [ortho-*dox*], *straight, direct*.

ὀρθρος, ὁ, *daybreak, dawn*.

ὀρθῶς, adv. [ὀρθός], *rightly, justly*.

ὄρια, τὰ [horizon], *boundary*.

ὀρκος, ὁ, *oath*.

ὀρμάω, ὀρμήσω, etc. [ὀρμή, motion], *set in motion, hasten*; mid. and pass., *set out or forth, start*.

ὀρμέω [ὄρμος, anchorage], *be moored, lie at anchor*.

ὀρνῖς, ὀρνίθος, ὁ, ἡ [ornitho-*logy*], *bird*.

Ὀρόντας, ᾧ or ον, *Orontas*.

ὄρος, ους, τό, *mountain*.

†ὀρυκτός, ἡ, ὄν, *dug, artificial*.

ὀρύττω (ορυχ-), ὀρύξω, ὠρυξα, ὀρώρυχα, ὀρώρυγμα, ὠρύχθην, 617, 4, iv., *dig*, Lat. *fodiō*; *quarry*.

ὀρφανός, ἡ, ὄν [orphan], *orphan*.

ὅς, ἡ, ὅ, rel. pron., 566, *who, which, what*, Lat. *quī*; δι' ᾧ, *why*; ἐν ᾧ, *during which (time), meantime*; as dem., καὶ ὅς, *and he*. 568, 569, 725.

ὅσος, η, ον, rel. pron., *how much or great, how many, (as much or as many) as*, Lat. *quantus*; neut. as adv., ὅσον, with numerals, *about*; ὅσῳ, with comparatives, *by how much, the*. 571, 571 a.

†ὅσος-περ, ἡπερ, ονπερ, *just (as much or many) as*.

ὅσ-περ, ἡπερ, ὅπερ [ὅς], *just who, just what*.

ὅσ-τις, ἥτις, ὅ τι, 567 [ὅς+τις], *who, whoever, whichever, whatever, which, what*. 570.

ὅτε, conjunctive adv., *when, as, whenever, because, since*.

δτι, conj. [neut. of *δστις*], *that, because, since*; used also to strengthen superlatives, as *δτι ἀπαρασκευότατος, as unprepared as possible*.

οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ, neg. adv., *not*, Lat. *nōn*, used, to deny a fact, with the indic. and opt. in all independent sentences, except wishes; in indirect discourse after *δτι* and *ὥς*; and in causal sentences; accented at the end of a clause or sentence. All of the compounds of *οὐ* follow the usage of the simple word.

οὐ, conjunctive adv. [*ὅς*], *where*.

οὐ, dat. *οἷ*, personal pron., 511, of himself, Lat. *suī*. 515.

†οὐδαμῇ, adv., *in no wise*.

†οὐδαμόθεν, adv., *from no place*.

οὐδαμός, ἡ, ὅν [*οὐδέ*], *none*.

†οὐδαμοῦ, adv., *nowhere*.

οὐ-δέ, neg. conj. and adv. [*οὐ + δέ*], *but not, and not, nor yet, nor*, Lat. *neque, nec*; as adv., *not even*, Lat. *nē . . . quidem, not at all, by no means*.

†οὐδ-εἰς, μία, ἐν, 497 c [*εἰς*], *not one, not any, none, no*, Lat. *nullus*; *nobody*, Lat. *nēmō*; *nothing*, Lat. *nihil*.

οὐθ', see *οὔτε*.

οὐκ-έτι, adv. [*οὐ + ἔτι*], *no longer*.

οὐκ-οὖν, inter. particle and inferential conj. [*οὐ + οὖν*], *not then? not therefore?* expecting an affirmative answer, Lat. *nōnne igitur*; as conj., *therefore, then, so*, Lat. *igitur*, with no neg. force.

οὖν, post-positive inferential conj., stronger than *ἄρα*, *therefore, then, accordingly, consequently, now, so*.

οὐ-ποτε, adv. [*οὐ + ποτέ*], *never*.

οὐ-πω, adv. [*οὐ + πώ*], *not yet*.

οὐ-πώποτε, adv. [*οὐ + πώποτε*], *never yet*.

οὐρά, *as, tail*; *rear*, of an army.

οὐ-τε, neg. conj. [*οὐ + τε*], *and not*,

Lat. *neque*; *οὔτε . . . οὔτε, neither . . . nor, οὔτε . . . τέ, not only not . . . but also*, Lat. *neque . . . et*.

οὔτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, demon. pron., 172, *this*, pl. *these*, freq. as pers. pron., *he, she, it, pl. they*, Lat. *hic*; *καὶ ταῦτα, and that too*.

†οὔτοστί, αὐτήτί, τούτί, strengthened form of *οὔτος*, *this man here*.

†οὔτως, before a consonant *οὕτω*, adv., *thus, so, in that case*.

οὐχί, adv., emphatic form of *οὐ*.

ὀφείλω (*οφελ-*), *ὀφειλήσω, ὀφείλῃσω* and *ὀφείλων, ὀφείλῃκα, ὀφείλῃθην*, iv., *owe*, Lat. *debeō*; pass., *be due*.

ὀφελος, τό, *advantage, use*.

ὀφθαλμός, ὁ [*cf. ὁράω*], *eye*.

ὀχέω, ὀχήσω [*ὄχος, carriage*, Lat. *vehō, carry*, Eng. *WAGON, WAY*], carry; pass., *ride*.

ὄχθη, *ης*, *height, bank, bluff*.

ὄχυρός, ἄ, ὅν [608], *tenable, strong, secure*.

ὀψίω (*οψιδ-*), *ὀψίσθην*, iv. [*ὀψέ*, adv., *late*], *be or come late*; *οἱ ὀψί-συντες, the late comers*.

ὀψις, *εως, ἡ* [*cf. ὁράω*], *look*.

II.

παθεῖν, see *πάσχω*.

πάθος, *ους, τό* [580], *experience, trouble, ill-treatment*.

παῖανίζω (*παιάνιδ-*), *ἐπαιάνισα*, iv. [*παιάν, paeān*], *raise the paeān*.

†παιδεῖα, *ās, training*.

†παιδεύω, παιδεύσω, etc., *train up a child, educate*.

†παιδίον, τό, *infant, little child*.

παῖς, *παιδός, ὁ, ἡ* [Lat. *puer, boy, child*, Eng. *FOAL, pedagogue*], *child, boy, girl, son*; *ἐκ παίδων, from boyhood*.

παῖω, παῖσω, ἔπαισα, πέπαικα, ἐπαίσθην, *strike, hit, beat, strike at*.

πάλαι, adv., *long, long ago*.

†παλαιός, ἄ, ὄν [*palae-ontology*], *ancient, old*.

πάλιν, adv. [*palim-ptest*], *back again, a second time*.

παλτόν, τό, javelin, spear.

πάμ-πολύς, πόλλη, πολυ [544], *very much, great, or numerous, pl. very many, Lat. per multus*.

παντά-πᾶσι, adv. [544], *all in all, altogether, wholly*.

πάντη, adv. [544], *in every way*.

παντοδαπός, ἡ, ὄν [544], *of every description, of all sorts*.

παντοίος, ἄ, ὄν [544], *of all sorts*.

πάνυ, adv. [544], *very, altogether, wholly, very much*.

πᾶσμαι (pres. not in use), πᾶσσομαι, ἐπασάμην, πέπᾶμαι, *acquire; pf. as pres., possess, have*.

παρά, prep. with gen., dat., and acc. [*para-*, as *para-graph*, etc.], *beside*. With gen., *from beside, from the presence of, from*; with the pass., *by*. With dat., *beside, by the side of, beside, at or on the side of, with, at*; παρά βασιλεῖ, *at court*; τὰ παρ' ἐμοί, *my fortunes, my side*. With acc., *to a position beside, to the side of, unto, to, towards, along to, alongside, along, near, by, past, sometimes even with verbs of rest; beside, beyond, against, contrary to, in violation of; of time, during*.

In composition παρά signifies *along, along by or past, alongside, by, beside, beyond, aside, amiss*.

παρ-αγγέλλω, *pass along an order, give orders, pass the word, give out, order*; κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα, *according to orders*.

παρ-γίνομαι, *be by, be present or at hand, arrive*.

παρ-άγω, *lead along, lead on*; εἰς τὰ πλάγια, *lead into position on either flank of an enemy's force*.

παράδεισος, ὁ [*paradise*], *park*.

παρ-δίδωμι, *pass along to one, give up, deliver over, surrender, pass along*.

παρ-δραμεῖν, see παρ-τρέχω.

παρ-αινέω, *recommend, advise*. 768 a.

παρ-αιτέομαι, *beg, intercede*.

παρ-καλέω, *call to one's side, summon, call to or forth, urge*.

παρ-κελεύομαι, *urge along, exhort, urge*. 768.

παρ-μένω, *stay or stand by*.

παρ-μηρίδια, τὰ [μηρός, thigh], *thigh pieces, armour for the thighs*.

παρ-πέμπω, *send along, despatch*.

παρ-πλέω, *sail along*.

παρ-πλήσιος, ἄ, ὄν [πλήσιος], *near by, similar, like*. 773.

παρ-ασάγγης, οὐ, *parasang, a Persian road measure, equal to about 30 stadia or three and one-third miles*.

παρ-σκευάζω, *put things side by side, get ready, prepare, procure*; mid., *prepare or procure for oneself, make ready, provide*.

παρ-σκευή, ἡς [σκευή], *preparation, equipment*.

παρ-σκηνέω, *encamp near or by*. 774.

παρ-τάττω, *draw up side by side*; παρατεταγμένοι, *drawn up in line*.

παρ-τείνω, *stretch out, extend*.

παρ-τίθημι, *put beside, set before, serve*.

παρ-τρέχω, *run along or by*.

παρ-εἰμι (εἰμί), *be near or by, be at a place, be at hand or present, have come*; τὰ παρόντα, *the present circumstances*.

παρ-εἶμι (εἶμι), *go or pass by*.

παρ-ελαύνω, *march by or past, ride past, review*.

παρ-έρχομαι, *pass by or along*.

παρ-έχω, *hold near, afford, furnish, render, make, cause, inspire*.

πάρ-οδος, ἡ [δόδος], *way by, pass, passage, act of passing.*

Παρράσιος, ὁ, *a Parrhasian.*

Παρύσατις, ἰδος, ἡ, *Parysatis*, mother of Cyrus the Younger.

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, 260 [544], *all*, Lat. *omnis*, *every*, with a subst. comm. in the predicate position, *all, entire, the whole.*

Πᾶσιων, ὠνος, ὁ, *Pasion.*

πάσχω (παθ-), *πέισομαι*, *ἐπαθον*, *πέπονθα*, 642, 7, vi. [580], *experience, suffer*, Lat. *patior*; *εἰ παθεῖν*, *be well treated.*

Πατηγύας, ᾱ, *Pategyas.*

πατήρ, *πατρός*, ὁ, 291 [Lat. *pater*, *father*, Eng. *FATHER*], *father.*

†**πατρίς**, ἰδος, ἡ, *native land.*

†**πατρώος**, ᾱ, *ον*, *ancestral, hereditary.*

παύω, *παύσω*, etc. [Lat. *paucus*, *few*, Eng. *FEW*], *make to cease, end, stop*; mid., *make oneself to cease, cease, stop, desist, give up, come to an end.* 859.

Παφλαγών, ὄνος, ὁ, *a Paphlagonian.*

παχύς, εἶα, ὅ [pachy-derm], *thick, stout.*

πεδῖον, τό [πέδον, *ground*], *level ground, open country, plain.*

†**πεζῇ**, adv., *on foot, afoot.*

πεζός, ἡ, ὅν [πούς], *on foot*; *πεζός*, ὁ, *foot soldier, pl. infantry.*

πείθω (πιθ-), *πέισω*, *ἔπεισα*, *πέπεικα* and *πέποιθα*, *πέπεισμαι*, *ἐπέισθην*, 609, 2, ii. [495], *persuade, prevail upon*; mid. and pass., *be prevailed on, yield, obey.* 768.

πείρα, ᾱς [561], *experience.*

πειράω, *πειράσω*, etc. [561], *try, prove, comm. pass. dep., try, test, attempt, endeavour.* 746.

πέισομαι, see *πάσχω* and *πείθω*.

πειστέος, ᾱ, *ον*, verbal [495], *to be persuaded or obeyed.*

†**Πελοποννήσιος**, ᾱ, *ον*, *Peloponnesian.*

Πελοπόννησος, ἡ, *Peloponnēsus.*

Πέλται, ὦν, *Peltae.*

†**πελταστῆς**, οὔ, *peltast, targeteer.*

†**πελταστικός**, ἡ, ὅν, *belonging to peltasts*; τὸ *πελταστικόν* (sc. *στράτευμα*), *the peltast force.*

πέλιη, ης, *shield, target, small and light.*

πέμπω, *πέμψω*, *ἐπεμψα*, *πέπομφα*, *πέπεμμαι*, *ἐπέμφθην*, 604, 9 [romp], *send, despatch, send word.*

†**πεντὰ-κόσιοι**, αι, α, 496 [έκατόν], 500.

πέντε, indecl., 496 [Lat. *quinque*, Eng. *FIVE*, *penta-gon*], *five.*

†**πεντε-καί-δεκα**, indecl., 496 [δέκα], *fifteen.*

†**πεντήκοντα**, indecl., 496, *fifty.*

πέπαμαι, see *πάσμαι*.

πέπονθα, etc., see *πάσχω*.

πέπτωκα, etc., see *πίπτω*.

-πέρ, intensive enclitic particle, *very, just, even.*

περαίνω (περαν-), *περανῶ*, *ἐπεράνα*, *πεέρασμαι*, *ἐπεράνθην*, 619, 7, iv. [561], *bring to an end, carry out, accomplish.*

πέραν, adv. [561], *across, beyond*, 761.

πέρδιξ, ἱκος, ὁ, ἡ [partridge], *partridge.*

πέρθω, *πέρσω*, *ἔπερσα*, *destroy.*

περί, prep. with gen., dat., and acc. [*peri-*, as in *peri-patetic*, *peri-od*, etc.], *round, on all sides, about.* With gen., chiefly in a derived sense, *about, with respect to, concerning, because of, for*, Lat. *dē*; expressing superiority, *more than*, as in the phrases, *περί παντὸς ποιῆσθαι*, *consider all important*, *περί πλείστου ποιῆσθαι*, *consider most important.* With dat., of place, *round, about.* With acc., of place, *about, all round,*

round; of persons, *about*, *attending on*; of things, *about*; of time, *about*; of relation, *in respect to*, *to*, *in one's dealings with*, Lat. *dē*.

In composition *περί* signifies *round*, *about*, (*remaining*) *over*, or *above* (*superiority*).

περι-άγω, *take about with one*.

περι-γίγνομαι, *be superior to*. 754.

περί-ειμι (ειμί), *be superior to*. 754.

περι-έχω, *surround, encompass*.

περι-μένω, *wait round, remain*.

περι-πίπτω, *embrace*. 774.

περι-πλέω, *sail round*.

περί-πλους, ὁ, 180, c [πλοῦς], *a sailing round, voyage round*.

περι-ρρέω, *encircle*.

περιστερᾶ, ἄς, *dove, pigeon*.

†περιπτεῦω, ἐπερίπτευσα, *be over and above, reach beyond, outflank*. 754.

πέριττος, ἡ, ον [περί], *superfluous, unnecessary*.

Πέρσης, ου, *a Persian*.

†περσιζω [περσιδ-], iv., *speak Persian*.

†Περσικός, ἡ, ὄν, *Persian*.

†περσιστί, adv., *in Persian*.

πέτομαι, πτήσομαι, ἐπτόμην [Lat. penna, Eng. FEATHER], *fly*.

πέτρα, ἄς [petri-fy], *rock, mass of rock, crag*.

πῆ, indefinite enclitic adv., *in any way, anyhow, somehow*.

πηγή, ἡς, *fountain, source*.

πήγνυμι (παγ-), ἔπηξα, πέπηγα, ἐπάγην, 651, 6, v. [Lat. pāx, compact, peace, Eng. FANG, FEE], *fix, freeze*.

πηδάω, πηδήσω, ἐπήδησα, πεπήδηκα, *leap*.

πηλός, ὁ, *clay, mire, mud*.

πήχυς, εως, ὁ, *forearm, cubit*.

Πίγρης, ητος, ὁ, *Pigres*.

πίεζω (πιεδ-), πιέσω, έπίεσα, έπιέσθην, iv., *press hard, crowd*; pass., *be hard pressed*.

πύμπλημι (πλα-), πλῆσω, έπλησα, έπέπληκα, έπέπλημαι and έπέπλησμαι, έπλήσθην, 647, 9, vii. [Lat. impleō, fill up, Eng. FILL, FULL, plethora], fill. 749.

πύμπρημι (πρα-), πρήσω, έπρησα, έπέπρημαι, έπρήσθην, 647, 10, vii., set on fire, burn.

πίνω (πι-), πίομαι, έπιον, έπέπωκα, έπέπομαι, έπόθην, 624, 4, v. [629], drink.

πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι, έπεσον, έπέτωκα, 606, 2 [Lat. petō, seek, Eng. FIND], fall.

Πισίδαι, ὧν, the Pisidians.

πιστεύω, πιστεύσω [495], put faith in, trust, rely on. 768 a.

πίστις, εως, ἡ [495], faith, good faith, pledge.

πιστός, ἡ, ὄν [495], faithful, trustworthy; πιστοί, a title given to Persian royal counsellors; πιστά, τά, pledges. 772.

πιστότης, ητος, ἡ [495], fidelity.

πλάγιος, ἄ, ον [πλάγος, τό, the side], sideways, slanting; τὰ πλάγια, the flanks of an army; εἰς πλάγιον, sideways.

πλαίσιον, τό, square, of troops.

πλανάομαι, πλανήσομαι, pass. dep. [πλάνη, wandering, Eng. planet], wander, stray, straggle, Lat. uagor. miss the mark.

†πλεθριαῖος, ἄ, ον, of a plethrum.

πλέθρον, τό, a plethrum, a measure of 100 Greek feet.

πλείστος, πλείων, see πολός.

πλέκω, έπλεξα, έπέπλεγμαι, έπλέχθην and έπλάκην [Lat. plicō, fold, Eng. FOLD], twist, plait.

πλευρά, ἄς [pleurisy], side, flank.

πλέω (πλυ-), πλεύσομαι and πλεουσῶμαι, έπλευσα, έπέπλευκα, έπέπλευσμαι, 610, 3, ii. [Lat. pluō, rain, Eng. FLOW], sail.

πληγή, ἡς [πλήττω], blow, stroke.

πλήθος, ους, τό [πιμπλημι], *fulness, extent, number, multitude.*

πλήθω [πίμτιλημι], *be full.*

πλήν, conj., *except that; improper prep. with gen., except.*

πλήρης, es [πίμπλημι], *full, full of, abounding in.* 760.

†πλησιάζω (πλησιαδ-), πλησιάσω, etc., iv., *approach, draw near.* 773.

πλησίος, ᾱ, ον, *near; neut. as adv., πλησίον, near, at hand, in attributive position, neighbouring.* 761.

πλήττω (πληγ-), πλήξω, ἐπληξα, πέπληγα, πέπληγμαι, ἐπλήγην and ἐπλάγην, 617, 5, iv. [Lat. *plangō*, *strike*, Eng. FLAG, *apo-plexy*], *strike, hit, smite.*

†πλίνθινος, η, ον, *of brick, brick.*

πλίνθος, ῆ [FLINT, *plinth*], *brick.*

πλοῖον, τό [πλέω], *vessel, boat.*

πλοῦς, δ, 180 [πλέω], *voyage.*

†πλούσιος, ᾱ, ον, *rich, wealthy.*

†πλουτέω, πλουτήσω, *be rich.*

πλούτος, δ, *wealth.*

πνέω (πνυ-), πνευσοῦμαι, ἐπνευσα, πέπνευκα, 610, 4, ii. [*pneu-matics*], *breathe, blow.*

ποδῆρης, es [πούς], *reaching to the feet.*

ποι, interr. adv., *whither?*

ποιέω, ποιήσω, etc., do, make, produce, fashion, effect, cause, accomplish, inflict; εὖ or κακῶς ποιεῖν, *treat well or ill; ἐκκλησιᾶν ποιεῖν, call or convoke a meeting.* 738, 739.

†ποίημα, ατος, τό [*poem*], *poem.*

ποικίλος, η, ον, *party-coloured.*

ποιός, ᾱ, ον, interr. pron., *of what sort?* Lat. *quālis.* 559, 559 a.

†πολεμέω, πολεμήσω, etc., *war, make or carry on war, fight.* 773.

†πολεμικός, ῆ, ὄν [*polemic*], *of or for war, warlike, skilled in war.*

†πολέμιος, ᾱ, ον, *belonging to war, at war with, hostile; τὰ πολέμια,*

military matters; πολέμιος, δ, an enemy, in war; οἱ πολέμιοι, the enemy. 773.

πόλεμος, δ, *war, warfare.*

†πολι-ορκέω, πολιορκήσω [εἶργω, *hem in*], *hem in a city, besiege.*

πόλις, εως, ῥ [acro-polis], *city, state.*

†πολίτης, ου, *citizen, fellow-citizen.*

πολλάκις, adv. [πολύς], *many times, often, frequently.*

πολλαπλάσιος, ᾱ, ον [πολύς + πίμπλημι], *many times as many.*

Πολυκράτης, ους, δ, *Polycrates.*

πολύς, πολλή, πολύ, 385, 469 [*poly-*, as in *poly-syllable*, etc.], *much, many, Lat. multus, in great numbers, great, large, long, strong; neut. as adv., πολύ, much, far; τὸ πολύ, the greater part; ἐπὶ πολύ, over a great extent.*

†πολυ-τελής, ἐς [τέλος, *outlay*], *requiring outlay, expensive.*

πονέω, πονήσω, etc. [580], *toil, labour, undergo hardship, earn by hard work.*

πονηρία, ᾱς [580], *knavery.*

πονηρός, ᾱ, ὄν [580], *burdensome, bad, poor, base, worthless, vicious, harmful.*

πόνος, δ [580], *toil, hardship.*

πορεία, ᾱς [561], *journey, march.*

πορεύω, πορεύσω [561], *make go; comm. pass. dep., go, proceed, advance, march, journey.*

πορίζω (ποριδ-), πορίω, etc., 618, 7, iv. [561], *furnish, provide, give; mid., get, obtain.*

πόρος, δ [561], *ford, means.*

πόρρω, adv. [573], *far from.* 761.

πορφυροῦς, ᾱ, οὖν, 191 b [*porphyry*], *dark red, purple.*

πόσος, η, ον, interr. pron., *how much?* Lat. *quantus.* 559, 559 a.

ποταμός, δ [*hippo-potamus*], *river.*

ποτέ, indef. encl. adv., *at some time, once on a time, once, ever.*

πότερος, ἄ, ον, interr. pron., *which of two?* neut. as adv., in an alternative question, **πότερον** . . . ἤ, *whether* . . . or, Lat. *utrum* . . . *an*.

ποτόν, τό [629], *drink*.

πού, indef. encl. adv., *anywhere*.

πούς, ποδός, δ [Lat. *pēs*, Eng. *foot*, *tri-pod*], *foot*, as a measure equal to about 11.65 inches.

πράγμα, ατος, τό [πράττω], *deed, thing, matter, affair, event, circumstance, difficulty*; pl., *affairs, trouble*.

πρᾶνής, ἐς [573], *headlong, steep*.

πράξις, εως, ἡ [πράττω], *undertaking*.

πρᾶος, εἶα, ον, gen. pl. **πρᾶέων**, *mild, tame*.

πράττω (πρᾶ-), **πράξω**, **ἐπρᾶξα**, **πέπρᾶγα** and **πέπρᾶχα**, **πέπρᾶγμαι**, **ἐπράχθην**, 617, 6, iv. [*practice*], *do, act, accomplish*; intr., *do, fare*.

πρᾶως, adv. [πρᾶος], *lightly*.

πρέπω, **πρέψω**, **ἐπρέψα**, *be fit*.

πρέσβυς, εως, δ [*presbyter, priest*], *old, reverend*; comp. and sup., **πρεσβύτερος**, **πρεσβύτατος**; **πρέσβεις**, οἱ, *envoys*.

πρίν, conj. [573], *before, until*. 823.

πρό, prep. with gen. [573], of place, *before, in front of, facing*, hence, *in defence of, for the sake of, for, in preference to*; of time, *before*.

In composition **πρό** signifies *before, forth, forward, in public, in behalf of*.

προ-αισθάνομαι, *observe beforehand*. 839.

προ-άρχομαι, *take the start*.

προ-βαίνω, *advance, wear on*.

προ-βάλλω, *throw before*; mid., **προβάλλεσθαι** τὰ ὅπλα, *present arms*.

πρόβατον, τό, comm. plur., *sheep, cattle*.

πρό-γονος, δ [612], *ancestor*.

προ-διαβαίνω, *cross first*.

προ-δίδωμι, *give over, surrender, betray, abandon*.

προ-δοσιᾶ, ἄς [641], *treason*.

προ-δότης, ου [641], *traitor*.

πρό-εἰμι (εἶμι), *go forward, advance, proceed, come on*.

προ-εἶπον, *tell before, give orders*. **προ-ελαύνω**, intr., *ride forward, march on before, push on*.

προ-έρχομαι, *go forward, advance*.

προ-θέω, *run ahead*.

προ-θύμωμαι, **προ-θύμῆσομαι** and **προ-θύμηθήσομαι**, **προθυμήθην** [537], *be eager*.

πρό-θυμος, ον [537], *ready, eager*.

προ-θύμως, adv. [537], *eagerly*.

προ-θύω, *sacrifice before*; mid., *offer sacrifice before an event*.

προ-τίμημι, *send forth*; mid., *give oneself up, entrust, surrender, abandon*.

προ-ίστημι, *put at the head of*; intr. in pf. and 2 pf., *stand or be at the head of*. 757.

προ-καλύπτω, *cover up*.

προ-κατακάω, *burn down in front*.

προ-καταλαμβάνω, *pre-occupy*.

προ-μετωπίδιον, τό [μέτωπον, *forehead*], *frontlet, of horses*.

Πρόξενος, δ, *Proxenus*.

προ-οράω, *see in front*.

προ-πέμπω, *send forward, escort*.

προ-πίνω, *drink before another, drink a health, drink as a pledge*.

πρός, prep. with gen., dat., and acc., *confronting, at, by*. With gen., *over against, towards*; in swearing, *by*; with the pass., *by, from*; with adjectives, *in the sight of*; expressing what is characteristic, *pertaining to, like*. With dat., *near, at, besides, in addition to*. With acc., *to, towards, against, before, at, according to, with respect to, about*; **πρὸς φιλιάν**, *in a friendly manner*.

In composition *πρός* signifies *to, towards, against, besides, in addition to*.

προσ-άγω, *lead to or against*; intr., *lead on, advance*.

προσ-αἰτέω, *ask in addition*.

προσ-βάλλω, *throw against*; intr., *attack, make an attack*.

προσ-βολή, ἡς [480], *assault*.

προσ-δίδωμι, *give besides*.

προσ-εἰμι (εἶμι), *come to, advance*.

προσ-ελαύνω, *ride towards or up*.

προσ-έρχομαι, *come on or up, approach, advance*. 774.

προσ-έχω, *hold to, apply*; *προσ-έχειν τὸν νοῦν*, *direct or give attention to*. 774.

προσ-ήκω, *be come to, be related to*. 768.

πρόσ-θεν, adv. [*πρός*], *before, previously, sooner*; in attributive position, *previous*.

προσ-τήμι, *let approach*.

προσ-καλέω, *call to, summon*.

προσ-κυνέω, *προσ-κυνήσω*, *προσ-εκύνῃσα* [*κυνέω*, *kiss*], *make obeisance to, salute*.

προσ-λαμβάνω, *take to oneself*.

προσ-όμνυμι, *swear besides*.

προσ-ποιέομαι, *take to oneself, assume, pretend*.

προσ-πολεμέω, *war against*.

προσ-τάττω, *assign or appoint*.

προ-στερνίδιον, τό [*στέρνον*], *breast-plate, of horses*.

προσ-τίθημι, *add to*; mid., *agree*.

προσ-φιλῶς, adv. [*φίλος*], *in a friendly way toward, kindly*.

πρόσω, adv. [573], *forward, far, at a distance, far from*; τοῦ πρόσω, *forward*. 761.

πρότερος, ᾧ, *ον* [573], *former, previous*; neut. as adv., *formerly*.

προ-τίθημι, *set forth, offer*.

προ-τιμάω, *honour more*.

προ-τρέχω, *run forward*.

προ-φαίνω, *show forth*; mid., *come in sight, appear*.

προ-φασις, *εως*, ἡ [483], *pretext*.

προ-φύλαξ, *ακος*, ὁ [*φύλαξ*], *picket*.

πρῶτος, *η, ον* [573], *first, foremost*; neut. as adv., *πρῶτον*, *at first, first*.

πτέρυξ, *υγος*, ἡ [*πέτομαι*], *wing of a bird, flap of a cuirass*.

Πῦθαγόρας, *ον*, *Pythagoras*.

πυκνός, *ή, όν* [*πύξ*], *thick, close together*.

Πύλαι, *ων*, *Pylae*.

πύλη, *ης*, *gate, pl. gate, pass*.

πυνθανομαι (*πυθ-*), *πεύσομαι*, *ἐπυθόμην*, *ἐπίπυσμαι*, 626, 5, v., *inquire, ask, learn by inquiry, learn, ascertain, find out*. 839.

πύξ, adv. [Lat. *pūgnus*, *fist*, Eng. *FIST*], *with clenched fist*.

πῦρ, *πυρός*, τό [*FIRE*, *pyre*], *fire*; pl. *πυρά*, *τά*, *beacons*.

πύραμις, *ιδος*, *η* [*pyramid*], *pyramid*.

Πύραμος, ὁ, *the Pyramus*.

πύργος, ὁ, *tower*.

πῦρός, ὁ, *wheat*, comm. pl.

πῶ, indef. encl. adv., *yet, up to this time*.

πωλέω, *πωλήσω* [*mono-poly*], *sell*.

πῶμα, *ατος*, τό [629], *drink*.

πῶ-ποτε, indef. adv. [*πῶ*+*ποτέ*], *at any time, ever, ever yet*.

πῶς, interr. adv., *how?*

πῶς, indef. encl. adv., *in any way, somehow, at all*.

P.

ῥαδῖος, ᾧ, *ον*, 469, *easy*.

ῥαδίως, adv., *easily, readily*.

ῥα-θυμία, ᾧ, *ας* [537], *easy life*.

ῥέω (*ῥυ-*), *ρεύσομαι*, *ἐρρύηκα*, *ἐρρύην*, 610, 5, ii. [*cata-rrh*, *rheum*], *flow*.

ῥήτωρ, *ορος*, ὁ [*cf. εἰπων*], *speaker, orator*.

ρίπτω (ρίφ-), ρίψω, ῥρίψα, ῥρίφα, ῥρίμμαι, ῥρτφθην and ῥρρίφην, 613, 9, iii., throw, hurl, cast aside.

Ῥόδιος, ὁ, a Rhodian.

Σ.

†σαλπιγκτής, see σαλπικτής.

σαλπιγξ, γγος, ἡ, trumpet.

†σαλπιζω (σαλπιγγ-), ἐσάλπιγξα, iv., blow the trumpet; ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε (sc. ὁ σαλπικτής), when the trumpet sounded the charge.

†σαλπικτής, οὔ, trumpeter.

Σάμιος, ᾱ, ον, Samian.

Σάρδεις, εων, αἱ, Sardis.

†σατραπεύω, rule as satrap, rule.

σατράπης, ου, viceroy, satrap.

Σάτυρος, ὁ, the satyr Silēnus.

σαφής, ἐς [Lat. sapiō, be wise, Eng. sap], of keen taste, clear, manifest.

†σαφῶς, adv., clearly, evidently.

-σε, suffix denoting whither.

σε-αυτοῦ, ἡς, contr. σαντοῦ, ἡς, refl. pron., 527 [518], of yourself. 528.

σελήνη, ἡς, the moon.

σέσσωμαι, see σφζω.

Σεύθης, ου, Seuthes.

σήμα, ατος, τό, sign.

†σημαίνω (σημαν-), σημανῶ, ἐσήμνηνα, σεσήμασαι, ἐσημάνθην, 619, 8, iv., show by a sign, give the signal, make known.

†σημεῖον, τό, signal, standard.

σήσαμον, τό, sesame.

σιγή, ἡς, silence.

σίγλος, ὁ, siglus, a coin current in Persia worth 7½ obols.

σιδηροῦς, ᾱ, οὖν, 191 b [σιδηρος, iron], made of iron, iron, Lat. ferreus.

Σικελία, ᾱς, Sicily.

Σιλᾶνός, ὁ, Silānus.

Σινώπη, ἡς, Sinōpe.

†σιτ-αγωγός, ὄν [435], corn-carrying.

†σιτηρέσιον, τό, provision money.

σίτος, ὁ [para-site], grain, corn, food, supplies.

σιωπάω, σιωπήσομαι [σιωπή, silence], be silent.

σκάπτω (σκαφ-), σκάψω, ἔσκαψα, ἔσκαφα, ἔσκαμμαι, ἔσκάφην, 613, 10, iii., dig.

σκεδάννυμι (σκεδα-), σκεδῶ, ἐσκέδασα, ἐσκέδασμαι, ἐσκέδασθην, 651, 7, v. [SCATTER], scatter; mid., scatter, straggle.

σκέπτομαι (σκεπ-), σκέπομαι, ἐσκεψάμην, ἔσκεμμαι, 613, 11, iii. [Lat. species, sight, Eng. spy, sceptic], spy, spy out, view, find out, observe carefully, deliberate, see to it.

†σκευάζω (σκευαδ-), σκευάσω, iv., use utensils, prepare, get or make ready, equip.

†σκενή, ἡς, equipment, dress.

σκεῦος, ουσ, τό, gear, utensils, pl. baggage.

†σκευο-φορέω, σκευοφορήσω [658], carry baggage.

†σκευο-φόρος, ον [658], baggage-carrying; σκευοφόρα, τά, pack-animals, the baggage-train, the baggage.

†σκηνέω, σκηνήσω, ἐσκήνησα, be in camp, aor. go into camp, encamp.

σκηνή, ἡς [SHED, scene], tent.

†σκηνώς, ἐσκήνωσα, ἐσκήνωκα, encamp.

σκηπτός, ὁ, thunder-bolt.

σκηπτούχος, ὁ [608], sceptre-bearer.

σκόλοψ, οπος, ὁ, stake, pole, pl. palisade.

†σκοπέω, look at, spy, consider, see to it.

σκοπός, ὁ [σκέπτομαι, Eng. scope, bi-shop], spy, scout, sentinel.

Σόλοι, οἱ [solecism], Soli.

σός, σή, σόν, 531 [σύ, Lat. tuus, thy, Eng. thine, thy], thy, thine, your.

Σοφαίνετος, ὁ, *Sophaenetus*.

†**σοφία**, ας, *skill, ability*.

σοφός, ἡ, ὅν [σαφής, Eng. *philosophy*], *skilled, wise*.

σπανίζω (σπανιδ-), σπανιῶ, iv. [580], *lack, need, want*. 749.

σπάνιος, ᾧ, ὄν [580], *scanty, scarce*.

Σπάρτη, ης, *Sparta*.

†**Σπαρτιάτης**, ου, *a Spartan*.

σπάρτον, τό, *rope, cord*.

σπᾶω, ἔσπασα, ἔσπακα, ἔσπασμαι, ἔσπασθην, 441 [580], *draw*.

σπείρω (σπερ-), σπερῶ, ἔσπειρα, ἔσπαρμαι, ἐσπάρην, iv. [SPURN, *sproadic*], *sow, scatter, disperse*.

σπένδω, σπέισω, ἔσπεισα, ἔσπειςμαι [Lat. *spondeō*, *promise*], *offer a libation; mid., make a treaty*. 773.

σπεύδω, σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα, 600, 5, *urge, hasten, be urgent*.

σπονδή, ἡς [σπένδω, Eng. *spondee*], *libation, pl. truce*.

†**σπουδαιο-λογέω** [591], *carry on an earnest conversation*.

σπουδή, ἡς [σπεύδω], *haste, hurry*.

στάδιον, τό, pl. στάδιοι, οἱ, and στάδια, τά [580], *extended space, stadium, stade*, as a measure of distance 600 Greek feet, or 582½ English feet. See πούς.

σταθμός, ὁ [649], *stopping-place, station, stage, day's march*.

†**στέγασμα**, ατος, τό, *covering*.

στέγη, ης [στέγω, *cover*, Lat. *tegō*, *cover*, Eng. *THATCH*], *roof, house*.

στέλλω (στελ-), στελῶ, ἔστειλα, ἔσταλκα, ἔσταλμαι, ἐστάλην, 619, 9, iv., *put in order, equip, send*.

στενός, ἡ, ὅν [*steno-graphy*], *narrow, strait*.

†**στενο-χωρία**, ας [χώρα], *narrow pass*.

στερέω, στερῆσω, etc., 2 fut. pass., *στερῆσμαι, deprive, rob; pres. pass., στέρομαι, have lost, be without*. 749.

στέρνον, τό, *breast*.

στερρῶς, adv. [στερρός, *firm*, Eng. *stereo-type*], *firmly, obstinately*.

στέφανος, ὁ [στέφω, *put round*], *crown, wreath, chaplet*.

στήλη, ης [στέλλω], *pillar, post*.

στίβος, ὁ, *track, trail*.

στίφος, ους, τό, *mass, throng*.

στλεγγίς, ἰδος, ἡ, *tiara*.

στολή, ἡς [στέλλω, Eng. *stole*], *dress, garment, robe*.

στόλος, ὁ [στέλλω], *equipment, armed force, expedition*.

στόμα, ατος, τό, *mouth, van*.

†**στρατιά**, ας, *expedition*.

†**στράτευμα**, ατος, τό, *army, troops, host, force, division, contingent*.

†**στρατεύω**, στρατεύσω, *make an expedition, make war; dep. mid., take the field, take part in an expedition*.

†**στρατ-ηγέω**, στρατηγήσω [435], *be general, lead, command*. 748.

†**στρατ-ηγιά**, ᾱς [435], *office of general, command*.

†**στρατ-ηγός**, ὁ [435], *general, commander*.

†**στρατιά**, ᾱς, *army, troops, host*.

†**στρατιώτης**, ου, *soldier, pl. troops*.

†**στρατο-πεδεύω**, *encamp; comm. dep. mid., encamp, go into camp*.

†**στρατό-πεδον**, τό [πέδον, *ground*], *camp-ground, encampment*.

στρατός, ὁ, *an encamped army, army, force*.

†**στρεπτός**, ὁ, *necklace, collar*.

στρέφω, στρέψω, ἔστρεψα, ἔστροφα, ἔστρεμμαι, ἔστράφην and ἔστρέφθην, 604, 10 [*strophe, apo-strophe*], *turn, twist; intr. and in pass., turn or face about*.

στρουθός, ἡ [*o-strich*], *sparrow; στρουθός, ἡ μεγάλη, the ostrich*.

στυγνός, ἡ, ὅν, *hateful, stern*.

Στυμφάλιος, ὁ, *a Stymphalian*.

σύ, σοῦ, pers. pron., 511 [Lat. *tū*, Eng. *THOU*], *thou, you*. 512, 513, 514.

συγ-γενής, ἐς [612], *akin*; οἱ συγ-γενεῖς, *one's kinsmen*.

συγ-γίγνομαι, *get into company with, become acquainted with, meet*. 774.

σύ-γε [σύ+γέ], *you indeed*.

συγ-καλέω, *call together, summon*.

Συέννεσις, ἰος, δ, *Syennesis*.

συλ-λαμβάνω, *seize, arrest*.

συλ-λέγω, *collect, gather, bring together*; pass., *come together, assemble*.

συλ-λογή, ἥς [591], *levying, levy*.

συμ-βάλλω, *throw together*; mid., *bring one's own together, contribute*.

συμ-βουλεύω, *plan with, advise, counsel, give advice*; mid., *consult with, deliberate*.

σύμ-βουλος, δ [615], *adviser*.

†συμ-μαχιά, ᾱς, *alliance*.

σύμ-μαχος, ον [μάχη], *in alliance with*; σύμμαχος, δ, *ally*.

συμ-μῖγνύμι, *mix with, join*.

σύμ-πᾶς, ᾱσα, αν [544], *all together, all*; τὸ σύμπαν, *in general*.

συμ-πέμπω, *send with*.

σύμ-πλεως, ων, gen. ω [πίμπλημι], *quite full, full, abounding in*. 760.

συμ-πολεμέω, *help in war, make war with*.

συμ-πορεύομαι, *accompany*.

συμ-πράττω, *help in doing, co-operate*.

συμ-φέρω, *collect, be of use*.

σύν, prep. with dat. [Lat. *cum*, *with*], *with, in company with, along with, together with, on the side of, with the help or aid of, by the favour of*.

In composition **σύν** signifies *with, along with, together, jointly, at the same time, entirely, at once*.

συν-αγείρω, *collect together*.

συν-άγω, *bring together, call*.

συν-αθροίζω, *get together*.

συν-ακολουθέω, *follow*. 773.

συν-αλλάττω, *reconcile*.

συν-αναβαίνω, *march up with*.

συν-αντάω, συν-ήντησα [ἀντί], *meet with, meet*. 773.

συν-άπειμι (εἶμι), *go away with*.

συν-άπτω, *join with*.

σύν-δειπνος, δ [δείπνον], *table-companion, guest at dinner*.

σύν-εimi (εἰμι), *be with*; οἱ συνόν-τες, *one's associates*.

συν-εκ-βιβάζω, *help extricate*.

συν-εκκόπτω, *help cut down*.

συν-επι-σπεύδω, *help hurry on*.

συν-έπομαι, *follow with, accompany*. 773.

σύν-εργος, ον [468], *working with*; σύνεργος, δ, *helper, assistant, co-worker*.

συν-έρχομαι, *come together*.

συν-θήκη, ἥς [638], *compact, agreement*.

σύν-θημα, ατος, τό [638], *watch-word*.

σύν-οδος, ἡ [ὁδός], *encounter*.

σύν-οιδα, *share in knowledge, be conscious*. 839.

συν-οράω, *see at once, mark*.

συν-τάττω, *set in order together, draw up in battle array*; mid., *fall into battle-line, take one's position*.

συν-τίθημι, *put together*; mid., *make an agreement, contract*.

συν-τράπεζος, δ [τράπεζα], *table-companion*.

συν-ωφελέω, *join in aiding*.

Συράκοσιος, δ, *a Syracusan*.

†Συρία, ᾱς, *Syria*.

†Συρίος, ᾱ, ον, *Syrian*.

Σύρος, δ, *a Syrian*.

συν-σκευάζω, *collect baggage*; mid., *collect one's own baggage, pack up*.

συν-σπάω, *draw or sew together*.

συ-σπειράομαι, συν-εσπείραμαι, συν-εσπειράθην, *be formed in close order or in a solid body*.

συ-στρατεύομαι, *take the field with, join an expedition.*

συ-στρατιώτης, *fellow-soldier.*

συχνός, ἡ, ὄν, *considerable, long.*

σφάγιον, τό [σφάττω], *victim*; pl., *omens* drawn from the movements of the victims, *external omens* in contrast with *ιερά*.

σφάλλω (σφαλ-), σφαλῶ, ἔσφηλα, ἔσφαλαι, ἔσφαλην, iv. [Lat. *fallō*, trip, Eng. *FALL*], *trip up, make fall*; pass., *fall, meet with a mischance.*

σφάττω (σφαγ-), σφάξω, ἔσφαξα, ἔσφαγμαι, ἔσφάγην, iv., *slay, sacrifice.*

σφέις, see οὐ.

†**σφενδονάω**, ἔσφενδόνησα, *use the sling, throw with a sling, sling.*

σφενδόνη, ης, *sling*, Lat. *funda*.

†**σφενδονήτης**, ου, *slinger.*

σφέτερος, ἃ, ὄν [σφεῖς], *their own.*

σφίσι, see οὐ.

σφόδρα, adv. [σφοδρός, *violent*], *exceedingly, excessively.*

σχεδία, ἄς, *raft, float.*

σχεδόν, adv. [608], *near, nearly.*

σχίζω (σχιδ-), ἔσχισα, ἔσχισθην, iv. [Lat. *scindō*, split, Eng. *schism*], *split.*

σχολαίως, adv. [608], *slowly*; neut. comp. as adv., *σχολαίτερον*, *more slowly.*

σχολή, ἥς [608], *leisure*; *σχολῇ*, *slowly.*

σώζω (σωδ-), σώσω, ἔσωσα, σέσωκα, σέσωμαι and σέσωσμαι, ἐσώθην, 618, 8, iv. [σῶος], *save, rescue, preserve, keep safe*; mid. and pass., *save one-self, be saved alive, escape, return or arrive safely.*

Σωκράτης, ους, ὁ, *Socrates.*

σῶμα, ατος, τό, *body, life, person.*

σῶος, ἃ, ὄν or ὄως, σᾶ, σῶν [Lat. *sānus*, sound], *safe and sound, alive, saved from danger.*

Σώσις, ιος, ὁ, *Sosis.*

σωτήρ, ἦρος, ὁ [σφίζω], *saviour.*

†**σωτηρίᾱ**, ἄς, *safety, deliverance, rescue from danger.*

Σωτηρίδης, ου, *Soteridas.*

σωτήριος, ἃ, ὄν [σωτήρ], *salutary.*

†**σω-φρονέω**, σωφρονήσω, *be discreet, wise, or prudent.*

†**σω-φροσύνη**, ης, *self-control.*

σῶ-φρων, ὄν, gen. *ονος* [σῶος + φρήν], *of sound mind, discreet.*

T.

τάλαντον, τό, *a talent, worth 60 minas or about \$1080.00.* See *μνᾶ*.

Ταμός, ὁ, *Tamos.*

τάναντία, by crasis for τὰ ἐναντία.

τάξις, εως, ἡ [554], *arrangement, esp. of troops, order, rank, array, line of battle, division.*

ταπεινός, ἡ, ὄν, *submissive.*

τάπις, ιδος, ἡ, *carpet, rug.*

ταράττω (ταραχ-), τaráξω, ἐτάραξα, τετάραγμαi, ἐταράχθην, 617, 7, iv., *trouble, disturb.*

†**τάραχος**, ὁ, *confusion, tumult.*

Ταρσοί, ὦν, *Tarsus.*

τάττω (ταγ-), τάξω, ἔταξα, τέταχα, τέταγμαi, ἐτάχθην, 617, 8, iv. [554], *arrange, assign, order, esp. of troops, draw up, marshal*; mid. and pass., *take one's post, be stationed.*

ταῦρος, ὁ [Lat. *taurus*, bull, Eng. *STEER*], *bull.*

ταῦτά, by crasis for τὰ αὐτά.

ταύτη, adv. [οὗτος], *in this way or direction.*

τάφος, ὁ [θάπτω, Eng. *epi-taph*], *burial, burial-place, grave.*

τάφρος, η [θάπτω], *ditch, trench.*

†**τάχαι**, adv., *quickly, forthwith*; in apodosis with ἔν, *perhaps.*

†**ταχέως**, adv., *quickly, soon.*

†**τάχος**, ους, τό, *swiftness, speed.*

ταχύς, εἶα, ὁ, 448, *quick, swift, Lat. celer*; διὰ *ταχέως*, *with speed*; neut. as adv., *ταχύ, swiftly, soon*;

comp. *θᾶπτον*, *more quickly*; sup. *τάχιστα*, with *ὅτι* or *ὥς*, as *quickly as possible*, with *all possible speed*.

τέ, encl. copulative conj., *and*, corresponding to *καί* much as Lat. *-que* to *et*; *τε . . . καί* or *τε καί*, *both . . . and*.

τεθνάναι, τέθνηκα, see *θνήσκω*.

τείνω (τεν-), *τενῶ*, *ἔτεινα*, *τέτακα*, *τέταμαι*, *ἐτάθην*, 619, 10, iv. [Lat. *tendō*, *stretch*, Eng. *THIN*, *DANCE*, *tone*], *stretch*, *exert oneself*, *hasten*, *push on*.

τείχος, *ους*, τό [DIKE, DITCH, DIG], *wall*, *rampart*, *fort*.

τέκνον, τό [554], *child*.

†τελευταῖος, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *last*, *at the rear*; οἱ τελευταῖοι, *the rear guard*.

†τελευτάω, *τελευτήσω*, *end*, *finish*, *end one's life*, *die*.

†τελευτή, *ἦς*, *end*, *death*.

†τελέω, *τελῶ*, *ἐτέλεσα*, *τετέλεκα*, *τετέλεσμαι*, *ἐτέλεσθην*, 441, *complete*, *finish*, *fulfil an obligation*, *pay*.

τέλος, *ους*, τό [Lat. *terminus*, *end*, Eng. *talisman*], *fulfilment*, *end*, *result*; acc. as adv., *τέλος*, *at last*, *finally*.

τέλος, *ους*, τό [τόλμα], *what is imposed on one*, *tax*, *outlay*; pl. τὰ τέλη, *the authorities*, *magistrates*.

τέμνω (τεμ-), *τεμῶ*, *ἔτεμον* and *ἔταμον*, *τέτμηκα*, *τέτμημαι*, *ἐτμήθην*, 624, 6, v. [Lat. *temno*, *slight*, 'cut,' Eng. *a-tom*], *cut*.

τέρας, *ατος*, τό, *portent*.

†τετράκις, *adv.*, 496, *four times*.

†τετρακισ-χίλιοι, *αι*, *α* [χίλιοι], 4000.

†τετρα-κόσιοι, *αι*, *α* [ἐκατόν], 400.

†τετρα-πλοῦς, *ῆ*, *οὖν*, 191 [πίμπλημι], *filled four times*, *four-fold*.

†τετραράκοντα, *indecl.*, 496, *forty*.

τέτταρες, *α*, 496, 497 [Lat. *quatuor*, Eng. *FOUR*, *tetra-gon*, *tetrarchy*], *four*.

τήκω, (τακ-), *τήξω*, *ἔτηξα*, *τέτηκα*, *ἐτάκην* and *ἐτήχθην*, 609, 3, ii. [Lat. *tābēs*, *decay*, Eng. *THAW*], *melt*; intr. *thaw*, *melt*.

τήμερον, *adv.* [τ-, demon. prefix, + *ἡμέρα*], *to-day*, Lat. *hodie*.

Τίγρης, *ητος*, *δ*, *the Tigris*.

τίθημι (θε-), *θήσω*, *ἔθηκα*, *τέθεικα*, *τέθειμαι*, *ἐπέθην*, 647, 1, vii. [638], *put*, *set*, *place*, *institute*; *θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα*, *order arms*, *ground arms*, *get under arms*; *κατὰ χώρῶν ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα*, *moved back to quarters*.

τίμᾶω, *τιμήσω*, etc. [444], *value*, *esteem*, *honour*.

τιμή, *ῆς* [444], *value*, *worth*, *price*, *honour*, *esteem*.

τίμιος, *ᾱ*, *ον* [444], *precious*, *valued*, *honoured*, *in honour*, *worthy*.

τιμ-ωρέω, *τιμωρήσω*, etc. [444], *avenge*; mid., *avenge oneself on*, *take vengeance on*, *punish*; pass., *be punished*, *tortured*.

τινώ (τι-), *τίσω*, *ἔτισα*, *τέτικα*, *τέτισμαι*, *ἐτίσθην*, 624, 6, v. [444], *pay back*, *expiate*; mid., *make pay*, *punish*.

τίς, τί, *gen.* *τινος*, *interr. pron.*, 557, *who?* *which?* *what?* Lat. *quis*; neut. acc. as adv., τί, *why?* 558.

τις, τι, *gen.* *τινός*, encl. indef. pron., 557, *a*, *an*, *any*, *some*, *a sort of*, *a certain*, Lat. *quis*; subst., *somebody*, *anybody*, *something*, *anything*, pl. *some*.

Τισσαφέρνης, *ους*, *δ*, *Tissaphernes*.

τιτρώσκω (τρο-), *τρώσω*, *ἔτρωσα*, *τέτρωμαι*, *ἐτρώθην*, 642, 8, vi., *wound*.

τοί, encl. intensive particle, *in truth*, *verily*, *surely*, *of a certainty*.

τοι-γαρ-οὖν, *inferential conj.* [τοί + γάρ + οὖν], *therefore*, *accordingly*.

τοί-νυν, *post-posit. inferential conj.* [τοί + νύν, *now*], *therefore*, *then*.

τοιόςδε, *τοιάδε*, *τοιόνδε*, demon. pron., *such*, *such as follows*; *ἐλεξε*

τοῖδδε, spoke as follows or in the following terms. 542, 542 a.

τοιούτος, τοιαύτη, τοιούτον, demon. pron., such, such as precedes. 542, 542 a.

τόλμα, ης [Lat. tolerō, endure, Eng. a-tlas], courage to endure.

†τολμάω, τολμήσω, etc., have the courage, venture, risk, dare.

Τολμίδης, ου, Tolmides.

τόξευμα, ατος, τό [554], arrow.

τοξεύω, ἐτόξευσα, τετόξευμαι, ἐτοξεύ-
θην [554], use one's bow, shoot.

τοξική, ης [544], archery.

τόξον, ου [544], bow.

τοξότης, ου [544], Bowman.

τόπος, ὁ [TOPIC], place, region.

τοσόςδε, τοσήδε, τοσόνδε, dem.
pron., so much, so many. 542.

τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτον, dem.
pron., so much, so many; with com-
paratives, τοσοῦτω, by so much, the;
neut. acc. as adv., τοσοῦτον, so much,
so far. 542.

τότε, adv., at that time, then.

τοῦμπάλιν, by crasis for τὸ ἐμπάλιν.

τοῦπισθεν, by crasis for τὸ ὀπισθεν.

τράγημα, ατος, τό, sweet-meats.

Τράλλεις, εων, οί, Tralles.

τρά-πεζα, ης [τέτταρες+πούς, cf.
πεζός], table, prop. with four legs.

τραῦμα, ατος, τό [τιτρώσκω], wound.

τράχηλος, ὁ, neck, throat.

τραχύς, εἶα, ὅ, harsh, rough.

τρεῖς, τρία, 496, 497 [Lat. trēs,
Eng. THREE, tri-pod], three.

τρέπω, τρέψω, ξτρεψα and ξτραπον,
τέτροφα, τέτραμαι, ἐτράπην and ἐτρέ-
φην, 604, 11 [Lat. torqueō, turn,
twist, Eng. THREAD], turn, direct,
divert, rout; mid., turn oneself, turn
aside, look, face.

τρέφω, θρέψω, ξθρεψα, τέθραμμαι,
ἐτράφην and ἐθρέφην, 604, 12, nour-
ish, support, maintain; pass., be
supported, subsist.

τρέχω (τρεχ-, δραμ-), δραμοῦμαι,
ξδραμον, δεδράμηκα, δεδράμηναι, 655,
6, viii. [δρόμος], run.

τριάκοντα, indecl., 496 [τρεῖς],
thirty.

τρια-κόσιοι, αι, α, 496 [τρεῖς+
ἐκατόν], 300.

τρίβω, τρίψω, ξτρίψα, τέτριφα, τέ-
τρίμμαι, ἐτρίβην and ἐτρίφην, 604,
13, rub.

τρι-ήρης, ους, ἡ [τρεῖς+ἐρέσσω,
row], war-vessel, trireme, galley.

τρις-άσμενος, η, ον [τρεῖς+ἡδομαι],
thrice glad, very glad.

τρις-καί-δεκα, indecl., 496 [τρεῖς
+δέκα], thirteen.

τρισχῆλοι, αι, α, 496 [τρεῖς+χί-
λιοι], 3000.

τρίτος, η, ον, 496 [τρεῖς], third;
adv., τὸ τρίτον, the third time.

†τρόπαιον, τό [trophē], trophy.

τροπή, ης [τρέπω], rout, defeat.

τρόπος, ὁ [τρέπω, Eng. tropic],
manner, turn, character.

τροφή, ης [τρέπω], support.

τυγχάνω (τυχ-), τεύξομαι, ξτυχον,
τετύχηκα and τέτευχα, 626, 6, v.
[554], hit, attain, get, obtain, hap-
pen, chance. 746, 860.

Τυριαῖον, τό, Tyriaeum.

τύχη, ης [554], luck, fortune,
chance; κατὰ τύχην, by chance.

τω, see τίς.

Υ.

ὔδωρ, ατος, τό [Lat. unda, wave,
Eng. WATER, WET, hydro-], water.

υῖός, οὔ [SON], son.

ὔλη, ης [Lat. silva, wood], wood,
fagots.

ὑμεῖς, see σύ.

ὑμέτερος, ᾱ, ον, your.

ὑπ-άγω, lead under, intr. lead on
or advance slowly; mid., draw on,
suggest craftily.

ὑπ-αρχος, δ [463], *lieutenant*.

ὑπ-άρχω, *be under as a foundation, be on hand, be, be on one's side, support*. 768.

ὑπ-ασπιστής, οὐ [ἀσπίς], *shield-bearer, squire*.

ὑπ-εἰμι (εἰμί), *be under or underneath*.

ὑπ-ελαύνω, *ride under or up to*.

ὑπέρ, prep. with gen. and acc. [Lat. *super, over*, Eng. *OVER, hyper-*], *over*. With gen., *over, above, beyond, for, in behalf of, for the sake of, in defence of, instead of*. With acc., *over, above, more than*.

In composition *ὑπέρ* signifies *over, above, beyond, exceedingly, for, in behalf of*.

ὑπέρ-βάλλω, *strike or pass over, surpass, exceed*.

ὑπέρ-βολή, ἥς [480], *act of crossing, crossing, mountain-pass*.

ὑπέρ-δέξις, ᾧ, *ον* [602], *above on the right, above*.

ὑπέρ-θεν, adv. [ὑπέρ], *overhead*.

ὑπέρ-φρων, *ον*, gen. *ονος* [φρήν], *high-minded, haughty, arrogant*.

ὑπ-έσχετο, etc., see *ὑπισχνέομαι*.

ὑπ-ήκουος, *ον* [ἀκούω], *listening to, obedient*. 772.

ὑπηρετέω, *ὑπηρετήσω*, *serve, help, furnish*. 768.

ὑπηρέτης, *ου*, *servant, attendant*.

ὑπ-ισχνέομαι, *ὑπο-σχήσομαι*, *ὑπεσχόμην*, *ὑπ-έσχημαι*, 627, 2, v. [608], *hold oneself under, promise*.

ὑπό, prep. with gen., dat., and acc. [Lat. *sub, under*], *under*. With gen., *under, from under, frequently of agency, by, through, from, at the hands of, by reason of*. With dat., *under, beneath, at the foot of, under the power of*. With acc., *under, down under*.

In composition *ὑπό* signifies *under*, often with an idea of secrecy or

craft (cf. Eng. *underhand*), or has diminutive force, *rather, somewhat*, or it denotes subordination or inferiority.

ὑπο-δέχομαι, *receive under one's protection, welcome*.

ὑπο-δέω, *bind under; mid. and pass., put one's shoes on; ὑποδεήμενοι, in their shoes*.

ὑπο-ζύγιον, τό [654], *beast of burden; pl. baggage animals*.

ὑπο-λαμβάνω, *take under one's protection, take up the discourse, answer, assume, suppose*.

ὑπο-λείπω, *leave behind*.

ὑπο-λύω, *loose beneath, take off one's shoes*.

ὑπο-μένω, *stay behind*.

ὑπό-μνημα, *ατος, τό* [μιμνήσκω], *memorial, reminder*.

ὑπό-πεμπτος, *ον* [πέμπω], *sent secretly or as a spy*.

ὑπο-οπτεύω, *ὑπο-οπτεύσω* [ὑπο-οπτος], *viewed with suspicion, cf. ὁράω, suspect, apprehend, surmise*.

ὑπο-φείδομαι, *spare a little*.

ὑπο-χείριος, *ον* [χείρ], *under the hands of, subject to*. 772.

ὑπο-οχος, *ον* [608], *subject to*. 772.

ὑπο-χωρέω, *move under another's influence, retire, withdraw, retreat*.

ὑπο-οψιά, as [cf. ὑπο-οπτεύω], *suspicion, apprehension; ὑποψιά ἐστί, with dat. of person, be apprehensive*.

ὑστεραίος, ᾧ, *ον*, *later, following; τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ (sc. ἡμέρᾳ), the following day, next day*.

ὑστερέω, *ὑστέρησα, ὑστέρηκα, be later, come too late for*. 754.

ὑστερος, ᾧ, *ον* [OUT, UTTER], *later; neut. as adv., ὑστερον, later, afterwards*.

ὑφ-ήμι, *send under, concede; mid., put oneself under, yield*.

ὑψηλός, ᾧ, *ον*, *high, lofty*.

ὑψος, *ους, τό* [ὑπέρ], *height*.

Φ.

φαίνω (φαν-), φανῶ, ἔφηνα, πέφαγκα and πέφηνα, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνθην and ἐφάνην, 619, 11, iv. [483], *bring to light, make appear, show*; mid. and pass. and 2 pf., *show oneself, be shown, be seen, appear, turn out.*

φάλαγξ, γγος, ἡ [*phalanx*], *line of battle, phalanx*; κατὰ φάλαγγα, *in line of battle.*

Φαλίνος, ὁ, *Phalinus.*

φανερός, ἄ, ὄν [483], *in plain sight, visible, manifest, open*; ἐν τῷ φανερῷ, *openly, publicly.* 839 b.

φάσκω, vi. [483], *say, allege.*

φείδομαι (φιδ-), φείσομαι, ἐφεισάμην, 609, 4, ii. [Lat. *findō, split*, Eng. BITE, BITTER], *separate oneself from, spare.*

φέρω (φερ-, οι-, ενεκ-), οἶσω, ἤνεγκα and ἤνεγκον, ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνεγμαι, ἠνέχθην, 655, 7, viii. [658], *bear, bring, carry, produce, receive, endure*; pass., *be borne, carry, rush*; χαλεπῶς φέρειν, *take it ill, be troubled.*

φεύγω (φυγ-), φεύσομαι and φευξοῦμαι, ἔφυγον, πέφευγα, 609, 5, ii. [525], *flee, take flight, run away, retreat, fly*, Lat. *fugiō, flee from, run away from, flee from one's country, be an exile, be banished*; οἱ φεύγοντες, *the exiles.*

φημί, φήσω, ἔφησα, 664, 1, 699 [483], *say, declare, state*; ἔφη, *said yes*; οὐκ ἔφη, *said no, in answers*; οὐ φημι, *say no, refuse, deny.*

φθάνω (φθα-), φθήσομαι and φθάσω, ἔφθην and ἔφθασα, 646, 3, v., *get the start of, anticipate, outstrip.* 860.

φθέγγομαι, φθέγγομαι, etc., 600, 8, *make a sound, shout, sound.*

φθείρω (φθερ-), φθερῶ, ἐφθειρα, ἐφθαρκά, ἐφθαρμαι, ἐφθάρην, 619, 12, iv., *destroy, lay waste, corrupt.*

φιάλη, ης [*phial, vial*], *drinking cup.*

†**φιλέω**, φιλήσω, *love, of the love of family and friends.*

†**φιλιᾶ**, ᾶς, *affection, friendship.*

†**φιλικός**, ἡ, ὄν, *friendly, amicable.*

†**φίλιος**, ᾶ, ὄν, *friendly, amicable, at peace, used esp. of countries.* 772.

†**φιλο-μαθής**, ἐς [*μανθάνω*], *fond of knowledge, eager to learn.* 760.

φίλος, η, ὄν [*phil-anthropy, phil-tre*], *friendly, dear, dear to, loved by, attached to, kindly disposed, comp. φιλαίτερος or φίλτερος; φίλος, ὁ, friend, adherent.* 772.

†**φιλο-τίμειναι**, φιλοτιμήσομαι, etc., pass. dep. [444], *love honour, be ambitious, feel piqued.*

†**φιλό-τιμος**, ὄν [444], *loving honour, ambitious.*

†**φλυᾶρέω**, φλυᾶρῶ, *talk bosh.*

†**φλυᾶριά**, ᾶς, *nonsense, pl. bosh.*

φλύᾶρος, ὁ, *nonsense.*

†**φοβερός**, ἄ, ὄν, *fearful, terrible, formidable.*

†**φοβέω**, φοβήσω, ἐφόβησα, *frighten, terrify, of unreasoning fear*; comm. pass. dep., *be frightened, be terrified, fear, dread, be afraid.*

φόβος, ὁ [*hydro-phobia*], *fear, dread, terror, fright.*

†**φοινίκους**, ἡ, οὖν, 191, *purple, so named since this colour was discovered by the Phoenicians.*

†**Φοινίκη**, ης, *Phoenicia.*

†**φοινικιστής**, οὗ, *wearer of the purple, a title of rank at the Persian court.*

Φοινίξ, ἶκος, ὁ, *a Phoenician.*

φοίνιξ, ἶκος, ὁ, *palm, date-palm.*

φορέω, φορήσω, etc. [658], *carry habitually, wear.*

φράζω (φραδ-), φράσω, etc., iv. [Lat. *inter-pres, explainer, Eng. phrase*], *say, tell.*

φρέαρ, ατος, τό [Lat. *fermō*, boil, Eng. BREW], well.

φρήν, φρενός, ἡ [frantic, phrenology], heart, mind.

†**φρονέω**, φρονήσω, have understanding, understand, think.

†**φροντίζω** (φροντιδ-), φροντιῶ, iv., take thought, be anxious.

†**φρουρ-αρχος**, ὁ [573, 463], commander of a garrison.

†**φρουρέω**, φρουρήσω [573], watch, guard.

†**φρουρίον**, τό [573], guard, garrison.

φρουρός, ὁ [573], watcher, guard.

†**Φρυγία**, ἄς, Phrygia.

Φρύξ, υγός, ὁ, a Phrygian.

φυγᾶς, δῖος, ὁ [525], fugitive, exile, refugee.

φυγή, ἡς [525], flight, rout.

†**φυλακή**, ἡς, a watching, watch, picket duty, garrison.

†**φύλαξ**, ακος, ὁ, a watcher, guard, outpost; pl. bodyguard.

φυλάττω (φυλακ-), φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα, πεφύλαχα, πεφύλαγμαι, ἐφυλάχθην, 617, 9, iv., stand guard, guard, watch, defend; mid., be on one's guard, watch out against, Lat. *caueō*; φυλακᾶς φυλάττειν, stand guard.

†**φύσις**, εως, ἡ, nature.

φύω, φύσω, ἐφύσα and ἐφῦν, πέφυκα, 652, 2 [Lat. *fuī*, I was, Eng. BE, BOOR, *physic*], bring forth, bear, produce; intr., 2 aor., was born, 2 pf., be by nature, be.

φωνή, ἡς [483], voice, speech.

X.

χαίρω (χαρ-), χαίρήσω, κεχάρηκα, κεχάρημαι and κέχαρμαι, ἐχάρην, iv. [Lat. *grātus*, agreeable, Eng. YEARN, *eu-charist*], rejoice, be glad.

Χαλδαῖοι, οἱ, the Chaldaeans.

†**χαλεπαίνω** (χαλεπαν-), χαλεπανῶ, ἐχαλέπηνα, ἐχαλεπάνθην, iv., be an-

gry, be severe, be offended or provoked. 768.

χαλεπός, ἡ, ὁν, hard, grievous, difficult, dangerous, severe, stern, savage.

†**χαλεπῶς**, adv., hardly, with difficulty, painfully.

†**χαλκοῦς**, ἡ, οὖν, 191, of bronze, bronze.

χαλκός, ὁ, copper, bronze, bronze armour.

Χάλος, ὁ, the Chalus.

Χάλυψ, υβος, ὁ [chalybeate], a Chalybian.

†**χαρίεις**, εσσα, εν, graceful, pleasing.

†**χαρίζομαι** (χαριδ-), χαριοῦμαι, etc., iv., gratify, favour, please. 768.

χάρις, ιτος, ἡ [χαίρω], grace, favour, gratitude, thanks; χάριν εἰδέναι, χάριν ἔχειν, be or feel grateful; χάριν ἀποδιδόναι, return the favour.

Χαρμάνδη, ης, Charmande.

χειμών, ὦνος [Lat. *hiems*, winter], bad weather, winter.

χείρ, χειρός, ἡ [Lat. *herctum*, inheritance, Eng. *chiro-graphy*, *surgeon*], hand, Lat. *manus*.

Χειρίσοφος, ὁ, Chirisophus.

χειρο-πληθής, ἐς [χείρ + πίμπλημι], handfilling, as large as the hand can hold.

χειρώω, χειρώσω, etc. [χείρ], handle, subdue.

χείρων, ον, gen. ονος, 469, worse, inferior.

Χερρόνησος, ἡ, the Chersonese.

χέω (χυ-), χέω, ἔχεα, κέχυκα, κέχυμαι, ἐχύθην, 610, 6, ii. [Lat. *fundō*, pour, Eng. GUSH], pour.

χῆν, χηνός, ὁ, ἡ [Lat. *anser*, goose, Eng. GOOSE, GANDER], goose.

χῆλιοι, αι, α, 496, 1000.

χῆλός, ὁ, fodder, forage.

χιτών, ὦνος, ὁ, undergarment.

χιών, ὄνος, ἡ [cf. χειμών], snow.

χοῖνιξ, ἰκος, ἡ, *choenix*, an Attic dry measure containing nearly one quart U.S. dry measure.

χόρτος, ὁ, *fodder, grass*.

χράσμαι, χρήσομαι, etc., 255 a, *serve oneself by, make use of, use, employ, treat*, Lat. *utor*. 775.

χρή, χρήσει, *impers., it is needful, one must or ought*.

χρηῖω (χρηδ-), iv., *want, need, desire*.

χρήμα, ατος, τό [χράσμαι], *a thing that one uses; pl. things, property, wealth, money*.

χρήναι, see *χρή*.

χρήσιμος, η, ον, and ος, ον [χράσμαι], *useful, serviceable*.

χρίω, χρίσω, χρίσα, κέχριμαι and κεχρίσμαι, ἐχρίσθην [Lat. *friō, rub*, Eng. *GRIND, Christ*], *rub, anoint*.

χρόνος, ὁ [chronology], *time, season, period*, Lat. *tempus*.

†**χρῦσούς**, ἡ, οὖν, 191, *of gold, golden, gold, gilded*.

†**χρῦσόν**, τό, *piece of gold, gold-coin, gold*.

χρῦσός, ὁ [GOLD, *chryso-lite*], *gold*.

†**χρῦσο-χάλινος**, ον [χαλινός, *bridle*], *with gold-mounted bridle*.

χῶρά, ἄς [cf. *χῶρος*], *place, assigned place, position, post, station; land, tract of land, territory, region, country*.

χωρέω, χωρήσω, etc. [*χῶρος*], *give place, withdraw, move, march; of measures, hold*.

χωρίον, τό [*χῶρος*], *space, place, spot, stronghold*.

χωρίς, adv., *apart, away from*. 761.

χῶρος, ὁ [*an-chorite*], *particular place, piece of ground, estate*.

Ψ.

Ψάρος, ὁ, *the Psarus*.

ψάλιον, τό, *armlet, bracelet*.

ψεύδω, ψεύσω, ἔψευσα, ἔψευσμαι, ἐψεύσθην [*pseud-onym*], *deceive; mid., lie, cheat, deceive, act falsely*.

ψηφίω (ψηφιδ-), ψηφιώ, etc., iv. [*ψηφός, pebble*], *reckon with pebbles; mid., vote, resolve, determine*.

ψιλός, ἡ, ὄν, *bare, unprotected; oi ψιλοί, light-armed troops*.

ψυχή, ἡς [*psycho-logy*], *life, soul, spirit*.

Ω.

ω, exclamation, *O*, with voc.

ᾧδε, adv. [ὅδε], *thus, as follows, in the following manner*.

ώθew, ὥσω, ἔωσα, ἔωσμαι, ἐώσθην, 605, 9, *push, shove*.

ώμος, ἡ, ὄν, *raw, uncooked*.

ώνέομαι (ωνε-, πρια-), ὠνήσομαι, ἐπριάμην, ἐώνημαι, ἐωνήθην, 655, 8, viii. [*ἄνος, price*], *buy, purchase*.

†**ᾧνιος**, ἄ, ον, *purchasable; ὠνια, τὰ, wares, goods*.

ᾧρα, ἄς [YEAR, hour, *horo-scope*], *time, period, season, hour*, Lat. *hōra*, *the proper time, opportunity*.

ὥς, orig. a conjunctive adv. of manner [ὅς], but developed into a variety of uses. As conj. adv., as, Lat. *ut*, with verbs, before prepositions, and with participles (see 858), *as if, just as, thinking that, on the ground that, with the avowed intention, as though*; with numerals, *about*; of degree, *how*, esp. with superlatives, Lat. *quam*, as *ὥς μάλιστα*, *as much as possible*. As prep., with acc., *to*, only of persons. As conj., of time, *as, when, after*, *ὥς τάχιστα*, *as soon as*; introducing indirect discourse, *that*; of cause, *as, since, because, for*, Lat. *ut*; final, *that, in order that*, Lat. *ut*; of intended result, like *ᾧστε*, *so as, so that*.

ὧς, *thus, so*.

†ὥσ-αύτως, adv. [518], *in this same way, just so.*

ὥσ-περ, conjunctive adv. [ὥς], *like as, just as, even as, as it were.*

ὥσ-τε, conjunctive adv. [ὥς], *so as, so that, wherefore.* 824.

ὠτῖς, ἰδος, ἦ, *bustard.*

ὠφελῶ, ὠφελήσω, etc. [ὄφελος], *help, succour, assist, benefit, be of service to, give assistance to, of voluntary service.*

†ὠφέλιμος, *ον, useful, serviceable.*

II. ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY.

Consult the Greek-English Vocabulary for the forms and fuller meanings of the Greek words here given.

The distinction of synonymous Greek words is here briefly indicated, if possible. But in all cases where there is a choice of Greek words, the Greek-English Vocabulary should be carefully consulted. That vocabulary is necessarily brief, but it gives the etymological meanings of the words and indicates the lines on which these meanings have been developed. Sometimes the synonymous words are interchangeable, but this should not be taken for granted.

If in doubt, choose the word that is familiar. The aim has been to introduce no word into the English-Greek exercises that has not previously been given. Frequently the choice will be determined by the appropriateness of the word to the lesson in which it occurs. Each sentence in each English-Greek exercise illustrates the principles of the lesson of which the exercise is a part.

Abandon

Abandon, λείπω, ἐκ-
λείπω, *quit a place ;*
ἀπολείπω, καταλείπω,
desert a person ; προ-
τεμαι, surrender, give
up ; προδίδωμι, be-
tray.

Able, ἰκανός ; *be —,*
ικανός εἰμι, δύναμαι.

Abound, — *in, σύμ-*
πλεώς εἰμι.

Abounding, — *in, σύμ-*
πλεως.

About, ἀμφί, κατά, περί,
πρός, ὡς ; be —, μέλ-
λω.

Above, ὑπέρ ; *from —,*
ἄνωθεν.

Abrocomas, Ἀβροκό-
μας.

Abundant, ἄφθονος.

Accompany, ἑπομαι,
συνακολουθέω ; ac-
companied by, ἔχων
περί, with acc.

Accomplish, καταπράτ-
τω, περαίνω, *bring to*
an end, fulfil ; ποιέω,
do.

A.

Accord, *of one's own*
—, ἐκόν.

Accordingly, δῆ, οὖν.

Account, *on — of, διά,*
ἐνεκα.

Accrue, γίγνομαι.

Accuse, κατηγορέω.

Acquainted, — *with,*
ἐμπειρος.

Acquire, κτάομαι.

Acropolis, ἀκρόπολις.

Across, πέραν.

Addition, *in — to,*
πρός.

Address, λέγω.

Admire, θαυμάζω.

Advance, *or make an*
—, πορεύομαι, πρόσ-
εἰμι.

Advise, συμβουλεύω.

Afraid, *be —, φοβέο-*
μαι.

After, μετά.

Afternoon, δείλη.

Afterwards, ὕστερον.

Again, πάλιν, ἔτι.

Against, ἐπί, πρὸς.

Agreement, *make an*
—, συντίθεμαι.

Announce

Aid, βοήθεια ; ὠφελέω.

Alive, ζῶν ; *be —, ζῶ.*

All, πᾶς ; *of — sorts*
or kinds, παντοῖος.

Allege, φάσκω.

Ally, σύμμαχος.

Alone, μόνος.

Along, *or alongside,*
παρά.

Already, ἤδη.

Also, καί.

Altar, βωμός.

Always, ἀεί.

Among, ἐν, εἰς.

Amount, — *to, γίγνο-*
μαι.

Anaxibius, Ἀναξίβιος.

Ancestor, πρόγονος.

Ancestral, πατρῶς.

Anchor, *lie at —, ὀρ-*
μέω.

And, καί, δέ.

Angry, *be —, ὀργίζο-*
μαι, be enraged ; χα-
λεπαίνω, be offended.

Animal, *wild —, θη-*
ρίον.

Announce, ἀγγέλλω,
ἀπαγγέλλω.

Anoint, χρίω.

Another, ἄλλος; *one* —, ἀλλήλων.

Answer, or *make* —, ἀποκρίνομαι.

Anxious, *be* —, ἐννοέω, *be apprehensive, be fearful*; φροντίζω, *be troubled*.

Any, τις; *anybody* or — *one*, τις; *anything*, τι.

Apart, χωρὶς.

Appear, φαίνομαι, ἐπιφαίνομαι.

Applaud, ἐπαινέω.

Appoint, ἀποδείκνυμι.

Apprehensive, *be* —, ἐννοέομαι, *fear*; ὑποψιά ἐστί, *be suspicious, suspect*.

Approach, πλησιάζω; *let* —, προστήμι.

Arabia, Ἀραβία.

Araxes, Ἀράξης.

Arcadian, Ἀρκάς.

Argument, λόγος.

Ariaeus, Ἀριαῖος.

Arise, ἀνίσταμαι, *of bodily action*; γίγνομαι, *of disturbance, etc.*

Aristippus, Ἀρίστιππος.

Aristonymus, Ἀριστώνυμος.

Arm, ὀπλίζω, ἐξοπλίζω; *arms, armour*, ὅπλα; *under arms*, ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ.

Army, στρατιά, στρατεύμα, στρατός.

Arrangement, τάξις.

Array, *in battle* —, συντεταγμένους.

Arrest, συλλαμβάνω.

Arrive, ἀφικνέομαι, πάρεμι; — *safely*, σφίζομαι.

Arrow, τόξον.

Artapates, Ἀρταπάτης.

Artaxerxes, Ἀρταξέρξης.

As, ὥς; (— *much*) —, ὅσος; — . . . — *possible*, ὅτι or ὥς with the superlative.

Ashamed, *feel* —, αἰσχύνομαι.

Asia, Ἀσία.

Ask, ἐρωτάω, *inquire*; αἰτέω, *ask for*.

Asleep, *lie* —, κατάκειμαι.

Aspendian, Ἀσπένδιος.

Ass, ὄνος.

Assembly, ἐκκλησία.

Assistance, *give* —, βοηθέω, ὠφελέω.

At, ἐν, ἐπὶ, πρὸς.

Athenian, Ἀθηναῖος.

Athens, *at* —, Ἀθήνησι.

Attack, ἐπιτίθεμαι, ἐμβάλλω; *make the* —, ἔπειμι.

Attempt, ἐπιχειρέω, πειράομαι.

Attention, *give* or *pay* —, προσέχω τὸν νοῦν.

Await, δέχομαι.

Axe, ἀξίνη.

B.

Babylon, Βαβυλὼν.

Babylonia, Βαβυλωνία.

Back, πάλιν.

Bad, κακός, the general word; *πονηρός, harmful, vicious*.

Baggage, σκεύη, pl. of

σκεῦος; *σκευοφόρα, baggage-train*.

Bank, ὄχθη.

Barbarian, βάρβαρος, βαρβαρικός.

Base, κακός.

Basket, κάπεον.

Battle, μάχη; *in* — *array*, συντεταγμένους; *give* —, μάχομαι; *fall into* — *line*, συντάττομαι.

Be, εἰμί; — *at hand*, — *by*, or — *present*, πάρεμι, παραγίγνομαι; — *in*, ἐνέμι; — *upon*, ἔπειμι.

Beast, θηρίον; — *of burden*, ὑποζύγιον.

Beat, παύω; — *off*, ἀποκόπτω.

Beautiful, καλός.

Because, ὅτι, ὥς.

Become, γίγνομαι.

Befit, πρέπω.

Before, πρὸ; *πρόσθεν*; *πρὶν*.

Begin, ἄρχομαι, *enter upon* an action; *ἄρχω, take the lead* in an action.

Behalf, *in* — *of*, ὑπέρ.

Behind, ὀπισθεν; *leave* —, καταλείπω.

Believe, ἠγέομαι.

Benefit, ὠφελέω, *help, assist*; *εὖ ποίεω, treat well*.

Beside, παρά; — or *besides*, πρὸς.

Besiege, πολιορκέω.

Beyond, πέραν.

Bid, κελεύω.

Bind, δέω.

Bird, ὄρνις.

Black, μέλας.

Blow, πνέω.
 Boat, πλοῖον.
 Borrow, δανείζομαι.
 Both, *on* — *sides*, ἀμφοτέρωθεν; *on* — *flanks*, ἐκατέρωθεν; — ... *and*, καὶ ... καί, *or* *τε* ... καί.
 Bow, τόξον; *use the* —, τοξεύω.
 Bowman, τοξότης.
 Boy, παῖς.
 Brave, ἀγαθός, ἀνδρείος.
 Bravely, καλῶς.
 Breadth, εὖρος.
 Break, λύω.
 Breakfast, ἄριστον.
 Breastplate, θώραξ.
 Brick, πλίνθινος.
 Bridge, γέφυρα.
 Bring, ἄγω; — *back word*, ἀπαγγέλλω; — *safely*, ἀποσφύζω; — *together*, συνάγω, συλλέγω.
 Bronze, χάλκεος.
 Brother, ἀδελφός.
 Build, οἰκοδομέω, ἐποικοδομέω.
 Burn, κάω, κατακάω; — *up* *or* — *down*, κατακάω; — *before*, προκατακάω.
 Burst, — *open*, κατασχίζω.
 Bury, θάπτω.
 But, ἀλλὰ, δέ.
 Buy, ἀγοράζω.
 By, ἐπί; ὑπό, *with gen. of the agent*, rarely *παρά*; — *the side of*, *παρά*; — *means of*, ἀπό, διά; — *land and sea*, κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.
 Byzantium, Βυζάντιον.

C.

Call, καλέω; — *out*, βοάω; — *forth*, παρακαλέω; — *together*, συγκαλέω; — *a meeting* *or* *an assembly*, ἐκκλησίαν ποιέω.
 Camp, στρατόπεδον; κατασκηνέω.
 Canal, διώρυξ.
 Cap, fox-skin —, ἄλωπεκῇ.
 Cappadocia, Καππαδοκία.
 Captain, λοχαγός.
 Captive, αἰχμάλωτος.
 Capture, ἀρπάζω, αἰρέω; *be captured*, ἀλίσκομαι.
 Carduchi, Καρδοῦχοι.
 Care, *take* — *of*, θεραπεύω; *take* — *of in return*, ἀντεπιμελέομαι.
 Carelessly, ἡμελημένως.
 Carry, ἄγω; — *away*, ἀρπάζω; — *over* *or* *across*, διαβιβάζω; — *on war*, πολεμέω.
 Case, *in that* —, οὕτως.
 Catch, θηρεύω, λαμβάνω.
 Cattle, βοῦς, κτήνος.
 Cause, παρέχω.
 Cavalry, ἱππεῖς; — *man*, ἱππεύς.
 Cease, παύομαι.
 Celaenae, Κελαιναί.
 Centre, μέσον.
 Certain, *a* —, τις.
 Chance, *by* —, κατὰ τύχην.
 Charge, ἔμμαι; — *double quick*, δρόμῳ θέω.
 Chariot, ἄρμα.

Charmande, Χαρμάνδη.
 Chase, *or give* —, διώκω.
 Check, κωλύω.
 Chersonese, Χερρόνησος.
 Child, παῖς, παιδίον.
 Chrisophus, Χειρίσφος.
 Choose, αἰρέομαι.
 Cilicia, Κιλικία.
 Cilician, Κίλιξ; — *queen*, Κίλισσα.
 Citadel, ἄκρᾱ.
 Citizen, πολίτης.
 City, πόλις.
 Clearchus, Κλέαρχος.
 Close, — *to*, ἐπί.
 Cloud, — *of dust*, κοινортός.
 Collect, ἀθροίζω, συλλέγω; — *supplies*, ἐπισιτίζομαι.
 Colossae, Κολοσσαί.
 Come, ἔρχομαι, ἔκω; *have* —, ἔκω; — *together*, συλλέγομαι, συνέρχομαι; — *on*, προσέρχομαι, πρόειμι; — *to an end*, παύομαι, λήγω; — *late*, ὀψίς.
 Command, κελεύω, *order*; ἄρχω, *rule*; *in* — *of*, ἐπί.
 Commander, ἄρχων, στρατηγός.
 Commend, ἐπαινέω.
 Commit, — *error*, ἀμαρτάνω.
 Company, λόχος; *in* — *with*, σύν.
 Compel, ἀναγκάζω.
 Complete, διατελέω.
 Conceal, ἀποκρύπτω.
 Conduct, ἄγω.
 Confer, ἀνακοινόβομαι.

Confess, ὁμολογέω.
 Conquer, νικάω, κρατέω.
 Conscious, be —, σύν-
 οἶδα.
 Consider, σκέπτομαι,
 βουλευόμεαι.
 Consternation, *in great*
 —, ἐκπεπληγμένος.
 Consult, — *with*, συμ-
 βουλευόμεαι.
 Contend, ἀμιλλάδομαι,
 ἀγωνίζομαι.
 Contest, *judge of a* —,
 ἀγωνοθέτης.
 Contingent, στράτευμα.
 Converse, διαλέγομαι.
 Convict, ἐλέγχω; *be*
convicted, ἀλίσκομαι.
 Convoke, ποιέω.
 Corrupt, διαφθείρω.
 Corselet, θώραξ.
 Corsōte, Κορσώτη.
 Counsel, συμβουλεύω.
 Country, χώρα; *into*
the — *of*, εἰς.
 Courage, ἀρετή; *lose*
 —, ἀθυμέω.
 Courageous, θαρραλέος.
 Courageously, θαρρα-
 λέως.
 Court, θεραπεύω; *at* —,
 παρὰ βασιλεῖ, ἐπὶ ταῖς
 βασιλέως θύραις.
 Cowardly, κακός.
 Co-worker, συνεργός.
 Creature, *wild* —, θη-
 ριον.
 Cross, or — *over*, δια-
 βάινω.
 Crown, στέφανος.
 Cry out, ἀνακράζω, βοάω.
 Ctesias, Κτησιᾶς.
 Cuirass, θώραξ; *in*
white —, λευκοθώραξ;
put on one's —, θω-
 ρακίζομαι.

Cup, *drinking* —, φιά-
 λη.
 Cut, — *to pieces* or
dowry, κατακόπτω; —
dowry, ἐκκόπτω, of
 trees; *help in cutting*
dowry, συνεκκόπτω;
 — *off*, ἀποκλείω, ἀπο-
 κόπτω, ἀποτέμνω.
 Cydnus, Κύδνος.
 Cyrus, Κύρος.

D.

Damage, *do* —, κακῶς
 ποίω.
 Dana, Δάνα.
 Danger, κίνδυνος.
 Dardas, Δάρδας.
 Daric, δᾶρεικός.
 Darius, Δᾶρείος.
 Date, βάλανος.
 Dawn, ἔως.
 Day, ἡμέρᾱ; *on the fol-*
lowing —, τῇ ὕστε-
 ραίᾳ; *day's march*,
 σταθμός.
 Daybreak, *at* —, ἅμα
 τῇ ἡμέρᾳ.
 Dead, νεκρός; *be* —,
 τεθνηκέναι, τεθνάναι.
 Death, *put to* —, θανα-
 τώ, ἀποκτείνω; *suf-*
fer —, ἀποθνήσκω.
 Debate, λόγος.
 Deceive, ἐξαπατάω,
 ψεύδω.
 Decision, κρίσις.
 Declare, ἀποδείκνυμι.
 Deep, βαθύς.
 Deer, *of a* —, ἐλά-
 φειος; — *meat*, τὰ
 ἐλάφεια.
 Defeat, νικάω; *be de-*
feated, ἡττᾶδομαι.
 Defend, ἀμύνω.

Delay, διατρίβω.
 Deliberate, βουλευό-
 μαι, συμβουλευόμεαι.
 Deliver, — *over*, παρα-
 δίδωμι.
 Deliverance, σωτηριᾶ.
 Demand, or — *back*,
 ἀπαιτέω.
 Deny, οὐ φημι.
 Depart, ἀποχωρέω.
 Descend, καταβαίνω.
 Describe, γράφω.
 Description, *of every*
 —, παντοδαπός.
 Desert, αὐτομολέω, ἀπο-
 λείπω, ἀπέρχομαι;
through a —, ἔρημος.
 Design, ἐπιβουλεύω;
 ἐπιβουλή.
 Desire, ἐπιθυμέω.
 Desist, παύομαι, ἀνα-
 παύομαι.
 Despatch, ἀποστέλλω.
 Despise, καταφρονέω.
 Destroy, λύω, δια-
 φθείρω.
 Destruction, ὄλεθρος.
 Dexippus, Δέξιππος.
 Die, τελευτάω, ἀποθνή-
 σκω.
 Difficult, χαλεπός.
 Difficulty, πρᾶγμα, ἄπο-
 ρον; *with great* —,
 πᾶν χαλεπῶς.
 Dig, — *through*, διο-
 ρύττω; — *a trench*,
 τάφρον ποίω.
 Disclose, ἐπιδείκνυμι.
 Discouraged, *be* —,
 ἀθυμέω.
 Disgrace, καταισχύνω.
 Dishonour, ἀτιμάζω.
 Dismiss, ἀποστέλλω.
 Disperse, σπείρω.
 Dispirited, ἄθυμος; *be*
 —, ἀθυμέω.

Distance, at a — from, *πρόσω*.

Distant, be —, *ἀπέχω*.

Distribute, *διαδίδωμι*.

Disturb, *παράττω*.

Disturbance, *θόρυβος*.

Divide, — *υπ*, *διανέμω*.

Division, *στράτευμα*, *τάξις*.

Do, *ποιέω*, *πράττω*, in this sense used interchangeably; — *harm*, *βλάπτω*; — *damage*, *κακῶς ποιέω*; — *wrong*, *ἀδικέω*; — *well by*, *εὖ ποιέω*.

Dog, *κύων*.

Door, *θύρα*.

Double-quick, *charge* —, *δρόμῳ θέω*.

Draw, *σπάσμαι*; — *υπ*, *τάττω*; — *υπ in line*, *παρατάττω*.

Dread, *ὀκνέω*.

Drinking-cup, *φιάλη*.

Drive, — *αυγᾶ*, *ἀπελαύνω*.

Dust, *cloud of* —, *κοινορτός*.

Dwell, *οικέω*.

E.

Each, *ἕκαστος*; — *time*, *ἐκάστοτε*.

Eager, *πρόθυμος*; *be* —, *ἐπιθυμέω*.

Earn, — *by hard work*, *πενέω*.

Ease, *with* — or *easily*, *ῥαδίως*.

East, *ἑως*.

Easy, *ῥάδιος*.

Eat, *ἐσθίω*.

Educate, *παιδεύω*.

Eight, *ὀκτώ*.

Either, — ... or, *ἢ ... ἢ*.

Elect, *αἰρέομαι*.

Eleven, — *thousand*,

μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι.

Elsewhere, *ἄλλῃ*.

Embark, *ἐμβαίνω*.

Emporium, *ἐμπόριον*.

Empty, *ἐμβάλλω*.

Encamp, *στρατοπεδεύομαι*; — *near*, *παρασκηνέω*; *be encamped*, *κάθημαι*.

End, *παύω*; *come to an* —, *παύομαι*, *λήγω*.

Endeavour, *πειράομαι*.

Enemy, *πολέμιος*; *the* —, *οἱ πολέμιοι*.

Enjoin, *ἐπιστέλλω*.

Enlist, *λαμβάνω*.

Enough, *ικανῶς*.

Entire, *ἅπας*, *πᾶς*.

Enumeration, *ἀριθμός*.

Envoy, *ἄγγελος*.

Envy, *φθονέω*.

Ephesus, *Ἐφεσός*.

Episthenes, *Ἐπισθένης*.

Equip, *στέλλω*.

Equipment, *κόσμος*.

Error, *commit* —, *ἁμαρτάνω*.

Escape, *ἀποφεύγω*; — *notice or the notice of*, *λανθάνω*; — *or* — *safely*, *σώζομαι*.

Epecially, *μάλιστα*.

Euphrātes, *Εὐφράτης*.

Even, *καὶ*; *not* —, *οὐδέ*; *in* — *line*, *διαικῶς*.

Evening, *δείλῃ*.

Ever, *ποτέ*, *πώποτε*; *if* —, *εἴποτε*.

Every, *of* — *sort or description*, *παντοδα-*

πός; — *everything*, *πάν, πάντα*.

Evident, *δῆλος*.

Evil-minded, *κακόνοος*.

Exceedingly, *ισχυρῶς*, *strongly*, *forcibly*; *σφόδρα*, *grievously*.

Except, *πλήν*.

Excessively, *σφόδρα*.

Exercise, *γυμνάζω*.

Exhort, *παρακαλεύομαι*.

Exile, *φυγὰς*, *ἐκπεπωκώς* (see *ἐκπίπτω*).

Expedition, *στόλος*, *ὁδός*, *στρατεῖα*; *take part in an* —, *στρατεύομαι*; *make an* —, *στρατεύω*.

Expel, *ἐκβάλλω*.

Experience, *πειρα*.

Expert, *ἀγαθός*.

Express, *ἀποδείκνυμι*, *ἀποφαίνω*.

Eye, *ὀφθαλμός*.

F.

Face, *in one's* —, *ἐναντίος*.

Fail, *ἐπιλείπω*.

Fair, *καλός*.

Faithful, *πιστός*.

Fall, *γίγνομαι*; — *on*, *ἐμπίπτω*.

Fast, *ταχέως*.

Father, *πατήρ*.

Fear, *φόβος*; *φοβέομαι*, of sudden fear or terror; *δέδοικα*, of reasonable fear; *inspire with* —, *φόβον παρέχω*.

Fearful, *φοβερός*.

Feel, — *ashamed*, *αἰσχύνομαι*; — *grateful*, *χαρὶν ἔχω*.

Fellow, ἄνθρωπος.
 Fellow-citizen, πολίτης.
 Fellow-Greeks, ὁ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες.
 Fellow-soldier, συστρατιώτης; fellow-soldiers, ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, with or without ὁ.
 Fertile, ἀφθονος.
 Few, ὀλίγοι.
 Field, take the —, στρατεύουμαι.
 Fifteen, πεντεκαίδεκα.
 Fifty, πενήτηντα.
 Fight, μάχη; μάχομαι; — it out, διαπολεμέω; without fighting, ἀμαχητί.
 Fill, πίμπλημι.
 Find, εὐρίσκω; — out, σκέπτομαι.
 Fire, πῦρ; set on —, ἐνάπτω, ἐμπύμπρημι.
 First, πρῶτος; πρῶτον.
 Fish, ἰχθύς.
 Fist, with the —, πύξ.
 Fittest, ἄριστος.
 Five, πέντε; — hundred, πεντακόσιοι.
 Flanks, on both —, ἐκατέρωθεν.
 Flee, φεύγω; ἀποφεύγω, involving the idea of escape.
 Flesh, κρέας.
 Flight, φυγή; put to —, εἰς φυγὴν τρέπω.
 Flour, ἄλευρα.
 Flourishing, εὐδαίμων.
 Flow, ῥέω.
 Foe, ἐχθρός.
 Follow, ἀκολουθέω, ἔπομαι; as followers, or the following, some

case of ὅδε; in the — terms, τοιάδε; on the — day, τῇ ὕστεραί; in the — manner, ὥδε, τόνδε τὸν τρόπον.
 Folly, εὐθραδία.
 Food, σίτος.
 Foot, ποὺς; on —, πεζῇ.
 Foot-soldier, πεζός.
 For, γάρ; περί, ἐπί, πρός.
 Forage, χιλός.
 Force, δύναμις, στράτευμα; the Greek — τὸ Ἑλληνικόν; βιάζομαι; be in —, μένω.
 Ford, διάβασις, πόρος.
 Formerly, πρότερον.
 Forsake, ἀπολείπω.
 Fort, τεῖχος.
 Fortified, ἐρυμνός.
 Forty, τετταράκοντα.
 Foundation, κρηπίς.
 Four, τέτταρες; — hundred, τετρακόσιοι.
 Fourth, τέταρτος.
 Fox-skin, — cap, ἀλωπεκῇ.
 Fragrant, εὐώδης.
 Free, ἐλευθερώ.
 Freedom, ἐλευθερία.
 Freeze, πήγνυμι.
 Frequently, πολλάκις.
 Friend, φίλος, ξένος.
 Friendly, φίλιος, φίλος.
 Frightened, be —, φοβέομαι.
 From, ἐξ, ἀπό, παρά.
 Fugitive, φυγάς.
 Full, μεστός, πλήρης; in —, ἔκπλεως; at — speed, ἀνὰ κράτος; — market, ἀγορὰ πλήθουσα.

Furnish, πορίζω, ἐκπορίζω.

G.

Garrison, φυλακή.
 Gate, πύλη.
 Gazelle, δορκάς.
 General, στρατηγός; be —, στρατηγέω.
 Get, γίγνομαι, τυγχάνω, obtain; — together, συνάγω, κτάομαι; — possession, λαμβάνω.
 Gift, δῶρον; make a —, δίδωμι.
 Girdle, ζώνη.
 Give, δίδωμι, the general word; πορίζω, furnish; — over, παραδίδωμι; — up, παύομαι, desist; παραδίδωμι, ἀποδίδωμι, restore, surrender; — a share, μεταδίδωμι; — way, ἐκκλίνω.
 Gladly, ἡδέως.
 Go, εἶμι, ἔρχομαι; be gone, οἴχομαι; — up, ἀναβαίνω; — away, ἀπείμι; — forward, πρόειμι; — through, διαβαίνω; let —, ἀφήμι.
 Goat, αἴξ.
 God, θεός.
 Goddess, θεά.
 Gold, χρῦσιον; of —, χρῦσεος.
 Good, ἀγαθός.
 Good-will, εὖνοια.
 Grant, δίδωμι.
 Grass, χόρτος.
 Grateful, feel —, χάριν ἔχω.

Great, μέγας, of size ;
πολύς, of amount or
number ; in — num-
bers, πολλοί ; with —
difficulty, πᾶν χα-
λεπῶς.

Greatly, μεγάλως, μέγα.
Greece, Ἑλλάς.

Greek, Ἑλλην ; Ἑλλη-
νικός.

Grieve, λυπέω.

Ground, — arms, τίθε-
μαι τὰ ὅπλα.

Groundless, κενός.

Guard, φυλακή, φρου-
ρός, φύλαξ ; — or be
on —, φυλάττω.

Guest, or *guest-friend*,
ξένος.

Guide, ἡγεμών.

H.

Half, ἥμισυς.

Halt, ἀναπαύομαι, in
order to rest ; ἐφί-
σταμαι, said of a
commander ; κατα-
λύω, unyoke ; ἵστημι.

Hand, χεῖρ ; in the
hands of, ἐπὶ ; at —,
ἐγγύς ; be at —, πά-
ρειμι ; — over, παρα-
δίδωμι.

Happen, τυγχάνω, γί-
γνομαι.

Happy, εὐδαίμων.

Hard, χαλεπός ; be —
pressed, πιέζομαι.

Hardship, undergo —,
πονέω.

Hare, λαγός.

Harm, do —, βλάπτω,
κακῶς ποιέω ; suffer
—, κακῶς πάσχω ; plot
—, κακὸν βουλεύω.

Harmost, ἄρμοστής.

Haste, make —, or
hasten, σπεύδω.

Have, ἔχω, εἰμί with
dat.

Hay, κάρφη.

Head, κεφαλή ; be or
stand at the — of,
προέστηκα.

Headquarters, θύραι.

Hear, ἀκούω.

Heavy-armed, — men
or troops, ὀπλίται.

Height, ὕψος, ἄκρον.

Helmet, κράνος.

Help, with the — of,
σύν.

Helper, συνεργός.

Hem, — in, κυκλόω.

Her, oblique cases of
αὐτή.

Herald, κήρυξ.

Here, ἐνταῦθα, αὐτοῦ,
αὐτόθι, δεῦρο.

Hereon, ἐκ τούτου.

Hereupon, ἐνταῦθα, ἐκ
τούτου.

Hermes, Ἑρμῆς.

Hide, δέρμα ; κρύπτω.

High, μακρός.

Hill, λόφος, μαστός.

Him, oblique cases of
αὐτός ; οὐ, reflex.

Himself, ἑαυτοῦ, reflex ;
αὐτός, intens.

Hinder, κωλύω ; —
from, ἀποκωλύω.

Hindrance, τὸ κωλῶν.

Hire, μισθόδομαι.

His, often by the arti-
cle ; sometimes αὐ-
τοῦ, ἐκείνου ; — οὐν,
ἑαυτοῦ.

Hold, ἔχω.

Home, at —, οἶκοι ; for
— or homeward,

οἶκαδε ; voyage —,
ἀπόπλους.

Honour, τιμή ; τίμω ;
in —, τίμιος.

Hope, ἐλπίς.

Hoplite, ὀπλίτης.

Horse, ἵππος ; on horse-
back, ἀπὸ ἵππου.

Horseman, ἵππεύς.

Host, στρατεύμα.

Hostile, πολέμιος.

House, οἰκία.

How, πῶς, ὅπως ; —
many, πόσοι, ὀπόσοι ;
— large, ὅσος, ὀπόσος.

Hundred, ἑκατόν.

Hunger, λιμός.

Hunt, θηρεύω.

Hurl, ῥίπτω, ἱημι.

Hurt, βλάπτω.

I.

I, ἐγώ, ἔγωγε.

Idleness, ἴη —, ἄργός.

If, εἰ, ἐάν, ἂν, ἤν.

Ignorant, ἀγνώμων.

Ill-disposed, κακόνοος.

Ill-treatment, πάθος.

Imitate, μιμέομαι.

Immediately, εὐθύς.

Impassable, ἄπορος,
ἄβατος.

Impose, ἐπιτίθημι.

In, ἐν, εἰς ; — the
power of, ἐπὶ ; be —,
ἐνεμι ; — order that,
ἵνα, ὥς, ὅπως.

Indicate, διασημαίνω.

Induce, — to return,
ἀποστρέφω.

Inflict, ἐπιτίθημι ; —
punishment, κολάζω.

Inhabit, οἰκέω ; the in-
habitants, οἱ ἐνοι-
κούντες.

Injure, βλάπτω.
 Inquire, ἐρωτάω.
 Inscribe, ἐπιγράφω.
 Insist, κατατείνω.
 Inspire, παρέχω.
 Instead, — *of*, ἀντί.
 Intend, ἐν νῷ ἔχω.
 Intercept, ἀποκλείω.
 Interpreter, ἐρμηνεύς.
 Into, εἰς.
 Intrust, ἐπιτρέπω, προ-
 τέμμαι.
 Invade, or *make an*
invasion, ἐμβάλλω.
 Iron, *of* —, σιδήρεος.
 Island, νῆσος.

J.

Jar, βίκος.
 Javelin, παλτόν; —
man, ἀκοντιστής.
 Join, συμμῆνυμι.
 Journey, πορεία, ὁδός;
 πορεύομαι.
 Judge, κρίνω; — *of a*
contest, ἀγωνοθέτης.
 Judgment, γνώμη.
 Just, δίκαιος.
 Justice, δικαιοσύνη.
 Justly, δικαίως.

K.

Keep, — *safe*, διασφάζω;
kept, sometimes the
 sign of the impf.
 tense.
 Kill, κτείνω, ἀποκτείνω;
be killed, ἀποθνήσκω.
 Kinds, *of all* —, παν-
 τοῖος.
 King, βασιλεύς; *be* —,
 βασιλεύω.
 Knee, γόνυ.
 Know, γινώσκω, οἶδα.

L.

Lacedaemonian, Λακε-
 δαιμόνιος.
 Laden, μεστός.
 Land, γῆ, χώρα.
 Large, μέγας, *of ex-*
tent; πολλός, *of*
amount or number;
 ἡοῦ —, ὁπόσος.
 Last, *at* —, τέλος.
 Late, *come* —, ὀψίζω.
 Laugh, — *at*, καταγε-
 λάω.
 Laughter, *roar of* —,
 γέλως.
 Lay, — *waste*, φθείρω;
 — *plans*, ἐπιβουλεύω.
 Lead, μόλυβδος.
 Lead, ἄγω, ἡγέομαι; —
into, εἰσάγω.
 Leader, ἡγεμών.
 Leap, καταπηδάω.
 Learn, or — *by in-*
quiry, πυνθάνομαι.
 Least, *at* —, γέ.
 Leathern-bag, ἀσκός,
 διφθέρα.
 Leave, λείπω, ἐκλείπω;
 — *behind*, καταλεί-
 πω.
 Left, εὐώνυμος, ἀριστε-
 ρός.
 Leisure, *be at* —, σχο-
 λάζω.
 Length, *at* —, ἥδη.
 Lest, μή.
 Let, — *loose or* — *go*,
 ἀφήμι; — *approach*,
 προσήμι.
 Letter, ἐπιστολή.
 Level, ὁμαλής.
 Levy, συλλογή.
 Lie, κείμεν, *of posi-*
tion; ψεύδω, *falsify*;
 — *outstretched or*

asleep, κατακείμεν;
 — *at anchor*, ὀρμέω.
 Life, σῶμα.
 Light-armed, — *sol-*
dier, γυμνής.
 Lightly, πρόως.
 Like, παραπλήσιος; βού-
 λομαι.
 Line, *in even* —, ὁμα-
 λῶς; *fall into battle*
 —, συντάττομαι.
 Little, μικρός, *of size*
or amount; ὀλίγος,
of number.
 Live, ζῶω.
 Living, βίος.
 Lofty, ὑψηλός.
 Long, μακρός, *of space*
or time; πολλός, *of*
time.
 Loose, λύω.
 Lose, στερέομαι; —
courage, ἀδύμειω.
 Loss, *be at a* —, ἀπο-
 ρέω.
 Love, φιλέω.
 Lycaonia, Λυκαονία.
 Lydia, Λυδία.

M.

Macrōnes, Μάκρωνες.
 Maeander, Μαίανδρος.
 Make, ποιέω; — *an-*
swer, ἀποκρίνομαι; —
war, πολεμέω; — *an*
expedition, στρατεύω;
 — *know*, μὲντω; *be*
made, γίγνομαι.
 Man, ἀνὴρ, Lat. uir;
 ἄνθρωπος, Lat. homō;
 old —, γέρον; young
 —, νεανίας.
 Manifest, φανερός, δη-
 λος.
 Manner, τρόπος.

Many, see *Much*.

March, πορεία; — *in-land*, ἀνάβασις; *day's* —, σταθμός; ἐλαύνω, ἐξελαύνω, πορεύομαι; — *on*, ἐξελαύνω.

Market-place, ἀγορά.

Marsyas, Μαρσύας.

Mascas, Μάσκας.

Means, *by* — *of*, ἀπό, διὰ.

Meat, κρέας.

Mede, Μῆδος.

Meet, συγγίγνομαι.

Meeting, ἐκκλησιᾶ.

Melt, τήκω.

Menon, Μένων.

Mention, λέγω.

Mercenary, ξενικός.

Messenger, ἄγγελος.

Midas, Μίδας.

Mid-day, μέσον ἡμέρας.

Middle, μέσος; μέσον.

Midnight, μέσαι νύκτες.

Midst, μέσον.

Might, *with* — *and* *main*, κατὰ κράτος.

Milētus, Μίλητος; *from* —, Μιλήσιος.

Mina, μνᾶ.

Miss, ἀμαρτάνω.

Mistrust, ἀπιστέω.

Mithridātes, Μιθριδάτης.

Moderation, *with* —, μετρίω.

Molest, λυπέω.

Money, ἀργύριον, χρήματα.

Month, μῆν, τριάκοντα ἡμέραι.

More, μᾶλλον.

Mother, μήτηρ.

Mount, ἀναβαίνω.

Mountain, ὄρος.

Much, πολὺς; πολύ.

Multitude, πλῆθος.

Muse, Μοῦσα.

Must, δεῖ, χρή, ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ; often the verbal *in* -τέος.

My, ἐμός, sometimes ἐμοῦ or μοῦ; *of mine*, ἐμός or ἐμοί.

Myriad, μυριάς.

Myself, ἐμαυτοῦ, reflex.; αὐτός, intens.

Mysian, Μυσός.

N.

Name, ὄνομα.

Narrow, στενός.

Near, παρά; πλησίον, ἐγγύς.

Nearer, ἐγγύτερον.

Necessary, *it is* —, δεῖ.

Necessity, ἀνάγκη.

Need, δέομαι; *there is* —, δεῖ.

Neglect, ἀμελέω.

Neighbouring, πλησίον.

Neither, — . . . nor, οὔτε . . . οὔτε, μήτε . . . μήτε.

Never, οὔποτε, μήποτε.

Nevertheless, ὅμως.

Next, *on the* — *day*, τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ.

Nicarchus, Νίκαρχος.

Night, νύξ; *by* —, νύκτωρ.

Nine, ἐννέα.

Ninety, ἐνενήκοντα.

No, οὐδεὶς, μηδεὶς; — *one* or *nobody*, οὐδεὶς, μηδεὶς; *nothing*, οὐδέν, μηδέν.

Noble, καλός, ἀγαθός.

Noise, θόρυβος.

None, οὐδένες.

Nor, οὐδέ, μηδέ.

North, βορέας.

Not, οὐ, μή; — *yet*, οὐπω, μήπω; — *even*, οὐδέ, μηδέ; — *at all*, οὐδέν; — *only* . . . *but also*, καὶ . . . καί.

Notice, *escape* — *or escape the* — *of*, λανθάνω.

Now, νῦν, *of time*; ἤδη, *already*; δῆ, *inferential*; — *and then*, ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε.

Numbers, *in great* —, πολλοί.

O.

O, ὦ.

Oath, ὅρκος.

Obey, πείθομαι.

Observe, νοέω.

Obtain, τυγχάνω.

Occupy, οἰκέω.

Offer, — *sacrifice*, θύομαι.

Offering, ἀνάθημα.

Often, πολλάκις.

Old, — *man*, γέρον.

On, ἐπὶ, ἐν; — *account of*, διὰ, ἔνεκα; — *horseback*, ἀπὸ ἵππου; — *board*, ἐπὶ; — *this*, ἐκ τούτου.

Once, ποτέ; *at* —, εὐθύς.

One, εἷς, τις; — *another*, ἀλλήλων.

Open, ἀνοίγω; φανερός.

Opinion, γνώμη; *be of the* —, κρίνω.

Opponent, ἀντιστασιώτης.

Oppose, κωλύω.

Or, ἢ.

Order, κελεύω, *bid*, *command*; τάττω, *appoint*, *assign*; *pass the — along*, πα-
ραγγέλλω; — *arms*,
τίθεμαι τὰ ὅπλα; *in*
good —, εὐτάκτως;
in — that, ἵνα, ὥς,
ὅπως.

Orders, *give —*, παρα-
γέλλω, κελεύω.

Orontas, Ὀρόντας.

Ostrich, στρουθὸς ἡ με-
γάλη.

Other, ἄλλος.

Ought, χρῆ.

Our, often by the arti-
cle; sometimes ἡμῶν.

Out, — *of sight*, ἀφα-
νής; — *of the way*,
ἐκποδών.

Outside, ἔξω.

Outstretched, *lie —*,
κατάκειμαι.

Overcome, κρατέω.

Overpower, βιάζομαι.

Ox, βούς.

P.

Pack, — *up*, συσκευά-
ζομαι.

Paeon, *raise the —*,
παιάνίζω.

Palace, βασιλεία.

Palisade, σκόλοpes.

Parasang, παρασάγγης.

Parent, γονεὺς.

Park, παράδεισος.

Parysatis, Παρύσατις.

Pasion, Πάσιων.

Pass, — *along*, παραδί-
δωμι; — *by*, παρέρ-
χομαι; — *the order*
along, παραγγέλλω.

Pay, μισθός; τελέω,

ἀποδίδωμι, μισθὸν ἀπο-
δίδωμι; — *attention*,
προσέχω τὸν νοῦν.

Peace, εἰρήνη.

Peloponnesian, Πελο-
ποννήσιος.

Peltast, πελταστής.

Penalty, ζημιά.

People, λαός, ἄνθρωποι.

Perceive, αἰσθάνομαι.

Perhaps, ἴσως.

Peril, *be in —*, κινδύ-
νεύω.

Perish, ἀπόλλυμαι.

Perjure, — *oneself*,
ἐπιорκέω.

Permit, ἐάω.

Persian, Περσικός; Πέρ-
σης.

Person, σῶμα.

Persuade, πείθω.

Phalanx, φάλαγξ.

Phalinus, Φαλῖνος.

Phrygia, Φρυγιά.

Pisidian, Πισίδης.

Pity, οἰκτεῖρω.

Place, χωρίον; *take —*,
γίγνομαι; *take one's*
—, καθίσταμαι; *in*
this —, ἐνταῦθα; *in*
— of, ἀντί.

Plain, πεδῖον; δῆλος.

Plan, βουλή; βουλεύω;
— *harm*, κακὸν βου-
λεύω; *lay plans*, ἐπι-
βουλεύω.

Pleasing, χαρίεις.

Pleasure, *with —*, ἅσμε-
νος.

Pledges, πιστά.

Plethrum, πλέθρον; *of*
a —, πλεθριαῖος.

Plot, ἐπιβουλή; —
against, ἐπιβουλεύω;
— *harm or evil*, κα-
κὸν βουλεύω.

Plunder, ἀρπάζω, ἀναρ-
πάζω, διαρπάζω.

Point, — *out*, ἐπιδεί-
κνυμι; *at this —*, ἐν-
ταῦθα.

Polished, ξεστός.

Populous, οἰκούμενος.

Portent, τέρας.

Position, *get into —*,
συντάττομαι.

Possess, κέκτημαι.

Possession, *get —*, λαμ-
βάνω.

Possible, *as . . . as —*,
ὅτι or ὥς with the
superlative.

Post, *take one's —*,
τάττομαι.

Power, *in the — of*,
ἐπί.

Praise, ἐπαινέω.

Pray, εὐχομαι.

Precious, τίμιος.

Prefer, αἰρέομαι.

Present, δωρέομαι, *as a*
gift; προβάλλομαι,
present arms; *be —*,
πάρεμι, παραγίγνο-
μαι.

Press, — *hard*, πιέζω.

Pretext, πρόσφασις.

Previous, or *pre-*
viously, πρόσθεν.

Princely, *in a — man-*
ner, μεγαλοπρεπῶς.

Prize, ἄθλον.

Proceed, πορεύομαι, ἐξε-
λαύνω.

Proclamation, *make*
—, κηρύττω.

Procure, — *supplies*,
ἐπισιτίζομαι.

Produce, φύω.

Promise, or *make a —*,
ὑπισχνέομαι.

Proof, μισγύριον.

Proper, *be* —, *δεῖ* ; —
time, *καιρός*.

Property, *χρήματα*.

Propitious, *ἔλεως*.

Prosperous, *εὐδαίμων*.

Protection, *ἐπικούρημα*.

Prove, — *to be*, *γίγνομαι*.

Provide, *πορίζω*, *furnish*, *supply* ; *παρασκευάζομαι*, *get ready*, *procure*.

Province, *ἀρχή*.

Provision-money, *σῆ-
τηρέσιον*.

Provisions, *τὰ ἐπιτή-
δεια*.

Proxenus, *Πρόξενος*.

Punish, *κολάζω*, *check* ;
τιμωρέομαι, *take ven-*
geance on.

Punishment, *inflict* —,
κολάζω, *check*, *pun-*
ish ; *δικὴν ἐπιτίθμι*,
the more formal ex-
pression.

Purchase, *ἀγοράζω*.

Purpose, *ἐπινούω*.

Pursue, *διώκω*.

Pursuit, *διώξις* ; *go in*
—, *διώκω*.

Push, — *on*, *τείνω*.

Put, *ἀνατίθμι* ; — *to*
flight, *εἰς φυγὴν τρέ-*
πω ; — *to death*, *θα-*
νατόω, *ἀποκτείνω* ; —
to vote, *ἐπιψηφίζω* ;
— *out of the way*,
ἐκποδὼν ποίεομαι.

Pylae, *Πύλαι*.

Q.

Queen, *βασίλεια*.

Question, *ἐρωτάω*.

Quickly, *ταχύ*, *ταχέως*.

R.

Raft, *σχεδιά*.

Raise, — *up*, *ἀνίστημι* ;
— *a shout*, *ἀνακράζω* ;

— *the war-cry*, *ἀλα-*
λάζω ; — *the paeon*,
παιᾶνίζω.

Rampart, *ἀναβολή*.

Rank, *τάξις*.

Ransom, *λῦομαι*.

Ravage, *διαρπάζω*, *κα-*
κῶς ποίεω.

Ravine, *χαράδρα*.

Reach, *ἀφικνέομαι*.

Ready, *ἔτοιμος*.

Rear, *οὐρά*.

Rear-guard, *ὀπισθοφύ-*
λαξ.

Reason, *for what* —, *τί*.

Receive, *λαμβάνω*, *take*
into one's hand, *take*
to oneself ; *δέχομαι*,
take what is offered,
accept.

Reconcile, *καταλλάττω*.

Reflect, *ἐνθυμέομαι*.

Refrain, *ἀπέχομαι*.

Refuge, *take* —, *κατα-*
φεύγω.

Refuse, *οὐ φημι*.

Regard, *νομίζω*.

Region, *τόπος*.

Remain, *μένω*.

Remit, *ἀποκέμνω*.

Report, *ἀπαγγέλλω*,
ἐξαγγέλλω.

Repulse, *ἀναστέλλω*.

Rescue, *σφίζω*.

Resolutely, *στερρῶς*.

Resolve, *βουλευόμαι*.

Respect, *with* — *to*,
πρός.

Rest, *ἀναπαύομαι* ; *the*
— *of*, *ὁ λοιπός* ; *the*
—, *οἱ ἄλλοι*.

Restore, *κατάγω*.

Restrain, *κατέχω*.

Retaliate, *ἀντιποιέω*.

Retreat, *or beat a* —,
φεύγω.

Return, *induce to* —,
ἀποστρέφω.

Review, *ἐξέτασις* ; *hold*
a —, *ἐξέτασιν ποίεο-*
μαι.

Reville, *λοιδορέω*.

Revolt, *ἀφίσταμαι*.

Reward, *μισθός*.

Rich, *be* —, *πλουτέω* ;
the —, *οἱ χρήματα*
έχοντες.

Rid, *be* — *of*, *ἀπαλ-*
λάττωμαι.

Ride, *ἐλαύνω* ; — *past*,
παρελαύνω ; — *away*,
ἀπελαύνω ; — *up*,
προελαύνω ; — *for-*
ward, *προελαύνω*.

Right, *δίκαιος*, *mor-*
ally ; *δεξιός*, *of direc-*
tion ; *on the* —, *ἐν*
δεξιᾷ ; *give the* —
hand, *δεξιᾷν δίδωμι*.

Rightly, *δικαίως*, *ὀρ-*
θῶς.

Rise, *ἀνίσταμαι*.

River, *ποταμός*.

Road, *ὁδός*.

Rob, *ἀφαιρέομαι*.

Robbery, *λῃστεία*.

Robe, *στολή*.

Rout, *τρέπω*, *εἰς φυγὴν*
τρέπω.

Ruler, *ἄρχων*.

Run, *τρέχω*, *the gen-*
eral word ; *θέω*, *of*
bodies of men ; —
doing, *καταθέω* ; —
past, *παράθεω* ; — *for-*
ward, *προτρέχω*.

Rush, *τεμαίω*.

S.

Sack, διαρπάζω.

Sacred, ιερός.

Sacrifice, θυσία; θύω.

Safe, ἀσφαλής, the general word; σῶος, alive and safe; keep —, διασφάζω.

Safely, ἀσφαλῶς; arrive —, σφάζομαι; bring —, ἀποσφάζω.

Safety, σωτηρία, deliverance; ἀσφάλεια, personal safety; in —, ἀσφαλῶς; in the greatest —, ἀσφαλέστατα.

Sail, — away, ἀποπλέω, ἐκπλέω; — round, περιπλέω.

Sailor, ναύτης.

Same, ὁ αὐτός.

Sardis, Σάρδεις.

Satrap, σατράπης.

Satrapy, ἀρχή.

Satyr, Σάτυρος.

Save, σφάζω, διασφάζω.

Say, λέγω, φημί; said, εἶπον.

Scatter, διασπείρω.

Scythe-bearing, δρεπανηφόρος.

Sea, θάλαττα.

Season, ἔρᾱ.

See, ὁράω; — to, σκοπέω; be seen, φαίνομαι.

Seem, or — best, δοκέω.

Seer, μάντις.

Seize, ἀρπάζω.

Self, αὐτός.

Sell, ἀποδίδομαι.

Send, πέμπω, ἀποπέμπω; — for, μεταπέμπομαι; — back,

away, or home, ἀποπέμπω, ἀποστέλλω; — with, συμπέμπω.

Senseless, ἄφρων.

Separate, ἀποσπᾶω, διασπᾶω.

Servant, οἰκέτης.

Serve, παρατίθηναι.

Service, be of —, ὠφελέω.

Serviceable, ἕγιος.

Set, παρατίθηναι; — on fire, ἐνάπτω, ἐμπύρηναι; — forth or out, ὁρμάομαι.

Seuthes, Σεύθης.

Seven, ἑπτὰ; — hundred, ἑπτακόσιοι.

Severe, χαλεπός.

Severity, with —, ἰσχυρῶς.

Shame, αἰσχύνη.

Share, give a —, μεταδίδωμι.

Sheep, πρόβατα.

Shield, ἀσπίς.

Ship, ναῦς.

Shoot, τοξεύω.

Short-sword, ἀκινάκης.

Should, δεῖ.

Shout, κραυγή; βοᾶω; raise a —, ἀνακράζω.

Show, φαίνω, make to be seen; δείκνυμι, ἐπιδείκνυμι, point out; διδάσκω, inform, teach.

Shut, — off, ἀποκλείω; — up, κατακλείω.

Side, by the — of, παρὰ; on both sides, ἀμφοτέρωθεν.

Sight, out of —, ἀφανής; in —, καταφανής; in the — of, πρὸς.

Signal, or give the —, σημαίνω.

Silver, ἀργύριον; — or of —, ἄργυρεος.

Since, ἐπεὶ, ὁπότε.

Sincere, ἀπλός.

Sink, — down, καταδύω.

Sit, κάθημαι.

Situating, be —, οἰκέομαι.

Six, ἕξ; — hundred, ἑξακόσιοι; — thousand, ἑξακισχίλιοι.

Slander, διαβάλλω.

Slaughter, κόπτω.

Slave, be a —, δουλεύω.

Slay, ἀποκτείνω; be slain, ἀποθνήσκω.

Sleep, ὕπνος; καθεύδω.

Sling, σφενδόνη; use a —, σφενδονᾶω; make a —, σφενδονῆναι πλέκω.

Slinger, σφενδονήτης.

Slowly, σχολῇ, βραδέως.

Small, μικρός.

Snow, χιών.

So, οὕτως, of manner; δὴ, inferential; — that, or — as to, ὥστε; be —, οὕτως ἔχω.

Socrates, Σωκράτης.

Soldier, στρατιώτης; light-armed —, γυμνός.

Some, τίς; somebody or something, τίς, τι.

Sometimes, ἐνίοτε.

Son, υἱός, παῖς.

Soon, ταχύ; just as — as, ἐπειδὴ τάχιστα.

Sooner, πρόσθεν.

Sort, *what* —, ποῖος, οῖος; *of every* —, παντοδαπός; *of all sorts*, παντοίος.
 Sound, φθέγγομαι.
 Source, πηγή.
 Spartan, Σπαρτιάτης.
 Speak, λέγω; — *the truth*, ἀληθεύω.
 Spear, λόγχη, δόρυ.
 Speed, *at full* —, ἀνὰ κράτος; *with all possible* —, ὡς τάχιστα.
 Spring, κρήνη.
 Square, πλαίσιον.
 Stade, or stadium, στάδιον.
 Stage, σταθμός.
 Stand, ἵσταμαι, ἕστηκα; — *round*, περίσταμαι; — *up*, ἀνίσταμαι.
 State, λέγω; πόλις.
 Station, σταθμός.
 Stay, μένω.
 Steal, κλέπτω.
 Stern, στυγνός.
 Still, ἔτι.
 Stone, λίθος; βάλανος.
 Stop, παύω, ἀναπαύομαι; — *fighting*, καταλύω.
 Straggle, σκεδάννυμαι.
 Straightway, εὐθύς.
 Stride, βῆμα.
 Strike, παίω, κρούω.
 Strongly, ἰσχυρῶς.
 Stronghold, χωρίον, χωρίον ἰσχυρόν.
 Struggle, ἀγών.
 Success, *have* —, εὐτυχέω.
 Successfully, καλῶς.
 Suffer, πάσχω; — *harm*, κακῶς πάσχω; — *death*, ἀποθνήσκω.
 Summit, ἄκρον.

Summon, καλέω, call; συγκαλέω, call together, assemble; μεταπέμπομαι, send for with authority.
 Sun, ἥλιος.
 Superior, *be* —, περιγιγνομαι.
 Supper-time, δορηστός.
 Supplies, ἀγαθά, σῖτος; collect or procure —, ἐπισιτίζομαι.
 Support, τρέφω, διατρέφω.
 Surprise, καταλαμβάνω.
 Surprising, θαυμαστός.
 Surrender, παραδίδωμι.
 Surround, περιέχω.
 Suspect, ὑποπτεύω.
 Suspicion, ὑποψία.
 Sweet, ἡδύς.
 Swiftly, ταχύ.
 Sword, or short —, ἀκινάκης.
 Syria, Συρία.

T.

Table, τράπεζα.
 Table-companion, συντράπεζος.
 Take, λαμβάνω; — *place*, γίγνομαι; — *the field* or — *part in an expedition*, στρατεύομαι; — *one's post*, τάττομαι; — *one's place*, καθίσταμαι; — *care of*, θεραπεύω; — *care of in return*, ἀντεπιμελέομαι; *be taken*, ἀλίσκομαι.
 Talent, τάλαντον.
 Tall, μακρός.

Tamos, Ταμός.
 Targeteer, πελταστής.
 Taste, γεύομαι.
 Teach, διδάσκω.
 Teacher, διδάσκαλος.
 Team, ζεύγος.
 Tell, λέγω; told, εἶπον.
 Temple, νεώς.
 Ten, δέκα; — *thousand*, μύριοι.
 Tender, ἀπαλός.
 Tent, σκηνή.
 Terms, *in the following* —, τοιαύτε.
 Terrible, φοβερός.
 Terrify, φοβέω.
 Territory, χώρᾱ.
 Than, ἥ.
 Thapsacus, Θάψακος.
 That, ὅτι; ἵνα, ὥς, ὅπως; μή; so —, ὥστε.
 The, ὁ, ἡ, τό.
 Their, often by the article; sometimes αὐτῶν, ἐκείνων.
 Them, oblique cases of αὐτός in plur.
 Themselves, ἐαυτῶν, reflex.; αὐτοί, intrans.; or by the middle voice.
 Then, τότε, of time; δή, οὖν, inferential; ἔνθα, thereupon; now and —, ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε.
 Thence, ἐντεῦθεν.
 There, ἐνταῦθα, ἐκεῖ; when merely expletive, it is not to be translated.
 Therefore, οὖν.
 Thereupon, ἐνταῦθα, ἐνταῦθα δή, ἔνθα.
 Thessalian, Θετταλός.

They, generally omitted; occasionally οἱ-
τοι, ἐκείνοι.

Thickly-grown, δασύς.

Thief, κλέψ.

Think, νομίζω, *be-
lieve*; δοκέω, *sup-
pose*; sometimes οἶ-
μι, esp. when used
parenthetically.

Third, τρίτος.

Thirteen, τρισκαίδεκα.

Thirty, τριάκοντα.

This, οὗτος, ὅδε.

Thousand, χίλιοι; *ten*
—, μύριοι.

Thrace, Θράκη.

Thracian, Θρῆξ.

Three, τρεῖς; — *hun-
dred*, τριακόσιοι; —
thousand, τρισχίλιοι.

Through, διά.

Throw, ρίπτω; — *at*,
βάλλω.

Thus, οὕτως, ὧδε.

Thymbrium, Θύμβριον.

Tigris, Τίγρης.

Timbers, ξύλα.

Time, χρόνος, the gen-
eral word; ὥρᾱ, *sea-
son, hour*; *proper* —,
καιρός; — *of full*
market, ἀγορὰ πλή-
θουσα; *at that* —,
τότε; *each* —, ἐκά-
στοτε; *the third* —,
τὸ τρίτον.

Tissaphernes, Τισσα-
φέρνης.

To, εἰς, ἐπί, παρά, πρὸς,
ὧς.

Too, καί.

Touch, ἅπτομαι.

Tower, πύργος.

Town, ἄστυ.

Track, ἵχνος.

Traduce, διαβάλλω.

Traitor, προδότης.

Treason, προδοσία.

Treasure, θησαυρός.

Tree, δένδρον.

Trench, τάφρος.

Trial, κρίσις.

Tribute, δασμός.

Trireme, τριήρης.

Troops, στρατιά, δύ-
ναμις, στράτευμα;
heavy-armed —, ὀ-
πλίται; *light-armed*
—, γυμνήτες.

Trouble, πράγματα; τα-
ράττω.

Truce, σπονδαί.

True, ἀληθής.

Truly, δή.

Trumpet, σάλπιγξ.

Trumpeter, σαλπικτής.

Trust, πιστεύω.

Truth, *speak the* —,
ἀληθεύω.

Try, πειράομαι.

Tumult, τάραχος.

Turn, στρέφω, τρέπω.

Twenty, εἴκοσι.

Twice, δῖς.

Two, δύο; — *thousand*,
δισχίλιοι.

Tyrant, τύραννος.

U.

Undergo, — *hardship*,
πονέω.

Underneath, *be* —,
ὑπείμι.

Uninhabited, ἔρημος.

Unjust, ἀδικος.

Unless = *if not*.

Unprotected, ψίλος.

Until, μέχρι, ἕστε, ἕως,
πρίν.

Up, — *country*, ἄνω.

Upon, ἐπί; *be* —, ἐπει-
μι.

Uproar, θόρυβος, κραυ-
γή.

Urge, κελεύω, βιά; πα-
ρακελεύομαι, *exhort*,
encourage.

Urgent, *be* —, σπεύδω.

Use, or *make* — *of*,
χράομαι.

Useful, χρήσιμος.

V.

Valiant, ἄλκιμος.

Valour, ἀρετή.

Van, στόμα.

Venison, κρέα ἐλάφεια.

Very, πάνυ.

Vicious, πονηρός.

Victorious, *be* —, νι-
κάω.

Vigorously, ισχυρῶς.

Village, κώμη; — *chief*,
κωμάρχης.

Vine, ἄμπelos.

Virtue, ἀρετή.

Visible, φανερός, κατα-
φανής.

Voice, φωνή.

Voyage, πλόος; —
home, ἀπόπλοος.

W.

Wagon, ἄμαξα; *wagon-
road*, ἄμαξιτός.

Wait, περιμένω; —
for, ὑπομένω.

Wall, τεῖχος; *build a*
—, τειχίζω.

War, πόλεμος; — *or*
make — *or carry on*
—, πολεμέω.

War-cry, *raise the* —,
ἀλαλάζω.

Waste, διατρίβω; lay —, φθείρω.

Watchword, σύνθημα.

Water, ὕδωρ.

Way, ὁδός; give —, ἐκκλίνω; in this —, οὕτως; out of the —, ἐκποδών.

Wear, ἔχω.

Weep, κλάω, wail; δακρύω, shed tears.

Welcome, ἀσπάζομαι.

Well, εὖ; ἀλλά; do — by, εὖ ποιέω; it is —, καλῶς ἔχει.

Well-disposed, εὖνοος; be —, εὐνοικῶς ἔχω.

Wet, βρέχω; get —, βρέχομαι.

What, τίς, ὅς, ὅστις; — sort, ποῖος.

Whatever, ὅστις, ὅσος, ὁπόσος.

When, ἐπεὶ, ἐπειδὴ, ἡνίκα, ὅτε.

Whence, πόθεν.

Whenever, ὅποτε, ἐπειδὴ.

Where, ἔνθα, ὅπου, οὐ.

Wherefore, ὥστε.

Wherever, ὅπου.

Whether, εἰ.

Which, ὅς.

Whichever, ὁποτέρως.

Whip, μάστιξ.

White, in — cuirass, λευκοθώραξ.

Whither, ποῖ.

Who, τίς, ὅς.

Whole, ὅλος.

Whosoever, ὅς.

Why, τί.

Width, εὖρος.

Wife, γυνή.

Wild, ἄγριος; — animal, θηρίον.

Willing, be —, ἐθέλω, βούλομαι.

Willingly, ἐκόν.

Wind, ἄνεμος.

Wine, οἶνος.

Wing, κέρας, of an army; πτέρυξ, of a bird; on the right —, ἐπὶ τῇ δεξιᾷ.

Wise, σοφός.

Wish, βούλομαι, with the idea of will; ἐθέλω, be willing, be ready, but the distinction between the two words often breaks down.

With, σύν, μετὰ, παρὰ, ἀπό, ἔχων; — the help of, σύν; those —, οἱ ἀμφί.

Withdraw, ἀποσπάω, ἀναχωρέω, ἀποχωρέω, ἀπαλλάττομαι.

Within, ἐνδον; — the night, τῆς νυκτός.

Wonder, θαυμάζω.

Wonderful, θαυμαστός.

Word, λόγος; bring back —, ἀπαγγέλλω.

Work, earn by hard —, πονέω.

Worsted, be —, ἡττάομαι.

Worthy, ἄξιος.

Wound, τιτρώσκω.

Write, γράφω.

Wrong, or be in the —, ἀδικέω, or ἄδικος γίγνομαι; wrong-doer, ὁ ἀδικῶν.

X.

Xenias, Ξενιάς.

Xenophon, Ξενοφῶν.

Xerxes, Ξέρξης.

Y.

Year, ἔτος.

Yet, not —, οὐπω, μήπω.

Yield, ὑφίμαι.

You, σύ.

Young, νέος; — man, νεανίας.

Your, ὑμέτερος; often by the article or σου.

Yourself, σεαυτοῦ, reflex.; αὐτός, intens.

